

A GRAMMAR
OF THE
ARABIC LANGUAGE,

TRANSLATED

FROM THE GERMAN OF CASPARI,

AND EDITED

WITH NUMEROUS ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS

BY

W. WRIGHT, LL.D.,

LATE PROFESSOR OF ARABIC IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE.

THIRD EDITION

REVISED BY

W. ROBERTSON SMITH,

LATE PROFESSOR OF ARABIC IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE

AND

M. J. DE GOEJE,

PROFESSOR OF ARABIC IN THE UNIVERSITY OF LEYDEN.

VOLUME II.

WITH A PREFACE AND ADDENDA ET CORRIGENDA

BY

PIERRE CACHIA

LIBRAIRIE DU LIBAN
BEIRUT

LIBRAIRIE DU LIBAN

Riad Solh Square - Beirut

*Associated companies, branches and representatives
throughout the world.*

New Impression, 1996

Printed in Lebanon

CONTENTS.

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

I. THE SEVERAL COMPONENT PARTS OF A SENTENCE.

A. THE VERB.

| | PAGE |
|---|------|
| 1. The States or Tenses | 1 |
| The Perfect | 1 |
| " as an Optative | 2 |
| " preceded by قَدْ | 3 |
| " as the Pluperf. Indic. | 4 |
| " as the Pluperf. Subjunct., in two correlative hypothetical clauses, after لَوْ , etc. | 6 |
| " after إِذَا | 9 |
| " after إِنْ | 14 |
| " in two correlative conditional clauses, after إِنْ , etc. | 15 |
| " after مَا أَتَى مَوْتَهُ | 17 |
| The Imperfect Indicative | 18 |
| The Latin and Greek Imperfect, كَانَ يَفْعَلُ | 21 |
| The Future-Perfect, يَكُونُ (قَدْ) فَعَلَ | 22 |

| | PAGE |
|---|------|
| The Imperfect Subjunctive | 22 |
| The Jussive, after لَمَّا and لَمَّا | 22 |
| " in two correlative conditional clauses, after إِنْ , etc. | 23 |
| The Energetic | 24 |
| 2. The Moods | 24 |
| The Subjunctive | 24 |
| The Subjunctive after أَنْ , لَا or أَلَّا , and نَنْ | 25 |
| " after كَيْ , etc. | 28 |
| " after حَتَّى | 29 |
| " after فَ | 30 |
| " after وَا | 32 |
| " after لَمَّا | 33 |
| " after أَوْ | 33 |
| " after إِذَا or إِنَّمَا | 33 |
| The Jussive | 35 |
| " after لِ | 35 |
| " after لَا | 36 |
| " in two correlative conditional clauses, after إِنْ , etc. | 36 |
| " after لَمَّا and لَمَّا | 41 |
| The Energetic of the Imperfect | 41 |
| " after لِ | 41 |
| " in prohibitions (with لَا), wishes, and questions | 42 |
| " in the apodosis of two correlative con- ditional clauses | 42 |
| " in the protasis of a sentence, after إِذَا | 43 |
| " after حَتَّى etc. | 43 |
| " as a negative imperative, with لَا | 43 |
| The Energetic of the Imperative | 44 |

CONTENTS.

v

| | PAGE |
|--|------|
| 3. The Government of the Verb | 44 |
| (a) The Accusative | 45 |
| (a) The Objective Complement in the Accusative | 45 |
| Two Objective Complements in the Accusative | 47 |
| The Accusative of the مَصْفُور, etc., as the absolute object, الْمَفْعُولُ الْمَطْلُوعُ | 53 |
| Construction of the Objective Complement and of the Subject with the Nomen Actionis | 57 |
| Use of لَ with the Genitive to express the Objec- tive Complement of the Nomen Actionis | 61 |
| Government of the Nomina Agentis or Participles | 63 |
| Use of لَ with the Genitive to express the Objec- tive Complement of the Participles | 68 |
| Construction of Verbal Adjectives | 70 |
| Construction of Comparatives and Superlatives of the form أَفْعَلُ | 71 |
| The Accusative after a Verb which is understood | 72 |
| التَّحْذِيرُ وَالْإِعْرَاضُ | 74 |
| الِاخْتِصَاصُ | 76 |
| The Accusative after إِنَّ, كَيْفَ, لَيْتَ, أَتَى, إِنَّ | 78 |
| " after لَعَلَّ, مَلَّ, تَبَيَّنَ | 82 |
| " after (وَلَوْ أَلْبَسْتَهُ) وَ | 83 |
| The Vocative | 85 |
| " after يَا, أَ, etc., expressed by the Nominative | 85 |
| " after يَا, أَ, etc., expressed by the Accusative | 85 |
| " after أَيُّهَا or أَيُّهَا | 92 |
| " after وَآ | 93 |
| The Accusative after لَنْفِي الْجَنَنِسِ, لَا | 94 |

| | PAGE |
|--|------|
| (β) The Adverbial Complement | 98 |
| The Predicate of كَانَ | 99 |
| " of the أَحْوَاثُ كَانَ | 101 |
| The Predicate of مَا and لَا, when = لَيْسَ | 104 |
| " of إِنَّ النَّاسَ and of لَات | 105 |
| The Construction of the اَلْعَلَّاقَةُ | 106 |
| The Adverbial Accusative of Time | 109 |
| " " of Place | 111 |
| " " of State or Condition, اَلْحَال | 112 |
| " " of Cause or Reason | 121 |
| " " of Limitation or Determination | 122 |
| Construction of كَيْفَ, كَيْدًا, and كَيْفَا | 125 |
| " " of Comparison | 128 |
| (b) The Prepositions | 129 |
| The Simple Prepositions | 129 |
| مِنْ | 129 |
| مِنْ - مَتَى | 131 |
| مِنْ after Comparative Adjectives | 132 |
| عَنْ | 139 |
| إِلَى | 144 |
| حَتَّى | 146 |
| بِ | 147 |
| الْأَسْتِغَاثَةُ | 152 |
| بِ | 153 |
| بِ | 156 |
| مَعَ | 164 |

CONTENTS.

vii

| | PAGE |
|--|------|
| لَدَى, لَدُنْ | 165 |
| عَلَى | 166 |
| مُدَّ, مُدَّة | 173 |
| وَ | 175 |
| تَ | 175 |
| كَ | 176 |
| نَحْوَ | 178 |
| عِنْدَ | 178 |
| قَبْلَ | 180 |
| بَيْنَ | 180 |
| تَحْتَ | 182 |
| فَوْقَ | 182 |
| دُونِ | 182 |
| قَبْلَ | 186 |
| بَعْدَ | 186 |
| أَمَامَ | 187 |
| قُدَّامَ | 187 |
| وَرَاءَ | 187 |
| خَلْفَ | 187 |
| حَوْلَ | 188 |
| وَسَطَ | 188 |
| The Compound Prepositions | 188 |
| مِنْ, مِنْ, etc. | 188 |
| مِنْ, عَنْ, etc. | 190 |
| Prepositions in connection with a following Clause | 192 |
| بِ, عَنْ, مِنْ, and redundant مَا | 193 |
| Omission of the Preposition before أَنْ and أَنْ | 193 |

B. THE NOUN.

| | PAGE |
|---|------|
| 1. The Nomina Verbi or Actionis, Agentis, and Patientis . | 193 |
| 2. The Government of the Noun. | |
| The Status Constructus and the Genitive | 198 |
| صَاحِبٌ, etc. | 203 |
| كُلٌّ | 204 |
| جَمِيعٌ | 206 |
| عَامَّةٌ | 206 |
| سَائِرٌ | 206 |
| بَعْضٌ | 207 |
| غَيْرٌ | 208 |
| يَسْوَى | 209 |
| مِثْلٌ | 210 |
| شِبْهٌ | 211 |
| مِقْدَارٌ, قَدْرٌ | 211 |
| زَمَانٌ | 211 |
| نَحْوٌ | 212 |
| جِلَّتَانِ, جِلَالٍ | 212 |
| رَبٌّ | 214 |
| هَلْ, فَ, (وَأَوْ رَبٌّ) وَ | 216 |
| أَلْفٌ Superlative | 218 |
| أَيُّهُ, أَيُّ | 220 |
| A Clause, introduced by أَوْ or مَا, as a Genitive . | 220 |
| The Genitive of Restriction or Limitation, after Participles and Adjectives | 221 |
| Interposition of a Word between the Status Constructus and the Genitive | 222 |

CONTENTS.

ix

| | PAGE |
|---|------|
| A Genitive in Apposition to a Relative Adjective in بِـ | 225 |
| Definite and Indefinite Annexation | 225 |
| Construction of أَفْضَلُ as a Superlative | 226 |
| The Genitive of the Material | 229 |
| Apposition of the Material. | 229 |
| The Genitive Construction in place of Apposition | 231 |
| 3. The Numerals. | |
| The Cardinal Numbers from 3 to 10 | 234 |
| أَحَدٌ and وَاحِدٌ | 236 |
| اِثْنَانِ , اِثْنَانِ | 236 |
| " " " from 11 to 99 | 237 |
| بِضْعٍ | 237 |
| مِائَةٌ (100) and أَلْفٌ (1000) | 238 |
| Compound Numbers | 239 |
| Agreement of the Cardinal Numbers in Gender with the Nouns denoting the objects numbered | 240 |
| When the Cardinal Numbers are determined or definite | 243 |
| Construction of the Ordinal Numbers with the Genitive | 245 |
| Dates | 248 |
| The Days of the Month | 248 |

II. THE SENTENCE AND ITS PARTS.

A. THE SENTENCE IN GENERAL.

| | |
|---|-----|
| 1. The Parts of a Sentence | 250 |
| The Subject and Predicate | 250 |
| The رَابِعٌ or Connecting Pronominal Suffix | 256 |
| The فَصِيحُ الْفَصْلِ or Pronoun of Separation | 259 |
| When the Inchoative or Subject of a Nominal Sen- tence may be an Indefinite Noun | 260 |

| | PAGE |
|---|------|
| The ضَمِيرُ التَّأْكِيدِ or Emphatic Pronoun | 265 |
| Use of كَانَ , يَكُونُ , in a Nominal Sentence | 266 |
| The Subject not specified | 266 |
| Personal form | 267 |
| Impersonal form | 268 |
| The Complements of the Subject and Predicate | 271 |
| Reflexive pronominal Suffices | 271 |
| عَيْنٌ , etc., as reflexive objects | 272 |
| Appositives, التَّوْبِيحُ | 272 |
| The Adjective | 273 |
| Substantives | 274 |
| مَا الْإِنْبَائِيَّةُ | 276 |
| مَا هُوَ (هِيَ) , هُوَ (هِيَ) , مَا هُوَ (هِيَ) | 276 |
| Demonstrative Pronouns | 277 |
| عَلَمَةٌ , جَمِيعٌ , كُلٌّ | 278 |
| جَمْعًا , أَجْمَعُ | 278 |
| أَتَمَّ , أَتَمَّ , أَطَمَّ | 279 |
| بُغْلٌ , بُغْلَتَانِ , بُغْلَانِ | 280 |
| فَمِنْ , نَفْسٌ | 280 |
| التَّأْكِيدُ , the Corroboration | 282 |
| التَّصَدُّقُ or التَّصَدُّقُ , the Qualificative or Adjective | 283 |
| التَّحْدِثُ , the Permutative | 284 |
| عَطْفُ الْبَيَانِ , the Explicative Apposition | 286 |
| Apposition of Verbs | 287 |
| 2. Concord in Gender and Number between the Parts of a Sentence | 288 |
| In Verbal Sentences | 288 |
| In Nominal Sentences | 296 |

B. THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF SENTENCES.

| | PAGE |
|--|------|
| 1. Negative and Prohibitive Sentences | 299 |
| لَا | 299 |
| لَنْ | 300 |
| لَا تَأْتِي | 300 |
| مَا | 300 |
| إِنْ أَتَانِي | 300 |
| لَيْسَ | 303 |
| لَيْسَ or لَنْ, لَمْ, مَا, or لَا after | 303 |
| لَا with the Perfect, as a Future | 304 |
| " " as an Optative | 304 |
| لَا redundant after verbs meaning to forbid, fear, etc., followed by أَنْ with the Subjunctive (أَلَّا, أَنْ لَا) | 304 |
| Omission of لَا in Denial by oath, and its Insertion in Asseveration | 305 |
| لَا in Prohibitions, with the Jussive and Energetic | 306 |
| 2. Interrogative Sentences | 306 |
| أ | 306 |
| أَوْ لَمْ | 306 |
| هَلْ | 308 |
| أَمْ لَا | 309 |
| نَوَماً, تَوَلاً, هَلَا, أَلَا | 310 |
| مَا مِنْ | 311 |
| أَيُّهُ, أَيُّ | 315 |
| 3. Relative Sentences | 317 |
| Definite and Indefinite | 317 |
| The Connecting Pronoun, الرَّاجِعُ or الْعَاكِدُ | 319 |
| الَّذِي | 320 |

| | PAGE |
|--|------|
| 4. Copulative Sentences | 325 |
| فَ وَ | 325 |
| وَلَا after a preceding negative | 327 |
| The Conflict in Government, اَلْتَنَازُعُ فِي اَلْعَمَلِ | 327 |
| وَإَوُ اَلْحَالِ, the Wāw of the State or Circumstance | 330 |
| 5. Adverative, Restrictive, and Exceptive Sentences | 333 |
| لَا | 333 |
| لَعِنَ لَعِنَ | 333 |
| بَلْ | 334 |
| إِنَّمَا | 335 |
| إِلَّا | 335 |
| غَيْرَ | 340 |
| سِوَى | 341 |
| مَا عَدَا, مَا خِلا | 341 |
| حَاشَى | 342 |
| لَا يَكُونُ, لَيْسَ | 343 |
| لَا سِوَا | 344 |
| 6. Conditional and Hypothetical Sentences | 345 |
| فَ introducing the Apodosis of a Conditional Sentence | 345 |
| لَوْ, إِنْ | 347 |
| إِنْ | 348 |
| لَ introducing the Apodosis of a Hypothetical Sentence | 348 |

PART FOURTH.

PROBODY.

I. THE FORM OF ARABIC POETRY.

| | PAGE |
|-------------------------|------|
| A. The Rhyme | 350 |
| B. The Metres | 358 |
| Ragʿa | 362 |
| Sari' | 362 |
| Kamil | 362 |
| Wafir | 363 |
| Hanz | 363 |
| Mutakarib | 363 |
| Tawil | 364 |
| Mudiri' | 364 |
| Mudarik | 365 |
| Bast | 365 |
| Munsarih | 366 |
| Muktadab | 366 |
| Rasul | 366 |
| Madid | 367 |
| Hafif | 367 |
| Mugʿat | 368 |

II. THE FORMS OF WORDS IN PAUSE AND
RHYME 368

III. POETIC LICENSES 373

| | |
|---|-----|
| Affections of the letter ʾ | 374 |
| Irregularities in the use of the Taddid | 377 |
| Uncontracted Forms for Contracted ones | 378 |
| Suppression of final ʾ in some Nominal and Verbal forms | 379 |
| Other Letters, and even Syllables, dropped | 380 |
| Lengthening of a Short Vowel in the middle of a word | 382 |
| Shortening of a Long Vowel | 383 |

| | PAGE |
|---|------|
| Suppression of a Short Vowel | 384 |
| Addition of a Final Short Vowel to some Verbal Forms and Particles | 385 |
| Irregular Use of the Tënwin and other Case-endings . . . | 387 |
| Suppression of the Tënwin | 388 |
| رهن for رهن in the Genitive Plural of Nouns | 388 |
| Irregularities in Verbs and Nouns derived from Radicals tortia و vel ي | 389 |
| Pausal Forms out of Pause | 390 |

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

I. THE SEVERAL COMPONENT PARTS OF A SENTENCE.

A. THE VERB.

1. The States or Tenses.

1. The *Perfect*, **الْمَاضِي** (Vol. i., §§ 77, 79), indicates:—

A

(a) An act completed at some past time (the historic tense, the Greek aorist, German imperfect, and English past); as **ثُمَّ جَاءَ زَيْدٌ** *then came Zaid*; **جَلَسُوا عَلَى الْبَابِ** *they sat down at the door*.

(b) An act which, at the moment of speaking, has been already completed and remains in a state of completion (the Greek, German and English perfect); as **أَلَا تَذَكَّرُونَ الْبَرَكَاتِ الَّتِي أَنْعَمْتُ عَلَيْكُمْ** *be mindful of my favour, which I have bestowed upon you*.

(c) A past act, of which it can be said that it often took place B or still takes place—a use of the perfect which is common in proverbial expressions, and which the Greek aorist also has; as **رَوَى الْقَوَائِدَ** *relaters say (have handed it down by oral tradition from one to another)*; **اتَّفَقَ الْمُفَسِّرُونَ** *commentators are agreed (have agreed and still agree)*.

(d) An act which is just completed at the moment, and by the very act, of speaking; as **بِعِزَّتِكَ اللَّهُ** *I conjure thee by God*; **بِعِزَّتِكَ هَذَا** *I sell thee this*.

- A (e) An act, the occurrence of which is so certain, that it may be described as having already taken place. This use prevails in promises, treaties, bargains, &c., and after the particle *لَا* not, especially in oaths or asseverations; as *فَاعْطِنَا الْأَمَانَ عَلَى خَلَّتَيْنِ إِمَّا أَنْتَ قَبِلْتَ مَا أَتَيْنَاكَ بِهِ وَإِمَّا سَتَرْتَ وَامْسَكْتَ عَنْ آثَانَا حَتَّى نَخْرُجَ مِنْ بِلَادِكَ* give us, therefore, an assurance of safety on one of two conditions, either that thou wilt accept (lit. hast accepted) what we propose to thee (lit. that wherewith we are come to thee), or that thou wilt keep (it) secret and refrain (lit. hast kept it secret and refrained) from doing us any harm, till we get out of thy country; *وَاللَّهِ لَا أَكُنْتُ بِمَكَّةَ* by God, I shall certainly not remain in Makkah; *أَلَيْتُ لَا خَامِرَتْنِي الْخَمْرُ مَا عَلَيْتُ رُوحِي بِجَنِينِي* I swear (that) wine shall not make me intoxicated, as long as my soul remains in my body.
- B

- REM. a. When a clause commencing with *لَا* is connected with a previous clause beginning with *مَا* followed by the perfect, or *لَمْ* followed by the jussive, in that case *لَا* does not give to the following verb in the perfect the sense of the future, because it merely supplies the place of these particles; as *إِنِّي مَا قَتَلْتُ أَبْنَكَ سَهْوًا وَلَا عَمْدًا* I have not killed thy son either inadvertently or designedly, nor have I made his skull a sheath for my sword; *بَلَوْتُ مِنَ الْعَجَائِبِ مَا لَمْ يَرَهُ الرَّأَوُونَ وَلَا رَوَاهُ الرَّأَوُونَ* I have experienced such wonderful things as neither seers have seen, nor narrators have narrated.
- C
- D

[REM. b. Instances of the perfect retaining its original meaning after a single *لَا* are extremely rare. In later prose, however, we often find *لَا زَالَ* he did not cease, he continued (to do) employed just as *لَا زَالَ* or *لَمْ يَزَلْ* (Fleischer, *Kl. Schr.* i. 446 seq.)]

(f) Something which we hope may be done or may happen. Hence the perfect is constantly used in wishes, prayers, and curses; as *رَحِمَهُ اللَّهُ تَعَالَى* may God (who is exalted above all) have mercy on

him ! *دَامَ مُلْكُهُ* may his reign be long ! *جُعِلْتُ فِدَاكَ* may I be made A
thy ransom ! *أَتَيْتَ اللَّهَ* mayest thou avoid asseration (a formula used
in addressing the ancient Arab kings) ! *لَعَنَكَ اللَّهُ* God curses thee !
The proper signification of the perfect in this case is, "if it be as I
wish, God has already had mercy on him ;" &c. The perfect has this
sense also after *لَا* ; as *لَا لِقَائِكَ مَا يَنْفَعُكَ فُرًا* may you never meet with
harm, as long as you live ! *لَا تُكْسِرُ لُفُوكَ* may thy teeth (lit. mouth) not
be broken ! [neg. of the phrase *قَالَ اللَّهُ*].—When a conditional
clause precedes the optative, the particle *ك* must be prefixed to the B
latter, in order that the influence of the conditional particle in the
former may not extend to it ; as *إِنْ كُنْتَ أَهْنُ قَبَائِرِ فَحَيْتُ بِإِحْقَارٍ*
if thou art 'Ibn Hammām (lit. the son of Hammām), mayest thou be
saluted with honour !

REM. After the name of God, such perfects as *تَبَارَكَ*, *تَعَالَى*
جَلَّ وَعَلَا, *عَزَّ وَجَلَّ* and the like, are not optative but
declarative or assertory ; as *قَالَ اللَّهُ تَبَارَكَ وَتَعَالَى* God (who is C
blessed and exalted above all) hath said—. [Comp. Vol. i. § 50,
rem. a.]

2. The perfect is often preceded by the particle *قَدْ* (Vol. i.,
§ 362, s). When this is the case, if the perfect has either of the meanings
mentioned in § 1, b and d, it now implies that the act is really finished
and completed just at the moment of speaking. Its completeness may
consist either (a) in the removal of all doubt regarding it, in its perfect
certainty as opposed to uncertainty ; or (b) in its having taken place D
in agreement or disagreement with what preceded it, in accordance
or non-accordance with what was, or might be, expected, or just a
little before the time of speaking. For example *قَدْ ذَكَّرْنَا وَزَارَةَ جَدِّهِمْ*
حَالِدُ بْنُ بَرْمَكٍ فِي أَيَّامِ الْمَنْصُورِ وَنَذَكَّرُ هَاهُنَا وَزَارَةَ آبَائِهِنَّ we have
already spoken of the vizirate of their grandfather Hālid 'ibn Barmak
in the reign of al-Manṣūr, and we will here speak of the vizirates of
the rest (in this example the just completed act is contrasted with the

- A future one); **إِنَّ أَهْلَكَ** *the (time of) prayer is come*; **قَدْ قَامَتِ السَّلَاةُ** *thy daughter is, as was expected, dead, or thy daughter is just dead*; **أَمَّا الْوَلَايَةُ فَقَدْ وَلَّيْتُ أَبْنَاكَ مُصْرَ** *as regards the post of governor, I appoint thy son governor of Egypt (§ 1, d)*; **قَالَ لَهُ وَعَدْتُ** *he said to him, Thou didst promise this, and he replied, I now really fulfil what I promised.*

- REM. a. **قَدْ** immediately precedes the verb, as in the above examples, and can be separated from it only by an oath or asseveration; as **قَدْ وَاللَّهِ أَحْسَنْتَ** *by God, thou hast done well*; **قَدْ لَعْنَتِي** *by my life, I have passed the whole night awake.*

REM. b. **قَدْ** is called by the grammarians **حَرْفُ اتِّوَقُّعٍ** *the particle of expectation*, and is said to be used **لِلتَّحْقِيقِ** *to indicate perfect certainty*, or **تَقْرِيبِ التَّمَاثُلِ مِنَ الْحَالِ** *to approximate the past to the present.*

- C 3. The *Pluperfect* is expressed:—

- (a) By the *simple perfect*, in relative and conjunctive clauses*, that depend upon clauses in which the verbs are in the perfect; as **عَرَضَ عَلَيْهِمْ مَا أَمَرَ بِهِ الْيَأْمُونُ** *he laid before them what El-Ma'mūn had ordered*; **جَلَسَ حَيْثُ جَلَسَ أَبُوهُ** *he sat where his father had sat*; **فَلَمَّا وَصَلَ الْبُؤْرُ إِلَى الْمَوْضِعِ قَوْلَى مَارِبَا** *and after the bull had come to the place, he turned his back in flight*; **انْهَزَرْنَا لِقَتْلِ أَهْلِ بَيْتِهِ** *he fled after his kinsmen had been killed.*

[REM. Whether the perfect in these clauses has the meaning of the pluperfect, must in every single case be decided by the context, or by the nature of things. It may indicate a time identical with, and even posterior to, that indicated by the perfect in the clause

* By a relative or conjunctive clause we mean a clause that is joined to a preceding one by means of a relative pronoun or a connective particle.

upon which it depends. E.g. **لَمَّا سَارَ مُوسَى مِنْ مِصْرَ بَنِي إِسْرَائِيلَ** A
 إِلَى آتِيهِ تَبَشُّ يُوْسُفَ وَحَمَلَهُ مَعَهُ فِي آتِيهِ when Moses went forth
 from Egypt with the Benu 'Iord'il to the desert, he disinterred Joseph
 and carried his remains with him through the desert; **لَمَّا أَحْلَى**
 وَمَمْنَاهُ حَضْرَتَهُ الْوَلَدُ سَأَلُوهُ أَنْ يَجْعَلَ لَهُمْ رَئِيسًا when he became
 unbound, i.e. was dying, they asked him to give them a chief.]

(b) By the perfect with the particle **قَدْ**, preceded by **وَ** or without it, provided the preceding clause is one which has its verb in the B perfect; as **وَقَدْ أَخْرَجَهُ وَقَدْ خَبِيَ** he led him out blinded (lit. and he had been blinded); **بَكَرَ إِلَى الْفُضْلِ فَوَجَدَهُ قَدْ بَكَرَ إِلَى دَارِ الرَّشِيدِ** he went early in the morning to *el-Faql*, and found that he had gone still earlier to the palace of 'ar-Rasid (lit. and found him, he had already gone early). The clauses with **قَدْ** and **وَقَدْ** are clauses expressing a state or condition (حَال).

(c) By the verb **كَانَ** to be, prefixed to the perfect; as **مَاتَ** C
 الرَّشِيدُ بِطُوسٍ وَكَانَ خَرَجَ إِلَى خُرَّاسَانَ لِمُحَارَبَةِ رَافِعِ بْنِ الْأَثَلِثِ
 'ar-Rasid died at Tus, after he had set out (lit. and he had set out)
 for Horāsān to combat Rāfi' 'ibn *el-Ldī*. These clauses also express the state (حَال).

(d) By **كَانَ** and the perfect, with the particle **قَدْ** interposed; as **كُنْتُ قَدْ رَبَّيْتُ جَارِيَةً وَعَلَّمْتُهَا ثُمَّ أَهْدَيْتُهَا إِلَى الْفُضْلِ** D
 I had brought up and educated a female slave; I then presented her to *el-Faql*. Sometimes the particle **قَدْ** is placed before both verbs, instead of between them; as **قَدْ نَزَّوَى أَنَّ رَسُولَ اللَّهِ صَلَّى قَالَ لِعَائِشَةَ رَحِمَهَا وَقَدْ**
كَانَتْ نَذَرَتْ أَنْ تُعْتَقَ قَوْمًا مِنْ وَلَدِ إِسْمَاعِيلَ أَخ there is a tradition
 that the Apostle of God (God bless him and grant him peace!) said to 'A'isha (God have mercy on her!), after she had vowed (lit. and she already had vowed) to set free some persons of the children of Ishmael, &c.

- A. **REM. a.** When one of two or more pluperfects is anterior to the rest in point of time, it is indicated by means of the particle مَاتَ الرَّشِيدُ بِطُوْسٍ وَكَانَ ; as خَرَجَ إِلَى حُرَّاتَانَ لِمُحَارَبَةِ رَافِعِ بْنِ الْكَلْبِ وَكَانَ رَافِعٌ هَذَا قَدْ خَرَجَ 'ar-Rasid died at Tūs, after he had set out for Ḥurātān to combat Rāfi' ibn al-Kalb, who had rebelled (lit. and this Rāfi' had already rebelled), and cast off his allegiance, and taken forcible possession of Samarrahand.
- B. [REM. b. Between كَانَ and the perfect a conjunctive clause may be interposed, as كَانَ ثَمَّا بَلَغَ صَلَاحَ الدِّينِ خَبَرَ الْعَدُوِّ جَمْعَ الْأُمَرَاءِ when the information about the enemy had reached Salāḥ ad-dīn, he had assembled the amīrs.]
4. (a) If two correlative clauses follow the hypothetical particles إِنْ تَوَلَّى and إِنْ تَوَلَّيْتُ (Vol. i., § 367, o)*, the verbs in both clauses have usually the signification of our pluperfect subjunctive or potential, though occasionally too of our imperfect subjunctive or potential. For instance : تَوْ كَانَ فِيهِمَا آلِهَةٌ إِلَّا اللَّهُ إِنْ فَسَدَتَا if there had been in them (heaven and earth) gods besides God, they would surely have gone to ruin ; تَوْ شَاءَ رَبُّكَ لَجَعَلَ النَّاسَ أُمَّةً وَاحِدَةً if thy Lord had chosen, He would surely have made (all) mankind one people ; وَلْيَخْشَ الَّذِينَ تَوْ تَرَكُوا مِنْ خَلْفِهِمْ ذُرِّيَّتَهُمْ يُخَالِفُوا عَنْهُمْ and let those fear (God), who, if they should leave (or were to leave) behind them weak offspring, would have fears for them (or would be afraid on their account) ; وَلَوْ أَنَّ أَهْلَ الْقُرَى آمَنُوا وَاتَّقَوْا لَفَتَحْنَا عَلَيْهِم بَرَكَاتٍ مِنَ السَّمَاءِ وَالْأَرْضِ and if the people of those towns had believed and feared (Us), We would have surely bestowed upon them blessings from heaven and earth ;

* The protasis of a sentence, when introduced by **لَوْ**, although it may not have a verb actually expressed, yet includes a verbal idea, viz. that of the **v. b. كَانَ**.

if I had been one of (the tribe of) Māzin, they (the enemies) would not, A
have carried off my camels; وَقَالَ سَعْدٌ أَمَا وَاللَّهِ تَوَّأَنَّ بِي قُوَّةٌ مَا أَقْوَى

عَلَى الشُّهُوبِ لَسَبَعْتَ مِنِّي فِي الْأَطَارِقِ وَسَكَبَهَا زَيْبًا يُجْحِرُكَ وَأَصْحَابَكَ
and Sa'd said: إِذَا لَأَلْحِقَنَّكَ بِقَوْمٍ كُنْتُ فِيهِمْ تَابِعًا غَيْرَ مَتَّبِعٍ

verily, by God, if I had some strength left that I were able to rise, thou
wouldst hear from me a roaring in its ('El-Medīna's) quarters and
streets, that would drive thee and thy comrades into your holes, and by
God, I would remove thee to a tribe where thou wouldst be a follower,
not followed; نَوَّلَا قَوْمَكَ حَدِيثُو عَهْدٍ بِكُفْرٍ لَأَتُسْتُتِ الْبَيْتُ عَلَى قَوَاعِدِ B

had not thy people ceased recently to be in a state of infidelity,

I would surely raise the house on the foundations of 'Ibrāhīm; وَلَوْلَا أَنْ
يَكُونُ النَّاسُ أُمَّةً وَاحِدَةً لَجَعَلْنَا لِمَنْ يَكْفُرُ بِاللَّهِ عَذَابًا شَدِيدًا

and were it not that all mankind would have become a single
people (of unbelievers), We would certainly have given to those who
believe not in the Merciful roofs of silver to their houses;] نَوَّلَا فَضْلَ اللَّهِ

had it not been for the goodness C
of God towards you and His mercy, ye would surely have followed
Satan, (all) save a few; وَلَوْلَا عَلِيُّ تَبْلَكَ عُمَرُ

had it not been for 'Alī,
'Omar would surely have perished; وَلَوْلَا أَنتُمْ لَكُنَّا مُؤْمِنِينَ
had it not been for you, we would surely have been believers; وَلَوْلَا هَذَا الْعَامَ لَمْ
had it not been for thee, I would not have gone on pilgrimage

this year (أُحْجَجَ in rhyme for أُحْجَجَ). [With لَمْ inserted in both

clauses وَلَوْلَا قَدْ مَاتَ أَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ لَقَدْ بَايَعْتُ فُلَانًا D
if the Prince of the faithful were dead, I would swear allegiance to So-and-so; or only

in the protasis وَلَوْلَا كُلُّ مَنْ مَعَ مُؤْنِسٍ لَأَنْصَرَفُوا عَنْهُ وَتَرَكُوهُ وَحْدَهُ
if all that are with Mūnis had seen thee, they would surely turn away
from him and leave him alone.]—(b) Occasionally كَانَ is placed

between نَوَّلَا and the perfect in the protasis of the sentence, and

- A sometimes كَانَ is repeated before the perfect in the apodosis. If this be the case, the signification of the verbs in both clauses is always and necessarily that of the pluperfect; as كُنْتَ عَلِمْتَ ذَلِكَ لَضَرَبْتَهُ لَوْ كَانَ عَرَفْتُمَا لَمَّا if I had known this, I would have beaten thee; كَانُوا صَلُّوا رَبَّ الْمَسْجِدِ if they had known it, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory.—(c) If the verb of the protasis be an imperfect, and that of the apodosis a perfect, both must be translated
- B by the imperfect subjunctive or potential; as لَوْ نَشَاءُ أَصَبْنَاهُمْ بِذُنُوبِهِمْ لَوْ نَشَاءُ جَعَلْنَاهُ أَجَاجًا if we pleased, we could smite them for their sins; if we pleased, we could make it salt water. [If the verb of the protasis be an imperfect preceded by كَانَ and that of the apodosis a perfect, both may be rendered by the pluperfect subjunctive or by the imperfect subjunctive, as لَوْ كَانُوا يُؤْمِنُونَ بِاللَّهِ وَالْيَوْمِ الْآخِرِ وَمَا أَتَيْنَاهُ إِلَّا بِهِ مَا if they had believed in God and His prophet and in what has been revealed to him, they would not have taken them for
- C friends; لَوْ كَانَ يُنْجِي مِنَ الْوَدَى حَذَرُ نَجَاكَ مِمَّا أَصَابَكَ الْحَذَرُ if caution could save from death, surely the caution (of thy friends) would have saved thee from what has befallen thee (حَذَرُ in rhyme for حَذَرُ).]

Ex. a. The apodosis of **جَوَابُ (تَو)** *the answer, complement,* or *correlative of law*) is frequently omitted, when the context readily suggests it; as **وَلَوْ أَنَّ قُرَآنًا سُيِّرَتْ بِهِ آلِجِبَالٍ أَوْ فَطِيعَتْ بِهِ**

- D *and if the mountains could be made to move by a Kor'an, or the earth be cleft in pieces by it, or the dead be addressed by it, (scil. it would be by this Kor'an);* لَوْ أَنَّ
if I were a match for you in strength, or could have recourse to a powerful clan or party, or to a mighty chieftain, (scil. I would resist you); إِنَّا نَوَقُّفْتُ حَتَّى
I have delayed only until thou couldst see the extent of our forces and of our endurance; تَرَى مَقْدَارَ حَرْبِنَا وَصَبْرِنَا وَلَوْ كُنَّا بِبَوَاقِلِنَا مَعَهُ

and if we had been with him with our hearts (heart and soul), . . . A
 وَلَوْ لَرَبَّكَ نَبَا مِنْ (scil. we should have defeated you long ago);
 الشَّرِّ إِلَّا مَوْضِعَ الشَّرِّ الْمَقَابِلَ لَهَا التَّجَلُّلُ عَلَيْهَا الْمَشْهُورُ بِالزَّيْتُونِ
 الْكَبِيرِ الْمَمْتَدِّ قَرَابِغَ فِي قَرَابِغِ and if it (Seville) possessed no other
 glory but the place, called Anarafa, opposite to and overhanging it,
 famous for its numerous olive-trees, (and) stretching leagues by
 leagues, . . . (scil. this would be enough for it, لَكُنَّامَا or لَكُنِّي).

[Rom. A. The verb expressed or understood in a clause pre-
 coded by وَلَوْ even if, though, has the same signification as that of B
 the clause to which it is annexed, as أَعْطُوا السَّائِلَ وَلَوْ جَاءَ عَلَى قَرْبٍ
 give to the beggar, though he should come on horseback; لَا أَرْجِعُ عَنْ
 تَصَدَّقُوا وَلَوْ بِطَلَبِ I will not retract my promise of pro-
 tection, even if my head should fly before me; اِيْتِنِي بِدَابَّةٍ وَلَوْ
 اِيْتِنِي بِدَابَّةٍ وَلَوْ give alms, though it be only a burnt hoof; اِيْتِنِي بِدَابَّةٍ
 bring me a beast to ride upon, even if (it should be) an ass
 (§ 41, rom. b); C
 تَرْفَعُ إِلَيْهِ شَكْوَى الْمَظْلُومِينَ فَيَنْصِفُهُمْ وَلَوْ مِنْ وَلَدِهِ
 the complaints of the wronged were brought before him, and he
 obtained justice for them, even from his own son; إِنَّ آتَمْتَ خِيَوَانًا
 if thou causest an animal pain, however
 little, thou art cursed.]

B. After إِذَا when, as often as (Vol. i., § 367, b), the perfect is
 usually said to take the meaning of the imperfect, the future act
 being represented as having already taken place; as أَجِيْتُكَ إِذَا أَحْمَرَ D
 اِسْتَجِيبُوا—I will come to thee when the unripe dates become red;
 اِسْتَجِيبُوا لِلَّهِ وَلِلرَّسُولِ إِذَا دَعَاكُمْ لِمَا يُحْيِيكُمْ
 respond to God and to the Apostle, when he calls you to that which can give you life.—Consequently, if
 the particle إِذَا or مَا be followed by two correlative clauses, the first
 of which extends its converse influence to the verb of the second,
 the verbs have in both clauses either a present or a future significa-

- A tion. For example : *وَإِذَا جَاءَ وَعْدُ الْآخِرَةِ جِئْنَا بِكُمْ لَوِثًا* and when the promised term of the future life comes (or is come, or shall have come), we will bring you all together (to judgment) ; *أَلَمْ يَأْتِ إِذَا مَا وَقَعَ* when it (the punishment) falls (upon you), will ye believe it then ! *وَإِذَا رَأَى يَاحْيَى الْأَمْرَ ذَلَّتْ صَعَابُهُ* when Yahyā takes the matter in hand, its difficulties are easily overcome. In such cases the Latin requires the future-perfect in the first clause, and the future in the second. The imperfect is sometimes used instead of the perfect in the
- B protasis or apodosis ; as *وَإِذَا تَلَّى عَلَيْهِمْ آيَاتِنَا قَالُوا لَقَدْ سَمِعْنَا* and when our verses are read to them, they say, We have heard ; *أَنَاسَ إِذَا* when our verses are read to them, they say, We have heard ; *أَنَاسَ إِذَا* men whom, when the shout of ' Alight for the fray ' is raised, you see on foot (looking as tall) as if (they were) riding (*رَقَبَ* in rhyme for *رَقَبَ*) ; *وَإِذَا رَأَيْتَهُمْ* and when thou seest them, their bodies make thee marvel. Occasionally too the imperfect occurs in both clauses ; as
- C *وَإِذَا تَلَّى عَلَيْهِمْ آيَاتِنَا بَيِّنَاتٍ تَعْرِفُ فِي وُجُوهِ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا الْمُنْكَرَ* and when our verses are read to them as clear proofs, thou discernest displeasure in the faces of those who disbelieve ; *فَإِذَا تَزُولُ تَزُولُ عَنْ* and when it (ill fortune) departs, it departs from a proud hero, whose sudden fits of passion are dreaded by his rivals ; *وَالنَّفْسُ رَاحَةً إِذَا رَغِبَتْهَا* and when she is reduced, or restricted, to a little, she is content.—If a clause dependent on *إِذَا* is introduced by such a perfect as *كَانَ* or *صَارَ*, the verb governed in the perfect by *إِذَا* is likewise a historical perfect ; e.g. *كَانَ إِذَا تَكَلَّمَ أَبْلَغَ* when he spoke, he spoke eloquently ; *وَذَكَرَ بَعْضُ أَهْلِ الْعِلْمِ أَنَّ رَسُولَ* some learned men say that the Apostle of God, when the time of prayer had come, went to the mountain-roads of Mekka. Here also the imperfect is sometimes

used in the protasis or apodosis, as **لَا يَمَلُ** *did not reach* and when I saluted him, my head did not reach to his waist; **وَكَانَ إِذَا بَعَثَ أَهْلًا وَآخَرًا** *and when he bestowed raiment, he did it in a liberal and generous manner*; **وَكَانَ الْمَلَأُ إِذَا فَرَّ أَحَدًا** *and the skipper, when he had conveyed a person in his vessel from the one to the other side, got for pay a bracelet of gold.*] If the clause introduced by **إِذَا** stands in the middle of a narrative of past events, the perfect has also the sense of the historical perfect, [as, **فَجَعَلَ صَاحِبُ السَّيْلِ** *and the captain of the cavalry began to drive together parties of them by the spears of his men*; and when they had collected them, they killed them; **وَكَانَ الْمُتَعَصِّرُ طَيِّبَ الْإِخْلَاقِ لَكِنَّهُ إِذَا غَضِبَ لَا يَمَلُ مَنْ قَتَلَ وَمَا فَعَلَ** *El-Mu'tasim was good-tempered, but when he was angry, he cared not whom he killed, nor what he did*; **أَذْكَرُ وَتَحَنُّنٌ فِي قُرُوبِينَ إِذَا جَاءَ اللَّيْلُ** *I remember whilst we were in Kamein, when night came, we brought all our things in the cellars of our houses and did not leave anything on the floor.*]

REM. α. The use of **إِذَا** as a conjunction arises in reality out of its original meaning as a temporal demonstrative (see Vol. i., § 367, *b*). Like **يَوْمَ وَتِلْكَ**, etc. (see § 78), **إِذَا** is an accusative in the construct state, and governs a following verbal clause virtually in the genitive*. Under these circumstances, the actions both of the defining clause, introduced by **إِذَا**, and of the clause defined by it, are such as would be appropriately expressed by the imperfect indicative. These two clauses being in correlation, and that which is logically primary (the defined clause) becoming syntactically secondary (the apodosis), either action may—without

* [Comp. however Fleischer, *Kl. Schr.* i. 113, note 1.]

- A reference to their temporal relation to one another or to other actions—be regarded either (a) as beginning or in progress, or (β) as completed and done. In the one case the imperfect will be used, in the other the perfect. As a rule, however, the language has preferred either to represent the action of the defining clause (or protasis) alone by the perfect; or else, which is more common, the actions of both the correlative clauses by the perfect, that of the apodosis being, as it were, conditioned and postulated by that of the protasis. But to what period of time these correlated actions belong,—whether the perfects are to be translated by our past, present or future,—depends entirely upon the considerations stated in Vol. i., § 77, rem. a.
- B

REM. b. The temporal clause introduced by *إذا* is often almost identical in meaning with a conditional clause introduced by *إن* (see § 6)*; but it is very rare [in prose] to find *إذا* construed with the jussive like *إن* (§§ 13 and 17, c), as *وَإِذَا تُبِيتَكَ خَصَاصَةٌ فَتَجَمَّلْ* and *when poverty befalls thee, bear it patiently* (*تَجَمَّلْ* in rhyme for *تَجَمَّلْ*); [*وَإِذَا تَوَزَّيْنِي تَكْرُمْنِي* and *when you visit me, you will honour me*].

C

- REM. c. It has been said that when *إذا* or *مَا* is immediately preceded by *حَتَّى* until, and followed by two correlative clauses, the verbs of which are in the perfect, these perfects take the sense of historical past tenses, expressing a state which closes the action of a previous perfect. This exception to the so-called converse influence of *إذا* or *مَا* does not, however, hold good. *حَتَّى* is construed with the perfect to indicate a simple temporal limit, or the effect or result of an act or series of acts; with the imperfect indicative, when this effect or result is regarded not as something actually past, but as yet in progress, as a historical present (see § 15, c, β). This view it is which the Arabic language has chosen to adopt in the case of two correlative clauses, introduced by *إذا*,
- D

* [The difference is that *إن* denotes what is possible, *إذا* what is ascertained, so that one says *إِنْ جَاءَ يَهْدْ* *if he comes, he will lead*, but *إِذَا جَاءَ رَأْسُ الشَّهْرِ* *when the beginning of the month shall come*.]

after *حَتَّى* For example: *لَقَدْ أَلْهَىٰ رَبِّيَ الْبَحْرَ وَالتَّيْنَ حَتَّىٰ* A
إِذَا كُنْتُمْ فِي الْفُلِ وَجَعَلْنَا بِكُمْ يَمًّا رِيحًا طَيِّبَةً وَفَرَحُوا بِهَا جَاءَتْهَا رِيحٌ
عَاصِفٌ وَجَاءَهُمُ الْمَوْجُ مِنْ كُلِّ مَكَانٍ وَظَنُّوا أَنَّهُمْ أُحِيطَ بِهِمْ دَعَوُا اللَّهَ
وَحَسِبُوا أَنَّهُم لَاقُوا اللَّهَ بَاطِلَ الْآيَاتِ He it is who letteth you travel by land and by B
sea, until, when ye are on board of ships, and they sail away with
them (abrupt change of person, instead of with you) with a fair
wind, and they rejoice in it, there overtakes them (the ships) a
tempestuous gale, and the waves come on them from every side, and
they think that they are encompassed, (and) call upon God, professing
sincere religion; وَحَسِبُوا أَنَّهُم لَاقُوا اللَّهَ بَاطِلَ الْآيَاتِ B
and unto Solomon
were gathered his hosts, of jinn and of men and of birds, and they
were marched on in order, until, when they arrive at the Valley of
Anta, an ant says—. In this second example the meaning would
be substantially the same, if we rendered it by until, when they
arrived at the Valley of Anta, an ant said, but the translation would
be less close. In the next two examples, on the contrary, the* C

* [Trumpp, *Der Bedingungsatz im Arabischen*, Sitz. Ber. d. phil. hist. Cl. der K. B. Akad. d. Wissensch. zu München, 1881, p. 432 seqq., rejects the theory expounded in rem. c, which is also that of Fleischer (*Kl. Schr.* i. 116 seqq.). *حَتَّى* being properly a preposition, has no influence on the signification of the perfect in the following clause. This depends on that of the clause to which it is subordinated. The same remark applies to the perfects of two correlative clauses introduced by *إِذَا حَتَّى* For example: *أَجْرِي حَتَّىٰ إِذَا أَتَيْتُ* D
فَمَا شَعَرْتُ بِشَيْءٍ حَتَّىٰ إِذَا الْأَسْوَدُ قَدْ دَخَلَ الْبَيْتَ
*but before I was aware of anything, *El-'Aswad had entered the room;*
وَقَوْمٌ نَحْشُرُ مِنْ كُلِّ أُمَّةٍ قَوْمًا مِمَّنْ يُكَذِّبُ بِآيَاتِنَا فَهُمْ يُوزَعُونَ حَتَّىٰ
إِذَا جَاءُوا فَلَّ أَعْلَدْتُمْ بِآيَاتِي and on that day when we bring together
out of every nation a company of those who have gainsaid our revelations, kept marching in ranks, until, when they have arrived (before God), He will say: Did ye treat my revelations as impostures? A
comparison of this verse from Kor'an xxvii. with that cited above

- A repetition of the act justifies us in the use of the past. وَمَا أَرْسَلْنَا مِنْ قَبْلِكَ إِلَّا رِجَالًا نُوْحِي إِلَيْهِمْ مِنْ أَهْلِ الْقُرَى حَتَّى إِذَا فَتَحُوا مَا ذُكِّرُوا بِهِ فَتَحْنَا عَلَيْهِمْ أَبْوَابَ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ حَتَّى إِذَا فَوَّسُوا قُلُوبَهُمْ مَا ذُكِّرُوا بِهِ فَتَحْنَا لَهُمْ بَابَهُمْ فَإِذَا هُمْ مُبْلِسُونَ and We have not sent before thee (any) but men, to whom a revelation was made, of the people of the cities, until, when the apostles were despairing, and were thinking that they were deluded, Our aid came unto them ;
- B their warnings, We set open to them the gates of all things, until, when they were rejoicing over what they had got, We laid hold on them suddenly, and lo, they were in despair.

8. (a) After the conditional particle *إِنْ* (Vol. i., § 367, f), and after many words which imply the conditional meaning of *إِنْ* (مَعْنَى *إِنْ* or *الشَّرْطِ*), the perfect is also said to take a future sense, the condition being represented as already fulfilled. In English it may usually be rendered by the present. Such words, for instance,
- C are : *أَيُّ* and *مَنْ* *who, whoever*, *أَيُّمَنْ* *whosoever*, *مَا* *what*, *أَيُّمَا* *whatsoever*, *مَنْ* *whoever*, *مَا* *whatever*, *كُلَّمَا* *as often as*, *حَيْثُ* *where*, *حَيْثُمَا* *wherever*, *مَتَى* *when*, *مَتَى* *whenever*, *أَيْنَ* *where*, *أَيْنَمَا* *wherever*, *كَيْفَ* *how*, *كَيْفَمَا* *however*, *أَيُّ* *in whatever way, however*, *أَيَّانَ* and *أَيَّانَ* *when, whenever*, *إِذَا* *whenever*. Examples : *إِنِّي أَخَافُ إِنْ عَصَيْتُ رَبِّي عَذَابَ يَوْمٍ عَظِيمٍ* *I fear, if I rebel (lit. have rebelled) against my Lord, the punishment of a great (i.e. terrible) day ;* *وَأَقْتُلُوهُمْ حَيْثُ تَلَقَّيْتُمُوهُمْ* *and slay them wherever you find them (lit. have found them) ;* *وَهُوَ مَعَكُمْ أَيْنَمَا كُنْتُمْ* *and he is with you wherever you are*. The same remark applies to the perfects before and after *أَوْ* or, in such phrases

وَحِشْرَ لِسُلَيْمَانَ النِّعَ shows clearly the influence of the preceding verb on the signification of those in the subordinate clauses. For in the latter we ought to render *until, when they arrived at the Valley of Ants, an ant said*. D. G.]

as سَوَاءٌ هَانُوا أَوْ حَضَرُوا *it is all the same whether they are absent or* A
present; سَوَاءٌ عَلَيَّ قُمْتُ أَوْ قَعَدْتُ *it is all one to me whether thou*
standest or sittest; أَطْفِرُ الْغَنِيَّ كَمَا أَوْ قَدِيرًا *honour a guest,*
whether he be rich or poor.—(b) If the words إِنَّ, أَيْ, مَنْ, &c., be
 followed by two clauses, the first of which expresses the condition
 [الشَّرْطُ], and the second the result depending upon it [جَوَابُ الشَّرْطِ or
 حَرْفُ الشَّرْطِ], then the verb in both clauses is put in the perfect*, both B
 the condition and the result being represented as having already taken
 place. For example: إِنْ فَعَلْتَ ذَلِكَ فَهَلَكْتَ *if you do this, you will*
perish, lit. *if you shall have done this, you have perished or will perish*
 (§ 1, e); مَنْ حَقَّرَ سِرَّهُ بَلَغَ مُرَادَهُ *he who (= if one) keeps (has kept) his*
own secret, attains his object; الْحِكْمَةُ ضَالَّةُ الْمُؤْمِنِ أَيْنَمَا وَجَدَهَا أَخَذَهَا *wisdom is the strayed camel of the believer; wherever he finds it (= if he*
shall have found it anywhere), he lays hold of it (will lay hold of it).— C
 (c) If the perfect after إِنَّ, أَيْ, مَنْ, &c., is to retain its original
 meaning, then كَانَ, or one of the أَخَوَاتُ كَانَ *the sisters of the verb*
kāna (such as صَارَ *to become*, ظَلَّ *to be by day*, بَاتَ *to be by night*,
 أَصْبَحَ *to be in the morning*, أَمْسَى *to be in the evening*), must be in-
 serted between those words and the perfect in the protasis, and the
 apodosis must be indicated by the particle ف. For example: إِنْ كَانَ
 مِنْ قُدَمَى فَبُيِّضَ ثَوْبِي *if his shirt is (has been) torn in front, she* D

* [The verb in the protasis may never be a جامِدٌ an *aplastic*
 verb, such as have but one tense and no infinitive, as عَسَى, لَيْسَ.
 Comp. § 187, b. In negative clauses the jussive with لَمْ is employed
 (§ 12) with very rare exceptions as Kor'an ii. 140 وَكُنْ أَتَيْتَ الدِّينَ
 أَوْ كُنْ أَتَيْتَ الدِّينَ *even though thou shouldst bring*
every kind of sign to those who have been given the Scriptures, yet they
will not follow, for لَمْ يَتَّبِعُوا.]

- A *has spoken the truth*; **وَأَنْ كُنْتُمْ آمَنْتُمْ بِاللَّهِ فَعَلَيْهِ تَوَكَّلُوا** *you have believed in God, place your trust in Him*; **فَمَهْدِ الْعِلْمَ أَوْ لَسَامِخَ إِنْ** *accept my excuse readily or (at least) be indulgent, if I have committed a crime or a fault.*—(d) But if the perfect after these words is to have the historical sense (English past tense, § 1, a), the verb **وَكَّانَ**, or one of its "sisters," must be prefixed to the correlative clauses; e.g. **وَكَّانُوا إِنْ بَالَفُوا بَلَفُوا** *if they exerted themselves to attain an object, they attained it* [أَشَى] *and whenever one of the wild animals came to visit him, he made it his prey*; **وَكَّانَ مَتَى أَرَادَ خَلْعَهُ دَخَلَ الْبَرِّيَّةَ** *and as often as he would throw off his allegiance, he entered the desert*]; though it is also sufficient that the correlative clauses should be dependent upon others that are historical; as **إِنَّمَا أَتَرَفْتُ الْعِلْمَ** *I attained knowledge only by praising (God), for, whenever I understood (anything), I said, Praise belongs to God.* [(e) If, however, the verb **وَكَّانَ**, or one of its sisters, after these words, is followed by an imperfect or a participle, we must render it by the present (§ 131), as **إِنْ كُنْتُمْ تُحِبُّونَ اللَّهَ فَاتَّبِعُونِي** *if you love God, then follow me*; **وَلَا يَجِلُّ لَهُ أَنْ يَكْتُمَنَّ مَا خَلَقَ اللَّهُ** *nor is it lawful for them to conceal what God hath created in their wombs if they believe in God*; **لَنْ تَكُنَّ** *if thou speakest the truth, thou hast killed me; if thou liest, thou hast disgraced me.*
- B *themselves to attain an object, they attained it* [أَشَى] *and whenever one of the wild animals came to visit him, he made it his prey*; **وَكَّانَ مَتَى أَرَادَ خَلْعَهُ دَخَلَ الْبَرِّيَّةَ** *and as often as he would throw off his allegiance, he entered the desert*]; though it is also sufficient that the correlative clauses should be dependent upon others that are historical; as **إِنَّمَا أَتَرَفْتُ الْعِلْمَ** *I attained knowledge only by praising (God), for, whenever I understood (anything), I said, Praise belongs to God.* [(e) If, however, the verb **وَكَّانَ**, or one of its sisters, after these words, is followed by an imperfect or a participle, we must render it by the present (§ 131), as **إِنْ كُنْتُمْ تُحِبُّونَ اللَّهَ فَاتَّبِعُونِي** *if you love God, then follow me*; **وَلَا يَجِلُّ لَهُ أَنْ يَكْتُمَنَّ مَا خَلَقَ اللَّهُ** *nor is it lawful for them to conceal what God hath created in their wombs if they believe in God*; **لَنْ تَكُنَّ** *if thou speakest the truth, thou hast killed me; if thou liest, thou hast disgraced me.*
- C *praising (God), for, whenever I understood (anything), I said, Praise belongs to God.* [(e) If, however, the verb **وَكَّانَ**, or one of its sisters, after these words, is followed by an imperfect or a participle, we must render it by the present (§ 131), as **إِنْ كُنْتُمْ تُحِبُّونَ اللَّهَ فَاتَّبِعُونِي** *if you love God, then follow me*; **وَلَا يَجِلُّ لَهُ أَنْ يَكْتُمَنَّ مَا خَلَقَ اللَّهُ** *nor is it lawful for them to conceal what God hath created in their wombs if they believe in God*; **لَنْ تَكُنَّ** *if thou speakest the truth, thou hast killed me; if thou liest, thou hast disgraced me.*
- D *if thou speakest the truth, thou hast killed me; if thou liest, thou hast disgraced me.*

REM. a. What has been said of the temporal **إِذَا** in § 5, rem. a, is also applicable to the conditional **إِنْ** for **إِنْ** is also originally a demonstrative (compare [إِنَّ, إِي, إِذ]). In this case, however, the language always employs the perfect, never the imperfect indicative, after the conditional word; that is to say, the condition is invariably represented, in reference to the conditioned, as a

completed action, and not as one in progress. On the alternative A use of the Jussive, see §§ 13 and 17, c.

REM. d. The apodosis of **إِنْ** (جَوَابُ **إِنْ**), like that of **لَوْ** (§ 4, rem.), is frequently omitted, when the context readily suggests it; as **إِنْ شَهِدَ لَكَ عَدْلَانِ مِنَ الْمُسْلِمِينَ وَإِلَّا فَاسْتَوْفِ مِنْهُ الْيَمِينَ** if two honest men of the Muslims bear witness in thy favour, (good and well); but if not, demand of him the oath. **إِنْ تَبْتَ وَرَجَعْتَ عَنْ قَوْلِكَ وَإِلَّا** if thou repentest and recantest what thou hast said, (good and well, or I will forgive thee); but if not, I will order the slaves to slay thee alive. [Comp. § 186, rem. c, footnote. By this omission **وَإِنْ** though (§ 17, c, rem. a) acquires the meaning of nevertheless, as in the saying of the Prophet **وَإِنْ رُكِبَهَا** ride her (the camel) nevertheless (though she be destined for sacrifice), *Lisān* xvi. 179.] B

REM. c. Where **أَيُّ**, **مَنْ** and **مَا** are interrogatives or simple relatives, **أَيُّ**, **أَيْنَ**, **أَيَّ**, **أَيْنَ** and **كَيْفَ** interrogatives, and **حَيْثُ** C a simple relative adverb, without any admixture of the conditional signification of **إِنْ**, perfects dependent upon them retain their original sense.

7. After the particle **مَا**, as long as, whilst, as often as (Vol. i., § 367, p), the perfect takes the meaning of the imperfect (present or future); as **لَا لَقِيتُمْ مَا يَكْفُرُكُمْ** may you never meet with harm (§ 1, f), as long as you live! **الْأَنَاسُ مَا دَامُوا فِي الدُّنْيَا غَافِلُونَ** D men are careless, as long as they live in this world (lit. remain in the life of this world); **لَا أَنْسَاكَ مَا ذَرَّ شَارِقِي** I will not forget thee, as long as a sun rises; **اللَّهُ مَا دَعَوْتَهُ أَجَابَ** cure answers, as often as (or whenever) you call it. If this imperfect is to be historical, the rule laid down in § 6, d, must be observed. The negative as long as not is always expressed by **مَا لَمْ** with the jussive (see § 12).

REM. The Arab grammarians regard this **مَا** as **مَصْنُوعَةٌ طَرَفِيَّةٌ**

A or *وَمَانِيَةً*, i.e., as equivalent to a verbal noun or infinitive in the accusative of time. They say that *مَا دُمْتَ حَيًّا*, as long as thou remainest alive, is equivalent to *مُدَّةَ دَوَامِكَ حَيًّا* or *دَوَامَكَ حَيًّا*. This cannot, however, be the case, for whence then would come the converse force of this *مَا*? It is in fact only a variety, in its application to time, of the *مَا الشَّرْطِيَّة* or conditional *mā* (§ 6, a).

B 2. The *Imperfect Indicative* (*الْمُضَارِعُ الْمَرْكُومُ*) does not in itself express any idea of time; it merely indicates a *beginning*, *incomplete*, *enduring* existence, either in *present*, *past*, or *future* time. Hence it signifies:—

(a) An act which does not take place at any one particular time, to the exclusion of any other time, but which takes place at all times, or rather, in speaking of which no notice is taken of time, but only of duration (the *indefinite present*); as *الْإِنْسَانُ يُدَبِّرُ وَاللَّهُ يَقْدِرُ* *man*

C *forms plans and God directs them* (*man prophesies, God disposes*); *بِالْأَمْرِ يُسْتَعْبَدُ الْحُرُّ* *the free man is enslaved by benefits* (conferred upon him).

(b) An act which, though commenced at the time of speaking, is not yet completed,—which continues during the present time (the *definite present*); as *اللَّهُ يَعْلَمُ بِمَا تَفْعَلُونَ* (*God knows what ye are doing*). Hence its use as a historical present in lively descriptions of

D past events; e.g. *قَالَ طَلْحَةُ فَأَخْرَجَ أَغْوَ قَالِبَسَ دِرْعِي وَأَخَذَ سَيْفِي* *said Talha, So out I ran, and put on my coat of mail, and seize my sword, and cast my shield on my breast.*

(c) An act which is to take place hereafter (the *simple future*); as *وَأَتَقُوا يَوْمًا لَا تَجْزِي نَفْسٌ عَنْ نَفْسٍ شَيْئًا* *and fear a day (in which) a soul shall not make satisfaction for a soul at all, or shall not give anything as a satisfaction for a soul*; *فَاللَّهُ يَحْكُمُ* *but God will judge between them on the day of the resurrection.*—To render the futurity of the act still more distinct,

the adverb سَوْفَ (Vol. i. § 364, a), or its abbreviated form سَ (Vol. i. A § 361, b), in the end, is prefixed to the verb; as وَمَنْ يَفْعَلْ ذَلِكَ عَدُوًّا نَا and whoever does this maliciously and wrongfully, we will burn him with hell-fire; سَنُبَيِّنُهُ فِي مَوْضِعِهِ we will explain it in its (proper) place; سَتَكُنِّي مِنْ مَقْرَدِكَ كُلِّ كَيْدٍ thou shalt be protected (through God's grace) from every machination of thine enemy.

REM. a. سَوْفَ may have the asseverative لَ prefixed to it, as B وَلَسَوْفَ يُعْطِيكَ رَبُّكَ فَتَرْضَى and verily thy Lord will give thee (abundance) and thou wilt be content; and it may be separated from its verb by a verb which is void of government, as in the verse وَمَا أَذْرِي وَسَوْفَ أَخْلُقُ أَفَرَى أَفَرَى آلَ جَحْشٍ أَمْ بَشَرٍ and I do not know, but I shall (I think) know, whether the family of Hishm are a band of men or women.—Rare forms are سَوْ, سَوَّ, and سَيَّ.

[REM. b. The simple future has sometimes the sense of a polite order or request; as قَالَتْ لَهُ سُلَيْمَانُ تَنْصَرِفُونَ وَلَرَى يَمِينًا يَهْتَنَّا then C Sulaiman said: Depart now, and we will consider between ourselves (Tabari ii. 544, l. 7); وَقَالَ لِإِبْرَاهِيمَ فَدْخُلْ أَمْصَحَ اللَّهُ الْأَمِيرَ and he said to Ithk: Have the kindness to enter, God bless the Emir; وَقَالَ لَهُ هَالِدٌ تُؤْمِنُهُ يَا أَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ فَآتَمَّهُ and Hâlid said to him: Grant him indemnity, O Prince of the faithful, and he did so (Ag. xvii. 164, l. 14). D. G.]

(d) An act which was future in relation to the past time of which we speak. When this is the case, the imperfect is simply appended to the preceding perfect without the intervention of any particle, and forms, with its complement*, a secondary, subordinate clause, expressing the state (الْحَالُ) in which the subject of the previous perfect found himself, when he completed the act expressed by that perfect [حَالٌ

* That is to say, any word or words governed by, or otherwise connected with, it.

- A **أَتَى إِلَى عَيْنٍ** *he came to him to visit him*; **جَاءَ إِلَيْهِ بِخُودَةٍ** [مُقَدَّر] *he came to a spring of water to drink*; **لَمْ أَسْتَوِ عَلَى الْعَرْشِ** *then He seated Himself on the throne to administer the rule (of the Universe)*; **أَرْسَلَ يُخَبِّرُهُ بِذَلِكَ** *he sent to inform him of this*; **أَجْمَعَ يُكْرِزُ بِالْيَهُودِ** *he determined to circumvent the Jews, 'Ag. xix. 96, l. 6. R. S.]*.

- (e) An act which continues during the past time. In this case too the imperfect is appended to the perfect without the interposition of any connective particle, and forms, with its complement, a secondary, subordinate clause, expressing the state (الْحَال) in which the subject of the previous perfect found himself, when he did what that perfect expresses [**حَالٌ مُقَارِنٌ**]; as **جَاءَ زَيْدٌ يَضْحَكُ** *Zdid came laughing*; **إِنكفأ يَحْمَدُ مَقْدَاهُ** *he returned, congratulating himself on (lit. praising) his morning-walk*; **طَلَعَ بَقَادُ الْقَلْبِ بِأَرْمِيَّتِهِ** *he set out, loading (as it were) my heart by its bridle*; **فَلَبِثْنَا نَرْقُبُهُ رَقَبَةَ أَهْلِ الْأَعْيَادِ** *and we remained watching for him as one watches for the new-moons of the festivals*; **فَجَاءَتْهُ إِحْدَاهُمَا تَبْشِي عَلَى آسْتَحْيَا** *and one of them came to him, walking bashfully*; **وَجَاءُوا أَبَاهُمْ عِشَاءً يَبْكُونَ** *and they came to their father in the evening, weeping*. As the above examples show, the imperfect is in this case generally rendered in English by the participle.

- D **Run. a.** After the negative particle **لَا**, the imperfect retains its general idea of incompleteness and duration; as **خَرَجَ لَا يَعْلَمُ أَيْنَ هُوَ** *he went out, not knowing, or without knowing, where he was*; **لَا يَكْرُمُ السَّيْفِيُّ الْبَهِيْمِلَ** *the liberal (man) does not respect the stingy*. —After the negative particle **مَا** it takes the meaning of the present; as **مَا يَزْكِي إِلَّا نَسَانَ بِعِبَادَةِ أَهْلِ بَيْتِهِ** *a man is not declared righteous by the evidence of his own household*; **مَا يَوَدُّ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا مِنْ أَهْلِ الْكِتَابِ وَلَا الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا أَنْ يَنْزِلَ عَلَيْهِمْ مِنْ خَبَرٍ مِنْ رَبِّهِمْ** *the*

unbelievers among those who possess a (revealed) book, and among A
the polytheists, do not wish that any good should be sent down unto
you from your Lord; *إِنَّ الَّذِينَ يَكْتُمُونَ مَا أَنزَلَ اللَّهُ مِنَ الْكِتَابِ وَيَشْتُرُونَ بِهِ ثَمَنًا قَلِيلًا أُولَٰئِكَ مَا يَأْكُلُونَ فِي بُطُونِهِمْ إِلَّا النَّارَ وَلَا*
يَخْرُجُ مِنْهَا شَيْءٌ يُغْلَمُهُمْ they who hide the book which God hath sent
down, and buy with it something of small price, these swallow down
into their bellies nothing but fire, and God will not speak to them on
the day of judgment.

REM. b. According to the Arab grammarians, the imperfect B
indicative is used *بِلِسَالٍ*, to indicate present time (*الزَّمَانُ الْحَاضِرُ*),
and *بِلِاسْتِقْبَالٍ*, to indicate future time (*الْمُسْتَقْبَلُ*), less correctly
(الْمُسْتَقْبَلُ).

B. To express the imperfect of the Greek and Latin languages,
كَانَ is frequently prefixed to the imperfect; as *كَانَ يُحِبُّ الشُّعْرَ*
كَانَ يَرْكَبُ فِي كُلِّ يَوْمٍ عِدَّةً he was fond of poetry and poets; *وَالشُّعْرَاءَ*
وَكَانَ يَكُونُ بِهَا قَائِدٌ he used to ride out every day several times; C
فِي أَلْبِ رَجُلٍ and there used to be (stationed) in it (the city)
a general with a thousand men; *رَجُلًا كَانُوا يَكُونُونَ مَعَ الْمُلُوكِ*
men who used to live with the princes. If this signification is to
be attached to several imperfects, it is sufficient to prefix *كَانَ*
to the first alone.—If one or more perfects precede the imperfect,
or if the context clearly shows that the verb in the imperfect
has the sense of the Latin imperfect, *كَانَ* need not be prefixed to it; D
as *وَاتَّبَعُوا مَا تَتْلُو الشَّيَاطِينُ عَلَىٰ مُلْكِ سُلَيْمَانَ* and they followed what
the evil spirits read (or recited, or followed) in the reign of Solomon;
قُلْ فَلِمَ تَقْتُلُونَ أَنْبِيَاءَ اللَّهِ مِنْ قَبْلُ Say, Why then did ye kill the
prophets of God before? Here *تَتْلُو* and *تَقْتُلُونَ* stand for *كَانَتْ تَتْلُو*
and *كَانَتْ تَقْتُلُونَ*. [So in poetry after *قَدْ*; see Vol. i. § 862, r,
footnote. R. S.]

- A 10. To express the future-perfect, the imperfect of **يَكُونُ** (يَكُونُ) is frequently prefixed to the perfect, the particle **قَدْ** being sometimes interposed. For example, **وَنَسْتَأْجِرُ الْوُحَا بِحَمْلُونَهُ إِلَى مَنْزِلِي وَأَطْعُونُ** **أَنَا آخِرُهُمْ وَلَا يَكُونُ بَقِيَ وَرَأَى شَيْءَ يُشْغِلُ بَعْرِي بِفَعْلِهِ وَتَلْبِيهِ وَأَطْعُونُ** **قَدْ اسْتَغْفَرْتُ نَفْسِي فِي إِزَاحَةِ بَعْرِي عَنِ الْكَدِّ بِبَسِيرِ أَجْرَةٍ أُعْطِيهَا لَهُمْ** and I shall hire some people to carry it to my house, and I shall be the last of them (to depart), and there shall not have been left (shall not be left) behind me anything to occupy my mind with the doing or removing of it, and by the trifling pay I give them, I shall have provided help for myself (so as) to spare my own body all the labour.

- [RAM. In dependent clauses introduced by **أَنْ** the future-perfect becomes the perfect of the subjunctive, e.g. **يَجِبُ أَنْ يَكُونَ ذَهَبٌ** it cannot be but that he has gone (abierit); **اِخْتَلَفَ الْمُتَكَلِّمُونَ فِي** **اِخْتَلَفَ الْمُتَكَلِّمُونَ فِي** **كَوْنِ اللَّهِ (= أَنْ يَكُونَ اللَّهُ) أَمَرَ** the theologians disagree about God's having ordered (jussurit).]

- C 11. The Subjunctive of the imperfect (**الْمُضَارِعُ الْمَنْصُوبُ**) has always a future sense after the adverb **لَنْ** not (Vol. i. § 362, 44), and the conjunctions **أَنْ** that, **أَنْ لَا** or **أَلَّا** that not, **كَيْ** and **كَيْفَى** that, **لَنْ يَدْخُلَ** and **لَنْ يَدْخُلَ** that not, **حَتَّى** till, until, and **لِ** that; as **لَنْ يَدْخُلَ** **إِلَّا مَنْ كَانَ مُؤْمِنًا أَوْ نَصَارَى** none shall enter Paradise except those who are Jews or Christians; **أَمْ حَسِبْتُمْ أَنْ تُدْخِلُوا الْجَنَّةَ** do you think that you shall enter Paradise? See § 15.

- D 12. The Jussive of the imperfect (**الْمُضَارِعُ الْمَجْزُومُ**), when dependent upon the adverbs **لَمْ** not, and **لَمْ يَكُنْ** not yet (Vol. i. § 362, 55, 56), has invariably the meaning of the perfect. For example: **أَمْ تَعْلَمُ أَنْ اللَّهَ لَهُ مَلَكُ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ** hast thou not learned (or dost thou not know) that God's is the sovereignty over the heavens and the earth? **أَمْ حَسِبْتُمْ أَنْ تُدْخِلُوا الْجَنَّةَ وَلَمْ يَكُنْ مَثَلُ الَّذِينَ خَلَوْا**

قَبْلَكُمْ *do ye think that ye shall enter Paradise, before there shall* A
have come (lit. and there has not yet come) upon you the like of what
came upon those who passed away before you? أَهَذَا وَلَكُمَا تَبِيعُ بَلَيْنِ
 إِذَا مَرَّتْ عَلَيْهِ شُورُ *is this (the case), before our parting is*
an hour old (lit. and an hour has not yet gone by since parting)? How
then, when months shall have passed over it? أَرَأَيْتَ أَتَرْحَلُ غَيْرَ أَنْ رَحَابَتَنَا
 تَلَا قَتْلُ بَرَحَانَا *our departure is close at hand, save that our camels* B
have not yet moved off with our saddles (i.e. we have all but started);
 إِنْ لَمْ تَفْعَلْ ذَلِكَ هَيَّكْتُ *if you do not do this, you will perish (§ 6, b);*
 لَمْ يَكُنْ يُحِبُّ الشَّعْرَ وَالشُّعْرَا *he was not fond of poetry and poets (§ 9).*

REM. The grammarians put the distinction between *لَمْ* and
لَا in this way, that *لَمْ يَفْعَلْ* is the negation of *فَعَلَ*, but *لَا يَفْعَلُ*
 the negation of *قَدْ فَعَلَ*, [meaning *he has not yet done it, but he will*
certainly do it afterwards; see Hêil. on Kor'an iii. 136. R. S.] C

13. After *إِنْ* and the various words that have the sense of
إِنْ the jussive has the same meaning as the perfect (§ 6); as
 إِنْ تُخْفُوا مَا فِي صُدُورِكُمْ أَوْ تُخْفُوهُ يُخَفِّهِ اللَّهُ
 مَا تَفْعَلُوا مِنْ خَيْرٍ *whether ye hide what*
is in your breasts, or disclose it, God knoweth it; whatever good ye do,
 إِنْ تَعْمَلْ فِي إِسْلَامِكَ *God knoweth it; if, now that thou hast become a Muslim, thou*
doest a good work, thou wilt be rewarded for it; إِنْ تُنْصِفُونَا يَا آلَ D
 إِنْ تَفْعَلُوا مَا فِي صُدُورِكُمْ أَوْ تُخْفُوهُ يُخَفِّهِ اللَّهُ *if ye do us justice, O family of Mervān, we will*
draw near to you; wherever ye are, death
 إِنْ تَعْمَلْ مَا فِي إِسْلَامِكَ *will overtake you; when I lay aside the*
 إِنْ تَفْعَلُوا مَا فِي صُدُورِكُمْ أَوْ تُخْفُوهُ يُخَفِّهِ اللَّهُ *turban, ye recognize me;*
 إِنْ تَفْعَلُوا مَا فِي صُدُورِكُمْ أَوْ تُخْفُوهُ يُخَفِّهِ اللَّهُ *he who seeks our protection has nothing to fear*
 إِنْ تَفْعَلُوا مَا فِي صُدُورِكُمْ أَوْ تُخْفُوهُ يُخَفِّهِ اللَّهُ *after our covenant; but he who does not come to terms with us will pass*

A *his nights without sleep.* See § 17, c.—When the first of two correlative clauses contains a verb in the imperative, and the second in the jussive, then the jussive has the same meaning as if the first clause had contained a verb in the jussive preceded by *إِنْ**; e.g. *قَالُوا كُونُوا هُودًا أَوْ نَصَارَى تَهْتَدُوا* *they said, Become Jews or Christians, (and) ye will be guided aright.* Here *كُونُوا* is equivalent to *إِنْ تَكُونُوا*. *If ye become Jews or Christians, ye will be guided aright.* See § 17, c.

B [REM. a. *كَيْفَ* and, according to the school of Basra, also *كَيْفَمَا* form an exception to the rule that the jussive may be employed in the two correlative clauses. Many grammarians allow no other correlative clauses after these particles, but those that contain the imperfect indicative of the same verb, as *كَيْفَ تَصْنَعُ أَصْنَعُ* *as thou doest, so will I do.* See, however, an example of the jussive in both clauses, § 17, c.]

C [REM. b. After *أَلَا* both the jussive and the indicative may be used in the two correlative clauses, as *أَلَا تَنْزِلُ تَأْكُلُ* and *أَلَا تَأْتِينِي أُحَدِّثُكَ* *أَلَا تَنْزِلُ تَأْكُلُ* *will thou not alight and eat? will thou not come to me, (then) I will tell thee?*

14. The *Energetic* forms of the imperfect have always a future sense; as *لَنَجِيَّتَنَا مِنْ هَذِهِ لَنَكُونَنَّ مِنَ الشَّاكِرِينَ* *if thou deliverest us from this (danger), verily we will be of (the number of) the grateful;* *وَاللَّهِ لَأَضْرِبَنَّ عَنْقَكَ* *by God! I will cut thy head off* (lit. *strike thy neck*). See § 19.

2. The Moods.

15. The *Subjunctive* mood occurs only in subordinate clauses. It indicates an act which is dependent upon that mentioned in the previous clause, and future to it in point of time (see § 11); and

* [Trunpp, *Der Bedingungssatz*, p. 369 seq., rejects this view of the matter, making a distinction between the jussive in the apodosis of an imperative and that of a conditional protasis.]

hence it mostly corresponds to the Latin subjunctive after *ut*. It A
is governed by the following particles.

(a) *a*. By **أَنْ** *that*, after verbs which express inclination or disinclination, order or prohibition, duty, effect, effort, fear, necessity, permission, etc.; **لَا أَنْ** or **أَلَّا** *that not*; and **لَنْ** (for **أَنْ**, i.e. **لَا أَنْ** *it will not be or happen that*) *certainly not, not at all*. For example: **أَرَدْتُ وَأَتَمَمْتُ أَنْ أَتَيْتُ نَهْرَ طَرِيقِ الْعِلْمِ** *I wished and desired to make plain to them the path of learning*; **لَا يَأْبَ كَاتِبٌ أَنْ** B
يَتَّبِعِي أَنْ يَتَوَقَّى *let no one who can write, refuse to write*; **يَتَّبِعِي أَنْ يَتَوَقَّى** *it behoves the learner to strive by his seeking after knowledge to please God*; **أَتَكُونُ أَتَقَسَّبَ** *it may be the accusative*; **قَالَ فَكَلِمَةُ مِنْهَا قَدْ يَكُونُ لَكَ أَنْ تَتَكَبَّرَ فِيهَا** *He (God) said, Get thee down then from it (Paradise), for it is not for thee to behave with pride in it*; **أَمَرْتُكَ بِأَنْ تَفْعَلَ كَذَا** *I commanded thee to do such a thing*; **إِنِّي أَخَافُ أَلَّا يَتْرُكَنِي** C
I am afraid he will not leave me, or, in accordance with a particular idiom of the language [§ 162], *I am afraid he will leave me*; **مَا مَنَعَكَ أَلَّا تَسْجُدَ** *what hath hindered thee from worshipping (him)?* **لَنْ تَمَسَّنَا أَشَارُ إِلَّا أَيَّامًا مَعْدُودَةً** *the fire (of hell) shall certainly not touch us save for (shall certainly touch us only for) a certain number of days*; **لَنْ يَدْخُلَ الْجَنَّةَ إِلَّا** *none shall enter Paradise save those who are Jews or Christians*; **فَلَنْ أَتْرِكَ الْآرَضِ حَتَّى يَأْتَنِي أَبِي** D
I will therefore not quit the land (of Egypt) until my father gives me leave.

[REM. If we wish to indicate that the thing ordered or resolved upon has actually been done, the verb may be followed by **أَنْ** with the perfect, as **إِنَّهُ تَعَالَى لَمَّا قَدَرَ أَنْ أَحْيَاهَا أَوَّلًا قَدَرَ أَنْ يُحْيِيَهَا ثَانِيًا** *after God had decreed to call them to life for the first time (as He did), He decreed to call them to life a second time* (see Fleischer, *KL. Schr.* i. 525 seq., ii. 356).—In later times **أَنْ** with the indicative of the imperfect is often employed as the equivalent of **أَنْ** with the

- A subjunctive, as in the verse طَلَمَا رَمَيْتَ أَنْ أَقْدِمَ خَيْرًا لِمَعَادِي وَرَمَيْتَ
أَعَجِبْنِي أَنْ أَتَى الْتَوْبِ *as often as I intend to send onward some good deed for my
future life and to repent toward God (see Fleischer, Kl. Schr. i. 526
seq.).]*

(β) But if the verb to which أَنْ is subordinate, does not indicate any wish, effect, expectation, or the like,—and the verb which is governed by أَنْ has the meaning of the perfect or present,—the indicative of the perfect or imperfect is used after أَنْ; as أَعَجِبْنِي أَنْ

- B it pleased me that thou stoodest up; أَعْلَمُ أَنْ قَالَ I know that he said; أَعْلَمُ أَنْ يَنَامُ I know that he is asleep. As أَنْ quod, &c., with a pronoun (أَنْتَ, etc.), is more usual in such clauses, the native grammarians designate أَنْ, when it has the same meaning as أَنْ and governs the indicative, by the name of اَلْخَفِيفَةُ مِنَ اَلثَقِيلَةِ *the 'an that is lightened from the heavy form*, or, more shortly, اَلْخَفِيفَةُ *the lightened 'an*; but when it is equivalent to the Latin *ut*, they call it اَلْمُضَارِعُ اَلْمَنْصُوبُ *the 'an that governs the subjunctive*.
C After verbs of thinking, supposing, and doubting, when they refer to the future, أَنْ may govern the indicative of the imperfect, as اَلْمَحَقَّةُ, or the subjunctive, as اَلنَّاصِبَةُ; e.g. ظَنَنْتُ أَنْ يَقُومَ I think he will get up.

- REM. α. أَنْ is in these cases مَصْنُوعَةٌ, that is to say, أَنْ with the following verb is equivalent in meaning to the *maḍdar* or infinitive of that verb; e.g. وَأَنْ تَصُومُوا خَيْرٌ لَكُمْ *and that ye fast is better for you* (صِيَامُكُمْ = أَنْ تَصُومُوا); أُرِيدُ أَنْ أَزُورَكَ I wish to visit thee (يَزَارُكَ = أَنْ أَزُورَكَ); أَعَجِبْنِي قِيَامَكَ = أَعَجِبْنِي أَنْ قُمْتَ

REM. β. The omission of أَنْ before the subjunctive is very rare; as خُذِ اَللِّصَّ قَبْلَ أَنْ يَأْخُذَكَ *order him to bury it*; لَا آتِيهَا إِلَّا أَنْ يَأْخُذَكَ *seize the thief before he can seize thee*; and in the verses لَا آتِيهَا إِلَّا أَنْ يَأْخُذَكَ

أَلْزَجِرِي أَحْضَرَ الْوَعَى وَأَنْ أَشْهَدَ اللَّذَاتِ هَلْ أَنْتَ مُسْخِلِي A
*that hinderest me from being present in battle, and from taking part
 in amusements, canst thou make me live for ever!**—The gram-
 marians tell us that some of the Arabs construed أَنْ always with
 the imperfect indicative, as أُرِيدُ أَنْ تَقُومَ *I wish thee to stand
 up*; and, according to the reading of Ibn Muḥāxiḡ, Kor'an ii. 233
 لِمَنْ أَرَادَ أَنْ يَتِمَّ الرِّضَاعَةَ *for him who desires to complete the time of
 suckling*; whilst others let it govern the jussive, as in the half- B
 verse يَأْتِنَا الصِّيدُ نَحْبِطُ *come, until the game comes
 (or is brought) to us, let us gather firewood.*

[Rex. c. Sometimes أَنْ seems to have the meaning of *lest*, for fear
 that, as in the verse عَمَرَ بْنِ عِمْرَانَ خَبُوثٌ بِهَيْمَةٍ مَكَانَ قُلُوبٍ رَأِيمٍ
 أَنِ أَهْرَأَ *I have given 'Amr ibn 'Imrān a hundred camels for a young
 beast unable to rise, for fear lest I should be blamed* (Hamān, p. 256,
 l. 3); أَعْدَدْتُ السِّلَاحَ أَنْ يَجِيءَ عَدُوٌّ فَأُدْفَعَهُ; C
I have prepared arms for fear that an enemy should come, in which case I may repel him;
 أَنْ تُضِلَّ إِحْدَاهُمَا فَتُذْخِرَ إِحْدَاهُمَا *for fear lest the one of them
 should make a mistake, in which case the other may remind her*
 (Kor'an ii. 282). In these and similar phrases (Kor. iv. 175,
 vi. 157, xlix. 2, Lane p. 106, b) the interpreters supply مَخَافَةَ or
 حُكْرَامَةً. In others it may be explained by the preceding words
 implying a prohibition, as Kor. xxxv. 39, Tab. i. 657, l. 8, 3026,
 l. 2. In the verse (Hariri, *Dorrat*, 88) أَوْصِيكَ أَنْ يَحْمَدَكَ الْأَقْرَبُ D
 أَوْصِيكَ—وَيَرْجِعَ الْبُسْكِينُ وَهُوَ خَائِبٌ *may have the meaning of
 I warn thee lest thy near relations should praise thee, but the
 poor return disappointed.* D. G.]

* [Beidāwī on Kor'an ii. 77 reads أَحْضَرَ، adding that, if أَنْ is
 omitted, the verb is put in the indicative. R. S.—Comp. Hamān,
 p. 438, l. 6 seq. and see also Lane p. 104 c, on Kor'an xxxix. 64
 أَقْهَرِ اللَّهُ تَأْمُرُونِي أَعْبُدُ.]

- A (b) By *لِ* that, in order that ([called *لَا مَرَّ كَيْ*] originally a preposition, Vol. i. § 366, c); *كَيْ*, *لِأَنَّ*, that, in order that; *كَيْلَا*, *لِكَيْلَا*, and *لِكَيْلَا*, that not, in order that not; particles which indicate the intention of the agent and the object of the act. For example: *تُبْ يَغْفِرْ لَكَ اللَّهُ* repent, that God may forgive thee; *يَنْبَغِي أَنْ يَسْأَلَ الْمُسْلِمُ اللَّهَ تَعَالَى بِصَوْنِهِ عَنِ الْبَلَاءِ* it behoves the Muslim to ask God (who is exalted above all) for health, that
- B *He may preserve him from misfortunes*; *إِذَا حَفِظْتَ شَيْئًا فَعَلِّقْهُ كَيْ* when you learn anything, write it down, so that you may constantly refer to it; *كَيْمَا أُعَدِّمَ* that I may prepare them; *وَأُمِرْتُ لِأَنَّ أَكُونَ* learn that ye may teach; *وَأُولَ الْمُسْلِمِينَ* and I am ordered (this) in order that I may be the first of the Muslims (of those who surrender themselves to Him); *لِكَيْمَا تَعْلِمَنِي صَادِقًا* that thou mayest know me to be speaking the
- C truth; *وَأَخَالِدًا* thou desirest to take me as thy lover together with *Hālid*; *لَمْ نَشْتَغِلْ بِدُخْرِ ذَلِكَ كَيْلَا يَطُولَ الْكِتَابُ* we have not occupied ourselves with giving an account of this, in order that the book might not become too long; *كَيْلَا يَكُونَ حَوْلَهُ بَيْنَ الْأَغْنِيَاءِ* that it (the spoil) may not be a thing taken by turns among the rich of you; *لِكَيْلَا تَأْسَوْا عَلَى مَا فَاتَكُمْ* that ye may not grieve over what
- D escapes you; *إِنَّمَا قَالَ ذَلِكَ لِكَيْلَا يُسْتَحَفَّ بِالْعِلْمِ* he said this only in order that learning might not be disparaged.

REM. a. After *لِ* the grammarians assume the ellipse of *أَنْ*, which always appears before the negative, *لِكَيْلَا*. The insertion of *أَنْ* is allowable, as *جِئْتُكَ لِأَقْرَأَ*, or *لِأَنَّ أَقْرَأَ*, I am come to thee to read (whence some translate *وَأُولَ الْمُسْلِمِينَ* by *and I am ordered to be the first of the Muslims*); except when it is

the *لَا* or *لام of denial*, i.e. when it is the predicate of *مَا* *مَا كَانَ اللَّهُ لِيُعَذِّبَهُمْ وَأَنْتَ لِمِهِمْ* or *مَا كَانَ* *God was not one to chastise them whilst thou wast among them*; *لَمْ يَكُنْ زَيْدٌ* *Zaid was not a man to drink wine*.

REM. b. The addition of *مَا* *الْمَصْدَرِيَّةُ* appears sometimes to interrupt the government of *طَى*, as in the verse *إِذَا أَنْتَ لَمْ تَنْفَعْ طَى*, as in the verse *فَضُرُّ فَإِنَّمَا يَرْجَى الْفَتَى طَمِيمًا يَضُرُّ وَيَنْفَعُ* when thou canst not benefit, then harm; for nothing is expected of a man but that he should harm B or benefit. Sometimes *أَنْ* is added to strengthen the regimen; as *لَكُمْيَا أَنْ تَفُورَ وَتَلْعَدَا* that thou mayest deceive and beguile; *لَكُمْيَا أَنْ تَطِيرَ لِقَرْيَتِي* that thou mayest fly to my village.

(c) α. By *حَتَّى* (also originally a preposition, Vol. i. § 366, b), until, until that, that, in order that, when it expresses the intention of the agent and the object of the act, or the result of the act, as taking place not without the will of the agent or, at least, according to his expectation. For example: *لَنْ نَهْرَجَ عَلَيْهِ عَاكِفِينَ حَتَّى يَرْجِعَ* C *we will not cease to stand by it (worshipping it), till Moses return to us*; *لَا يَدْ مِنْ التَّامُّلِ قَبْلَ الْكَلَامِ حَتَّى يَكُونَ صَوَابًا* *we must meditate before we speak, in order that our words may be appropriate*; *لَا يُضْعِفُ النَّفْسَ حَتَّى يَنْقَطِعَ عَنِ الْعَمَلِ* *he must not weaken the spirit so that he is hindered from acting*; *قُولُوا لَهُ إِنْ شَاءَ فَلْيَجْلِسْ* *tell him, if he choose, to sit down* D *and give me his hand, that I may force him to rise or he force me to sit down.*—β. But if *حَتَّى* expresses only a simple temporal limit, or the mere effect or result of an act, without any implied design or expectation on the part of the agent, it is followed by the perfect or the indicative of the imperfect. For example: *سَارُوا حَتَّى طَلَعَتِ الشَّمْسُ* *they journeyed till the sun rose*; *فَهَرَبَ حَتَّى أَبْعَدَ* *and so he fled till he got a great way off*; *مَرِضَ حَتَّى لَا يَرْجُوهُ* *he is so ill that they have no*

- A *hope of his living*; خَيْرُ النَّاسِ رَجُلٌ فِي شَعْبَةٍ فِي غُتَمَةٍ لَهُ يَحْيَى the best of men is a man on a hill-top, amid a small flock of his own, who across God until death comes to him.

REM. a. After حَتَّى the grammarians assume the ellipse of كُنْ, and say that it is equivalent in meaning to إِنْ أَنْ or كُنْ, as أَهْرَبَ الْخَلْقِ حَتَّى يَتُوبَ beat the thief until (إِلَى أَنْ) he repents or that (كُنْ or كُنْ) he may repent.

- B REM. b. In some cases the regimen may be doubtful; as وَرَلُّوا حَتَّى يَقُولَ الرَّسُولُ وَالَّذِينَ آمَنُوا مَعَهُ مَتَى نَصُرَ اللَّهُ and they were agitated until the apostle said (يَقُولُ), or so that the apostle said (يَقُولُ), and those who believed with him, When (will) the help of God (come)!—In fact, after حَتَّى four constructions are possible, which may be exemplified thus: سِرْتُ إِلَى الْكُوفَةِ حَتَّى ادْخَلْتُهَا I journeyed to M-Kufa that I might enter it (= كُنْ ادْخَلْتُهَا); سِرْتُ حَتَّى ادْخَلْتُهَا I journeyed to it till I entered it (hist. imperfect, (جُكَايَةُ حَالٍ مَابِيَةٍ); سِرْتُ حَتَّى ادْخَلْتُهَا I have journeyed to it till I am (now) entering it (= حَتَّى أَنَا ادْخَلْتُهَا الْآنَ); and سِرْتُ حَتَّى دَخَلْتُهَا I journeyed till I (actually) entered it.
- C

- (d) By فَ, when this particle introduces a clause that expresses the result or effect of a preceding clause (فَاءُ السَّبَبِ, فَاءُ النَّسَبِ, or فَاءُ السَّوَابِ). The preceding clause must contain an imperative D (affirmative or negative), or words equivalent in meaning to an imperative; or else it must express a wish or hope, or ask a question; or, finally, be a negative clause*. The signification of فَ in all these

* [In some cases the indicative is employed where at first sight we should expect the subjunctive, as in Kor'an lxxvii. 36 لَا يُؤْتَنَ لَهُمْ it shall not be permitted to them to allege excuses (they cannot excuse themselves); Hamāsa p. 407, فَلَا أُمُّ تَبَكِّيهِ وَلَا أُخْتُ فَلَا أُمُّ تَبَكِّيهِ وَلَا أُخْتُ no mother will weep over him, no sister will miss him. D. G.]

cases is equivalent to that of *حَتَّى*. For example: *يَا أَفْغُرْ لِي يَا رَبِّ* A
pardone me, O my Lord, so that I may enter Paradise;
رَبِّ أَنْصُرْنِي فَلَا أُخْلَلْ O my Lord, help me, so that I be not forsaken;
يَا نَاقِ سَبِيهِ مَنَّا فَبِسْمَا إِلَى order him to sow it; *سُلَيْمَانَ فَتَسْتَوِيحَا*
O camel, go at a far-stretching gallop to Suldimān,
that we may find rest (فَبِسْمَا and تَسْتَوِيحَا in rhyme for فَبِسْمَا and
تَسْتَوِيحَا); لَا تُؤَاخِذْنِي فَأَعْلَلْكَ (نَسْتَوِيحَا); do not punish me, so that (or lest) I B
perish; *اللَّهُمَّ لَا تَجْعَلْنَا إِلَى أَنْفُسِنَا فَتَعْجِزَ وَلَا إِلَى آخَرِينَ فَتَضْمِغَ* O God,
hand us not over to ourselves, lest we be too feeble (for the charge), nor
to (other) men, lest we perish; *وَلَا تَطْفَرُوا فِيهِ تَجِبَلْ عَلَيْهِمْ غَضَبِي* and
do not exceed therein, lest my wrath alight upon you (or become due to
you); *يَا لَيْتَنِي كُنْتُ مَعَهُمْ فَأَلْزَمُوا فَوْزًا عَظِيمًا* would that I had money, that I might
give part of it away in alms; *يَا لَيْتَنِي كُنْتُ مَعَهُمْ فَأَلْزَمُوا فَوْزًا عَظِيمًا* O would I had been with them, that I might have won great gain; C
يَا لَيْتَنِي كُنْتُ مَعَهُمْ فَأَلْزَمُوا فَوْزًا عَظِيمًا perhaps I may go on pilgrimage so as to visit thee;
يَا لَيْتَنِي كُنْتُ مَعَهُمْ فَأَلْزَمُوا فَوْزًا عَظِيمًا is Zdid at home, that I can go to him
(= tell me whether Z. is at home, so that etc.); *يَا لَيْتَنِي كُنْتُ مَعَهُمْ فَأَلْزَمُوا فَوْزًا عَظِيمًا*
have we then any intercessors to intercede for us; *يَا لَيْتَنِي كُنْتُ مَعَهُمْ فَأَلْزَمُوا فَوْزًا عَظِيمًا*
O son of the noble, wilt thou not draw near,
that thou mayest see what they have told thee; *يَا لَيْتَنِي كُنْتُ مَعَهُمْ فَأَلْزَمُوا فَوْزًا عَظِيمًا* why
doest thou not study, that thou mayest learn by heart; *يَا لَيْتَنِي كُنْتُ مَعَهُمْ فَأَلْزَمُوا فَوْزًا عَظِيمًا* D
my Lord, why hast Thou not granted me a
respite for a brief term, that I might give alms; *يَا لَيْتَنِي كُنْتُ مَعَهُمْ فَأَلْزَمُوا فَوْزًا عَظِيمًا*
sentence is not passed upon them, that they die; *يَا لَيْتَنِي كُنْتُ مَعَهُمْ فَأَلْزَمُوا فَوْزًا عَظِيمًا*
thou never comest to us to tell us something.

REM. The imperative must be pure or real (مُسَمَّيٌّ), not an interjection like *وَهْ*, nor a verbal noun in the accusative. You may say *يَا لَيْتَنِي كُنْتُ مَعَهُمْ فَأَلْزَمُوا فَوْزًا عَظِيمًا* hold your peace and I will treat you kindly;

- A *سُكُونًا قَتَنَامُ النَّاسِ* *hush, and the people will go to sleep.* The negative clause must also be pure, not restricted by *إِلَّا*, nor followed by another implied negative; e.g. *مَا أَتَيْتَ إِلَّا تَأْتِينَا فَتَحْبِثُنَا* *thou dost nothing but come to us and tell us something*; *مَا كَرِهْتَ إِلَّا تَأْتِينَا فَتَحْبِثُنَا* *thou never ceasest coming to us and (never ceasest) telling us something.* Consequently we may say *مَا تَأْتِينَا فَتَحْبِثُنَا*, if we understand the words to mean *thou dost not come to us and (dost not) tell us something* (= *قَلْبًا تَحْبِثُنَا*). [The poets allow themselves to use *ف* with the subjunctive after a single future, e.g. *سَأَتَرُكَ مَنْزِلِي* *I will leave my abode to the Bedou Tent, and betake myself to the High, that I may have rest.* (Comp. Jahn, Erklärungen zu Sibawaih, p. 53.) D. G.]
- B

- (e) By *وَ*, under the same circumstances as *ف*, when the governed verb expresses an act subordinate to, but simultaneous with, the act expressed by the previous clause; as *أَمْ حَسِبْتُمْ أَنْ تُدْخِلُوا الْجَنَّةَ وَلَهَآ* *do ye think that ye shall enter Paradise without God's knowing those of you who have fought (for Him), and knowing the patient!* *مِثْلَهُ وَتَأْتَى بِمِثْلِهِ* *do not restrain (others) from any habit, whilst you yourself practise one like it*; *فَقُلْتُ ادْعُوا وَادْعُوا إِنِّي أَتَدْعِي بِصَوْتٍ أَنْ يَدْعُوا* *and I said (to her), Call, and I will call (at the same time), for it makes the sound go*
- C
- D *أَلَمْ أَلَمْ جَارُكُمْ وَتَكُونُ بَيْنِي* *further, if two persons call out together*; *وَأَيُّكُمْ أَلَمْ أَلَمْ* *was I not your neighbour, there being (all along) between me and you love and brotherly affection?* *وَأَيُّكُمْ أَلَمْ أَلَمْ* *do you eat fish and drink milk at the same time?* *وَأَيُّكُمْ أَلَمْ أَلَمْ* *and the wearing of a coarse cloak, whilst my eye is cool (not heated with tears), is more pleasant to me than the wearing of fine garments.* The Arab gram-

- A *I will etc.*, or **إِنَّنْ يَا عَبْدَ اللَّهِ أَطْعِمَكَ** (though many prefer in this case **أَطْعِمَكَ**). If the particle **وَ** or **فَ** be prefixed to **إِنَّنْ**, the verb may be put in the indicative as well as the subjunctive, e.g. **وَإِذَا لَا يَلْبَثُونَ** (var. **يَلْبَثُوا**) *and in that case they would not have remained after thee but a little while*; but if any of the other conditions specified above be violated, the indicative alone can be used: e.g. **إِنَّنْ أَطْعِمَكَ** (**إِخَالِكَ** or **صَارِلًا**) *I am fond of thee*, well,
- B *I think thou speakest the truth* (where the verb refers to present, and not to future time); **إِنَّنْ زَيْدٌ يَتَّقِيكَ** *I will visit Zaid, well then, Zaid will treat thee with respect* (where **زَيْدٌ** separates **إِنَّنْ** from the verb); **إِنَّنْ وَأَلَّهِ تَتَذَكَّرُ** *I will visit thee, then, by God, thou shalt assuredly repent it* (where **لَ** is interposed), or **أَطْعِمَكَ إِنَّنْ** *I will treat thee with respect in that case*, or **أَنَا إِنَّنْ أَطْعِمَكَ** *I in that case*
- C *will treat thee with respect*; **وَأَلَّهِ إِنَّنْ لَا أَفْعَلُ** *by God, then, I will not do it*; **إِنَّنْ إِنِّي إِذَا أَتَيْتَنِي** *if thou comest to me, in that case I will come to thee* (in which four examples **إِنَّنْ** does not commence the clause, or is dependent upon a preceding condition).

- REM. Owing to the Hebrew having lost the final vowels of the imperfect, the form which it employs after such particles as **וְ**, **כִּי**, **אֲשֶׁר**, **עַד**, etc., can no longer be distinguished from that which expresses the indicative. The same remark applies to the Syriac; but the Ethiopic has introduced another distinction, using, for example, the form **የነገሩ**: *yēnāḡēr* (root **ነገረ**: *naḡara*, 'to speak') for the indicative, and **የነገሩ**: *yēnāḡēr* for the subjunctive.

16. Since, in Arabic, the subjunctive is governed only by the conjunction **أَنَّ**, *that*, and other conjunctions that have the meaning of **أَنَّ**, the indicative must be used in all other subordinate clauses, whether they be dependent upon a conjunctive or relative word, or

simply annexed to an undefined substantive; as أَعْطَانِي مَا أَكُلُ *he gave me what I was to eat*; لَا يَدْرِي أَيْنَ يَذْهَبُ *he does not know where he is to go*; سَيَدْخُلُونَ جَنَّاتٍ يَدْخُلُونَ فِيهَا *he will bring them into gardens, to dwell in them for ever*. In such sentences the Arabic language does not distinguish the intention from the effect. Hence the first example may also be translated *he gave me what I ate (at that time)*, or *what I am (now) eating*, or *what I shall (hereafter) eat*; the second, *where he is going or will go*; the third, *in which they shall dwell for ever*. B

17. The *Jussive*,—connected with the imperative both in form and signification,—implies an *order*. It is used:—

(a) With the particle لَ (لَامُ الْأَمْرِ) *the lām of command* prefixed, instead of the imperative; as لِيُنْفِقْ ذُو سَعَةٍ مِنْ سَعَتِهِ *let the owner of abundance spend of his abundance*; لِيَقْضِ إِلَيْنَا رَبُّكَ *let thy Lord make an end of us*. If the particle وَ or فَ be prefixed to لَ, as is often the case, then لَ usually loses its vowel; as وَعَلَى اللَّهِ فَلْيَتَوَكَّلِ الْمُؤْمِنُونَ *in God, then, let the believers trust*; وَإِنْ حَادِثٌ بِي فَاتَّقِمْ وَلْتَقَسَمْ *if anything happens to me, let it be sold and (the proceeds) divided in such and such a way*; مَنْ أَرَادَ أَنْ يَتْرَكَ عَلَيْنَا هَذَا *whoever wishes to give up (the study of) this science of ours for a time, let him do so now*. It is the third person of the jussive that is chiefly used in this way, while the second is very rare; examples of the first person are قُومُوا فَلَا خَلَلَ لَكُمْ *rise and let me pray for you*; وَلْتَحْمِلْ خَطَايَاكُمْ *and let us bear your sins*; [of the second يُكَبِّرِيهِ *make it (the tray of palmleaves) large*, said to a woman, Ag. xvii. 90, last line. D. G.]. C

REM. a. The particle لَ is rarely omitted in classical Arabic, except in poetry; e.g. فَكُلْتُ لِبَوَائِبِ لَدَيْهِ دَارَهَا فَأَذِنَ فَأَتَانِي حَمُومًا D

- A *وَجَارَهَا* I said to a porter in whose charge was her house, Admit (me), for I am her father-in-law and her neighbour (an instance of the 2nd pers.); *مُحَمَّدٌ تَقْدِ نَفْسَكَ كُلُّ نَفْسٍ* Muhammad, let every soul be a ransom for thine; *وَلَكِنْ يَكُنْ لِلْخَيْرِ مِنْكَ نَصِيبٌ* but let there be (granted to me) from Thee a share in good (deeds); *يَعْلَمُ أَهْلُ قَلْعَةٍ* let the feeble people of the fortress of Māridīn know—.
- B Some passages of the Kor'an, however, admit of being viewed in this way; as *قُلْ لِّعِبَادِيَ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا يُقِيمُوا الصَّلَاةَ وَيَنْفِقُوا مِمَّا رَزَقْنَاهُمْ* say to my servants who have believed, let them observe prayer and spend (in alms) of that which we have bestowed upon them; but the jussive may here be explained in accordance with what follows under c, β.

REM. b. The vowel of *لِ* is also sometimes dropped after *لَمْ*; as *لَمْ يَنْفِقُوا تَقْتَبِرُوا* then let them do away with their dirtiness, or *لَمْ يَنْفِقُوا*.

- (b) After the particle *لَا* not (*لَا النَّهْيِ* the *lā* of prohibition), in connection with which it expresses a prohibition or a wish that something may not be done; as *لَا تَحْزَنْ إِنَّ اللَّهَ مَعَنَا* be not grieved, for God is with us; *رَبَّنَا لَا تُؤَاخِذْنَا إِنْ نَسِينَا* O our Lord, punish us not if we forget; *لَا يَتَّخِذِ الْمُؤْمِنُونَ الْكَافِرِينَ أَوْلِيَاءَ* let not believers take unbelievers as friends; *إِذَا مَا خَرَجْنَا مِنْ دِمَشْقَ فَلَا نَعُدْ* when we go forth from Damascus, let us not return.
- D (c) a. In the protasis and apodosis of correlative conditional clauses, which depend upon *إِنْ* or any particle having the sense of *إِنْ* (§§ 6, b, and 13). It stands in the protasis, when the verb is neither a perfect, nor an imperfect preceded by *كَانَ*, but a simple imperfect; and in the apodosis, when the verb is likewise a simple imperfect, and not separated from the protasis by the conjunction *فَ* (for if this latter be the case, the indicative must be used). For example *إِنْ تَعْجَلْ تَنْعَمَ* if thou art hasty, thou wilt repent it;

مَنْ يَفْعَلْ سُوءًا يُجْزَ بِهِ *he who doth evil, shall be recompensed for it*; A
 مَتَى تَأْتِيهِ تَأْتِيهِ تَعْلُو إِلَى ضَوْءِ نَارِهِ تَجِدُ خَيْرَ نَارٍ عِنْدَهَا خَيْرٌ مَوْجِدٍ *when thou*
comest to him, making for the light of his fire, thou findest the best of
fires, beside which is the best of kindlers; حَيْثُمَا تَسْتَقِرُّ يُقَدِّرْ لَكَ اللَّهُ *wherever (or whenever) thou shalt pursue a*
right course, God will decree thee success in the time to come; أَيْنَمَا
 كُفِّمَهَا كُفِّمَهَا *whithersoever the wind bends it, it bends*; كَيْفَمَا
 تَخْرُجْ تَخْرُجْ تَجِدُ خَيْرًا *however thou settest out, thou wilt meet with* B
good fortune; خَلِيلِي أَنِّي تَأْتِيَانِي تَأْتِيَانِي أَنَا خَيْرٌ مَا يُرْضِيكَمَا لَا يُحَاوِلُ
my two friends, however ye come to me, ye come to a brother who will
never do anything but what pleases you; وَإِذَا
 آتَيْنَا نَوْمَكَ تَكُنْ غَيْرَنَا وَإِذَا
 تَمْنَى لَكَ الْإِيمَانُ مِمَّا لَمْ تَكُنْ حَافِيًا *when we grant thee security, thou art*
secure from (all) others but us; and when thou dost not obtain security
from us, thou ceasest not to be afraid; فَأَيَّانَ مَا تَعْبُدُ بِهِ الرِّيحُ يَنْزِلُ
 and whenever the wind turns it aside, it descends; but مَنْ كَانَ يُرِيدُ C
 حَرْثَ الْآخِرَةِ نَزِدْ لَهُ فِي حَرْثِهِ *whosoever chooses the tillage of the life to*
come, to him will we give an ample increase in his tillage; إِنْ يَسْرِقْ فَقَدْ
 سَرَقَ أَخٌ لَهُ مِنْ قَبْلُ *if he steals, (why,) a brother of his has stolen before*;
 وَمَنْ يُؤْمِنْ بِرَبِّهِ فَلَا يَخَافُ بَخْسًا وَلَا رَمَقًا *and whosoever believes in his*
Lord, shall not fear a diminution (of his reward) nor wrong.—β. The
 jussive also stands in the apodosis, when the protasis contains a verb
 in the imperative [or one of the expressions that have the meaning of D
 an imperative (Vol. i. § 368, rem. d)]; as عِشْ فَنِعْمًا تَكُنْ مَلِكًا *live*
contented (and) thou wilt be a king; وَأَوْفُوا بِعَهْدِي أُوفِ بِعَهْدِكُمْ *be*
faithful to (your) covenant with me, (and) I will be faithful to (my)
covenant with you. فَذَرُونَهَا تَأْكُلْ *therefore let her eat*; قَتَلْنِي أَمْسِكْ *let me kill Mūsā*;
 دَعْنِي أَتَعَجَّ بِطَنِهِ *let me slit his belly*;

- A *وَقَوْلِي كُلَّمَا جَاءَكَ نَفْسِي مَكَانَكَ لِحَمِيدِي أَوْ تَسْتَبِيحِي* and my saying to my soul, as often as it was stirred, *Keep thy place (and) thou wilt be praised or find rest.*] In this way may be explained the passage from the Kor'an quoted under *a*, rem. *a*, viz. by supplying after *آمَنُوا* the words *يُقِيمُوا الصَّلَاةَ وَيُنْفِقُوا*, and regarding *وَيُنْفِقُوا* as the apodosis to *قُلْ* *.—*γ*. The jussive is used in a protasis that is dependent upon *إِنْ* etc., because, when anything is supposed or assumed, an order is, as it were, made that it be given or take place.
- B That this is the correct account of the matter, is evident from the fact of the jussive being employed in the apodosis as well of an imperative as of a conditional protasis. The use of the jussive in the apodosis, again, has for its reason, that, when a thing takes place or is assumed, whatever depends upon it takes place or is assumed at the same time; and, consequently, when the one thing is ordered, the other too seems to be ordered at the same time.

Rem. *a*. It appears, then, that in two correlative conditional clauses several modes of expression are possible; viz. (*α*) perfect ×

- C perfect, as *إِنْ قُمْتَ قُمْتُ* if thou standest, I stand; (*β*) jussive × jussive, as *إِنْ تَكُنْ تَكُنْ* if thou art slothful, thou wilt suffer loss†;

- * [It is sometimes difficult to say whether the second clause contains an apodosis, or a qualificative sentence (*صفة*), or a circumstantial definition (*حال*). In the last two cases, of course, the indicative must be used. E.g. in the words *قَهَبَ لِي مِنْ لَدُنْكَ وَلِيًّا يَرِثُنِي* (Kor'an xix. 5) give me, then, a successor of Thine own choice, who shall be my heir, *يَرِثُنِي* is a *صفة*, but some readers pronounce *يَرِثُنِي* as an apodosis; in the passage *وَعَنَا عَافَاكَ اللَّهُ نَعِيشُ فِي هَذَا الظِّلِّ وَنَشْرَبُ هَذَا الْمَاءَ* (Kor'an xix. 5) leave us (may God grant thee health!) abiding under this shade and drinking this cool water, until death comes to us, *نَعِيشُ* and *نَشْرَبُ* are a *حال*].
- D

† [Very rarely poets have the imperfect indicative; see Sibawüh i. 388, *Kāmil* p. 78. D. G.] . Another example is Tabari i. 1713,

لَمَنْ يَمُوتْ فِي ذَلِكَ يَمُوتْ .

(γ) jussive × perfect, as *إِنْ تَصْبِرْ ظَفِرْتَ* if thou art patient, thou wilt^A prevail; (δ) perfect × jussive, as *إِنْ صَبَرْتَ تَظْفِرْ*, in which case the imperfect indicative is also admissible, with or without *فَ*, as *وَإِنْ أَتَاكَ خَبِيرٌ يَوْمَ مَسْئَلَةٍ يَقُولُ لَا خَالِبٌ مَعِيَ وَلَا حَبِيرٌ* and if a friend comes to him on a day (when he has need) of asking, he says (يَقُولُ instead of يَقُل), *My camels are neither about (or my property is neither hidden) nor withheld (from thee)*; *فَإِنْ كَانَتْ الْعَرَبُ جَالِلَةً* and if the Arabs go about in agitation B on thy track, they will not find any other but thee. The third form of expression is rarer than the others. [The following remarks may here be added: (1) If an oath precedes, the verb in the protasis is invariably a perfect, whilst as a rule the indicative or the energetic (§ 19, e) is used in the apodosis, e.g. *قَوْلَ اللَّهِ تَنْتَ* for, by God! if thou go forth from the town, thou wilt never return to it; *وَاللَّهِ إِنْ قَامَ زَيْدٌ قَامْتُ* by God! if Zaid rises, I rise also; *وَاللَّهِ إِنْ جَاءَ زَيْدٌ لَأُحَرِّمَنَّهُ* by God! if C Zaid comes, I will honour him. There are, however, exceptions not only in poetry, but also in prose, as *وَأَمْرَ اللَّهِ تَنْتَ لَقِيْتَهُمَا فَنَاتِي* by the oaths of God! if I meet them and victory escapes me, martyrdom will not escape me, so God will (Tab. ii. 644, l. 15). (2) The jussive in the protasis is necessary if the verb be preceded by the negative *لَا*, thus after *إِلَّا تَفْعَلُوهُ تَكُنْ فِتْنَةٌ فِي الْأَرْضِ* if not, as *فَسَادَ كَيْدُهُمْ* (= *إِنْ لَا*) unless ye do the same, there will be discord in the land and great D corruption; *إِلَّا تَنْصُرُوهُ فَقَدْ نَصَرَهُ اللَّهُ* if ye will not aid him, certainly God did aid him. (3) The imperfect indicative is used in the apodosis, if the verb is meant to express expectation or order, e.g. *إِنْ أَفْرَجْتُ عَنْكُمْ تَخْرُجُونَ وَتَأْخُذُونَ بِأَيْدِيكُمْ مَا تَجِدُونَهُ فِي الْأَسْوَاقِ* if I let you go, ye must go and take what of implements and timber you find in the bazaars (comp. § 8, c, rem. b). (4) If the protasis be a nominal sentence, only the perfect may be

- A used, as *وَإِنْ أَحَدٌ مِنَ الْمُشْرِكِينَ اسْتَجَارَكَ فَأَجِرْهُ* *if any one of the polytheists ask protection of thee, grant it him.* (5) After *وَإِنْ* though only the perfect, or the jussive with *تَر*, is used, as *وَإِنْ زَيْدٌ وَإِنْ كَانَ ثَرْيَافًا* *though he be rich, is stingy*; *وَإِنَّ الْكَلْبَ الْفَرَّ* *and verily a solitary hill from the side of El-Hind is dear to me, though I have not been to it.* (6) In nominal sentences the conditional phrase is often placed
- B between the subject and the predicate, as *إِنَّا إِنْ شَاءَ اللَّهُ لَمُهْتَدُونَ* *truly, if God please, we shall be guided rightly*; comp. the quotations under (5).]

REM. b. On the cases in which the apodosis of a clause containing *إِنْ*, or any of its "sisters," must be introduced by *فَ*, see § 187.

- REM. c. (1) When we have in an apodosis a verb in the jussive, and there follows another verb in the imperfect, connected with the former by a conjunction, then (a) if the conjunction be *فَ* or *وَ*, the
- C second verb may be put in the jussive or in the indicative, more rarely in the subjunctive, as *وَإِنْ تَبَدُّوا مَا فِي أَنْفُسِكُمْ أَوْ تُخْفُوهُ* *and if you disclose what is in your souls or conceal it, God will reckon with you for it, and will forgive whom He pleases, and punish whom He pleases*; or *فَيَغْفِرُ* and *وَيُعَذِّبُ*, *and He will forgive and will punish* (على *فَيَغْفِرُ* as beginning a new proposition); or finally *فَيَغْفِرُ* and
- D *وَيُعَذِّبُ*, governed by *أَنْ* understood; but (β) if the conjunction be *ثُمَّ*, the subjunctive is not allowed [comp. § 15, c, rem.]. (2) When we have in a protasis a verb in the jussive, and there follows another verb in the imperfect, connected with the former by *فَ* or *وَ*, the second verb should be put in the jussive, although the subjunctive is allowable; as *إِنَّهُ مَنْ يَتَّقِ وَيَصْبِرْ فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يُضِيعُ* *verily whosoever feareth God and hath patience, God indeed will not let the reward of the righteous perish*; *وَمَنْ يَلْتَوِبْ* *مَنْ*

وَيَسْتَفِيعُ نُوْرُ and *whosoever approaches us and humbles himself, we* A
grant him protection.

REM. d. The Hebrew cannot, owing to the loss of the final vowels, distinguish in every case the jussive from the indicative and subjunctive; but the shortened form of the imperfect, wherever it exists, is the proper one to be used in most of the above cases. It has, however, no particle corresponding to *ل*, and uses *لَا* in certain cases instead of *ل* (ي). The Ethiopic employs the shorter form of the imperfect, *ገጽጽ* : *yāḡṣṣ*, to express the jussive as B well as the subjunctive (see § 15, rem.), and often prefixes to it the particle *ላ* : *la* = *ل*, of which *ገ* is a dialectic form.

18. The jussive is also used after the particles *لَمْ* not, and *لَيْتَا* not yet (compounded of *لَمْ* and the *أَلْتَسْوِمَةُ* § 7); e.g. *لَمْ أَرْ يَوْمًا كَانَ أَظْفَرُ بِأَهْلِهَا* but I have not seen a day in which there were more warpers; *لَيْتَا يَذُوقُوا عَذَابِي* they have not yet tasted my punishment C (for *عَذَابِي*). See § 12. The verb after *لَمْ* and *لَيْتَا* has, however, only the form, not the signification, of the jussive, and their effect upon the following imperfect seems to be similar to that which the Hebrew *wāw consecutivum* (·) exercises upon the imperfect annexed to it.

REM. If the particle *لَمْ* be followed by two or more imperfects, of which the second depends upon the first, the third upon the second, and so on, then, of course, the first alone is put in the jussive; e.g. *لَمْ يَكُنْ يَعْرِفُ يَسْبَحُ* he did not know (how) to swim. D See § 12, and § 8, d, e.

19. The *Energetic* of the imperfect (see § 14) is used :—

(a) With the particle *ل* *truly, verily, surely*, prefixed to it, both in simple asseverations and in those that are strengthened by an oath; *وَالَّذِينَ جَاهَدُوا فِينَا لَنَهْدِيَنَّهُمْ سُبُلَنَا* and those who have striven in our (holy) cause, we will surely guide in our paths; *لَتَرْوُنَّ الْجَحِيمَ*

A *ye shall surely see hell-fire*; *فَلْيَلِمْ لَهَا يَمِينٌ* *verily within a short time they will repent it*; *وَاللّٰهُ لَا يُدْبِرُكُمْ فَيَوْمَ هَذَا الْاَدَبُ* *by God! I will teach you manners different from these*; *فَيَحْزَنُكُمْ لَا تُغْوِيْتُمْ* *then, by Thy glory, I will surely lead them all astray.*

(b) In commands or prohibitions, wishes, and questions; as
 B *without having become*) *مُسْلِمُونَ* *as do not die unless ye have become (or*
would that thou wouldst
comes back! لَا تَرْجِعْ *why dost thou not come down?* *وَمَا تَرْجِعْ*
but can "would that" bring back the thing that has
passed away? *لَا يَرْجِعْنَ أَحَدٌ إِلَى الْاِسْحَابِ يَوْمَ الْوَقْفِ مُتَخَوِّفًا لِّجَهَنَّمَ*
let no one incline to hang back on the day of battle, fearing death;
do not then refuse me a gift, after I have
come from such a distance; *لَا اُرِيْتَكَ هَاهُنَا* *let me not see you here;*
 C *I beseech you to do it*].

[REM. The rare construction of *رَبَّمَا* with the energetic, as in *رَبَّمَا تَقُومُونَ* *perhaps you will rise*, is explained by native grammarians as due to its meaning *perhaps* or *sometimes* which approximates to a prohibition. In contrast to it, they say also *ذَلِكَ* *مَا تَقُولُونَ* *that often*. D. G.]

(c) In the apodosis of correlative conditional clauses, in which case *لَ* is prefixed to the protasis as well as to the apodosis; as
 D *and if thou askest them, Who created the heavens and the earth, and obliged sun and moon to serve Him? verily they will say, God;*
verily, if he does not desist, we shall seize and drag (him) by the forelock.

[REM. If *لَ* does not immediately precede the verb of the apodosis, the indicative is used, as *وَلَيَنْ مَنَّهُمْ أَوْ قَبِلْتُمْ لِيَنِ اللّٰهُ*

تُجْعَلُونَ and certainly, if ye die or are slain, to God shall ye be gathered.] A

(d) In the protasis of a sentence after *إِذَا* (= *إِنْ مَا*)*; as *إِذَا تَضَرَّعْتَ إِلَيَّ أَنفِرَكَ* if thou beatest Zdid, I will beat thee; *وَأَهْبَطُوا مِنَّا جَمِيعًا فَلَمَّا يَأْتِيَكَ مِنِّي هُدًى لَمَنِ بَيْعٌ فَعَدَايَ فَلَا خَوَلٌ عَلَيْهِمْ* get ye down from it (Paradise), all together; and if there shall (hereafter) come unto you guidance from me, then whosoever shall follow my guidance, on them no fear shall come; *فَلَمَّا تَخَفْتُمُوهُ فِي* B
وَأَخَذُوا قُلُوبَهُمْ فِي and if thou capture them in battle, then put to flight, by (making an example of) them, those who are behind them; *فَلَمَّا تَرَاهُمْ مِنْ الْبَحْرِ أَحَدًا قُلُوبِي إِلَيَّ لَذَرْتُ لِلرَّحْمَنِ صَوْمًا* and if thou shouldst see any one of mankind, say, Verily I have vowed a fast unto the God of mercy; *فَلَمَّا نَذَرْتُمْ بَكَ فَإِنَّا مِنْتُمُومُونَ* and if we take thee away (by death), we will surely avenge ourselves on them. C

[(e) The energetic may be used (a) after *حَيْثُمَا* and similar compounds, as *حَيْثُمَا تَكُونَنَّ أَنَا* wherever you may be, I will come to you; (β) after *مَا إِلَّا بِهَامِيَّةٍ* (Vol. i. § 355*) as *بِحَبْدٍ مَا تَبْلَغَنَّ* with some painstaking you will certainly accomplish it; *بِعَيْنٍ مَا أُرَيْتَكَ* with some eye I will assuredly see thee.]

20. No negative particle can be placed before the imperative. D Consequently, when a prohibition is uttered, the jussive must be used; as *أَمُكْتُ شَهْرَيْنِ وَلَا تَعْجَلْ فِي الْإِخْتِلَافِ إِلَى الْأُتْبَةِ* remain two months, and be not in a haste to run from one 'imām to another;

* [This *مَا* is called *تَأْكِيدٌ مَعْنَى الشَّرْطِ* to strengthen the conditional meaning, Baiḍāwī on Kor'an vii. 33. R. S. Sometimes *إِذَا* is followed by a jussive, as *إِذَا تَأْتَنِي أَطْرِبُكَ* if thou come to me, I will treat thee with honour. See an example § 152, d, rem.]

- A *فَلَا تَعْدِلِي بَيْنِي وَبَيْنَ مُغْتَبِرٍ* do not then place me on a level with (compare me with) one who is inexperienced.—The energetic forms of the imperative serve to increase its force; as *بِأَمْرِ اللَّهِ أَضْرِبَنَّ* strike, by God! *تَعْلَمَنَّ أَنَّ طَوْلَ الْقَيْشِ تَعْدِيبٌ* learn that length of life is a punishment or torment (*تَعْدِيبٌ* in rhyme for *تَعْدِيبٌ*); *الْكِبَرِيَاءُ لِرَبِّنَا*; *الْغَيْبُ لَهٗ مَخْصُوصَةٌ فَتَجَنَّبْنَاهَا وَاتَّقَى* glory belongs to God (alone), as an attribute peculiar to Him; therefore keep thyself afar from it, and B fear (Him).

- [*Rem. a.* In verbs that signify to go, to move (*مَضَى, مَضِيَ*, *فَارَ, رَاحَ, رَجَعَ*, etc.) the dual and the plural of the first person of our imperative are often replaced in Arabic by an imperative with *بِهٖ* *الْأَعْدِيَّةِ* (§ 56, *rem. d*), as *إِمْضِي بِنَا* to a man, *إِمْضِي بِنَا* to a woman, *إِمْضِيَا بِنَا* to two persons, *إِمْضُوا بِنَا* or *إِمْضِينَ بِنَا* to more, let us go. A modern manner of expressing the same thing is to employ the imperative of a verb signifying to let, as *خَلِّبْنَا (خَلِّبُوا) تَرُوحْ* or *دَعْنَا (دَعُونَا, دَعُونَا) تَرُوحْ* (comp. *Fleischer, KL Schr. ii. 636 seq.*).

- Rem. b.* The imperative of the verb *طَنَّ* with the name of a person in the accusative is used to express one's guessing that the person whom one sees coming, or whom one meets with, is that individual, as *طَنَّ أَبَا ذَرٍّ* I presume that the person approaching is *Abū Darr*; *طَنَّ أَبَا زَيْدٍ* I guess that you are *Abū Zaid*. (See the D Gloss. on *Tabari*.) D. G.]

3. The Government of the Verb.

21. The verb may govern either (a) the accusative of a noun, or (b) a preposition with the genitive of a noun, which takes the place of the accusative and gives greater precision and accuracy to the expression.—This government is not restricted to the finite tenses of the verb, but extends to the *nomen verbi* or *actionis*, the *nomina agentis* and *patientis*, and other verbal substantives and adjectives,

whenever and in so far as these different kinds of nouns contain A somewhat of the conception or nature of the verb.—The verb, too, need not necessarily be expressed; it may be understood, or it may lie concealed, as it were, in a particle that has a verbal force.

(a) *The Accusative.*

22. The verb governs the *accusative* of the noun—which we may call the *determinative* case of the verb or the *adverbial* case (see Vol. i. § 364)—either B

(a) as an *objective complement* (determinans), i.e. as that which, by assigning its object, limits and restricts the act; or

(b) as an *adverbial complement* in a stricter sense, indicating various limitations of the verb, which are expressed in non-Semitic languages by adverbs, prepositions with their respective cases, conjunctive clauses, or (as in the Slavonic languages) by the instrumental case.

23. Most *transitive* verbs take the objective complement in the C accusative, though a considerable number of them are connected with the object by means of a preposition. Not a few are construed in both ways with a variety of significations, and different prepositions may sometimes be joined to the same verb with a difference of meaning; e.g. دَعَا he called him, دَعَا لَهُ بِكَذَا he prayed that he might receive something as a blessing, دَعَا عَلَيْهِ he cursed him*; رَغِبَ فِي [رَغِبَ] he coveted the thing, رَغِبَ عَنْهُ he shunned it]. In other cases a transitive verb may be construed indifferently with the accusative or D with a preposition and the genitive, the former being the older and more vigorous, the latter the younger and feebler construction; e.g. عَلِقَ to adhere to, to attach oneself to, and لَحِقَ to adhere to, to overtake, are construed indifferently with the accusative of the person or with

* [In دَعَا لَهُ he blessed him and دَعَا عَلَيْهِ he cursed him, the object الله has been omitted. The proper signification is he prayed to God for him and against him. D. G.]

- A **پ** and the genitive. More rarely the converse is the case, the accusative being the later and less correct construction; e.g. **قَرَعَ** to have finished, to have done with, is construed with **مِنْ**, and **إِحْتَاَجَ** to have need of, to be in want of, with **إِلَى**, whereas in modern Arabic both take the accusative.

- REM. a. Transitive verbs are called by the Arab grammarians **الْأَفْعَالُ الْمُتَعَدِّيَّةُ**, and they designate by this name not only those verbs which govern their object in the accusative, but also those which connect themselves with it by means of a preposition. The former are distinguished as **الْأَفْعَالُ الْمُتَعَدِّيَّةُ بِأَنْفُسِهَا** the verbs that pass on (to an object) through themselves (and not by help of a preposition) and the latter as **الْأَفْعَالُ الْمُتَعَدِّيَّةُ بِغَيْرِهَا** the verbs that pass on (to an object) through something else than themselves (viz. **بِحَرْفٍ جَرٍّ** through a preposition). For example, **بَلَغَ** to reach, to arrive (of a message, etc.), is a **فِعْلٌ مُتَعَدٍّ بِنَفْسِهِ**, because we say **بَلَغَنِي الْخَبَرُ** the news reached me; but **قَدَرَ** to have power, to be able, is a **فِعْلٌ مُتَعَدٍّ بِغَيْرِهِ**, because it is construed with **عَلَى**, and we say **قَدَرَ عَلَى شَيْءٍ** he was able to do something.
- C

- REM. b. Only careful study and the use of the dictionary can teach the learner whether a verb is construed with the accusative, or with a preposition, or with both; and, if more than one construction be admissible, what are the different meanings that the verb assumes. Here we merely remark that verbs signifying to come, which are construed in Latin and English with prepositions, admit in Arabic also the accusative; as **جَاءَنَا عَامِرٌ** Amir came to us; **إِنَّ الْغُرَبَاءَ وَأَوْلَادَ الْكِبَرَاءِ يَأْتُونَنِي مِنَ الْبُحَارِ الْأَرْضِ** strangers and the sons of the great come to me from (all) quarters of the earth (compare in Hebrew **בָּאוּ** with the accusative, e.g. Ps. c. 4, Prov. ii. 19, Lament. i. 10). Hence these verbs have in Arabic a personal passive, so that we may say **أَتَى بِشَيْءٍ** he was come to with a thing,
- D

i.e. it was brought to him, the active construction being أَتَاهُ بِشَيْءٍ A
he came to him with a thing, i.e. he brought it to him.

[REM. c. The place of the objective complement may be supplied by an entire sentence, as عَلِمْتُ أَنَّ زَيْدًا خَارِجٌ I know that Zaid is going forth. Comp. §§ 35, b, β, 78, 88, 114. It may not be superfluous to note here that the verb قَالَ to say, or a derivative thereof, is followed by إِنَّ if the saying to which that verb relates is repeated (جَعْلًا), as وَقَوْلِهِمْ إِنَّا قَتَلْنَا الْمَسِيحَ and their B
saying, Verily we have slain the Messiah; فَإِنْ قُلْتُمْ إِنَّا ظَلَمْنَا فَلَمْ يَقُلْ فَإِنْ قُلْتُمْ إِنَّا ظَلَمْنَا and if ye say that we did wrong, (our answer is) we did no wrong (Hamasa 55); قُلْتُ إِنَّ زَيْدًا قَائِمٌ I said, Verily Zaid is standing. But when the following words explain what is said, قَدْ قُلْتُ لَكَ كَلِمًا حَسَنًا أَنْ must be used, as in the saying قَدْ قُلْتُ لَكَ كَلِمًا حَسَنًا أَنْ أَبَاكَ شَرِيفٌ وَأَنْتَ عَاقِلٌ C
أَوَّلُ مَا أَقُولُ إِلَى أَحْمَدَ the first word I speak is that I praise God. The conjunction أَنَّ is used also when قَالَ has the meaning of ظَنَنْ to think (§ 24, rem. c) as مَتَى تَقُولُ أَنَّهُ مُنْطَلِقٌ when dost thou think that he is going? whereas مَتَى تَقُولُ إِنَّكَ ذَاهِبٌ would mean when dost thou say that thou art going?]

24. Many verbs take two objective complements in the accusative, either both of the person, or both of the thing, or the one of the person and the other of the thing.—These verbs form two classes, according to the relation of their objects to one another; the first class consisting of those whose objects are different from, and in no way connected with, one another, the second of those whose objects stand to one another in the relation of subject and predicate.—(a) To the first class belong all causatives of the second and fourth verbal forms (Vol. i. §§ 41 and 45), whose ground-form is transitive and governs an accusative; as also verbs that signify to fill or satisfy, give, deprive, forbid, ask, entreat, and the like, the most of which have

- A likewise a causative meaning. For example : عَلَّمَهُ عَلَيْهِ عَلَّمَ *he taught him the science of astronomy* ; زَوَّجْتُ زَيْدًا ابْنَةَ أَخِي *I gave Zaid my brother's daughter in marriage* ; أَعْلَمَنِي الْأَمْرَ *he informed me of the thing* (lit., *he made me know it*) ; مَلَأَ الدَّلْوُ مَاءً *he filled the bucket with water* ; أَشْبَعَهُ خُبْزًا *he let him eat as much bread as he could* (شَبَعَ خُبْزًا *he ate as much bread as he could*) ; أَطْعَمَهُ السَّيْفَ *he let him taste the sword* (ran him through with it) ; سَقَوْا زَيْدًا خَمْرًا مَسْهُومَةً *they gave Zaid poisoned wine to drink* ; أَعْطَاهُ الْكِتَابَ *he gave him the book* ; رَزَقَهُ اللَّهُ الْعَمَرَ *God gave him his life* ; وَفَّاهُ اللَّبَنَ *he gave him milk in abundance* ; أَشَدَّنِي شِعْرًا *he recited a poem to me* ; وَعَدَنَا اللَّهُ حَرَمَهُ اللَّهُ بَرَكَةً *God has promised us everlasting life* ; قَنَّا عَذَابَ النَّارِ *God has deprived him of the blessing of learning* ; وَقَى *God has preserved us from the punishment of hell-fire* (ق imperative of وَقَى, Vol. i. § 178) ; اسْتَغْفِرُ اللَّهَ ذَنْبًا *ask pardon of God* ; لَسْتُ مُحْصِيَةً *I beg forgiveness of God for sins that I am not able to count* (comp. § 70, rem. e) ; أَمَرْتُكَ الْخَيْرَ فَافْعَلْ مَا أُمِرْتُ بِهِ *I have enjoined thee (to do) the best ; do what thou hast been ordered to do*.—
- (b) To the second class belong (a) verbs which mean to *make, appoint, call, name*, and the like ; and (β) those verbs which are called by the
- D Arab grammarians أَعْمَالُ الْقُلُوبِ *verbs of the heart*, i.e. which signify an act that takes place in the mind, or اَلْثَبَاتُ أَوْ اَلرَّجَحَانِ *verbs of certainty and doubt or preponderance (of probability)*, such as رَأَى *to see, think, know*, [رَأَى (pass. IV. of رَأَى) *to think, believe*], عَلِمَ *to know*, وَجَدَ *to find, perceive*, دَرَى *to know* ; خَالَ *to think, imagine*, ظَنَّ *to think, believe*, خَسِبَ *to think, reckon, suppose*, زَعَمَ *to think, deem*, عَدَّ *to count, reckon*, حَسَبَا *to think, opine*, جَعَلَ *to believe, think*, تَوَقَّعَ *to imagine, fancy*, قَالُ in the sense of *to think*, and the im-

peratives *تَعَلَّمَ* *learn, know*, and *هَبْ* *suppose, think*. For example: A
 (a) *وَالَّذِي جَعَلَ لَكَ الْأَرْضَ فِرَاشًا* *who hath made the earth a bed for you* ;
وَاتَّخَذَ اللَّهُ إِبْرَاهِيمَ *I have made the chag (into) a jug* ; *صَبَّرْتُ الْطِينَ إِبْرِيْقًا*
and God took Abraham (for) a friend ; *وَهَبْنِي اللَّهُ فِدَاكَ* *may*
God make me a ransom for thee ! *فَرَدَّ شُعُورَهُنَّ الْأَسْوَدَ بَيْضًا* *and it (Fate*
or Fortune) turned their black hair white ; *دَعَوْتُهُ مُحَمَّدًا* *I called him*
Muhammad ; *وَسَمَّيْتُهُ تَعْلِيمَ التَّعْلِيمِ طَرِيقَ* *and I named it (my B*
book) 'The Instruction of the Learner in the Path of Learning' ;
 (B) *رَأَيْتُ أَحَقَّ الْحَقِّ حَقًّا* *they indeed think it far off* ; *إِنَّهُمْ يَرَوْنَهُ بَعِيدًا*
I think the duty we owe to a teacher the greatest of duties ;
رَأَيْتُ اللَّهَ أَكْبَرَ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ مُسَاوِلَةً *I know that God is the greatest of all*
in power of will ; *أَيْنَ تُرَى بِشْرًا جَالِسًا* *where thinkest thou that Bishr is*
sitting ? ; *عَلِمْتُكَ الْبَالِ الْغُرُوفَ* *I know that thou art liberal in the*
exercise of bounty ; *وَإِنْ وَجَدْنَا أَكْثَرَهُمْ لَفَاسِقِينَ* *and verily we C*
found most of them evil-doers ; *وَجَدْتُهُ شَيْخًا حَلِيمًا* *I found him*
a mild, or gentle, old man ; *إِحْمَالُ زَيْدًا أَخَاكَ* *I think Zaid is thy*
brother ; *وَمَا أَظُنُّ السَّاعَةَ قَائِمَةً* *and I do not think the hour (of*
judgment) is at hand ; *حَسِبْتُ التَّقَى وَالْجُودَ خَيْرَ تِجَارَةٍ وَبَاخًا* *I deemed*
pisty and generosity the best merchandise in respect of profit ; *وَلَا*
تَحْسِبَنَّ الَّذِينَ قُتِلُوا فِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ أَمْوَاتًا *and do not deem those dead D*
who have been slain on God's path (i.e. fighting for their religion) ;
فَلَا تَعْدِ الْيَتَامَى شَرِيكَكَ فِي الْغَنَى *do not then reckon the maulā (or*
clients) a sharer with thee in (his time of) affluence ; *قَدْ كُنْتُ أَحَبُّو*
وَجَعَلُوا *I supposed 'Abū 'Amr to be a trusty friend* ; *وَجَعَلُوا*
وَجَعَلُوا *and they believe the angels, who*
are the servants of the Merciful, (to be) females ; *فَجَعَلْنَهُ عِبْدًا فَسْتَمْتَهُ*

- A *I thought he was a slave, and so I abused him ; أَجْهَلًا تَقُولُ بَنِي لُؤَيٍّ*
أَجْهَلًا تَقُولُ بَنِي لُؤَيٍّ by thy father's life, dost thou think the sons
of Lu'ay are ignorant, or (only) pretending to be so? (in rhyme for
أَجْهَلِينَ); *فَعَلِمْتُ شِفَاءَ النَّفْسِ قَهْرَ عَدُوِّهَا* ; (مُتَجَاهِلِينَ) know that the healing of the
soul is the conquering of its enemy ; *وَالْأَمْرُ قَهْرِي* ; *فَقُلْتُ أَجْرَنِي أَبَا مَالِكٍ وَإِلَّا قَهْرِي*
وَالْأَمْرُ قَهْرِي and I said, Protect me, O 'Abū Mālik, and if not, deem me
a lost man (in rhyme for *هَالِكًا*) ; *هَبْنِي لَكَ صَدِيقًا* ; (هَالِكًا) suppose me a friend
B of thine.

REM. a. Of the two objective complements, that which is the
subject is called *الْمَفْعُولُ الْأَوَّلُ* the first object, and the other, or
predicate, *الْمَفْعُولُ الثَّانِي* the second object.

- REM. b. When verbs like *رَأَى* and *وَجَدَ* are mere *أَفْعَالُ النَّحْوِ*
or verbs of sense,—i.e. express nothing but acts of the external
organs of sense,—they may still be connected with two accusatives,
but the second accusative is no longer a *مَفْعُولٌ ثَانٍ* or second object,
C but a *حَالٌ* or circumstantial accusative, i.e. an accusative expressing
a state or condition of the object in actual connection with those
acts ; e.g. *رَأَيْتُكَ نَائِمًا* , *I saw thee sleeping*, *وَجَدْتُهُ مَرِيضًا* , *I found him*
سِوًا (in a state of sleep, of sickness*). In these and similar phrases
رَأَى and *وَجَدَ* may often be translated by the very same words,
whether they are *أَفْعَالُ الْقَلْبِ* or *أَفْعَالُ النَّحْوِ* ; but, in the latter
case, the object is merely the individual, apart from any predicate,
whereas, in the former, it is the logical proposition *you were asleep*,
D *he was sick*, that is to say, the individual as the possessor of this
quality.

REM. c. The above construction of *قَالَ* is usually restricted to
the 2nd pers. sing. imperf. indic. in an interrogation, provided that

* [Instead of the predicative accusative the imperfect indicative
may be used, as *رَأَيْتُهُ يَفْعَلُ* *I saw him do*. Comp. § 8, c, § 74, and also
the perfect, as *وَجَدْتُكَ فَعَلْتَ كَذَا* *I found that you had done such*
and such a thing.]

§ 24] *The Verb.*—3. *Government of the Verb.*—(a) *The Accus.* 51

the interrogative particle is not separated from the verb by anything, A but a preposition with its complement or an object of the verb, as in the example cited. We must not say أَأَنْتَ تَكُونُ عَمْرًا مُنْطَلِقًا, but أَنْتَ عَمْرٌ مُنْطَلِقٌ in the nominative. [Comp. § 23, rem. c.]

REM. d. The fourth form of the أَعْمَالُ الْقَلْبِ governs three accusatives; e.g. يُرِيكُمْ أَعْمَالَكُمْ خَبِيثَةً *he will make you think your actions bad*; أَرَى اللَّهَ النَّاسَ أَيُّوبَ صَابِرًا وَأَعْلَمَهُمْ إِيَّاهُ صَدِيقًا *God has made men think Job patient and know him to be most veracious.* B Similarly حَدِّثْ أَخْبَرَ or أَخْبَرْ, and أَنْبَأْ or تَبَأْ, *to tell or inform.*

REM. e. The أَعْمَالُ الْقَلْبِ may also be construed so as to exercise no grammatical influence upon the clause which is immediately dependent upon them. This happens (1) when the verb is inserted parenthetically, in which case, however, the accusative is preferable, as زَيْدًا ظَنَنْتُ جَاهِلًا, or زَيْدٌ ظَنَنْتُ جَاهِلٌ, *Zeid is, I think, a fool*; (2) when it is put at the end of the sentence, in which case the nominative is preferable, as زَيْدٌ صَادِقٌ ظَنَنْتُ, or زَيْدًا صَادِقًا ظَنَنْتُ, *Zeid is truthful, I think*; (3) when it is placed at the beginning of the sentence, but the dependent clause is either negative, or interrogative, or else an affirmative clause introduced by the particle لَ truly, as لَ ظَنَنْتُ مَا زَيْدٌ صَادِقٌ *I think Zeid is not truthful*, مَا عَلِمْتُ أَزَيْدٌ عِنْدَكَ أَمْ عَمْرٌو *I do not know whether Zeid is in thy house or 'Amr*, عَلِمْتُ أَيُّهُمَا أَبُوكَ *I know which of them is thy father*, لَ ظَنَنْتُ لَزَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ *I think Zeid is standing up.* In the D last example لَزَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ is virtually عَلَى التَّقْدِيرِ [comp. Vol. i. § 310] in the accusative, for if another object be added, without the particle لَ being prefixed to it, it is put in the accusative, as لَ ظَنَنْتُ لَزَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ وَعَمْرٌو مُنْطَلِقًا *I think Zeid is standing up and 'Amr going away.*—In the first two cases the infinitive ظَنُّ may be used in the accusative instead of the finite verb, as زَيْدٌ ظَنُّكَ ذَاهِبٌ *Zeid*

- A *is, as thou thinkest, going away*, زَيْدٌ خَوَلَدَ ظَنِّي، زَيْدٌ ظَنِّي مُقِيمٌ.—
In modern Arabic the particle أَنْ is interposed between the
فِعْلُ الْقَلْبِ and a dependent interrogative clause; as مَا عَلِمْتَ أَنْ
لَا بُدَّ أَنْ يَمُوتَ أَوَّلًا أَنْ الْإِسْمَ مَا هُوَ، لَمْ أَفْرِ أَنَّهُ مَتَى يَمُوتُ، أَنَّهُمْ جَاءَ
it must be first explained what the noun is.

- § 25. If the verbs of the two classes mentioned in § 24 are put
B in the passive voice, one of the two accusatives becomes the nomina-
tive.—In the case of the *first* class, it is the accusative of the person;
e.g. عَلَّمَ عَلِيمَ الْهَيْئَةَ *he was taught the science of astronomy*; أَطْعَمَ السَّيْفَ
he was made to taste the sword (was stabbed with it); سَقَى الْوِزِيرَ
the vizir was given poisoned water to drink, or poisoned
water was given to the vizir to drink; رَزَقَ الْعَمَرَ *life was granted him*;
أَتَشَدَّثَ شِعْرًا لِقَوْمِهِ *a poem by another (author) was recited to me*;
C *he was deprived of the blessing of learning*. Should
it happen that both accusatives are accusatives of the person, that
which is next to the verb becomes the nominative; as زَوَّجَ زَيْدَ ابْنَتِهِ
Zdid was given my brother's daughter in marriage or my brother's
daughter was given in marriage to Zdid. If both are accusatives of
the thing, that one becomes the nominative which designates the
thing that is affected by, or receives or passes into the other, or the
D reverse; as مَلَأْتُ الْبُخْلُو مَاءً *the bucket was filled with water*.—In the
case of the *second* class, that accusative which is the subject of the
other becomes the nominative; e.g. جَعَلْتُ لَكَمُ الْأَرْضَ فِرَاشًا *the earth*
has been made a bed for you; صَوَّرَ الطِّينَ إِنْبِيقًا *the clay has been made*
into a jug; زَيْدٌ مَظْنُونٌ شَجَاعًا *Zdid is thought brave*; حُسِبُوا أَمْوَاتًا
they are deemed dead; فَرِيتَ الْوَفَى الْعَهْدَ يَا عَرَوْ *thou art known as the*
faithful keeper of thy promises, O 'Orwa (for عَرَوْه).

REM. a. As the verb *أتى*, *to come*, is construed with the A accusative of the person (§ 23, rem. b), its fourth form (*أتى*) becomes doubly transitive, and takes an accusative both of the person and of the thing; e.g. *أتى موسى بنى إسرائيل الكتاب* *Moses brought the (holy) book to the children of Israel* (lit. *made it come to them*). Now, as this accusative of the thing is the nearer object of *أتى*, we should expect it to become the nominative when the verb passes into the passive (*أوتى*); but the reverse is the case, because the person is of greater importance than the thing. We say B therefore *أوتى بنو إسرائيل الكتاب* *the (holy) book was brought to the children of Israel*, and not *أوتى بنى إسرائيل الكتاب*.

REM. b. If the verb should happen to govern three accusatives in the active voice (§ 24, rem. a), that which is next to the verb becomes the nominative to the passive; e.g. *أعلم زيد عمرا قايما* *Zeid was informed that 'Amr was approaching*; *وكننت أرى زيدا* *and I used to think Zeid, as was (commonly) said, a lord*; *نبتت ليلى بالعراق مريضة* *I was told (that) Leila was sick* C *in el-'Irak*; *إذا أخبرتنى دينا* *when thou art told (that) I am sick*.

26. All verbs, whether transitive or intransitive, active or passive, may take their own abstract nouns (nomina verbi or infinitives, Vol. i. § 195), as also the deverbal nouns of the classes nomina vicis and nomina speciei (Vol. i. §§ 219, 220), as objective complements in the accusative. This may be the case either when they have no other objective complement or complements, or when they have one or more; and the verbal noun may either stand alone, or it may be D connected with an adjective or demonstrative pronoun, a noun or pronoun in the genitive, or a descriptive or relative clause. For example: *ضرب ضربا* lit. *he struck a striking*, *نام نوما* *he slept a sleep*, *سار سارا* *he journeyed a journey*; *ضرب ضربا* lit. *he was struck (with) a striking*; *ضربته ضربة وضربني ضربتين أو ضربات* *I struck him one stroke, and he struck me two or more strokes*; *ضرب زيدا رأسه ضربا*

- A lit. *he struck Zaid (as to) his head (with) a striking*; ضَرْبَتُهُ ضَرْبًا شَدِيدًا or, omitting the nomen verbi, ضَرْبَتُهُ شَدِيدًا *I gave him a violent beating**; فَرِحَ فَرَحًا عَظِيمًا *he rejoiced (with) a great joy*; ضَمَّتْنِي إِلَى مَشْيٍ مَيْفَةٍ حَسَنَةٍ *she clasped me tightly to her breast*; مَشَى *he walked (with) a graceful gait*; ضَرَبَنِي هَذَا الضَّرْبَ *he beat me in this manner*, lit. (with) this beating; يَحْفَظُونَ أَسْرَارَهُمْ هَذَا الْحِفْظَ *they keep their secrets (with) this keeping (i.e. so carefully)*; ضَرَبَهُ ضَرْبَ *he beat him as a cruel oppressor does*, or ضَرْبَ الْمُؤَدِّبِ *as a teacher does*; خَافَ خَوْفَ الْجَبَّانِ *he feared as a coward fears*; نَظَرْتُ إِلَيْهِ بِطَرَةِ الْغَضُوبِ *I looked at him (with) the look of an angry (man)*; إِذَا زَلَزَلَتِ الْأَرْضُ زَلْزَلَتَهَا *when the earth shall quake (with) her quaking*; ضَرَبَنِي ضَرْبًا أَوْجَعَنِي *he beat me so as to hurt me much*, lit. *he beat me (with) a beating which pained me*; ضَرَبَنِي الضَّرْبَ الَّذِي لَا يَغْفَى عَلَيْكَ *he gave me a good beating, as you know well*, lit. *he beat me (with) the beating which is not concealed from you*.—This objective complement, which is called by the Arab grammarians *الْمَفْعُولُ الْمَطْلُوقُ*, the absolute object†, or *الْمَصْفُورُ* (see Vol. i. § 195, rem.), is used in the two following ways.

- (a) When it stands alone and undefined (*مُبْتَدَأٌ*), it is employed *لِلتَّعْظِيمِ* for strengthening, or *لِلتَّكْثِيرِ* for magnifying, i.e. to add greater force to the verb; e.g. عَدَّاهُمْ عَدًّا *He hath numbered them (with) a numbering (i.e. with an exact numbering)*; إِذَا رَجَّتِ الْأَرْضُ

* The undetermined object in such phrases as ضَرْبَتُهُ شَدِيدًا may, however, where the sense allows or requires it, assume a more definite meaning, and be viewed as an accusative of time; e.g. سَارُوا طَوِيلًا may be translated *they travelled a long time*, soil. زَمَانًا طَوِيلًا.

† Because it does not, like the object in a narrower sense, depend only upon a verb that governs one, two, or three accusatives in the active voice, or one or two accusatives in the passive.

رَجَا وَنُتِ الْجِبَالُ بِشَا when the earth shall be shaken (with) a shaking^A (i.e. shaken violently), and the mountains be crumbled (with) a crumbling (i.e. crumbled to dust); وَاسْتَكْبَرُوا اسْتِكْبَارًا and they disdain (with) a disdaining (i.e. are haughtily disdainful); رَضَّ عِظَامَهُ رَضًّا he crushed his bones (with) a crushing (i.e. crushed them to pieces). This signification lies in the indefiniteness of the verbal noun, which leaves the verbal idea quite unlimited in its force and effect.

REM. a. For still greater emphasis the maṣdar may be repeated, B
إِذَا رُضَّتِ الْأَرْضُ رَضًّا رَضًّا when the earth shall be crushed (with) crushing, crushing.

[REM. b. For the same purpose sometimes the maṣdar accompanied by a suffix referring to the logical subject is put in the nominative, as جَدَّ جَدُّهُ he exerted himself strenuously (properly his energy exerted itself, became real exertion); ضَلَّ ضَلَالَهُ he was profoundly in error (prop. his error became error indeed); بَعُدَ بَعْدُهُ C he was very far off; جُنَّ جُنُونُهَا she became thoroughly mad; جَاعَ جَوْعَهُ he had a vehement hunger. We have a similar figure of speech in the phrases شَبَّ شَبَبُ شَالِبٍ intense whiteness of the hair; مَوْتُ مَاتٍ excellent poetry: لَيْلَ لَيْلٍ a very dark night; مَوْتُ مَاتٍ a violent death; وَئَلَّ وَئَلٌ a great woo. D. G.]

REM. c. A maṣdar of this kind cannot, of course, form a dual or plural, for the mere fact of its doing so brings it at once under a different head. ضَرَبَنِي ضَرْبَيْنِ can only mean he beat me on two D different occasions; and in general the dual or plural is only admissible in the case of a maṣdar used لِلتَّوَعُّ (see the end of the section), when there is a difference of kinds, as سَرَتْ سَرَّتِي زَيْنٌ I went the two paces (or courses) of Zaid, the good and the bad; أَحَبُّكَ حُبَّيْنِ حُبَّ الْوَدَادِ وَحُبَّ الْإِتِّكَ أَهْلٌ لَدَاكَ I love Thee (with) two kinds of love, (with) the love of affection, and (with) another love, because Thou art entitled thereto (or worthy thereof).

- A (b) When it is connected with an adjective or demonstrative pronoun, a genitive, or a descriptive or relative clause (see the examples given above), it defines and limits the verbal idea by an addition which is commonly expressed in our family of languages by means of an adverb or a relative clause.

If the **اَلْمَفْعُولُ اَلْبَاطِلُ** be a *nomen viciæ*, it is used **لِلتَّعْدَادِ** for enumeration; and if it be a *nomen speciei*, or have an adjective, etc., connected with it, it is used **لِلنُّوعِ** to indicate the kind, for

- B specification, or **لِلتَّوْبِيحِ** or **لِلتَّيْبِيحِ** for distinction.

REM. a. Instead of the *nomen verbi* of a particular finite verb, that of another form of the same verb, or of another verb of the same meaning, or else a concrete substantive, is sometimes employed; as **لَا تَقْدِمُونَ مُقَدِّمًا** ye do not advance boldly (IV. and II.);

اِقْتَتَلُوا قِتَالًا شَدِيدًا they fought with one another (VIII.) a hard fight (III.), **وَتَبَتَّلْ اِلَيْهِ تَبَتُّلًا** and devote thyself (V.) to Him (with) an

- C (exclusive) devotion (II.), **تَوَضَّأَ وَضُوءًا**; **اِفْتَتَسَلَ غَسَلًا**; **جَلَسَ قُعُودًا**; **اَعَذَّبَهُمْ عَذَابًا شَدِيدًا** I will chastise them (with) a sore chastisement; **اِنْبَهَزُوا هَزِيمَةً شَنِيعَةً** they fled a shameful flight, **رَجَعَ** **اَحْبَابًا خَبِيرًا** (see above, a, rem. c), **اَلْقَهْقَرَى** he retired backwardly; **تَلَوْتُ بِالْأُحْقَى نَهْشًا مِنْ مَجَاشِعِ هَيْلٍ ذَلِيلٍ** thou hast recourse to *Nahshal* for protection from *Majāshī* as a weak man; **تَطَلَّلَ تَطَلُّلًا** he was an intruder at the feast, uninvited.—

- D Sometimes a specificative term may be interposed, as **فَلَا تَبِيلُوا** do not incline wholly away (from one of them), **جَلَدْتُهُ ثَلَاثَ جَلَدَاتٍ** I knew it in part, **عَرَفْتُهُ بَعْضَ الْمَعْرِفَةِ** I gave him three whippings, **جَلَسْتُ أَحْسَنَ الْجُلُوسِ** I sat most comfortably; or the *maḍdar* may be omitted, and its place supplied by another word, as **جَلَدْتُهُ ثَلَاثًا** (for **جَلَدَاتٍ**), **فَرَّقْتُهُ** (for **فَرَقَاتٍ**), **سَوَّطًا** I beat him (with) a whip (for **سَوَاطٍ**).

§ 27] *The Verb.*—3. *Government of the Verb.*—(a) *The Accus.* 57

REM. b. The accusative of the *nomen verbi* remains, as we A
have seen, unchanged, when the active voice, on which it depends,
passes into the passive. It may, however, be changed into the nomi-
native, when there is no other subject, provided that it is qualified
or specialised by some other word (an adjective or a substantive in
the genitive), as *سَيَّرَ السَّيْرَ الطَّوِيلَ*, *ضَرَبَ ضَرْبَ شَدِيدٍ*,
and not merely *سَيَّرَ سَيْرَ ضَرْبَ ضَرْبٍ*.

27. It has been mentioned above (§ 21), that the *nomina verbi* B
derived from verbs which govern an objective complement in the
accusative, may be construed in the same way as the finite verbs
themselves. We shall here enter into some further details on this
point.

(a) If only the objective complement of the act (and not likewise
its subject) be expressed, it is put after the *nomen actionis* in the
genitive*; unless it be separated from the *nomen actionis* by one or
more words, in which case it is put in the accusative, because the
genitive can never be divided from the word that governs it. For C
example: *مَنْعَهُمْ مِنْ قَوْلِ الْحَقِّ* *he hindered them from saying what*
was right; *لَا يَسْأَلُ الْإِنْسَانُ مِنْ دَعَاءِ الْغَمِّ* *a human being is never*
weary of praying for relief; *أَوْ إِطْعَمَ فِي يَوْمٍ ذِي مَسْقَبَةٍ يَتِيمًا* *or to*
feed in a day of famine an orphan; *بِضَرْبٍ بِالسُّيُوفِ وَنُوسٍ قَوِيمٍ* *by*
cutting off with swords the heads of some people. In like manner, the
object is put in the accusative, when the *nomen actionis* is defined by
the article, because a noun, when so defined, cannot take a genitive D
after it; as *ضَعِيفَ الْتِكَايَةِ أَعْدَاءَهُ* *feeble in harming his enemies*;
فَلَمْ أَكْثَلْ عَنِ الضَّرْبِ مِسْمًا *and I did not desist from striking*
Misma.

REM. If there be two or more objective complements, they are
usually all put in the genitive; but sometimes only the first is put

* This is called the objective genitive, to distinguish it from the
subjective genitive or that which designates the subject of the act.

- A in the genitive and the others in the accusative, as **كَرِهْتُ أَطْلَ** **وَاللَّخْمِ** **وَاللَّحْمِ** *I am sick of eating bread and meat, for* **أَتَشْبِرُ** *I had taken her in lieu of my debt from Haseen, for fear of (his) becoming poor and delaying payment, where* **وَاللَّيْمَانِ** *is in rhyme for* **وَاللَّيْمَانِ** *instead of* **وَاللَّيْمَانِ**.

- (b) If both the subject and the objective complement of the act be expressed, three constructions are permitted. (a) The subject may be put in the genitive, and the objective complement in the accusative; as **كَانَ قَتْلُ الْخَلِيفَةِ جَعْفَرًا فِي هَذِهِ السَّنَةِ** *in this year the calif put Ga'far to death (lit. the calif's killing G. was in this year);* **فَاذْكُرُوا** *then remember God as ye remember your fathers;* **إِنَّمَا يَضْرِبُ التَّوْبَتِ إِيَّاهُ** *crying because of the tutor's having beaten him;* **مَا ظَهَرَ مِنْ كُفْرِكَ النِّعْمَةُ هُنَاكَ** *what is apparent of thy ingratitude for favours bestowed upon thee;* **فَقَالَ الْفَرَزْدَقُ يَذْكُرُ تَفْضِيلَ** *el-Farazdaq said, mentioning how el-Ahtal preferred him;* **لَنَا كَانَ مِنْ إِهْلَالِ قَتِيلَةٍ بَنِ مُسْلِمٍ الْبَاهِلِيِّ كَتَبْتَهُمْ وَقَتْلِهِ هَرَابِذَتَهُمْ** *because of Kaddiba 'ibn Muslim el-Bahili's killing their writers, and massacring their priests, and burning their books and writings.* (β) The objective complement may be put in the genitive and the subject in the nominative; as **سَفَتَهُمْ رِيحُ الْفَنَاءِ سَفَى الرِّمَالِ يَدُ الدُّبُورِ** *the wind of annihilation swept them away, as the hand of the west wind sweeps away the sands;* **تَنَفَّى يَدَاهَا الْخَصَى فِي كُلِّ هَاجِرَةٍ نَفَى** *her fore-feet scatter the gravel every midday, as the money-changers scatter the dirhams whilst selecting them;* **لَزُورَ مَا عَلِمْتُ بِبَابِ دَارِي لَزُورَ الْكَفِّبِ أَصْحَابُ الرِّقْمِ** *fixed at the door of my house, as long as I know, as the Companions of ar-Rakim (the Seven*

Sleepers) kept to the cave; مَنْعَ النَّاسِ طَائِفًا مِنْ مُخَاطَبَتِهِ أَحَدٌ بِسَيِّدِنَا A
 he gave orders to the entire people against any one's addressing him by
 the title of "our Lord." (γ) The subject may be put in the nominative
 and the objective complement in the accusative; as عَجِبْتُ مِنْ فَرْبِ عَمْرٍا
 or زَيْدٍ عَمْرٍا, I wonder at Zaid's beating 'Amr; بَلَّغْنِي الْقَتْلَ مَحْمُودَ أَخَاهُ
 I have heard that Maḥmūd has murdered his brother; بَلَّغْنِي تَطْلِيقَ الْيَوْمِ زَيْدٍ هُنْدًا I have heard that Zaid has
 today divorced Hind; أَعْجَبَنِي الْإِنْتَظَارُ يَوْمَ الْجُمُعَةِ مُحَمَّدَ عَمْرٍا I am B
 surprised at Muḥammad's expecting 'Amr on Friday. The first of
 these three constructions is the most usual. The second is not
 uncommon, especially when the objective complement is a pronoun.
 The third, in which the nomen actionis may be accompanied by the
 article, or by a specification of the time or place of the act in the
 genitive, is of comparatively rare occurrence.

REM. a. If an adjective be annexed to the subject in the C
 genitive, it is also usually put in the genitive, but the nominative
 is admissible; as عَجِبْتُ مِنْ قِيَامِ زَيْدٍ الظَّرِيفِ, or وَهَاجَهَا; الظَّرِيفِ;
 and pressed her, as the seeker after his
 due, who is defrauded, presses (his debtor), instead of طَلَبَ الْمَغْتَقِبَ حَقَّهُ
 الْمَظْلُومَ حَقَّهُ.

REM. b. If both the subject and the objective complement
 be pronouns, they may both be suffixed to the nomen actionis; e.g. D
 حُبِّي عَلَّمَنِي اتَّقِيَّ my love of him has taught me to be religious.
 Here the suffix of the first person is the subject, and that of the
 third person the accusative*.

* حُبِّ is, strictly speaking, an اِسْمٌ مَصْدَرٌ, and not an actual مَصْدَرٌ
 (see § 26); but it is used, instead of اِحْبَابٌ, as the maṣdar of أَحَبَّ
 (IV. of حَبَّ) to love, [as بُغْضٌ for اِبْغَاضٌ, maṣdar of اَبْغَضَ to hate].
 See rem. c.

- A** REM. c. Not only the nomina actionis, but also those nouns which are of similar force and signification, and which consequently can supply the place of the former, may be construed with the genitive of the subject and the accusative of the object. For example: *أَسْلَمْتُ إِنَّ مُصَابِكُمْ رَجُلًا أَفْدَى السَّلَامَ تَحِيَّةً طَلَمٌ* *O Suldim, verily your afflicting a man, who has given the salam as a salutation, is (an act of) tyranny (إِصَابَةٌ = مُصَابٌ) ; بِعَصْرِكَ الْكِرَامَ تُعَدُّ مِنْهُمْ* ; through thy associating with the noble, thou wilt be reckoned one of them (مُعَاشَرَةٌ = عِشْرَةٌ) ;
- B** *تَقْبِيلٌ = قُبْلَةٌ* ; (rendered necessary) by a man's kissing his wife *رُجِّلَ رُوحَتَهُ الْوُضُوءُ* ; *وَلْتَذْكُرُوا لَطِيفَةَ الْبَكْرِىِّ الْفَرَشَى* and remember how the Bêkrite slapped the Kortishite (لَطِيفَةٌ the nomen vicis) ; *فَإِنْ كَلَامِهَا شَفَاؤٌ لِي بِهَا* [for to speak with her is a remedy for my suffering] ; *وَبَعْدَ عَطَائِكَ* and after thy giving the hundred grazing (camels) *أَنْظُرْ إِلَى طَاعَةِ هَذَا* ; (الرِّقَاعُ = عَطَاءٌ) ; *الرِّقَاعُ* in rhyme for *عَطَاءٌ* ;
- C** *أَوَّلِدَ أَمْرَ اللَّهِ* observes this child's obedience to the command of God (إِطَاعَةٌ = طَاعَةٌ) ; *وَعِمْدُ الْحَبَارَى الصَّفَرِ* the bustard's threatening the falcon (إِعْجَادٌ = وَعِمْدٌ) ; *أَحَابِثُ الضَّبُعِ اسْتَبَا* what the hyena tells to its — (تَحْدِثَاتٌ = أَحَابِثٌ) ; *تَرَكْتُهُ بِمَلَاجِسِ الْبَقَرِ أَوْلَادَهَا* I have left him (or it) where the wild cattle lick their young (i.e. in some lonely or desert spot, I know not where), = *بَحِثْ يَلَسَنَّ الْبَقَرُ* - *أَوْلَادَهَا*.
- D** REM. d. What has been said of the nomina actionis of singly transitive verbs, applies equally to those of doubly transitive verbs. The only difference is, that the latter take an accusative after the objective genitive, or even add a second accusative to the first. For example: *تَعْلِيمُ التَّعَلُّمِ طَرِيقُ التَّعَلُّمِ* the instruction of the learner in the path of learning ; *مَا أَسَدَاهُ إِلَيْهِ مِنْ تَوْلِيَّتِهِ إِيَّاهُ الْعِرَاقُ* the favour which he conferred upon him by his appointing him governor of Al-'Irâk ; *إِنَّ النَّاسَ طَرَفُوا إِطْعَامَ مُحَمَّدٍ عَمْرًا كَهْمًا* ;

مُسَمُّومًا the people condemned Muhammad's giving 'Amr poisoned bread to eat.

REM. a. The complement in the genitive may also be expressed, when it represents the subject of the act, by مِنْ; when it represents the object, by لِ (see § 29); and when it indicates time or place, by فِي; e.g. حُبِّهِ in rem. b, by مَنَى لَهُ (الْحَاصِلُ) the love (which accrues) from me to him; سَفَى الرِّجَالِ يَدَ الدُّبُورِ in § 27, b, β, by أَسْفَى مِنْ يَدِ الدُّبُورِ لِلرِّجَالِ; and اِنْتَظَارُ يَوْمِ الْجُمُعَةِ ibid., γ, by اِنْتَظَارُ فِي يَوْمِ الْجُمُعَةِ.

28. In the case of verbs which govern their objective complement by means of a preposition, the nomen actionis retains that preposition: e.g. قَدَرْتُ عَلَيْهِ مَا لِي قُدْرَةٌ عَلَى ذَلِكَ I have no power to do this, from عَلَيْهِ; مَا حَاجَّتَكَ إِلَيْهِ رَغِبْتُ فِيهِ I have no wish for it, from رَغِبْتُ فِيهِ; مَا حَاجَّتَكَ إِلَيْهِ.—The same thing holds good in the case of mixed government, the nearer object or accusative being converted into the genitive, and the more remote retaining its preposition; e.g. تَوْفِيقُ الْإِنْسَانِ لِلطَّاعَةِ man's being helped (by God) to obey (Him). Occasionally, however, the closer connection by means of the genitive is substituted for the looser construction with a preposition; e.g. مَيْلُ الْإِسْلَامِ inclination (of the mind) towards Islām, for اِلْتِمَالُ إِلَى الْإِسْلَامِ.

29. The nomen actionis often takes its objective complement not in the accusative but in the genitive with لِ, in which case this preposition is used as an outward exponent of the relation that subsists between the nomen verbi and its object. Hence the Arab grammarians rightly call it اَللَّامُ تَقْوِيَةُ الْعَامِلِ the lām that strengthens the regent (the nomen actionis or the verbal power which it possesses); for, since the verbal force which dwells in the nomen actionis is less than that in the finite verb, the language helps the former to exercise its

A influence upon its object by annexing to it a preposition expressing the direction of the action towards the object. This construction with **لِ** is used in the following cases.

(a) When the nomen actionis immediately precedes the object and is undefined (see § 27, a); as **مِنْ غَيْرِ تَأْمَلٍ بِخَطَائِهِ وَصَوَابِهِ** *without considering what was false and what true in it*, instead of **خَطَايَاهُ وَصَوَابُهُ**. This is especially the case when the nomen actionis is in the adverbial accusative (see § 44); as **أَقُومُ لَهُ تَعْظِيمًا لِشَيْئَانِي** *I stand up in his presence to show respect to my teacher*; **إِنَّمَا قَالَ ذَلِكَ أَمْسَكَ عَنْهُمْ اتَّقَلَّأًا** *he said this only to do him honour*; **لَمْ يَهَاجِرِينَ** *he refrained from (attacking) them, awaiting the Muhāğirūn*; **وَالَّذِينَ آمَنُوا أَشَدُّ حُبًّا لِلَّهِ** *but those who believe are stronger in love of God*.

(b) When the nomen actionis immediately precedes the object, and is defined by the article (see § 27, a); as **تَرَكُ الْبَطَالَةَ لِلنَّاسِ** *giving up pursuing the people*; **لَمَّا اجْتَمَعَتْ غُذَفَانُ عَلَى الْبَطَالَةِ** *after (the tribe of) Ghaṣfān had agreed to take the part of Toldihā*.

(c) When the genitive of the subject is interposed between the nomen actionis and the object (see § 27, b); as **فَبَقِيَ أَنَّ تَسْوِيحَ الْأَرْضِ لِلشَّمْسِ** *it results, therefore, that the sun warms the earth in no other way than by his light* (lit. *that the sun's warming the earth is only by the way of his light*), for **الْأَرْضَ**; **إِنَّمَا** *because of my enemies' persecuting me*, for **إِيَّائِي**; **رُؤْيَاهُ لِلَّهِ** *his seeing God*; **تُبْلِيغِي نَكَ إِلَى مَنَالِكَ** *my enabling you to attain your wishes*; **أَنْظُرُ إِلَى هَذِهِ الْوَالِدَةِ الشَّغِيقَةِ الرَّحِيمَةِ وَإِطَاعَتِهَا** *observe this mother, affectionate and loving, and her obedience to the command of God*.

It may also be extended to other verbal nouns of similar force and A
signification (see § 27, *b*, rem. *c*); as *لَنَزَلَ إِلَى مَعَارِجِ أَصْحَابِهِ وَمَقْتَلِ*
أَهْلِ هَمْدَانَ لِأَبْنِ أُخْتِهِ *he went down to the places where his comrades*
had fallen, and to the spot where the people of Hamadān had killed his
sister's son; *إِلَّا أَنْ فَتَوْحَ الْيَمَامُونَ وَعَبْدُ الْمَلِكِ طَانَتْ لِمَنْ قَصَدَ*
إِلَى مُلْكِهِمَا *but the victories of Ḥ-Ma'mūn and 'Abd Ḥ-Malik were*
gained over those who aimed at their sovereignty].

In such clauses the choice between the older and closer construction B
with the accusative, and the later and looser with the preposition, is
left in most cases to the taste and judgment of the writer.

REM. *a*. In more modern Arabic *إِلَى* is often used *تَقْوِيَةِ الْعَامِلِ*
instead of *لِ*; as *رَدَى إِلَى إِدْكَارِي إِلَيْهِ* *my bearing him in mind*; *رَدَى إِلَى*
إِلْجَوَابِ *my returning an answer*.

REM. *b*. This use of *لِ* to designate the objective complement
of the verb is common in Aramaic, rare in Hebrew and Æthiopic C
(see Dillmann's *Gr.*, § 179). See § 31, rem.

30. The *nomina agentis* or participles, which hold a middle
position between the verb and the noun, and partake of the force of
both, may, like the *nomina verbi*, follow the government either of the
verb or the noun, or of both. The following rules are to be observed
regarding them.

(a) If the *nomen agentis* has but one objective complement, this
may be put either in the accusative or in the genitive; as *سَارِعُوا إِلَى* D
جَنَّةٍ أُعِدَّتْ لِلْمُتَّقِينَ وَالْكَاطِبِينَ الْقَنُطُ
vie with one another in hastening
to a garden (Paradise), which is prepared for the God-fearing and
those who restrain their wrath; *وَالْمُؤْتُونَ الزَّكَاةَ* *and those who pay*
the poor-rate; *غَيْرَ الرُّبْعِ أَوَالِهَا مَكَّةُ مِنْ وَرَقِ الْخَبِيِّ*
the slate-coloured pigeons (الْحَمَامِ by poetic license for *الخبي*) *which*
inhabit the sacred House (i.e. the Ka'ba), never quitting it (and)

A domiciled in *Makka* (أَوَالِهَا for أَوَالِهَا); (أَوَالِهَا) an offering coming, or (actually) brought, to the *Ka'ba*; طَلَبُ الْعِلْمِ seekers after knowledge; كُلُّ نَفْسٍ ذَائِقَةُ الْمَوْتِ every soul is a taster of death (tastes or shall taste death); رَبَّنَا إِنَّكَ جَمِيعُ النَّاسِ our Lord! Thou wilt be an assembler of (wilt assemble) mankind; الَّذِينَ يَتَّبِعُونَ اللَّهَ مَلَأُوا رُبُّهُمْ who think that they shall be masters of (shall meet) their Lord; إِنَّ الْمَوْتَ الَّذِي تَفِرُونَ مِنْهُ فَإِنَّهُ مُلَاقِيكُمْ verily the death from which ye

B flee, will surely be your master (will surely meet you).—The nomina agentis of directly transitive verbs admit of being construed, in so far as they have verbal power, either with the accusative or with the genitive, provided they have the meaning of the imperfect (المضارع, historical imperfect, present, future). As the genitive connection is in this case هُوَ الْحَقِيقَةُ, improper or representative (see § 75, rem.), the governing word may be defined by the article: قَاتِلُ النَّاسِ, or

C الْقَاتِلُ النَّاسِ, one who kills people; الْقَاتِلُ النَّاسِ, or الْقَاتِلُ النَّاسِ, he who kills people = الَّذِي يَقْتُلُ; as, according to another reading, كُلُّ نَفْسٍ ذَائِقَةُ الْمَوْتِ (see above); الْوَاهِبِ الْبَيَاضِ الْهَجَانِ of him who gives a hundred fine white (camels); وَالْمُقِمِي الصَّلَاةِ and those who perform the (prescribed) prayers; أَلَا أَيُّهَا الْمَلِكُ الْبَوَّازُ تَقَرَّرْتُ O thou that desirest single combat, draw nigh. When, on the contrary, the nomina

D agentis of directly transitive verbs have the meaning of the perfect (perfect, pluperfect, aorist, and future-perfect), they approach more nearly to the nature of the noun that springs from them (as كَاتِبٌ, writing, a writer), and hence are construed, like this latter, with the genitive only. Further, since this genitive connection is حَقِيقَةٌ, proper or real (see § 75, rem.), the governing word cannot be defined by the article: قَاتِلُ النَّاسِ (and not الْقَاتِلُ النَّاسِ or الْقَاتِلُ النَّاسِ) one who killed, has killed, had killed, or shall have killed people, =

لَا يُطِرُ السَّمَوَاتِ أَلَدِي يَكُونُ قَتْلَ or أَلَدِي طَقَانُ قَتْلَ or أَلَدِي قَتَلَ A
 the Creator of (or He who has created) the heavens and the earth.
 The same remarks naturally apply, when the genitive is a pronominal
 suffix instead of a separate substantive : لَزِكِّي = أَحَدٌ يَلُومُنِي one who
 reproaches me, and أَلَزِكِّي = أَلَدِي يَلُومُنِي he who reproaches me, as
 أَهْبَا الشَّائِي تَحْسَبَ مِثْلِي O thou who revilest me, in order that thou
 mayest be thought my equal ; but he who reproached or has reproached
 me, أَلَدِي is لَزِكِّي, not أَلَزِكِّي.—If the noun agentis be B
 undefined, it governs the accusative only in the following cases.
 (a) When it is the attribute or the predicate of a (usually preceding)
 subject, or stands in the accusative to express a state or condition of
 that subject (see § 44) ; e.g. زَيْدٌ ضَارِبٌ عَمْرًا, or زَيْدٌ ضَارِبٌ عَمْرًا.
 Zaid is beating (or will beat) 'Amr ; زَيْدٌ ضَارِبٌ أَبُوهُ أَخَا لِي Zaid's
 father (lit. Zaid, his father) is beating (or will beat) a brother of
 mine ; مَرَرْتُ بِفَارِسٍ طَالِبٍ ثَارَ أَبِيهِ I passed by a horseman (who was) C
 seeking revenge for (the murder of) his father ; كَمَ مَا لِي فَمِنْهُ مِنْ
 شَيْءٍ غَيْرِهِ how many a one fills (or eats) his eyes with what belongs
 to others. — طَعَنَ شَخْصٌ مَا لِي like a buck
 which was one day butting a rock to break it. — طَعَنَ نَاطِحٌ
 جَانِبِي 'Amr came to me seeking instruction. (β) After an
 interrogative or negative particle, when it is the attribute of a pre- D.
 ceding or (less usually) following subject ; e.g. هَلْ مُكْرِمٌ أَنْتَ زَيْدًا will thou treat Zaid with respect ? أَمِنْجَزِ أَتَيْتَ وَعَدًا وَفَّقْتُ بِهِ will ye
 fulfil a promise on which I relied ? يَتَابِعُ قِبَلَتَهُمْ مَا أَنْتَ thou dost not
 follow (or adopt) their kība ; مَا مَجِيرٌ أَحَدٌ عَدُوَّ أَحِبَّائِهِ no one gives
 protection to the enemy of his friends. (γ) After an interjection
 (see § 38), as the predicate of a suppressed subject ; e.g. يَا طَالِعًا جَبَلًا

A *O (thou who art) climbing a hill! - يَا رَجُلًا طَالِعًا*;

O (thou who art) turning away from me (thy) love!

- REM. a. The nomen agentis in the singular number, when followed by a substantive in the genitive, can take the article only when that substantive is itself defined by the article or governs another substantive that is so defined; e.g. *الضَّارِبُ الْعَبْدُ* *he who beats the slave*; *الضَّارِبُ رَأْسَ الْعَبْدِ* *he who beats the slave on the head* (lit., *beats the head of the slave*); but we cannot say *الضَّارِبُ عَبْدٌ* nor *الضَّارِبُ زَيْدٌ*, nor even *الضَّارِبُ عَبْدٌ زَيْدٌ* or *الضَّارِبُ عَبْدُهُ*. The reason of this seems to be that a certain equipoise may be preserved between the governing word, *الْمُضَافُ*, and the governed word, *الْمُضَافُ إِلَيْهِ*. On the other hand, the article may be prefixed to the dual or the pluralis sanus masc., even when the following genitive is not defined in either of the above ways; because, after the rejection of the terminations *نِ* and *نَ* (Vol. i. § 315, b, c), *الْمُضَافُ* and *الْمُضَافُ إِلَيْهِ* become more closely connected, and grow, as it were, into one word, like the nomen agentis when defined by the article and followed by a pronominal suffix. Hence we may say *الضَّارِبِي عَبْدُهُ*, *الضَّارِبُو عَبْدٌ زَيْدٌ*, *الضَّارِبِي زَيْدٌ*, *الضَّارِبَا عَبْدًا*, as well as *الضَّارِبِينَ عَبْدُهُ*, *الضَّارِبُونَ عَبْدٌ زَيْدٌ*, *الضَّارِبِيْن زَيْدًا*, *الضَّارِبَانِ عَبْدًا*; *اَلضَّارِبَانِ عَدْنِ* *if the two who reside at 'Aden can dispense with me (or do without me)*; *اَلضَّارِبَانِ عَرَضِي وَلَمْ أَشْتَمِهِمَا* *the two who revile my character, without my having reviled them*; *اَلضَّارِبَانِ اَلْمُسْتَقِلُّو كَثِيرًا مَا وَقَبُوا* *those who deem small the great (sums) they have given away*. There is even a third form of expression admissible, arising out of a combination of these two, viz. *الضَّارِبَا عَبْدًا*, *الضَّارِبِي عَبْدُهُ*, *الضَّارِبُو عَبْدٌ زَيْدٌ*, *الضَّارِبِيْن زَيْدًا*, in which the rejection of the terminations *نِ* and *نَ* serves only to indicate the close logical connection, as in the phrase *جَاءَ الْأَمِيرُ الْقَاتِلَا أَخَوَاهُ مُحَمَّدًا* *the 'emir came, whose two brothers killed Muhammad*, in which

another substantive (أَخَوَاهُ) is actually inserted, as the subject, A between the nomen agentis in the dual (الْقَاتِلَا) and its object (مُسَمِّدًا).—When a pronoun is annexed as object to the dual or pluralis sanus masc. of a nomen agentis which is defined by the article, three forms of expression are likewise admissible; viz. (1) الْقَاتِلُونَ إِيَّاهُ, الْقَاتِلَانِ إِيَّاهُ or الْقَاتِلَانِ لَهُ; (2) الْقَاتِلُونَ إِيَّاهُ, الْقَاتِلَانِ لَهُ; and (3) الْقَاتِلُونَ إِيَّاهُ. In the last case, the pronoun, though apparently a nominal suffix in the genitive, is in reality a verbal suffix in the accusative; and even in the first case, B the Arabs regard the pronominal object as an accusative, and not as a genitive, using لِي instead of لِي for the 1st pers. sing.; e.g. لَيْسَ الْبَوَالِغِي بِرَقْدٍ خَالِيًا he who comes to me to obtain a gift is not disappointed; وَلَيْسَ بِمَغْبِيٍّ and he is not too heavy a burden for me; هُمْ الْأَمْرُونَ الْخَيْرَ وَالْقَاعِلُونَ it is they who order what is right, and who do it themselves*.

REM. b. When the nomen agentis is followed by two or more objects connected by وَ or أَوْ, it not rarely happens that the first alone is put in the genitive, and the others in the accusative, the nominal force of the nomen agentis passing, because of the distance of the complements, into the verbal; as جَاعِلُ اللَّيْلِ سَكَنًا وَالنَّهَارَ He who appoints the night for rest, and the sun and moon for the reckoning (of time); أَلْوَاهِبُ الْبَيَاضِ وَغَبِيهَا of him who gives a hundred fine white (camels) and their attendant (either وَغَبِيهَا or وَغَبِيهَا); هَلْ أَنْتَ بَاعَتْ دِينَارَ بِحَاجَتِنَا أَوْ عَبْدَ رَبِّ? will thou send Dinar for our need (to our help) or 'Abd-Rabb? D

(b) If the nomen agentis be derived from a verb which governs two or three objective complements (§§ 24, 25), it takes the first either in the accusative (which is by far the more usual) or in the genitive, and the others in the accusative; as أَنَا كَاسٌ زَيْدًا ثَوْبًا فَاحِرًا

* [El-Mubarrad, *Kāmil*, 205, l. 16—206, l. 9 speaks of this verse as spurious, and says that such an annexion is not allowed even by poetical license. R. S.]

- A *I will dress Zdid in a splendid robe*; أَنَا مُعْطِي زَيْدٍ دِرْهَمًا, or مُعْطِي زَيْدًا, *I will give Zdid a dirham*; هَلْ أَنْتَ ظَنَّ عَمْرًا عَاقِلًا, or هَلْ أَنْتَ ظَنَّ عَمْرًا عَاقِلًا, *dost thou think 'Amr intelligent?* هَذَا مُعَلِّمُ زَيْدٍ عَمْرًا, *this (man) informs Zdid that 'Amr is going away.*

RAM. a. If the objective complements of the nomen agentis of a doubly transitive verb be pronouns, both may be appended to it as suffixes; e.g. مُعْطِيكَ *he who gives it to you*; مُعْطِينِيَا *he who*

- B *gives me it to eat.* [Comp. Vol. i. § 187.]

RAM. b. The second of the two complements of a nomen agentis, or that which is in the accusative, is very rarely inserted between the nomen agentis and the first complement, or that in the genitive; e.g. *whilst others than thou withhold their benefits from the needy*; فَلَا تَحْسِبَنَّ اللَّهَ مُخْلِفَ وَعْدِهِ رُسُلَهُ *think not then that God will fail to keep His promise to His apostles.* In the former of these examples, which is a half-verse of poetry, this construction has been followed in order to bring the word

- C *المُخْلِفُ* into the rhyme; in the latter, which is taken from the Kor'an, xiv. 48, the preferable reading is *مُخْلِفٌ وَعْدِهِ رُسُلُهُ*.

§ 31. What has been said in § 29 regarding the use of the preposition *لِ* after nomina verbi is equally applicable to nomina agentis.

(a) *لِ* is used when the nomen agentis immediately precedes the object and is undefined; as *مُعْجِبٌ لَكَ making thee wonder*; وَهِيَ مُجَانِبَةٌ لَهُ

- D *whilst she was avoiding him* (in which example the undefined nomen agentis is the predicate of a *جُمْلَةٌ حَالِيَّةٌ* or circumstantial clause [§ 183]; *and artifice is not allowable* (in argument), *except when the opponent is a disputatious sophist, and not a seeker after the truth.* This is especially the case when the nomen agentis is in the adverbial accusative [§ 44, c]; as *وَأَمِنُوا بِمَا أَنْزَلْتُ مُصَدِّقًا لِمَا مَعَكُمْ* *and believe in what I have sent down, confirming that which is with you* (the

Scriptures which ye have already received) ; نَزَّلَ عَلَى الْمَدِينَةِ مُحَاجِرًا A
وَلُفَّتِي بِمَلَكَةِ الْعِلْمِ دَاعِيًا وَبَاعِثًا ; he halted before the city to besiege it ;
بِلِغَافِلِ the sweetness of knowledge is a sufficient inducement and
incentive to the intelligent. (b) لِي is also used when the nomen agentis
immediately precedes the object, and is defined by the article ; as
الْمُقْسِمُونَ those who keep the ordinances of God ;
أَفْوَى الْأَنْتَابِ الْعَلَامِيَةِ بِذِهِ الْأَيَّامِ B
لِلرِّزْقِ إِقَامَةُ الصَّلَاةِ بِاتَّقْطِيبِ to perform one's devotions with reverence
is the surest means of procuring one's daily bread ;
وَبَقِيَ يَتَفَكَّرُ فِي ذَلِكَ and he continued meditating about that thing
which governs the body. (c) Finally, لِي is used when a genitive is
interposed between the nomen agentis and the object ; as
مُطْعِمَهَا لِي he who gave it to me to eat. C

REM. لِي must be used instead of the accusative, when the object
of the nomen agentis is rhetorically transposed and placed before it ;
as مَا كُنَّا لِنُغَيِّبَ حَافِظِينَ and they worshipped us ;
وَكُنَّا لَنَا عَابِدِينَ we did not know what was hidden (in the future) ;
إِنَّا لَهُ لَنَافِظُونَ verily we will take care of him ;
أَلَمْ يَرَ مَا تَرَى تَنْزِرُهُ لَكَ مُكْرِمٌ a man,
as long as thou dost not unjustly disparage him, treats thee with
respect.—So also with the finite verb, تَعْنُونَ لِرُؤْيَا تَعْنُونَ D
can explain a dream. If the transposed object be a pronominal suffix,
إِيَّاكَ (Vol. i. §§ 188, 189) may be employed instead of لِي ; as
إِيَّاكَ تَعْبُدُ ;
وَأِيَّاكَ نَسْتَعِينُ thee we worship and to thee we cry for help ;
يَعْنُونَ خَالَهُمْ إِيَّاهُ يَعْنُونَ he thinks they mean him (in rhyme for يَعْنُونَ).
Compare § 29, rem. b, and Vol. i. § 189, b.

32. If the verb, from which a nomen patientis is derived, governs
two or three accusatives in the active voice, its nomen patientis retains
one or two of them, the other having passed into the nominative ; as

- A زَيْدٌ مُعْطَى عَبْدُهُ دِرْهَمًا, *Zaid's servant* (lit. *Zaid, his servant* [§ 120]) is given a *dirham*; زَيْدٌ مَظْنُونٌ أَبُوهُ قَائِمًا *Zaid's father is thought to be standing up*; زَيْدٌ مُعَلِّمٌ أَبُوهُ عَمْرًا مُنْطَلِقًا *Zaid's father is informed that 'Amr is going away*. See §§ 24, 25.

33. Verbal adjectives of those forms which differ in meaning from the *nomina agentis* only in being *intensive*, may govern, like the *nomina agentis*, either the accusative or the preposition *لِ*. Since, however, their verbal force is very slight, the latter construction is by far the more usual, the former being chiefly poetic. This rule applies principally to the forms فَعَالٌ and فَعُولٌ (Vol. i. § 232, and rem. d, § 233); more rarely to other forms, such as فَعِيلٌ (§ 232), فَعِلٌ (id.), and مِفْعَالٌ (§ 233, rem. b). Examples with the accusative: أَمَّا مُقَدِّمًا إِلَى التَّوْبِ خَوْفًا إِلَيْهِ الْكَتَابَ; *insured to* (lit. *a brother of*) *warfare, constantly wearing the garments suited for it*; مُجَلِّدًا طَوَاقٍ لَمْ يَكُنْ مِنْ تَيْمَمَةٍ وَلَا ضَرْبِ صَوَاقٍ; *in rhyme for* (الْكَتَابِ); *adorned with a ring, which is not an amulet, nor manufactured by a moulder of a dirham with his hands*; ضَرْوْبٍ يَنْصَلِ; *smiting with the edge of the sword the heads of men*; إِنَّهَا عَلَى السُّوقِ إِخْوَانُ الْعَزَاءِ هَيُوجُ; *verily she stirs up the patient* (or continent) *to desire* (accites desire in them, هَيُوجُ in rhyme for هَيُوجُ); هُمْرٌ ذَاهِبٌ هُمْرٌ لُغُورٌ; *ready to forgive their sin, not boastful* (هَيُوجُ in rhyme for هَيُوجُ); أَمَّا فَتَاتَانِ أَمَّا مِنْهُمَا فَشَبِيهَةٌ هِلَالًا; *two maidens, (one) of them resembling a new moon (in beauty)*; إِنَّ أَلَّهَ سَمِيعٌ دَعَاةٌ; *God hears the prayer of him who calls upon Him*; حَذِرُ أُمُورًا; *on his guard against things that cannot injure (him)*; أَتَانِي

أَتَاهُمْ مَرْفُونٌ عَرِضِي it has come to me (to my hearing) that they are A
defaming (lit. tearing in pieces) my character; إِنَّهُ لَيَنْحَارُ بِوَأْكِنَا he
is a slaughterer of the fat ones among them (the she-camels); شَمِرٌ
is a slaughterer of the fat ones among them (the she-camels); شَمِرٌ
haughty, looking with disdain on the limbs of the
slaughtered camel. Examples with لَ: سَمَاعُونَ لَيَكْذِبُ أَطْلُونَ لِلشَّيْءِ
hearers of falsehood, eaters of what is unlawful; كُلُّ ظَنَارٍ مُبِيدٌ مَنَاجٍ
every hardened infidel, a hinderer of good; جَمَاعَةٌ لَيَكْتَسِبُ B
collector of books; قَوْلٌ لَنَا قَالَ أَكْرَامُ فَعُولٌ ready to say what the
noble say, and to do (it); etc.

34. Verbal adjectives of the form أَفْعَلٌ, corresponding to our
comparative and superlative (Vol. i. § 234), when derived from trans-
itive verbs, take their object in the genitive with لَ, very rarely in the
accusative; as هُوَ أَطْلُبُ لِلْعِلْمِ مِمَّنْكَرٌ he seeks after knowledge more than
you do; C
أَحَبُّ إِلَهٍ مِنَ نَفْسِهِ the believer loves God more than
himself; أَجْهَلُ النَّاسِ وَأَعْدَاهُ لِلْعِلْمِ وَأَمْتَنُهُ لِلشَّرْعِ the most ignorant
of men, and the most opposed of them to learning, and the most inimical
of them to the law; فَهَرُّ لَهَا بِفَقْرِ حُلُومِ الْقَلْبِ they must be more apt to
change it (via the letter و, into ي) without an intervening (letter);
وَأَفْرَبُ مِنَّا بِالسُّيُوفِ الْقَوَانِسَا and more ready than we to smite with
swords the tops of helmets (القَوَانِسَا in rhyme for الْقَوَانِسُ, accus.);
D
وَأَمْنَعُ جِيرَانًا and a better protector of neighbours.

RAM. a. Verbal adjectives of the form أَفْعَلٌ, derived from verbs
signifying love or hatred, take the object with لَ when they are used
in an active sense, as in the second and third of the above examples;
but when they have a passive sense*, they take the subject with

* As there is only one form for the comparative and superlative,
it may be derived from verbal adjectives of either active or passive
signification; e.g. أَحَبُّ from مُحِبٌّ loving, or from حَبِيبٌ beloved,
dear. [Comp. Vol. i. § 235.]

- A *أَحَبُّ إِلَى اللَّهِ مِنْ غَيْرِهِ إِلَى* the believer is more loved of God than any one else; *هُوَ أَبْغَضُ إِلَيَّ مِنْهَا* he is more hateful to me than she.

REM. b. Verbal adjectives of the form *أَفْعَلٌ*, derived from intransitive verbs [i.e. verbs which govern their object by means of a preposition, § 23, rem. a], require the same preposition after them as those verbs; as *هَذَا أَهْوَنُ عَلَيَّ* this is lighter, or easier, for me; *هُوَ أَزْهَدُ فِي الدُّنْيَا وَأَسْرَعُ إِلَى الْخَيْرِ وَأَبْعَدُ مِنَ الْإِلْبِيسِ وَأَخْرَضَ عَلَى*

- B *الْخَيْرِ* he abstains more from worldly pleasures, and is quicker to do good, and keeps farther from (clearer of) crime, and is more eager after the praise (of God). They often, however, take their signification from one of the derived forms of the verb (generally the second or fourth); as *ذَلِكَ أَقْوَمُ لِلشَّهَادَةِ* this confirms the evidence still more (from *أَقَامَ*, IV. of *قَامَ* to stand); *وَلَكِنَّ غُمُولَ الْمَرْءِ لِلدِّينِ* but the obscurity of a man preserves his religion better (from *أَسْلَمَ* or *سَلِمَ*, II. or IV. of *سَلِمَ* to be safe); *قَتَلَ الْكَفَّارَ أَغْزَى لِلْإِسْلَامِ* the slaying of unbelievers increases the power of Islām and strikes greater terror into those who are behind them; *وَأَقْبَمَ بَيْنَ وَرَثَتِهِ* this improves its crop and makes its oil clearer; *شَمَّرَ الْقَجَّالُ أَخْوَفَنِي عَلَيْكَ* another besides the anti-Christ fills me (accus.) with greater fear on your account (than he does); *هُوَ أَحْوَجُ إِلَيَّ مِنْيَ إِلَيْهِ* he has more need of me than I have of him (from *إِخْتَجَعَ إِلَيَّ*, VIII. of *حَاجَ*, to have need of). See Vol. i. § 235.
- C
- D

35. The accusative not unfrequently depends upon a verb which is understood. This happens:—

(a) In phrases expressive of command (positive or negative), wish, reproach (worded interrogatively), praise, salutation, and the like, in which we must supply the verb from which the noun in the accusative is derived, and to which it serves as *الْمَفْعُولُ الْمَطْلُوقُ* (§ 26). For example: *فَلَا تَقْبَلُوا الدِّينَ كَقَبْرُوا فَضْرَبُوا الرِّكَابَ حَتَّى إِذَا اسْتَنْتَمَوْهُمْ*

فَقُتِلُوا أَوْلَاقُ فَمَا مَنَّا وَإِنَّا فِدَاءُ: and when ye meet (in battle) those who A
believe not, smite their necks (i.e. cut off their heads), till (at last),
when ye have made much slaughter among them, bind fast the fetters;
and (thereafter) either show kindness (by letting them go free) or take
ransom (for them), where مَنَّا = اِهْبِزُوا الرِّقَابَ ضَرْبًا = ضَرْبَ الرِّقَابِ
فَنَدَلًا زَوْجُ الْهَيْلِ نَقَلَ الثَّعَالِبِ; تَقْدُونَ فِدَاءً: = فِدَاءُ; تَجْنُونَ مَنَّا
carry off camels, O Zuraiḳ, as foxes carry off (their prey), where
way to immoderate grief, i.e. اَصْبِرْ صَبْرًا لَا جَزَعًا; اَنْدَلِ الْهَيْلَ نَدَلًا = نَدَلًا الْهَيْلِ B
softly! i.e. اُصْبِرْ صَبْرًا وَلَا تَجْزَعْ جَزَعًا; اُنْهَلْ مَهْلًا; سَقَاكَ
تَعْسا لَكَ; رَعَاكَ اللَّهُ رَعْيًا; اَنْتَ لَكَ سَقَا may God give thee rain! i.e. سَقَاكَ
mayest thou stumble! i.e. تَعَسْتَ تَعْسا; اَكْفُرْ اَكْفُرًا بَعْدَ رَدِّ الْمَوْتِ عَنِّي; اَكْفُرْ اَكْفُرًا
I be ungrateful after thou hast averted death from me? i.e. اَكْفُرْ اَكْفُرًا;
اَتَوَانِي وَقَدْ عَلَاكَ الْهَيْبُ: اَتَتَوَانِي تَوَانِي; اَتَتَوَانِي تَوَانِي C
the absolute glory of God! or اَتَتَوَانِي تَوَانِي; اَتَتَوَانِي تَوَانِي
I praise (which is an اِخْبَار or statement of fact), or سَبِّحْ, etc.,
etc., praise thou, etc. (which is an اِنْشَاء, a command or wish) [often
used as a phrase expressing wonder]; اَعَاذَ اللَّهُ God forbid! i.e.
اَعُوذُ مَعَاذَ اللَّهِ I seek the refuge of God; اَعُوذُ مَعَاذَ اللَّهِ D
me, O my Lord! i.e. اَعُوذُ مَعَاذَ اللَّهِ; اَعُوذُ مَعَاذَ اللَّهِ; اَعُوذُ مَعَاذَ اللَّهِ
intent upon Thy service, O God! i.e. اَعُوذُ مَعَاذَ اللَّهِ; اَعُوذُ مَعَاذَ اللَّهِ
أَسْمَعُ سَمْعًا hearing and obeying, or to hear is to obey, i.e. اَسْمَعُ سَمْعًا
أَقْدَمْتُ خَيْرَ مَقْدَمٍ welcome! i.e. اَقْدَمْتُ خَيْرَ مَقْدَمٍ; وَأَطِيعُ طَاعَةً
arrived the best of arrivals; [أَحْبَبْتُ حُبًّا وَكِرَامَةً] (will I
do what thou requirdest) i.e. اَحْبَبْتُ حُبًّا وَأَكْرَمْتُكَ اِكْرَامًا].

- A REM. a. In the cases of command, wish, and reproach, the Arab grammarians regard the verbal noun, not as a **مَصْدَرٌ مُؤَكَّدٌ** (§ 26), but merely as **بَدَلٌ مِنَ الْفِعْلِ** a substitute for the verb, or **نَائِبٌ** **لِلْفِعْلِ** supplying the place of the verb; so that, according to them, **نَعْلًا آلَإِيَّانَ** is simply = **اُنْعَلِ آلَإِيَّانَ** = **سَقَاكَ اللَّهُ** = **سَقَاكَ لَكَ**, and **اَكْفُرَا** = **اَكْفُرَا**.

- B REM. b. In such cases as **حَنَانَيْكَ** and **لَبَّيْكَ** the dual is regarded as being used, not **لِلتَّشْبِيهِ** to express two occasions, but **لِلتَّكْوِينِ وَالْتَّكْوِينِ** to indicate repetition and frequency. [Similar expressions are **حَاجَايَكَ**, **هَذَازَيْكَ**, **هَذَازَيْكَ** and **هَذَازَيْكَ**.]

(b) In various other cases, in which the verb to be supplied is not that whence the noun in the accusative is derived, but may be easily guessed from the manner in which the noun is uttered and the circumstances of the speaker. Such are:—

- (a) Phrases expressive of wish, salutation, and the like; as
C **جَدْعًا لَكَ** may thy nose be cut off! **لَكَ تَبًا** perdition to thee! i.e. **صَارَفْتُ** or **أَتَيْتُ**, **مَرْحَبًا** **وَأَهْلًا** **وَسَهْلًا**; **اَللّٰهُمَّ اَلْزِمَكَ اَللّٰهُمَّ اَلْزِمَكَ**, thou art come to, or hast found, a roomy (convenient) place, and friendly people, and a smooth (comfortable) place; **مَرْحَبًا** **بِكَ**, i.e. **اَتَيْتُ** **مَكَانًا يَرْحَبُ بِكَ**, thou art come to a place where there is plenty of room for thee (to a comfortable place); phrases equivalent to welcome! **مَرْحَبًا** **بِكَ** **اَللّٰهُمَّ** **وَسَهْلًا** may God give thee plenty of room
D and ease!*

(β) Phrases in which an individual is called upon to guard himself, or a part of his person, against some one or some thing (**اَلْتَحَذِيرُ**); or in which one or more individuals are urged to do something or attack some object (**اَلْاَعْرَاقُ**). In the former case, the

* [On the phrase **مَرْحَبًا** **بِكَ** comp. § 44, α, rem. b, footnote.]

speaker may mention (1) either the person who is to be on his guard,^A or (2) the person or thing he is to guard against, repeating the word or not, at pleasure; or lastly, (3) both together, connecting them by the conjunction *وَ*. In the latter case, he mentions only the object to be attacked, repeating the word or not, as he pleases. Examples: *إِيَّاكَ*, or *إِيَّاكَ إِيَّاكَ*, *take care!* i.e. *إِيَّاكَ أَحْذَرُ* *thus I warn*; *رِجْلَكَ* *thy foot!* scil. *يَا* *take care of*; *رَأْسَكَ* *thy head!* scil. *نَجِّ*, *band aside*; *الْأَسَدَ*, or *الْأَسَدَ الْأَسَدَ*, *the lion! the lion!* scil. *إِحْذَرُ* *beware of, guard* B *against*; *الْجِدَارَ الْجِدَارَ* *the wall! the wall!* *الضَّيِّقَ الضَّيِّقَ* *the child! the child!* *الطَّرِيقَ الطَّرِيقَ* *the road! the road!* scil. *خَلِّ* *clear*; *إِيَّاكَ وَالْمَخَادَعَةَ*; *إِيَّاكَ أَحْذَرُ وَالْأَسَدَ* *mind the lion!* scil. *إِيَّاكَ وَالْمُخَنَّفَاتِ* *guard thyself against enmity*; *إِيَّاكَ وَالْمُخَنَّفَاتِ* *keep clear of innovations or new-fangled ideas*; *إِيَّاكَ وَأَنْ تَفْعَلَ كَذَا*, or, less correctly, *إِيَّاكَ أَنْ تَفْعَلَ كَذَا*, *beware of doing so and so* (where *أَنْ*, followed by C *the imperfect subjunctive, is put instead of the accusative of a noun* [§ 23, rem. c]); *إِيَّاكَ وَأَنْ تَشْتَغَلَ بِهَذَا الْجَدَلِ* *take care not to muddle with this sort of contention*; *رَأْسَكَ وَالْحَائِطَ* *thy head and the wall!* scil. *مَا رَأْسَكَ وَالسَّيْفَ* *Mélie, thy head and the sword!* scil. *يَا مَاوِينَ فِي رَأْسَكَ وَأَحْذَرِ السَّيْفَ* *the foe! the foe!* scil. *خَلُّوا* *swiss, attack*; *أَخَالَكَ*, or *أَخَالَكَ* *be always kind to your brother*, scil. *الزَّوْرَ* *cleave to*; D *إِيَّاكَ مَكَانَكَ* *keep your place!* scil. *الزَّوْرَ* *do as you like with your camels*, scil. *افْعَلْ* *do*; *وَلَا شَتِيمَةَ خَيْرٍ* *everything but reviling a freeborn man!* scil. *إِيَّاكَ أَمَامَكَ* *before thee!* *وَأَمَامَكَ* *behind thee!* scil. *أَنْظُرْ* *look*; *عَلَيْكَ* *thy excuse!* scil. *أَخْضِرْ*, or *خَلِّمْ* *produce*; *حَدِيثَكَ* *thy story!* scil. *هَاتِ* *give here, tell*.

- A REM. a. If a noun in the accusative be uttered only once, the verb may be added; but if the accusative be repeated, or if there be two accusatives connected by **وَ**, the verb is never expressed.—Vulgarly, **إِيَّاكَ وَالْأَسَدَ** is used instead of **إِيَّاكَ وَالْأَسَدَ**, and the like.

REM. b. It is only the second personal pronoun which is commonly thus used. Examples of the first and third persons are rare; e.g. **نَجِّنِي عَنْ الشَّرِّ وَنَجِّ الشَّرَّ** *keep me from evil / scil. الشَّرَّ*.

- B **نَجِّنِي عَنْ الشَّرِّ وَنَجِّ الشَّرَّ** *preserve me from seeing any of you throw at (or shor' at) a hare / scil. حَذِّبْ*
إِيَّاي وَأَنْ يَحْذِيفَ أَحَدُكُمْ الْأَرْتَبَ *scil. حَذِّبْ*
نَجِّنِي عَنْ مُشَاهَدَةِ حَذِّبِ *scil. حَذِّبْ*
إِذَا بَلَغَ الرَّجُلُ السِّتِينَ *scil. حَذِّبْ*
وَنَجِّ حَذِّفَهَا عَنْ حَضْرَتِي وَمُشَاهَدَتِي
إِذَا بَلَغَ الرَّجُلُ السِّتِينَ *when a man reaches sixty, let him avoid the young women (where observe the irregular use of إِيَّا with a substantive).*

(γ) Various phrases, of which the following may serve as examples.

- C We may say to a hunter, **اَلْكِلَابَ عَلَى الْبَقَرِ** *the dogs at the antelopes!*
scil. اَرْسِلْ *let loose*; or of a person who is aiming at a target, **اَلْقِرْطَانَ**
وَاللَّهِ *the target, by God!* *scil. يُصِيبُ* *he will hit*; or if we hear people
shouting at the first appearance of the new moon, **اَلْهَلَالَ وَاللَّهِ** *the new*
moon, by God! *scil. اَبْصُرُوا* *they have seen*; or to one who tells us a
dream, **رَأَيْتَ وَمَا سَرَّ** *what is good and cheering*, *scil. رَأَيْتَ* *thou hast*
seen or dreamed; or to a man who has done something mean,
D **أَطْلَلْتُ هَذَا بِخُلَا** *all this out of stinginess!* *scil. قَعَلْتَ* *hast thou done?*
أَتَكْتُمُ الطَّلَاقَ تَنْنَ نَفْسِي أَحَدَ مِنْكُمْ *scil. قُوا* *preserve your mother from*
being divorced, for if any of you sings a song (it will assuredly happen).
Ag. ii. 52, l. 8. D. G.]

(δ) Phrases in which a pronoun—generally of the first, rarely of the second person—is followed by the noun, to which it refers, in the accusative, without any verb intervening. The object of this construction—named by the Arab grammarians **الْإِغْتِصَاصُ** *the specification or particularisation (of the pronoun)*—is to show that this accusative is

§ 85] *The Verb*.—3. *Government of the Verb*.—(a) *The Accus.* 77

the noun which the pronoun represents and to which the statement A made refers. It is to be explained by an ellipsis of أَغْنَى *I mean*, or أَخْصَى *I specify*. Examples: نَحْنُ الْعَرَبُ أَسْفَى مِنْ ذَلِكَ *we Arabs—lit. we, (I mean) the Arabs,—are the most liberal among the generous*; نَحْنُ الْفُقَرَاءُ لَا طَائِفَةَ بِنَا عَلَى الْمُرُوءَةِ *we, the miserably poor, have not the ability to be generous as becomes men*; نَحْنُ مَعَاشِرَ الْأَنْبِيَاءِ لَا نُورَثُ *we, the band of prophets, have no heirs (among men)*; بِنَا تَبِيهَا يَنْتَفِ B *by us, Tāmim, the mist is swept away*; إِنَّا بَنِي مِثْقَلٍ قَوْمٍ *we, the Banū Mithqal, are a people of high worth*; أَلَمْ تَرَ *most thou not that* ذَاوِيَرَةُ زُرَّارَةَ مِمَّا أَبُو مَعْبُدٍ *Zurāra, the father of Ma'bad, is one of us, the Banū Dārim!* (مَعْبُدٍ in rhyme for مَعْبُدٍ); *ye, (I mean) the believers, grieve not ye*; لَا تَجْزَعُوا *in Thee—God—we hope for bounty*; نُبْحَانَكَ اللَّهُ C *Thy absolute glory—the great God*; سَلْمَانَ مِمَّا أَهْلُ [*Salman is one of us, the kinsfolk of the Prophet*].

REM. a. This kind of اِخْتِصَاص is only a species of the نَسَب عَلَى التَّمْدِجِ وَاللَّعْنِ وَالشَّنِيعِ وَالتَّوْحِيدِ or accusative of praise, blame, reproach, and pity; e.g. الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الْحَمِيدِ *praise belongs to God, the praiseworthy*; الْمُلْكُ لِلَّهِ أَهْلُ الْمُلْكِ *kingdom belongs to God, D (the Being) entitled to kingdom*; وَأَمْرَأَتُهُ حِمَالَةُ السَّطَبِ *and his wife, the (miserable) carrier of firewood*; زَيْدٌ أَتَانِي زَيْدُ الْفَاسِقِ الْخَبِيثِ *Zaid came to me, the base wicked wretch*; مَرَرْتُ بِهِ الْيَسْكِينُ الْبَائِسُ *I passed by him, the poor wretch*; in all of which examples the word أَغْنَى, *I mean*, may be supplied.

REM. b. In such phrases as هَالِكٌ يَدِي إِلَيْكَ *there it is for you*! هَالِكٌ يَدِي *there's my hand for you*! هَالِكٌ نَفْسًا *here then is a poem for you*!

because the force of the verb to see (رَأَى) is embodied in these A particles*. This takes place both when the subject immediately follows *إِنْ*, etc., and when it is separated from them by a portion of the predicate of *إِنْ*, etc., consisting of an adverb of time or place, or a preposition with its complement. In the former case the affirmative particle *لَ* may be prefixed to the predicate of *إِنْ*; in the latter, to its subject. If, however, the predicate be negative, or consist of a verb in the perfect, not preceded by *قَدْ*, the particle *لَ* ought not to be B prefixed to it. Examples: *إِنْ إِيَّاهُ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ* God is mighty over all (lit. see God, He is mighty over all); *إِنَّ الْحَيَاةَ لَا تَدْوَرُ* youth does not last; *إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَغَفُورٌ رَحِيمٌ* God is forgiving, merciful; *وَإِنْ قَرِيعًا مِّنَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ لَكَارِهُِونَ* and a part of the believers were averse; *بِأَيِّ لَّيْلِ لَّعَنُوا إِذْ هُمْ عَلَىٰ سُكُورِهِمْ يَعْصُونَ* by thy life, they were bewildered in their intoxication; *أَتَشْكُرُ لَّتَشْكُرُونَ أَلَمْ يَكُن مَعَهُ إِلَهًا أُخَرَىٰ* do ye testify C *إِنْ بِالشَّعْبِ الْكَذِبِ دُونَ* that there are other gods with the (true) God? *فَلْيَقْتُلُوا ذَا الْقَرْيَةِ الَّتِي فِي دُونِ سُلَيْمَانَ* in the ravine that is below Sula' (there lies) a murdered man; *إِنْ فِي ذَلِكَ لَعِبْرَةٌ لِّأُولِي الْأَبْصَارِ* in this there is an example (or warning) to those possessed of insight; *إِنْ فِي ذَلِكَ لَعِبْرَةٌ لِّأُولِي الْأَبْصَارِ* in putting thee to death, old man, there is a benefit to the Muslims; *فَإِنِّي لَمَعَ نَفَرٍ مِّنَ الْأَنْصَارِ وَالنَّاسِ فِي أَمْرِ عَظِيمٍ* [إِذْ هُم مَّتَّ] D *تَبَوَّءَتْ* I was with some men of the 'Anṣār, whilst the people were in great distress, when lo I had a light slumber; *وَقَالَ أَحَدُهُمْ إِنَّ مَلِكًا مِّنْ مَّلُوكِ* it is narrated that one of the kings of India had a wife; *وَفِي الْحَدِيثِ أَنَّ رَجُلًا قَالَ يُرْسُولُ إِلَهُهُ إِنَّ أُمِّي أَتَيْتُ فَجَاءَتْ* and in the *ḥadīth*—or collection of traditions—(we read) that a man

* Compare *en* and *eos* in Latin, as *en cum*, *eos cum* or *ecum*.

- A said, O apostle of God ! my mother has died suddenly ; كُنَّ فِي آذَانِهِ كَأَنَّهَا كَوْكَبٌ زُرِّيٌّ as if in his ears (were) hardness of hearing ; وَهَذَا لِأَنَّ الْإِلَهَ نُورٌ وَالْوُضُوءُ نُورٌ and (he did) this because knowledge is a light and the ablution (before prayer) is a light ; وَلَكِنَّ الْمُنَافِقِينَ لَا يَفْقَهُونَ but the hypocrites do not understand*.

- REM. a. These particles, along with those mentioned in rem. f, are named by the grammarians اِنَّا وَاَنْوَائِهَا ianna and its sisters, or اَلْحُرُوفُ اَلْمَشَبَّهَةُ بِاَلْفِعْلِ the particles which resemble the verb in having a certain verbal meaning and force, لِأَنَّ مَعَانِيَهَا مَعَانِيَ اَلْفِعْلِ مِثْلَ اُكْثِرْتُ وَشَبَّهْتُ وَاسْتَدْرَكْتُ وَتَمَنَيْتُ لِأَنَّ مَعَانِيَهَا مَعَانِيَ اَلْفِعْلِ مِثْلَ اُكْثِرْتُ وَشَبَّهْتُ وَاسْتَدْرَكْتُ وَتَمَنَيْتُ The word governed by them is called their اِسْمٌ or noun, and the predicate is called their خَبَرٌ or predicate.

- C REM. b. If the predicate is placed between اِنْ or اَنَّ and its noun, the logical accent lies upon the noun ; whereas, if the predicate stands after the noun, it receives the logical accent itself. For example, اِنْ مَعَكَ صَاحِبُكَ means your friend is with you ; but اِنَّ صَاحِبُكَ مَعَكَ your friend is with you.

- REM. c. A second subject after اِنْ, اَنَّ, and لَكِنَّ, may be put in the nominative, if the common predicate has been already expressed ; as اِنْ زَيْدًا جَالِسٌ وَبِشْرًا, or وَبِشْرٌ, verily Zeid is sitting, and Bîr (i.e. وَبِشْرٌ جَالِسٌ or وَبِشْرٌ كَذَلِكَ) ; عَلِمْتُ اَنَّ زَيْدًا جَالِسٌ (وَبِشْرٌ كَذَلِكَ) ; اِنْ زَيْدًا جَالِسٌ وَبِشْرًا, or وَبِشْرٌ, I know that Zeid is sitting, and Bîr ; لَكِنَّ عَمْرًا وَخَالِدًا, or وَخَالِدٌ, but 'Amr is going away, and Hâlid ;

* [In the phrase اِنَّ مِنْ خَيْرِ الْقَوْمِ اَوْ خَيْرِهِمْ زَيْدٌ one of the best intentioned of the people, or the very best of them, is Zeid, we must not write زَيْدًا because اِنْ is to be supplied after اَوْ. *Agāni* xviii. 77. D. G.]

إِنَّ الْخِلَافَةَ وَالنُّبُوَّةَ فِيهِمْ وَالتَّكْوِمَاتُ وَسَادَةُ أَطْهَارٍ A
and the office of prophet are in them (in their tribe), and noble deeds
and chiefs of spotless character.

RAM. d. When مَا is appended to كَانَ, أَنْ, and لَكِنْ, it
hinders their regimen, or, to speak more correctly, their governing
power does not extend beyond itself (مَا الْكَالَةُ the hindering ma),
and hence their noun is put in the nominative; as إِنَّمَا إِلَهُنَّ فِي
إِنَّمَا الصَّدَقَاتُ B verily usury is in the delay (of payment);
إِنَّمَا الْفُقَرَاءُ the obligatory alms are only for the poor (إِنَّمَا is usually
restrictive, see § 185, and Vol. i. § 362, n); إِنَّمَا يُوحَىٰ إِلَىٰ آلِهَةٍ
إِنَّمَا إِلَهُ الْكَوْكَبِ it is only revealed to me that your God is one God;
وَأَعْلَمُوا أَنَّمَا أَمْوَالُكُمْ وَأَوْلَادُكُمْ فِتْنَةٌ
وَأَنَّهُمْ كَالنَّارِ الْمُوقَدَةِ كَالنَّارِ الْمُوقَدَةِ C
as if flames of sulphur were its face; كَالنَّارِ الْمُوقَدَةِ كَالنَّارِ الْمُوقَدَةِ
as if his turban were a standard among men. The same influence is
exercised by the فَمِنْ أَلْفٍ or فَمِنْ أَلْفٍ (Vol. i. § 367, g);
as إِنَّ اللَّهَ ذَاهِبَةٌ verily the handmaiden of God is departing;
إِنَّ اللَّهَ مَنْ يَأْتِنَا نَأْتِيهِ verily, whoever comes to us, we will go to him;
إِنَّ اللَّهَ أَنَا اللَّهُ verily I am God.

RAM. e. If the lightened (مُسْتَلَفٌ) forms إِنَّ, أَنْ, and
لَكِنْ, be used, their government is likewise hindered, and their D
noun is put in the nominative.—إِنَّ is in this case always followed
by لِي [Vol. i. § 361, c, e], as إِنَّ زَيْدًا لَيَمُوتُ verily Zaid is going
away; وَإِنَّ هَٰذَيْنِ لَسَاحِرَيْنِ verily these two are sorcerers;
وَمَا مَرِيدَةٌ لَّيَمُوتُ لَكُنَّ جَمِيعٌ لَدَيْنَا مُخَضَّرُونَ
(لَتَأْتِيَكُمُ), shall be brought before Us.—As to أَنْ, the grammarians
assume an ellipse of the فَمِنْ أَلْفٍ, as أَنْ زَيْدًا لَيَمُوتُ
I know that Zaid is going away, i.e. أَنَّهُ or أَنَّهُ; قَدْ عَلِمُوا أَنَّ هَٰذَا

Vol. i. § 364, rem. b, to be verbs; and if so, they govern the A accusative by their own force and not by that of an omitted or implied verb*. لَعَلَّ, however, sometimes [especially in the dialect of 'Okèil] takes a genitive; as لَعَلَّ أَبِي الْبَغْوَارِ مِنْكَ قَرِيبٌ perhaps 'Abu 'l-Mijwar may be near thee; لَعَلَّ اللَّهُ فَضَّلَكُمْ عَلَيْنَا بِشَيْءٍ perhaps God may have given you some superiority over us.

REM. g. With the suffixes of the 1st person we say إِنَّنِي, or إِنِّي, and so with هَئَانَّ and لَكِنَّ; but لَعَلِّي is more usual than لَعَلَّنِي, whilst conversely لَتَيْتِي is very rare. The corre- B sponding Hebrew particle to إِنَّ viz. הִנֵּנִי, also governs the accusative, as appears from the forms 'הִנֵּנִי and 'הִנֵּנִי, ecce me.

REM. h. Some of the Arabs put the predicate of these words, as well as their noun, in the accusative; e.g. كَانَ أَذُنُهُ إِذَا تَشَوَّاهُ كَأَنَّ قَلَمًا مُنْهَرِقًا his ears, when he looks out eagerly, are like a quill or a pointed reed-pen; إِنَّ حُرَّاسَنَا أَشْدَا verily our guards are lions; يَا لَيْتَ أَيَّامَ الْبُيُوتِ رَوَّاجِعًا O would that the days of youth C could return! يَا لَيْتَنِي إِهَالِكُ O would that I were thou!

37. If the conjunction وَ connects two nouns in such a way that the second is subordinate to, and not coordinate with, the first, it governs the second in the accusative; as مَضَى زَيْدٌ وَالطَّرِيقُ Zîd went along the road; مَا زِلْتُ أَبِيرُ وَالنَّيْلُ I did not cease going along the Nile; فَاجْعِلُوا أَمْرَكُمْ وَشُرَكَاءَكُمْ decide then upon your affair with D your companions; [إِسْتَوَى الْمَاءُ وَالْخَشَبَةُ] water and wood are equal; مَا صَنَعْتَ وَأَبَاكَ what hast thou done, together with thy father!

* رَأَيْتَ = رَيْتَ Hence it can be construed with two objective complements in the accusative (like the أَفْعَالُ الْفُلُوبِ e.g. لَيْتَ زَيْدًا قَائِمًا O might Zîd rise! prop. utinam videas Zîdum surgentem.)

- A مَا لَكَ وَزَيْدًا مَا شَأْنُكَ وَزَيْدًا *I went together with him**; سِرْتُ وَإِيَّاهُ *what hast thou to do with Zaid?* وَاتَّكَلْتُ حَوْلَ نَجْدٍ *what hast thou to do with loitering about Nadjd?* (كَفَيْكَ or قَطَعَكَ) وَحَسْبُكَ *a dirham is enough for thee together with Zaid*; وَحَسْبُكَ *a sword of good steel is enough for thee with (when thou meetest) ad-Dubbāk*; وَأَلْحَجْ *do as thou pleasest* (§ 35, b, β) *about the pilgrimage (= عَلَيْكَ شَأْنُكَ مَعَ الْحَجِّ)* امْرَأًا وَنَفْسَهُ; *let a man alone (= دَعُهُ مَعَ نَفْسِهِ)*. This وَ is called by the grammarians, like the وَ that governs the subjunctive (§ 15, e), *وَאוُ الْمَجْعَةِ* or *وَاوُ الْجَمْعِ* the wāw of simultaneity, and *وَاوُ الْمُصَاحَبَةِ* the wāw of association or concomitance†.

[REM. a. The وَ is called *وَاوُ الْإِزْمِ* the wāw of adherence, if the two nouns belong necessarily together, as كُلُّ شَيْءٍ وَتَمَنَّهُ *each thing has its price*;

- C *كُلُّ إِنْسَانٍ وَهَمَّهُ* every man has his own care.]

REM. b. This accusative is termed *الْمَفْعُولُ مَعَهُ* or the object in connection with which something is done. It occurs, though but rarely, in Hebrew, as Esther, ch. iv. 16, *אֲנִי וְעַמִּי יָצְאוּ*, *I too, with my maidens, will fast so.*

- * [From this وَإِيَّاهُ the modern preposition *وِيَا* or *وَيَا* with has been formed (comp. Lane, p. 135 c). Spitta, *Grammatik*, § 83, p. 166, adduces this as an evident proof against Sprenger, who considered the whole theory of the *وَاوُ الْمَجْعَةِ* as false (*Alte Geogr.* p. 280). D. G.]

† Quite correctly too, for the subjunctive of the verb corresponds both in signification and in form to the accusative of the noun. The one shows that a person or thing depends upon an act, the other that one act depends upon, or is affected or governed by, another act. [It is perhaps superfluous to remark that the use of وَ with the accusative is not limited by the conditions given for the use of وَ with the subjunctive.]

38. The person or thing called, *الْمُنَادَى*, is generally preceded by A one or other of the *حُرُوفُ الْمُنَادَاةِ*, or *حُرُوفُ التَّعْيَاةِ*, *interjections*. The principal of these are: *أُ*, *آ**, *يَا*, *أَيُّهَا*, *أَيُّ*, *هَيْهَا*, *أَيُّهَا* (fem. *أَيُّهَا*), to which *لَا* may also be prefixed; and *وَ*.

(a) Of the first seven of these particles the most common are *أُ*, *يَا*, and *أَيُّهَا*. They require after them a noun not defined by the article, which is put sometimes in the nominative, sometimes in the accusative.

(a) The *nominative*—in the singular always without the *tênwin*— B is used when the particular person or thing called is directly addressed by the speaker, and no explanatory term of any description is appended to it; as *يَا مُحَمَّدُ* O *Muhammad* (nom. *مُحَمَّدٌ*); *يَا عَمَّارُ* O *'Ammār* (nom. *عَمَّارٌ*); *يَا عَمْرُو* O *'Amr* (nom. *عَمْرُو*, Vol. i. § 8, rem. b); *يَا طَلْحَةُ* O *Talḥa*; *يَا سِبْوَئِي* O *Sibawdih*; *يَا تَابُطُ شَرًّا* O *Ta'abbata Šarran*; *يَا ضَبِّي* O *man of the tribe of Dabba* (ضَبَّة); *يَا رَقَاشُ* O *thou man*; *يَا سَيِّدُ* O *sir*; *يَا عَيْنُ* O *eye*; *يَا جَارِيَةُ مَا أَسْمُكَ* what is thy name, girl? C *يَا رَجُلَانِ* ho you two men; *يَا رَجَالُ* ho you men; *يَا نَبِيَّوْنَ* O prophets; *يَا هَؤُلَاءِ*, *يَا هَذِهِ*, *يَا هَذَا* you there!

(β) The *accusative* is used: (1) when the person or thing called is indefinite† and not directly addressed by the speaker; as when a blind man says *يَا رَجُلًا خُذْ بِيَدِي* some man, take my hand, or *يَا جَارِيَةً خُذِي بِيَدِي* some woman, take my hand; or a preacher, D *يَا غَافِلًا وَالْمَوْتُ يَطْلُبُهُ* O thou that art heedless, whilst Death is seeking thee; or a poet, *يَا رَاحِلًا يَبْغِي زِيَارَةَ طَبِيبَةٍ* O traveller that wishest to

* [*أُ* is used in calling one who is near, *آ* in calling to one who is distant.]

† [Nöldeke writes in a note on *Delectus*, p. 67, l. 15: "Ego quidem in talibus nomen indefinitum esse nego."]

- A *visit Tuiba (el-Medina)*; أَبَا رَاحِبًا إِذَا عَرَضْتَ قَبْلَهَا نَدَامَايَ مِنْ نَجْرَانٍ أَنْ لَا تَلَايَا *O rider, if thou fallest in with (them), tell my comrades of Najrân that there is no meeting (for us).* (2) When it is directly addressed by the speaker, but has an explanatory term appended to it, namely, either a genitive, or an objective complement, or a preposition with its complement, or a determinative or limiting term; as يَا عَبْدُ اللَّهِ *O 'Abdu-'llâh*; يَا سَيِّدَ الْوَحُوشِ *O lord of the wild beasts*;
- B يَا أَبَا الْأَخْصَنِينِ *O father of the little fortress (an epithet of the fox)*; يَا صَاحِبَيْ *O ye two companions of mine*; يَا مُوقِدَيَّ نَارِي *O ye two kindlers of my fire*; يَا بَنِي إِسْرَائِيلَ *O children of Israel*; إِخْوَانَنَا *O brethren of ours*; يَا طَالِعًا جَبَلًا *O thou that art ascending a hill*; يَا مُعْطَى كُلِّ خَيْرٍ *O thou that art gifted with every good thing*; يَا خَيْرًا مِنْ زَيْدٍ *O thou that art kind towards men*;
- C يَا خَيْرًا مِنْ زَيْدٍ *O thou that art better than Zaid*; يَا حَسَنًا وَجْهَهُ *O thou that art handsome in face*; يَا مَضْرُوبًا غَلَامَةً *O thou whose slave has been beaten*.

The simple نَدَاءٌ, when the accusative is used, is merely an exclamation, addressed to no one in particular; but when the nominative is used, it is a real address, حِطَابٌ, to a definite individual. In the compound نَدَاءٌ no such distinction is made, and even in a real address the accusative is used, as being the case that depends on a verb, and to which, therefore, other nominal and verbal dependencies can be more readily attached; in contradistinction to the nominative, which is independent and closes the construction. The reason of the omission of the *tênwin* in the nominative singular seems to lie in the energy with which the word is uttered, whereby its termination is shortened, as in the imperative and jussive of the verb (see also rem. b).

REM. a. When no interjection is expressed, the same rules apply as above; e.g. يَا عِثْبَانَ *O 'Ithbân*; يَا الْقَرَشَ *O Lord of the*

Throne; خَلِيلِي O my two friends; أَنْحِبْنَا beloved of our A
souls / أَوْفُوا عَنْ هَذَا O friends of ours / هَذَا يُوسُفُ أَعْرِضْ عَنْ هَذَا Joseph, turn
away from this (leave it alone, take no further notice of it);
تِلْ becomes morning, O night; ائْتِدِ مَخْنُوقٌ ransom thyself,
O throttled one; حَسِبْ جِدْقَتِنَا شَاعِرِي قَوْمِ قَوِي حَسِبْ may your noses be
cut off, ye two poets who belong to an honourable people! With
pronouns this omission is very rare; as ذَا آرَعَوْا thou there, refrain
(from folly), for ذَا بِبَيْتِكَ هَذَا نَوَعَةٌ وَهَرَامٌ يَا ذَا through the like of B
thea, thou (man) there, (comes) heartache and torment (or ruin);
ثُمَّ أَتَمَّ هَؤُلَاءِ تَقْتُلُونَ أَنْفُسَكُمْ thereafter ye, ye men there, were slaying
your own selves; مَنْ لَا يَمُوتُ أَرْحَمُ مَنْ يَمُوتُ O Thou that dost
not, have mercy upon him who is dying.

REM. b. The suffix of the first person singular, يَـ, is generally
shortened in the vocative into *hara*, ـ (see above, at the end of
the section); as يَا رَبِّ O my lord; رَبِّ أُرِي my Lord, show me; C
يَا نَفْسِ O my soul; يَا عِبَادِي, or يَا عِبَادِ, O my servants; أَوْلَادِي my
friends! يَا بُنَيَّ O my dear son. This remark does not, of course,
apply to words ending in يَـ or ـى, from radicals تَوَّ and يَـ; as
يَا قَتَايَ, from قَتَايَ a youth, يَا قَاضِي, from قَاضِي a judge. Other
forms are admissible, besides يَـ and ـى; as, from عَبْدٌ a slave,
يَا عَبْدِي or يَا عَبْدَا, يَا عَبْدِي, and in pause يَا عَبْدِيْهُ, D
(compare no. c, rem. d). E.g. ابْنِ أُمِّ O son of my mother,
Kor'an vii. 149, يَا بَنَ عَمِّ O son of my uncle, يَا بُنَيَّ O my dear son,
يَا رَبِّ يَا رَبَّنَا تَجَاوَزْ عَنِّي; يَا بَنِي عَمِّ, يَا بَنِيْ
O daughter of my uncle, do not scold, but go
to sleep; يَا عَمَّاهُ هَلْ كُنْتُ أَعْوَرَ قَطُّ O my uncle, wast thou ever blind
of one eye? The words أَبٌ father and أُمٌّ mother admit of the
peculiar forms يَا أَبَتِ and يَا أُمَّتِ (also pronounced with fetha,

- A **يَا أُمُّ** and **يَا أَبُ** which become in pause **أُمَّتْ**, **أَبَتْ**. We likewise meet with **يَا أُمَّتَاهُ** and **يَا أَبَتَاهُ**.

REM. c. On the principle alluded to at the end of the section, as well as in rem. b, several classes of substantives admit of being shortened in the vocative by the rejection of one or more of their final letters. This abbreviation is called by the grammarians **التخفيف** the softening of the voice (compare Vol. i. § 283). Namely:

- (1) All substantives, whether proper or common, masculine or feminine, that end in **ة**; as **يَا تَوْبَةَ** for **يَا تَوْبَ**, **يَا أَجَارِيَةَ** for **يَا أَجَارِي**, **يَا مُغَوِيَةَ** for **يَا مُغَوِي** (names of men); **يَا أُمِّيَّةَ** for **يَا أُمِّيَّة**, **يَا مَيِّةَ** for **يَا مَيِّ** (names of women); **يَا أَعَادِلَ** for **يَا أَعَادِلَةَ**, **يَا نَاقَةَ** for **يَا نَاقَةَ**, **يَا نَاقَ** for **يَا نَاقَةَ**, **يَا شَا** (or **يَا شَا**) for **يَا شَاةَ**.
 (2) Simple proper names, not ending in **ة**, that contain at least four letters; as **يَا مَائِرَ** for **يَا مَائِرَةَ**, **يَا مَائِرَ** for **يَا مَائِرَةَ**, **يَا سَعَا** for **يَا سَعَاةَ** (name of a woman). If the word consists of more than four letters, and the penult is servile and quiescent, it disappears along with the last letter, as **يَا مَرْوَةَ**, **يَا عُمَرَ**, **يَا جَعْفَرَ**, **يَا مَسْكَدَ**; but in other cases it must be retained, as **يَا مَسْجِدَ**, **يَا مَسْجِدَ**, **يَا مَسْجِدَ**, **يَا مَسْجِدَ**, **يَا مَسْجِدَ**, though some admit the forms **يَا مَسْجِدَ** and **يَا مَسْجِدَ**. Words not ending in **ة** may also be inflected without regard to the portion dropped; as **يَا حَارَ**, **يَا حَارَ**, **يَا حَارَ**, instead of **يَا حَارَةَ**, **يَا حَارَةَ**, **يَا حَارَةَ**; and the same thing is admissible when the termination **ة** is not of the fem. gender, as **يَا مَسْكَدَ**, instead of **يَا مَسْكَدَةَ** (a man's name). Proper names compounded with a genitive (as **عَبْدُ شَيْسَ**), or forming a complete proposition (as **تَأْتِيكَ شَرًا**, **يَرْقَى نَحْرُهُ**) do not admit of any abbreviation, though we occasionally find such examples as **يَا تَأْتِيكَ**, dropping **شَرًا**; but if

they belong to the class called مُرَكَّبٌ مُزَجَّى (Vol. i. § 264), they are A shortened by the rejection of the second word, as يَا مَعْدِي, for يَا مَعْدِي هَؤُلَاءِ. (3) To these may be added some rarer cases, as يَا صَاحِبُ O companion, for يَا صَاحِبُ, as يَا شَيْخَ وَلَا تَزَلْ, as يَا صَاحِبُ, friend, gird up thy dress, and cease not to be mindful of death; and يَا كَرَّاءُ, for يَا كَرَّوَانُ, in the proverb أَطْرُقُ أَطْرُقُ كَرَّاءُ crouch down quietly, O bustard (or partridge); as well as the words يَا كَلْبُ (for يَا كَلْبَانُ) and يَا هُنَّ. [Comp. Vol. i. § 353*, 2.] B These last are inflected as follows:—

| Plur. | Dual. | Sing. | |
|------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|----|
| يَا كَلْبُونَ | يَا كَلْبَانِ | يَا كَلْبُ | M. |
| يَا كَلَاثُ | يَا كَلَتَانِ | يَا كَلَاءُ (كَلَاءُ، كَلْ) | F. |
| يَا هُنُونُ | يَا هُنَانِ | يَا هُنْ | M. |
| (يَا هُنُونَاهُ) | (يَا هُنَانِيهِ) | (يَا هُنَّةُ، يَا هَنَاءُ) | |
| يَا هَنَاتُ | يَا هَنَتَانِ | يَا هَنَّةُ، يَا هَنْتُ | F. |
| (يَا هَنَاتُوهُ) | (يَا هَنَتَانِيهِ) | (يَا هَنَتَاهُ) | C |

REM. d. We have said above that the noun which immediately follows these interjections does not admit the article. One exception is the name of God, اللَّهُ, from which we may say يَا اللَّهُ or, irregularly retaining the hêmza, يَا اللَّهُ*. Another is produced by the insertion of the pronoun هَذَا or هَؤُلَاءِ between the interjection and the vocative; as يَا هَؤُلَاءِ الرِّجَالُ, instead of يَا رَجُلٌ. D

* The more usual form, however, is اللَّهُمَّ, without any interjection prefixed, though we find occasionally in verse يَا اللَّهُمَّ. The origin of the termination مَّ is uncertain. [This اللَّهُمَّ is used as a corroborative interjection in the expressions إِلَّا اللَّهُمَّ unless indeed or unless possibly (§ 186, a, rem. d), and اللَّهُمَّ نَعَمْ yes indeed or yea verily (Lane, p. 83, e).]

- A *يَا ذَا الْقُوَّةِ بِمِثْلِ شَيْخِهِ; يَا رَجُلًا* O thou there, who terrifiest us with the murder of thy chief. But cases like *يَا الْأَسَدَ شِدَّةً* O (thou who art like) the lion in strength; *مِنْ أَجْلِكَ يَا أَتَى تَمِيتَ قَلْبِي* because of thee (for أَجْلِكَ مِنْ), O thou who hast enslaved my heart; and *يَا الْفُلَّامَانِ الْفُلَّانِ قَرًا* and O ye two slaves, who have fled; are very rare.

- REM. c. If a vocative, expressed by the nominative, be simply repeated, or another word be substituted for it (الْمَعْلُومُ, see § 139, rem. b, 2), or it be connected with another vocative by a conjunction (عَطْفُ الْمَنْصُوقِ, see § 139, rem. b, 3), the ordinary rules are followed; as *يَا زَيْدُ زَيْدُ* O Zaid, Zaid; *يَا رَجُلُ رَجُلُ* O thou man there—Zaid; *يَا زَيْدُ وَزَيْدُ* O Zaid and 'Amr; *يَا رَجُلُ وَزَيْدُ* O thou man and Zaid; *يَا زَيْدُ أَوْ زَيْدُ* O Zaid or 'Amr; but *يَا زَيْدُ عَبْدُ اللَّهِ* O Zaid—(I mean) 'Abdu 'llah; *يَا زَيْدُ وَعَبْدُ اللَّهِ* O Zaid and 'Abdu 'llah. If, however, the connected word (الْمَنْصُوقُ) has the article, both the nominative and accusative are admissible; as *يَا عَمْرُو وَالْحَارِثُ*, or *وَالْحَارِثُ* O 'Amr and al-Harith; *يَا زَيْدُ وَالْفُلَّامُ*, or *وَالْفُلَّامُ* O Zaid and the slave; *يَا جِبَالُ أُورُبَى*, or *وَالْأَطْيَرُ* O mountains, repeat ye (the praises of God) with him, and ye birds.—Should a vocative be repeated in such a way that the repetition is necessarily put in the accusative by a following genitive, then the accusative may be used in the first instance as well as the nominative. For example, *يَا سَعْدُ سَعْدُ الْأُرُبَّى*, or *يَا سَعْدُ* O Sa'd, Sa'd of (the tribe of) al-'Aus; *يَا ثَمَرُ ثَمَرُ عَدِي*, or *يَا ثَمَرُ* O Thim, Teim of (the tribe of) 'Adi; *يَا زَيْدُ زَيْدُ الْهَيْمَلَاتِ الْهَيْمَلُ* O Zaid, Zaid of the high-bred camels of slender make. The grammarians explain the accusative by saying either that the second accusative is مُتَعَمَّرٌ arbitrarily inserted, or that the genitive has been dropped in the first instance. In the one case the original construction is *يَا سَعْدُ الْأُرُبَّى*; in the other, *يَا سَعْدُ الْأُرُبَّى سَعْدُ الْأُرُبَّى*.

REM. f. If a vocative, expressed by the nominative, be connected with another substantive by a **عَطْفُ التَّوْبِيكِ** (see § 139, rem. a) or a **عَطْفُ الْإِيَانِ** (see § 139, rem. b, 3), the appositive may be put either in the nominative or the accusative; as **يَا تَمِيمُ**, or **يَا مُسَيَّدُ النَّبِيِّ**, *O (tribe of) Tāmim, all of you*; **يَا مُسَيَّدُ النَّبِيِّ**, or **يَا زَيْدُ**, *O thou man there, Zaid*; **يَا هَذَا زَيْدُ**, or **يَا هَذَا**, *id.*; **يَا هَلَامُ بِشْرُ**, or **بِشْرُ**, *O slave, Bītr*; **يَا أَغْرَابِي أَصْحَى جَلْفًا جَالِيًا**, *O thou foolish, churlish, rough boor, Tab. II. 1312, l. 2 seq.*; unless it has a genitive after it, when it must be in the accusative; as **يَا تَمِيمُ طَلْحَمُ**, *O (tribe of) Tāmim, all of you*; **يَا إِبْرَاهِيمَ خَلِيلَ اللَّهِ**, *O Abraham, the friend of God*; **يَا زَيْدُ ذَا الْقَبِيلِ**, *O Zaid, skilled in wiles*; **يَا زَيْدُ أَخَا وَرْقَةَ**, *O Zaid, brother of Warḥa*; **يَا زَيْدُ ابْنِ أَبِي**, *O Zaid, my brother's son*; **يَا هِنْدُ ابْنَةُ هَيْثَا**, *O Hind, our uncle's daughter*.—If the word **ابْنُ** stands between the names of son and father, it loses its prosthetic **ا** (Vol. i. § 21, b), and the name of the person addressed may be put either in the nominative or the accusative [though the latter is generally preferred]; as **يَا زَيْدُ بَنَ عَمْرٍو**, or **يَا زَيْدُ**, *O Zaid, son of 'Amr*; **مُرَّ يَا مَرْوَةَ بَنَ مُلَيْدٍ**, *Murra, O Murra, Murra son of Tālid*; **وَتَبَنَى السَّجْدَ يَا عَمْرُ بَنَ تَلَيْ**, *and thou buildest up glory, O 'Umar son of Lāil*; **عَلَيْكَ سَلَامُ اللَّهِ قَيْسُ بَنَ عَاصِمٍ**, *God's peace upon thee, O Kaïs ibn 'Āsim, Hamāsa 367 with the var. قَيْسُ*. D The same construction holds with **ابْنَةُ**; as **يَا هِنْدُ ابْنَةُ عَاصِمٍ**, or **يَا هِنْدُ**, *O Hind, daughter of 'Āsim*.

REM. g. An adjective in connection with a vocative, expressed by the nominative, may likewise be put either in the nominative or the accusative; as **يَا زَيْدُ الْعَاقِلِ**, or **الْعَاقِلِ**, *O Zaid the intelligent*; **يَا زَيْدُ الْكَبِيرِ**, or **الْعَاقِلِ**, *O thou there, the intelligent*; **يَا هَذَا الْعَاقِلِ**, or **الْكَبِيرِ**, *O Zaid, whose father is noble*; **يَا هَذَا الْكَبِيرِ**, or **الْأَبِ**, *O Zaid, whose father is noble*.

- A *وَأَبْنُ سَعْدَى بِأَجْوَدَ مِنْكَ يَا عُمَرُ الْجَوَادَا* not *Ka'b 'ibn Māma nor 'Ibn Sa'dā was more bountiful than thou, O 'Omar the bountiful*; *يَا قَابِئُ الْبَرَى* *O thou unrighteous man, the apostate, 'El-Mubarrad, p. 573, l. 1].*

- REM. A. The interjection *يَا* is sometimes prefixed to an imperative, as *يَا اسْجُدُوا* *O, prostrate yourselves*; *يَا فَار* *O, be thou safe, O house of Maiya, despite (all) wear and tear, or during wear and tear*; *يَا صَبْحَانِي قَبْلَ غَارَةِ سِنْجَالٍ* *O bring me a morning-draught before the attack on Singāl*; *يَا حَالِدٍ* *O come forth to war, Abū Halid*; to the optative *لَيْتَ* (see § 36, rem. f), as *يَا لَيْتَ شِعْرِي* *O would that I knew*; *يَا لَيْتَ كُنْتُ مَعَهُمْ* *O would that I had been with them*; and to a nominal or verbal proposition, as *يَا لَعْنَةُ اللَّهِ* *O, woe to Zeid*; *يَا لَعْنَةُ اللَّهِ وَالْأَقْوَامِ كُلِّهِمْ وَالصَّالِحِينَ عَلَى سِمْعَانَ بْنِ جَارٍ* *O, the curses of God and of all the peoples and of the just be upon Sim'an as a neighbour*;
C *يَا قُلَّ خَيْرُ الْغَوَالِي* *O, little is the good of the women*. In these cases some grammarians assume an ellipse of the *مُنَادَى* or person called, as *يَا قَوْمِ بُوْسُ لَيْتٍ*, whilst others regard *يَا* merely as a *حَرْفُ تَنْبِيْهِ* or particle used to excite attention*.

- (b) *يَا أَيُّهَا* and *يَا أَيُّهَا* (or *يَا أَيُّهَا*) require after them a noun, singular, dual or plural, defined by the article, and in the nominative case; as
D *يَا أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ* *O people*; *يَا أَيُّهَا الْمَلِكُ* *O king*; *يَا أَيُّهَا الْمَرْأَةُ*, or *أَيُّهَا الْمَرْأَةُ*, *O woman*; *يَا أَيُّهَا النَّفْسُ* *O soul*; *يَا أَيُّهَا الْعَمِيرُ* *O caravan*; *يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ*

* [The ellipse of the *مُنَادَى* is evident in such phrases as *يَا أَبَايَ* *O thou, whom I would ransom with my father and my mother*; *يَا فِدْكَ نَفْسِي* *I pray God to help me against thee, O thou whom I would ransom with my life*, *Agāni* xviii. 185, lines 22, 23. D. G.]

آمَنُوا *O ye who believe*; *أَيُّهُ الْمُؤْمِنُونَ* [for *أَيُّهَا*] *O believers*. The demonstrative *ذَا* is also admissible; as *يَا أَيُّهَا ذَا الْقَبْلِ* *thou there, come forward!* *أَلَا أَيُّهَا الْبَاجِعُ الْوَجْدُ نَفْسَهُ* *O thou there, whose soul passion (or grief) is killing*; *أَلَا أَيُّهَا ذَا النَّابِغِ السِّيدِ* *O thou there, who barked at (reviled) the Bēnū 's-Sid*.

REM. *أَيُّهَا* is occasionally used *لِلإِخْتِصَاصِ*, for specification (see § 35, b, δ), by a speaker to call attention to himself or himself and his companions; as *أَنَا أَنَا فَأَفْعَلُ كَذَا أَيُّهَا الرَّجُلُ* *as for me I will do so and so, O man (meaning himself)*; *اللَّهُمَّ اغْفِرْ لَنَا أَيُّهَا الْعَصَابَةُ* *O God, forgive us, O band (me and my companions)*; *قَتَلْنَا أَيُّهَا* *and so we remained behind, O three (we three)*. In this case *أَيُّهَا* must be preceded by a clause containing the pronoun to which it refers, and *يَا* is never prefixed to it.

(c) *وَآ*, which is used to express sorrow or pain, and is hence called *حَرْفُ التَّذَنُّبِ*, the particle of lamentation, follows the same rules as *يَا*; e.g. *وَآ مُحَمَّدٌ* *alas Muhammad!* *وَآ عَبْدُ اللَّهِ* *alas 'Abdu-'llāh!* Generally, however, the termination *لَا*, in pause *لَاَ*, is added, which usually effaces the final vowels; as *وَآ زَيْدًا*, or *وَآ زَيْدَاهُ*, *alas Zaid!* If a genitive follows, this termination is annexed to it, and not to the governing word; as *وَآ أَمِيرٌ* *alas for the commander of the faithful!* Similarly with *ابْنُ* *son,* *وَآ عَمْرُو بْنُ الزُّبَيْرِ* *alas for 'Amr the son of 'Az-Zubair!* But as to an adjective, there is a doubt, some admitting *وَآ زَيْدٌ الْكَرِيمُ* *alas for the noble Zaid,* and others not.

REM. a. *وَآ* can be prefixed only to a proper name or a definite word*; we cannot say *وَآ رَجُلًا* or *وَآ هَذَا*. Nor can it precede

* [That is, not having a vague signification, for *هَذَا* is definite in the grammatical sense. The rule refers, of course, only to the cases

- A **وَا مِّنْ حَفَرٍ بِّئْرَ زَمْزَمَهِ** ; though it may be prefixed to **مِّنْ** as **وَا مِّنْ حَفَرٍ بِّئْرَ زَمْزَمَهِ**, *alas for him who dug the well of Zâmzâm!*

REM. b. **يَا** may also be used **لِلْمُنْدَبَةِ** as **يَا عَمْرُو عَمْرَاهُ**, *O 'Amr, 'Amr!*

REM. c. Words ending in the **êlif makṣara** (ـِى) usually reject that termination before adding **يَا**, as **وَا مُوسَى**, from **مُوسَى** *Moses*, though **وَا مُوسَى** is admissible. See Vol. i. § 368, rem. b.

- B REM. d. The suffix pronoun of the 1st pers. sing. may either be retained or rejected; as **وَا عَبْدِي** or **وَا عَبْدَا**, *O my servant!*
يَا اَسَفَا or **يَا اَسَفَا** *O my back!* **وَا ظَهْرَاهُ** or **يَا اَسَفَا** *O brethren!* **يَا وَيْلَتِي** or **يَا لَيْتِي**, **يَا حَسْرَتِي** or **يَا حَسْرَتَا**, **وَا حَزَنًا**, **يَا اَسَفَا**, *O my grief!*—The suffixes of the 2nd pers. sing. fem. and the 3rd pers. sing. masc. retain their vowels in a lengthened form, to prevent confusion: **وَا غُلَامَكَ**, *alas for thy slave*, is masc., the fem. being **وَا غُلَامِكِي**; whereas **وَا غُلَامَهَا** is fem., the masc. being **وَا غُلَامَهُ**. Compare certain forms of **يَا هُنَّ** under a, rem. c, 3.

- C REM. e. In verse the form **يَا** is occasionally used, even out of pause; as **يَا هُنَا** *O thou there*; **يَا مَرْحَبًا بِحِمَارِ عَفْرَا** *O welcome is the ass of 'Afrâ*.

39. (a) When the negative **لَا** is immediately followed by an indefinite object, of which it absolutely denies the existence, it governs that object in the accusative; and as the whole weight of the sentence falls upon the negative particle, the substantive is abbreviated, when possible, by the omission of the **tāwin**. If there be a predicate expressed, it must be likewise indefinite, but in the nominative case. For example: **لَا رَجُلٌ فِي الدَّارِ** *there is no man in the house*;

where **وَا** and **يَا** are used to wail for the loss of a person, not to the exclamations **وَا حَزَنًا** or **وَا اَسَفَا** (**يَا اَسَفَا**) *oh my spoliation!* or **وَا حَزَنًا** *oh my grief!* **وَا حَزَنًا** and *alas my wonder* (Lane sub **حَتَّى**). Comp. however rem. d. D. G.]

لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ *this*^A *there is no god but God*; لَا رَيْبَ فِيهِ *look, there is no doubt regarding it*; لَا رَجُلَ قَائِمٍ *there is no man standing*; لَا أَحَدَ خَيْرَ مِنْكَ *there is no one better than thou*; لَا إِلَهَيْنِ *there are not two Gods*; لَا رِجَالَ هُنَا *there are no men here*; لَا مُسْلِمِينَ *there are no Muslims in the city*; لَا نَاصِرِينَ لَكَ *there are no helpers for thee*; لَا مُسْلِمَاتٍ عِنْدَنَا *there are no Muslim women in our possession*; لَا لَذَاتٍ لِلشَّيْبِ *there are no pleasures for grey hairs*; لَا رِئَابَ لَهَا *the aquatic animals which have no lungs*; B
[لَا مَحَالَةَ *or* لَا بُدَّ مِنْ ذَلِكَ] *there is no avoiding it* (Vol. i. § 364, h); وَلَا غَرَوْ أَنْ يَحْذُوَ الْفَتَى حَذُوَ وَالِدِهِ *there is no wondering that the young man should follow the example of his father*. But if the negative be separated from its object, it is put in the nominative; as لَا فِي الدَّارِ رَجُلٌ *there is no man in the house*; لَا فِيهَا غَوْلٌ *in it* (viz. *the wine of Paradise*) *there is no injurious force*.

REM. a. The rule regarding the retention of the terminations C
ن and ن in the dual and plural may seem to be contradicted by
such examples as لَا يَدَيَّ لَكَ بِالظُّلْمِ *thou canst do no wrong* (lit. *thou hast not two hands for wrong*); لَا أُذُنَيَّ لَهَا *she has no ears*;
لَا نَاصِرِي لَكَ *thou hast no helpers*; but in these cases the grammarians say that the preposition
لِ is مُتَّحَمَةً تَوْكِيدًا لِلْإِثْبَاتِ, arbitrarily inserted to strengthen the
affirmation, and that the preceding noun is really in the construct D
state. In the same way too they explain the phrases لَا أَبَا لَكَ *thou hast no father*, and لَا أَخَا لَهُ *he has no brother*, which are
generally used instead of لَا أَبَاءَكَ and لَا أَخَاءَهُ. [But compare
Vol. i. § 315, footnote.] The form أَبٌ is, however, also used before
لِ, as أَبِي الْإِسْلَامِ لَا أَبَ لِي سِوَاهُ *Al-'Islam is my father, I have no father but it*; and if any transposition takes place, the ن of the

- A dual and plural must of course be restored, as لَا لَكَ فِي هَذَا بَدَانٍ *thou hast nothing to do with this matter.*

REM. b. The plur. fem. in سَات may, it is said, take feth instead of kâr, as مُسَلِّيَاتٌ عِنْدَنَا.

REM. c. The interrogative أ may be prefixed to لَا, either to ask a simple question or to convey a reproach, more rarely to express a wish; as أَلَا أَصْطَبَارَ لِسَلْمَى *has Selmâ no patience?*

- B أَلَا عَمْرٍو لَيْسَ أَلَا أَرْجُوهُ لَيْسَ وَلَيْسَ شَبِيهَتُهُ *has one no self-restraint, whose youth is on the wane?* أَلَا عَمْرٍو لَيْسَ مُسْتَطَاعٌ رُجُوعُهُ *is there no life, the return of which is possible, after it has passed away? (would that a life, which has once passed away, could possibly return?)*

(b) If a genitive be attached to the substantive after لَا, the accusative must of course be used in its construct form, as لَا غُلَامَ رَجُلٍ *there is no slave of any man present*; لَا صَاحِبَ صَفِيٍّ مُوجُودٍ *no true friend can be found.*

- C But if the substantive be followed by an explanatory term of the nature of an objective complement, a preposition with its complement, or a determinative or limiting term, the tenwin is retained (compare § 38, α, β, 2); as لَا طَائِعًا جَبَلًا ظَاهِرًا *there is no one ascending a hill visible*; لَا رَاجِعًا فَرَسًا فِي الطَّرِيقِ *there is no one riding a horse on the road*; لَا خَيْرًا مِنْ زَيْدٍ عِنْدَنَا *there is no better (man) than Zaid in our opinion*; لَا نَاطِقًا بِخَيْرٍ عِنْدَنَا *there is no one who speaks good with us*; لَا حَسَنًا فِعْلُهُ مَذْمُومٌ *no one whose deeds are good is blame-worthy*; لَا حَافِظًا لِلْقُرْآنِ عِنْدَكُمْ *there is no one among you who knows the Kor'ân by heart.*
- D

REM. Nomina agentis, however, when they take their objective complement by means of the preposition لِ (§ 31), constantly reject the tenwin;

as إِنَّ يَمْسَسَكَ اللَّهُ بِضَرْفٍ فَلَا كَاشِفَ لَهُ إِلَّا هُوَ وَإِنْ يُرِدْكَ *if God touch thee with trouble, there is none to*

§ 39] *The Verb.*—3. *Government of the Verb.*—(a) *The Accus.* 97

remove it but He, and if He seek thee with good, there is none to keep ^A back His bounty; لَا مُبَدِّلَ لِكَلِمَاتِ اللَّهِ none can change the words of God.

(c) If an adjective be immediately annexed to an accusative after لَا, it may either take the same form without the tènwin, or it may retain the tènwin, or, lastly, it may be put in the nominative with the tènwin; as لَا رَجُلَ ظَرِيفٍ فِيهَا, or رَجُلٌ ظَرِيفًا, or لَا رَجُلٌ ظَرِيفٌ, there is no witty man in it (the house). But if the adjective be ^B separated in any way from the substantive, the first of these three constructions is no longer admissible; as لَا رَجُلَ فِيهَا ظَرِيفٌ, or ظَرِيفًا, there is no witty man in it, but not ظَرِيفٌ.

(d) If another substantive be connected with the accusative by the conjunction وَ, the particle لَا may be repeated or not. (a) If لَا be repeated, the first substantive may be put in the accusative without the tènwin, and the second either in the accusative, with or without the tènwin, or in the nominative; as لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ (قُوَّةٌ, قُوَّةٌ) إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ ^C there is no power and no strength save in God: or the first substantive may be put in the nominative, and the second either in the accusative without the tènwin or in the nominative; as لَا حَوْلٌ وَلَا قُوَّةٌ (قُوَّةٌ) إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ. (β) If لَا be not repeated, the first substantive is put in the accusative without the tènwin, and the second either in the nominative or in the accusative with the tènwin; as لَا رَجُلٌ وَامْرَأَةٌ (وَامْرَأَةٌ) there is neither man nor woman in the house. Examples: ^D لَا نَسَبَ الْيَوْمِ وَلَا خُلَّةَ there is no kinship today and no friendship; لَا أُمٌّ لِي إِنْ كَانَ ذَاكَ وَلَا أَبٌ may I have no mother, if this be so, and no father; لَا أَبٌ وَآبَتُنَا مِثْلُ مَرْوَانَ وَآبَتِهِ there is no father and no son like Marwān and his son; وَلَا تَأْتِمِرُ فِيهَا وَلَا حِمْنٌ وَلَا وَلَا تَلْعَوُ وَلَا تَأْتِمِرُ فِيهَا وَلَا حِمْنٌ وَلَا وَلَا تَلْعَوُ and there is no idle talk in it (in Paradise), and no accusing (one another) of sin, and no death, and in it there is none to reproach;

- A *لَا يَوْمَ لَا يَتَّعِ فِيهِ وَلَا خُلَّةٌ وَلَا شَفَاعَةٌ* a day in which there shall be no bartering, nor friendship, nor intercession; *لَا خَوْفٌ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا هُمْ* on them shall come no fear, neither shall they be grieved (Kor'an ii. 36, where a var. reading is *خَوْفٌ*). R. S.]

- REM. a. The particle *لَا*, when used as above, is called by the grammarians *لَا نَافِيَةُ الْجِنْسِ*, or *لَا يَنْفِي الْجِنْسِ*, the *lā* that denies the whole genus, [and *لَا أَتَّيِلَّةٌ* the *lā* that denies absolutely]. The substantive in the accusative is called *إِسْمُ لَا*, the noun of *lā*, and the predicate *خَبَرُ لَا*, the predicate of *lā*. The predicate may be omitted, when it has already been sufficiently indicated; as when one asks *هَلْ عِنْدَكَ رَجُلٌ* is there a man in thy house? and you reply *لَا رَجُلٌ* there is no one (scil. *عِنْدِي*); or *هَلْ مِنْ رَجُلٍ* is there any one standing up? and you say *لَا رَجُلٌ* no one (scil. *لَا كَائِمٌ*). The omission of the noun, on the contrary, is very rare; as *لَا عَلَيْكَ*, for *لَا بَأْسَ عَلَيْكَ*, there is no fear for thee or no harm will befall thee.

- REM. b. The noun of *لَا* should, according to the grammarians, be always indefinite (*نَكْرَةً*). Apparent examples to the contrary, as *لَا أَمْرٌ لَهَا*, a disputed case, and no *Abū Hasan* for it (to decide it), are explained to mean *لَا مُسَمًّى بِأَبِي حَسَنٍ*, and no one named *Abū Hasan*, or *لَا مِثْلَ أَبِي حَسَنٍ*, and no one like *Abū Hasan*; *لَا هَيْئَةٌ لَيْلَى لِمَطِيٍّ* there is no *Haiṭam* tonight for the beasts that carry us; *لَا أُمَيَّةٌ بِالْبِلَادِ* there is no 'Umèiya in the land. An adjective added to any of these names would be indefinite, as *لَا أَمْرٌ لَهَا* and no compassionate *Abū Hasan* to decide it.

40. Having thus treated of the accusative as the objective complement, we now proceed to speak of it as the *adverbial* complement in a stricter sense (see § 22, b). This depends—

4. On the idea of *being* or *existence*, when expressed (a) by the substantive verb كَانَ, or (β) by other verbs, the signification of which includes that of كَانَ. The general idea of existence is in this case limited and determined by the accusative.

41. The verb كَانَ, *to be, to exist*, when it supplies the place of the logical copula, requires the predicate, to which the being or existence of the subject refers, to be put in the accusative; as

كَانَ الْبَلَاءُ مُقْتَرًا بِصِيبِهِ لَا مَحَالَةَ *if the calamity is decreed (or B fated), it will befall him without doubt*; كَانَ هُوَ وَأَخُوهُ مُعَلِّمَيْنِ بِالطَّائِلِ *he and his brother were teachers in Et-Tā'if*; تَكُونُوا شُهَدَاءَ عَلَى النَّاسِ *that ye may be witnesses against mankind, and (that) the Apostle may be a witness in regard to you*; وَمَنْ يَكُنْ وَفِي الْقُلُوبِ الشَّيْطَانُ لَهُ قَرِينًا فَسَاءَ قَرِينًا *and whoever hath Satan as his companion, a bad companion is he! and if they repent, C إن يَكُنْ قَلْبُكَ نَاصِرًا عَلَيْهِ وَإِنْ لَا يَكُنْ فَلَا it will be well for them*; وَإِنْ يَكُنْ لَكَ خَيْرٌ لَكَ فِي قَتْلِهِ *if it be he, thou wilt not be able to overcome him*; and if it be not he, there is no good to thee in killing him; كُونُوا حِجَارَةً *be ye stones or iron*; وَجَلِبْ سَادَ فِي قَوْمِهِ الْاَتَى وَكُونَكَ *by liberality and mildness a man becomes a chief among his people, and thy becoming so is easy for thee*; وَمَا كُلُّ مَنْ يَبْدَى *and not every one who shows a cheerful face is thy D brother*. But if كَانَ has only a subject connected with it, to which the idea of existence inherent in the verb is attributed, that subject is put, like every other, in the nominative; as كَانَ تَاجِرٌ وَكَانَ لَهُ ثَلَاثُونَ *there was (or lived) a merchant, and he had (lit. there were to him) three sons* (كَانَ تَاجِرًا would mean *he was a merchant*); فَمَنْ كَانَ لَهُ *but he who has (lit. to whom there is) much property*;

A **كَانَ الْمَقْعُورُ هَاجِرًا** *what is fated will come to pass*. In the former case, the substantive verb is called by the grammarians **كَانَ النَّاقِصَةُ**, the *incomplete or defective, relative kâna*, because it requires an attribute to complete the sense; in the latter, **كَانَ التَّامَّةُ**, the *complete, absolute kâna*, because it contains the attribute in itself and does not require any other.

REM. a. The subject is called **إِسْمُ كَانَ**, the *noun of kâna*, and the predicate **خَبَرُ كَانَ** the *predicate of kâna*. The natural sequence of the three is verb, subject, predicate, as **كَانَ زَيْدٌ قَاتِلًا**; but we may also say **وَكَانَ حَقًّا عَلَيْنَا نَصْرُ** **كَانَ قَاتِلًا زَيْدٌ**, as *as there is none equal unto Him; and even ZAYD was a killer*, especially in interrogative and alternative sentences, as **أَكْبِرِ الضَّيْفَ غَنِيًّا كَانَ أَوْ فَقِيرًا** *honour a guest, whether he be rich or poor* [§ 6, a]. This inversion is, however, in some cases impossible; for example, *my brother was my companion* must be expressed by **كَانَ أَخِي رَافِقِي**, because **كَانَ رَافِقِي أَخِي** would naturally mean *my companion was my brother*. [If subject and predicate are both definite, it is allowed, in case of inversion, to put the latter in the nominative, the former in the accusative, converting thereby the logical subject into the grammatical predicate, the logical predicate into the grammatical subject, as **كَانَ أَخَاكَ زَيْدٌ** for **كَانَ أَخَاكَ زَيْدٌ**. Poets allow themselves to do the same in other cases, as **وَمَا شَرُّ الثَّلَاثَةِ بِصَاحِبِكَ** for **وَمَا بِشَرِّ الثَّلَاثَةِ بِصَاحِبِكَ** (Tab. i. 755, l. 2). D. G.]

REM. b. **كَانَ** may sometimes be omitted, especially in alternative conditional clauses; as **سَوْفَ تُجَازَى إِنْ خَيْرًا وَإِنْ شَرًّا** *thou wilt be recompensed either with good or with evil* (i.e. **إِنْ كَانَ** **قَدْ قِيلَ مَا قِيلَ إِنْ صِدْقًا وَإِنْ كَذِبًا**); **مَعْنَاهُ الْمَبَالِغَةُ فِي الشَّيْءِ** *what is spoken is spoken, be it true or false*;

كَانَ مَا كَانَ مِنْ شَرٍّ أَوْ مِنْ خَيْرٍ *its meaning is 'to do one's utmost in a thing,' be it what it may, whether good or bad ;* مِنْ لَدُنْ شَوْلَا *from the time they were pregnant, till their young were following them (i.e. مِنْ لَدُنْ كَانَتْ التَّيَاقُ شَوْلَا) ;* اِيْتِنِي بِدَابَّةٍ وَلَوْ ; (مِنْ لَدُنْ كَانَتْ التَّيَاقُ شَوْلَا) *bring me a beast (to ride), even if it be an ass* [§ 4, rem. b].

REM. c. سَرَاةُ بَنِي أَبِي بَكْرٍ *is rarely merely redundant ; as* سَرَاةُ بَنِي أَبِي بَكْرٍ *the heroes of the Bnā 'Abi Bākr* B
رُكِبُوا عَلَى كَبَابٍ *ride upon branled Arab steeds ;* كَبَابٍ *ride upon branled Arab steeds ;* إِذَا مَرَرْتَ بِدَارِ قَوْمٍ وَجِهْرَانٍ *and how when thou passest by the dwelling of a*
لَنَا كَانُوا كَرَامٍ *tribe and of noble neighbours of ours ?* وَلَمْ يُوَجَدْ كَانٌ مِثْلُهُمْ *and their like was not found*.*

REM. d. The verb كَانَ, Æthiop. ነገ፡ kōna, does not occur in Hebrew in the sense of *to be, exist, happen*, though it is so used in Syriac (rare) and Phœnician. The construction of the Æthiopic C
verb is the same as that of the Arabic ; in the other Semitic languages, which have lost the final flexional vowels, the case of the predicate cannot be observed, but doubtless it was the accusative.—In Hebrew the radical נִן retains its original signification of *to stand* (compare Fr. *être*, older form *estre*, and Span. *estar*, from Lat. *stare*), and the place of كَانَ is supplied by הָיָה or הָיָה, Aram. הָיָה, *to fall* (הָוָה), *happen, be* (compare وَقَعَ, *to fall, happen, Lat. accidit, Eng. it fell out*), of which the predicate must D
also be looked upon as in the accusative.

43. The same construction appertains to certain verbs, called by the grammarians أَخْوَاتُ كَانَ, *the sisters of kāna*, which add some circumstantial or modifying idea to the simple one of existence. This may be : (a) the idea of *duration or continuity*, as in دَامَ *to continue*,

* [Different from this is the use of كَانَ after participles, infinitives and other nomina verbalia, in the sense of *he (it) was* or *was formerly*. See many examples in the Gloss. Geogr. and the Gloss. to Ṭabari. D. G.]

- A *to last*, construed in the perfect with the *الْعَمِيمُومَةُ* (see § 7, and Vol. i. § 367, p), *بَقِيَ* *to remain, to last*; *زَالَ*, *بَرَحَ*, *فَتَى*, *انْفَلَقَ*, *to cease*, construed, in the perfect or imperfect, with a negative particle; (b) the idea of *change* or *conversion*, as in *صَارَ*, *عَادَ*, *رَجَعَ*, and *أَفَى*, *to turn out, to become*; (c) the idea of *time*, as in *طُلَّ* *to be or do during the whole day*, *بَاتَ* *during the whole night*, *أُشْفِرَ* *at daybreak*, *غَدَا* or *أَصْبَحَ* *in the morning*, *أَفْصَى* *in the forenoon*, *رَاحَ* or *أَمَسَى* *in the evening*, all of which verbs are often used as simple synonyms of *كَانَ*, without any regard to the secondary idea of time; or, (d) the idea of *negation*, by which that of existence itself is absolutely denied, as in *لَيْسَ* *not to be*.
 Examples: *لَا طَيْبَ لِلْعَيْشِ مَا دَامَتْ مُنْقَصَةً لَذَائِهِ بِأَوْكَارِ الْمَوْتِ وَالْهَرَمِ* *there is no pleasure in life, as long as its joys are troubled by the recollection of death and old age*; *لَا تَعُدُّ نَفْسَكَ مِنَ النَّاسِ مَا دَامَ* *do not count thyself among men, as long as anger has the mastery over thee*; *لَا يَزَالُ اللَّهُ مُخْبِتًا إِلَيْكَ* *may God never cease being beneficent to you*; *لَا تَزَلْ ذَاكِرَ الْمَوْتِ* *never cease bearing death in mind*; *قَالُوا لَنْ نَبْرَحَ عَلَيْهِ عَاكِفِينَ* *they said, we will not cease standing by it (worshipping it)*; *صَارَ الطِّينُ خُرْقًا* *the clay became pottery*; *وَكَانَ يَرَى الْمَاءَ يَجِيرُ بُخَارًا وَالْبَخَارَ يَجِيرُ مَاءً* *and he thought that the water became vapour, and the vapour became water*; *فَاتَكَ* *thou hast been sold, and hast become a slave in Makkah*; *وَمَا الْإِنْسَانُ إِلَّا كَالسِّرَاجِ وَضَوْؤُهُ يَمُودُ رَمَادًا* *man is like nought but the lamp and its light, which becomes ashes*; *أَفَى سَوَادُ شَعْرِهِ* *the blackness of his hair became whiteness*; *الْعَدُوُّ مَا يَرْجِعُ صَدِيقًا* *an enemy never becomes a friend*; *كُلُّ وَجْهٍ مُسَوَّدًا* *his face became black*; *وَالَّذِينَ يَمُتُونَ رَبَّهُمْ سُجَّدًا وَقِيَامًا* *and those who pass the night prostrating themselves unto their Lord and standing up (in prayer)*;

وَفَدُّوا عَلَى خَرَجٍ قَائِدِينَ and they went out in the morning with settled A
purpose; أَصْبَحْتُمْ بِنِعْمَةِ اللَّهِ إِخْوَانًا through the grace of God ye are
become brethren; تَمَنَّيْتَ أَنْ تُبَيِّنَ فُلَيْهَا مُنَاطِرًا thou wishest to become
a lawyer skilled in disputation; لَا تَقُولُوا لِمَنْ أَلْقَى إِلَيْكُمُ السَّلَامَ لَسْتَ
مُؤْمِنًا say not to one who gives you the salutation, Thou art not a
believer; فَلَيْسَ سَوَاءً عَالِمٌ وَجَاهِلٌ one who knows and one who does not
know are not on an equality; فَضَى اللَّهُ يَا أَسْمَاءُ أَنْ تَكُنْ زَانِيَةً لِأَخِيكَ B
God hath decreed, O Asma', that I should not cease to love thee.

REM. a. To the above verbs may be added أَتَى, جَاءَ, and قَعَدَ;
as أَتَى أَبِي وَجَهَ أَيْ بَاتَ بِصُورًا and throw it on my father's face,
(and) he shall become seeing (recover his sight, explained by يَرْجِعُ
بَصِيرًا) (or أَتَى) جَاءَ the building became strong or firm;
أَرْهَفَ شَفْرَتَهُ حَتَّى قَعَدَتْ طَائِفَتَا خَرْبَةٍ he sharpened his knife till it
became like a javelin (i.e. مِثْلُ خَرْبَةٍ).—Of these verbs three, viz. C
نَالَيْتُ, رَأَى, and قَعَدَ, are always نَالَيْتُ; the others may be either
نَالَيْتُ or نَالَيْتُ (see § 41, at the end).

REM. b. The verbs رَأَى, قَعَدَ, and نَالَيْتُ, must always be
accompanied by a negative, expressed (as in the above examples
with رَأَى and نَالَيْتُ) or implied, as نَالَيْتُ بِخَيْرِ اللَّهِ (or رَأَى) and
أَنْتَ لَنْ تَنْتَظِرَ مُجِيدًا and I shall not cease, as long as God preserves my
tribe, through God's grace to wear a girdle and ride a noble steed D
فَقُلْتُ يَا وَاللَّهِ; (مُجِيدًا in rhyme for مُجِيدًا, لَا أَتَرْجُحُ for أَتَرْجُحُ)
أَنْتَ لَنْ تَنْتَظِرَ مُجِيدًا and I said to her, By God, I will not cease sitting still.
[Comp. § 162, rem.]

REM. c. The verb وَجَدَ, to be found, be extant, exist, is often
reckoned one of the أَخَوَاتِ كَانَ, but erroneously; for it is either =

* [خَرَجَ may be added to these verbs; see the Gloss. to 'Ibn
'al-Faqih. D. G.]

- A **وَجَدَ**, and has no predicate, or it is the passive of **وَجَدَ**, which governs two accusatives, and therefore naturally retains the second object (المفعول الثاني); as **لَا يَجِدُ مِنْهَا شَيْءٌ**; *not one of them is found pure (in a pure state)*, where **مِنْهَا** is a **حال** or circumstantial accusative, or *we (Fr. on, Germ. man) do not find one of them pure*, where **مِنْهَا** is the second object [§ 25].

- REM. d. The negative particles **مَا** and **لَا**, when **مُشَبَّهَاتَانِ بِلَيْسَ** assimilated to *lèisa*, or used **بِمَعْنَى لَيْسَ** in the signification of *lèisa*, are also construed with the accusative of the predicate, provided (1) that the predicate is placed after the subject, (2) that the exceptive particle **إِلَّا** is not interposed between them, (3) that the corroborative particle **إِنْ** is not added to **مَا**, and (4) that the subject and predicate of **لَا** are both undefined; e.g. **مَا هَذَا بَشَرًا** *this is not a human being*; **وَمَا هُمْ أَوْلَادَهَا** *and they are not its children*; **تَعَزَّوْا فَلَا شَيْءَ** *they are not their mothers*; **مَا هُنَّ أُمَّهَاتِهِمْ** *take comfort, for there is nothing on earth enduring, and no fortress can protect (one) from what God hath decreed*; **إِذْ لَا صَاحِبَ مُتَبَايِعٍ** *I aided thee when thou hadst no companion who was not faithless*; but on the contrary, **بَنِي عُذَانَ مَا إِنْ طَبْنَا جَهَنَّمَ** *our habit is not cowardice*; **يَا بَنِي عُذَانَ مَا إِنْ أَنْتُمْ ذَهَبٌ وَلَا صَرْفٌ وَلَكِنْ أَنْتُمْ أَنْفَرٌ** *ye Bēnā Gūdāna, ye are neither gold nor pure silver, but ye are pottery*. The fourth restriction is violated in such verses as: **وَحَلَّتْ سَوَادَ الْقَلْبِ لَا أُنَا** *and she dwelt in my heart's core, I desired no other than her and relaxed not my love of her* (**أُنَا** being definite); **فَلَا الْحَمْدُ مَكْسُوبًا وَلَا الْإِمَالُ بَاقِيًا** *then neither is praise won nor does the money remain*.—If **مَا** has a second predicate, connected with the first by an adversative particle, such as **بَلْ** or **لَكِنْ**, then the second must be put in the nominative, as **مَا زَيْدٌ** *Zaid is not standing but sitting*, i.e. **زَيْدٌ هُوَ قَائِمٌ**; but
- B
- C
- D

in any other case, the accusative is preferable to the nominative, as ^Aلَا زَيْدٌ قَائِمًا وَلَا قَاعِدًا or لَا قَاعِدٌ. —This government of مَا and لَا is peculiar to the dialect of El-Higāz, and hence they are called لَا الْجَارِيَّةُ and مَا الْجَارِيَّةُ.

REM. e. The above construction of مَا and لَا is also extended to لَات (Vol. i. § 182, rem. b), and to إِنَّ النَّافِيَّةُ or the negative 'in' (see [Vol. i. § 362, k and] § 158); as إِنَّ هُوَ مُسْتَوَلٌّ عَلَى أَحَدٍ he rules over nobody; إِنَّ ذَلِكَ نَافِعٌ وَلَا ضَارٌّ وَلَا يَنْفَعُكَ وَلَا يَضُرُّكَ this cannot profit thee B nor harm thee; إِنَّ الْمَرْءَ مَيِّتًا بِأَنْفُسِهِ حَيَاتِهِ وَلَكِنْ بَأَنْ يَنْفَى عَلَيْهِ a man is not (to be counted) dead when his life comes to an end, but when he is wronged, and forsaken (by his friends); لَات سَاعَةٌ مِّنْهُمْ وَلَات جِهَنَ مَنَاصٍ but it was no time of escape; لَات سَاعَةٌ مِّنْهُمْ it was not an hour for repentance. The government of لَات seems to be restricted to nouns denoting time, and either its subject or predicate is omitted, usually the former (لَات جِهَنَ مَنَاصٍ) = C (لَيْسَ الْجِهَنُ جِهَنَ مَنَاصٍ).

REM. f. Instead of the accusative, the أَخْوَاتُ كَانَ may take after them a verb in the imperfect, following the construction of كَانَ لَا يَزَالُ نَائِمًا مَا دَامَ الْحَدَّادُ يَعْمَلُ شُغْلًا § 9, or § 8, a; e.g. كَانَ لَا يَزَالُ نَائِمًا مَا دَامَ الْحَدَّادُ يَعْمَلُ شُغْلًا he used never to cease sleeping as long as the blacksmith continued working at any work; قَبِلَ يَنْظُرُ إِلَيْهَا and he continued looking at them; وَصِرْتُ أَقْعَدُ عِنْدَهُ وَأَطِيلُ الْحَدِيثَ مَعَهُ and I sat down by D him and conversed with him at great length; صَارَ لَا يَتَكَلَّمُ he became speechless; صَارَ يَتَفَكَّرُ فِي كَذَا he began to reflect upon such and such a subject; قَبَلْنَا بِأَمْلَانِ مِيَاهَ فَظَلَّمْنَا تَفَكَّرُونَ and ye would be marvelling; قَبَلْنَا بِأَمْلَانِ مِيَاهَ فَظَلَّمْنَا تَفَكَّرُونَ and they were all night hoping for (or longing for) the waters of Bēdr; قَالَ تَفَكَّرُوا قَالَهُ تَفَكَّرُوا and he began wringing his hands; تَذَكَّرَ يُوسُفَ by God, thou wilt not cease thinking (or speaking) of Joseph (rem. b); تَذَكَّرَ تَذَكَّرَ مَا حَيِّتَ بِهَالِكٍ حَتَّى تَكُونَهُ thou wilt

- A never cease, as long as thou livest, to hear of some one being dead, until thou art he (until thy own turn comes). [The predicate of كَانَ and its sisters may also be replaced by a preposition and the word it governs, or by a circumstantial clause, generally with وَ, as مَا أَخْشَى بِالذِّلِّبِ وَقَدْ كُنْتُ وَمَا نُصَلِّي عِنْدَ الْكَعْبَةِ as they were not prevented from it; إِذْ كَانَتْ لَا تُحْجَبُ عَنْ ذَلِكَ as they were not prevented from it; وَإِنْ بِأَيْدِينَا الْحَدِيدُ لَنَاطِقٌ إِذَا مَا غَدَا فِي غَيْرِهَا; وَهُوَ أَبْكَمُ verily in our hands the steel is eloquent, whilst in other hands it is dumb.]
- B

REM. g. With the construction of the أَخَوَاتُ كَانَ, mentioned in rem. e, we may connect that of the أفعال التَّقَارُبِ or verbs of appropinquation. These are principally of two kinds: such as indicate the simple proximity of the predicate, and such as imply a hope of its occurrence.—(1) To the first class belong كَادَ, أَوْشَكَ, and كَرَبَ. (a) كَادَ (1st p. sing. perf. كَدْتُ, rarely كَدْتُ, imperf. كَادُ, particip. كَائِدٌ, was originally construed with the accusative of the predicate, as فَابْتُ إِلَى فَيْهِ وَمَا كَدْتُ أَبَا and so I returned to (the tribe of) Fahm, but I was very near not returning; but it commonly takes the predicate in the imperfect indicative, as

- C كَادَ تَهْضُلُنَا عَنْ آلِهَتِنَا verily he was nigh leading us astray from our gods; وَجَدَ مِنْ قُلُوبِهِمَا قَوْمًا لَا يَكَادُونَ after the hearts of a part of them had well nigh swerved; فَذَبَحُوهَا وَمَا كَادُوا then they sacrificed her (the cow), but they were nearly not doing it; إِذَا أَخْرَجَ يَدَهُ لَمْ يَكْدِ بِرَأْيَا when he stretches out his hand, he can hardly see it; rarely the subjunctive with أَنْ, as مَا كَدْتُ أَنْ أَصَلِّيَ الْغَضْرَ حَتَّى كَادَتِ الشَّمْسُ أَنْ تَغْرُبَ I was nearly not praying the 'asr (or afternoon prayer) till the sun was nearly setting; كَادَتِ النَّفْسُ أَنْ تَلْمِضَ عَلَيْهِ my soul was nearly
- D

expiring over him (for grief). (β) **أَوْشَكَ**, little used in the perfect, **أ** generally takes **أَنْ** with the subjunctive, more rarely the imperf. indic.; as **وَلَوْ سِئَلُ النَّاسِ الشَّرَابَ لَأَوْشَكُوا إِذَا قِيلَ لَهُمْ هَاتُوا أَنْ يَمْلُؤُوا وَيَمْنَعُوا** and if man were asked for the (very) drink, when it was said 'Give here,' they would well nigh be disgusted and refuse; **فَمَوْشَكُهُ أَرْضُنَا** and our land is nearly becoming, after our friend's departure, a desolate wilderness; **يُوشِكُ مَنْ قَرِمِنْ** he who flees from his fate, is likely to meet it on some occasion when he is off his guard. This verb is either personal or impersonal, for we may say **يُوشِكُ زَيْدٌ يَجِيءُ** (as in the third of the above examples), or **يُوشِكُ أَنْ يَجِيءَ** (as in the first), or **يُوشِكُ أَنْ يَجِيءَ زَيْدٌ** (where the real subject of **يُوشِكُ** is the following clause). The form **يُوشِكُ** is a vulgarity. (γ) **كَرَبَ** (rarely **كَرَبَ**) is only used in the perfect, and is construed with the imperf. indic., rarely with **أَنْ** and the subjunctive; as **كَرَبَ الْقَلْبُ مِنْ جَوَاهُ يَذُوبُ** my heart was nearly melting away from grief; **وَقَدْ كَرَبَتْ أَغْنَاقُهَا أَنْ تَقَطَّعَا** when their throats (lit. necks) were nigh being cut to pieces (with drought or thirst). To these may be added such verbs as **هَلَبَلَ يَذْرِكُهُ** he was near overtaking him; **أَلَمَّ يَفْعَلُ كَذَا** he was near doing so and so; **أَرَادَ**, e.g. **فَوَجَدَا جِدَارًا يُرِيدُ أَنْ يَنْقَضَ** and they found a wall which was about to fall; **أَرَادَ الْمَرِيضُ أَنْ يَمُوتَ** the sick man is about to die; **هَمَّ**, e.g. **هَمَّ السِّرَاجُ أَنْ يَخْتَمِدَ** the lamp was on the point of going out; and the like.—(2) To the second class belong **عَسَى**, **عَسَيْتَ**, rarely **عَسَيْتُ**, (1st p. sing. **عَسَيْتَ**), **عَسَى**, and **أَحْلُوْتُ**. (a) **عَسَى** (1st p. sing. **عَسَيْتَ**, rarely **عَسَيْتُ**), used, we may say, only in the perfect, [and having always the meaning of the imperfect, mostly in the sense of the indefinite or definite present (§ 8, a, b)], was originally construed, like **كَادَ**, with the accusative, as in the half verse **لَا تُكْتَبَرُنَ إِلَى عَسَيْتِ صَائِمًا**

- A do not (abuse me) so much, for I may become a faster, and in the proverb *عَسَى الْغَوِيْرُ اَهْوَا* perhaps the little cave may become (may bring) misfortunes, or perhaps *el-Gowair* (the name of a well) may become (may bring) misfortunes; but generally it is construed with *أَنْ* and the subjunctive, as *رَبُّكُمْ أَنْ يَرْحَمَكُمْ* perhaps your Lord may have mercy on you; [*مَا عَسَى أَنْ تَصْنَعَ* what may she perhaps do!]; *هَلْ عَسَيْتُمْ إِنْ طَلَبَ عَلَيْكُمُ الْقِتَالُ إِلَّا تُقَاتِلُوا* may it not be, if it were ordained you to fight, that ye would not fight!
- B rarely with the imperf. indic., as *عَسَى فَرَجٌ يَأْتِي بِهِ اللَّهُ* perhaps God may bring some joy; *عَسَى الْكَرْبُ الَّذِي أَمْسَيْتَ فِيهِ يَكُونُ وَرَاءَهُ* perhaps some joy may be close behind the sorrow in which thou now art. This verb, like *أَوْشَكَ*, is either personal, *عَسَى زَيْدٌ*, as in the above examples, or impersonal, *عَسَى أَنْ يَقُومَ زَيْدٌ*, as *عَسَى أَنْ تَكْرَهُوا شَيْئًا وَهُوَ خَيْرٌ لَكُمْ* perhaps ye may be averse to a thing, though it be good for you. Still another construction is possible, viz. with a pronominal suffix in the accusative, *عَسَاكَ قَاتِرٌ* or *عَسَاكَ أَنْ تَقُومَ*, like *لَعَلَّ* (§ 36, rem. f), just as conversely *لَعَلَّ* may be followed by the imperf. indic. or the subjunctive with *أَنْ*, as *وَمَا يُدْرِيكَ لَعَلَّ السَّاعَةَ تَكُونُ قَرِيبًا* and what lets thee know (whether) perchance the hour is near? *لَعَلَّهُ أَنْ يَنْصُرَكَ عَلَى هَؤُلَاءِ* perhaps He may aid you against these evil-doers. (β) *حَرَى* rare, with *أَنْ* and the subjunctive; as *حَرَى زَيْدٌ أَنْ يَقُومَ* or *حَرَى أَنْ يَكُونَ ذَلِكَ*. (γ) *اِحْتَوَتْ*, rare, with *أَنْ* and the subjunctive, as *اِحْتَوَتْ أَنْ يَأْتِيَ* the sky is likely to rain; *اِحْتَوَتْ أَنْ تَمُطَرَ* it is likely he may come.—(3) With these two classes of verbs the grammarians connect a third, which they call *أَفْعَالُ الشَّرُوعِ*, or *أَفْعَالُ الْإِنْشَاءِ*, the verbs of beginning. Such are: *أَخَذَ*, *جَعَلَ*, *شَرَعَ*, *هَبَّ*, *أَنشَأَ*, *قَامَ*, *أَفْهَلَ*, *عَلَى*, (*طَفِقَ* and *طَفِقَ* rarely), *طَفِقَ* to begin, used, we may say, only in the perfect, and followed by the imperf. indic.; as *جَعَلَ يَلْمُوهُ* he began to reproach him; *وَطَفِقَا*

يَخْصِفَانِ عَلَيْهِمَا مِنْ وَرَقِ الْجَنَّةِ and they began to sew together of A
 the leaves of Paradise (to cover their nakedness); عَلِقَ خَوْضِي نَفْرًا
 إِذَا غَفَلْتُ غَفْلَةً يَغُثُّ the nightingales, dipping in their heads, began to drink of my
 cistern; وَعَلِقْتُ الْقِسْرَ اللَّحْمَ بَيْنَ أَهْلِ صَنْعَاءَ and I began to divide
 the meat among the people of San'a; أَقْبَلَتِ الْحَمَامَةُ تَحْوُرَ فِي طَلَبِ
 the pigeon began to fly about in search of water; قَامَتِ الْمَرْأَةُ
 تَتَوَخَّعُ the woman began to wail aloud; هَبَّتْ تَلَوْنِي she began to B
 reproach me.

43. The adverbial accusative depends—

B. On any verbal idea which determines or limits in any way the subject, verb, or predicate of a sentence, or the whole sentence. In this case it supplies the place of a preposition with the genitive, or of a conjunctive clause, and amply makes up for the want of adverbs in Arabic.

44. By the adverbial accusative is designated :—

a. The time in or during which an act takes place; as فَرَّاهُ
 the caliph saw him one day washing his feet; لَا يَدْرِي كَيْفَ يَمُوتُ يَوْمَ الْهَلَاكِ
 he knows not how he shall die on his dying day; مَشَيْتُ كُلَّ الْيَوْمِ, or بَعْضُ الْيَوْمِ, I walked the whole day,
 or part of the day; لَمْ أَدْرِ الْيَوْمَ جَاءَ إِلَى هُنَا أَمِ الْيَوْمَ I did not know
 whether he came here yesterday or today; سَكَنَ فِي بَعْضِ الْقَرْيَةِ أَيَّامًا D
 he stopped (a few) days in a village; اسْتَعِذْ بِاللَّهِ مِنْهُ لَيْلًا وَنَهَارًا implore
 God night and day to protect you from it; سَيُعْطِيكَ الْكِتَابَ غَدًا he
 will give you the book tomorrow; وَجَاءُوا أَبَاهُمْ عِشَاءً and they came
 to their father in the evening; ائْتَمَرْتُ فِي اخْتِيَارِ الْأُسْتَاذِ reflect
 two months upon the choice of a teacher; لَمْ يَبِثْ عَلَى الْفِرَاشِ أَرْبَعِينَ
 قَامَ فِي جَلَالِ he did not pass the night on a bed for forty years;

- A وَكُنْتُ بَرْهَةً مِنْ الْقُرْسِ أَحْيَانًا *he stood up at times whilst lecturing*; and أَتَفَكَّرُ الزَّمَانَ *and I continued reflecting for a considerable time*; فَتَلْتُهُ أَلْسَنَةً أَلْمَاضِيَةِ *I killed him last year*; صُمْتُ رَمَضَانَ *I fasted during Ramadhān*; جِئْتُ زَمَنَ الْبَيْتَاءِ *I came in the winter-time*; قَالَ *he said at the time of his meeting him (or when he met him)*; كَانَتْهُمُ يَوْمَ غَضَرِ حَانَ مَشِيْبٍ *at the time when old age is drawing near*;
- B بِرَوْتِهَا لَمْ يَلْمُوهَا إِلَّا عَشِيَّةً أَوْ ضُحَاهَا *(it shall seem) as if they, on the day they shall see it, had not tarried (in their graces) since an evening or its morning*; جَلَسْتُ عِنْدَهُ طَوِيلًا مِنَ الْقَدْرِ *I sat with him for a long time, i.e. زَمَنًا طَوِيلًا*; لَمْ يَكُنْ غَيْرَ طَوِيلٍ *then he tarried not long, i.e. زَمَنًا غَيْرَ طَوِيلٍ*. [To the same class belong the adverbial expressions ذَاتَ مَرَّةٍ *once*, ذَاتَ يَوْمٍ *one day*, ذَاتَ لَيْلَةٍ *one night*, and ذَاتَ يَدَيْنِ *(or ذَاتَ دِي) I met him first of all.*]
- C REM. a. A *mapdar* is often put in the accusative of time by an ellipse of some such word as وَقْتُ *at the time of*; e.g. جَاءَ طُلُوعِ الشَّمْسِ *he came at sunrise, i.e. وَقْتُ طُلُوعِ الشَّمْسِ*; وَرَدْتُ خَلُوقِ النُّجُومِ *I arrived at the setting of the Star (the Pleiades)*; كَانَ ذَلِكَ مَقْدَمِ الْقَارِصَةِ *this happened at the time of the arrival of the caravan of pilgrims, or صَلَوةِ الْعَصْرِ at the time of afternoon prayer, or خِلَافَةِ الْهَامُونِ during the caliphate of al-Ma'mūn*; وَإِدْبَارِ النُّجُومِ *and at the setting of the stars*;
- D أَنْتَظِرَ بِهِ نَحَرَ جَزُورَيْنِ *they waited for him for the space of time in which one might slaughter two camels. Examples of more violent elisions are:* لَا أَكَلِمَةَ الْقَارِظَيْنِ *I will not speak to him as long as the two gatherers of acacia berries (or leaves) are away (i.e. I will never speak to him), for مَدَّةَ غَيْبَةِ الْقَارِظَيْنِ*; لَا آتِيَهُ الْفَرْقَدَيْنِ *I will not go to him as long as the two Pointers (the two stars which point to the Polestar) endure (i.e. I will never go to him), for مَدَّةَ بَقَاءِ الْفَرْقَدَيْنِ*.

REM. b. Peculiar is the use of *فُتُوَّةٌ*, *سَحَرٌ*, *سُحُورَةٌ*, *فُتُوَّةٌ*, A
and *فُتُوَّةٌ*, as a sort of definite proper names, when they refer to the
morning of a particular day or to a certain fixed time; e.g. *لَقِيتُهُ*
سَحَرٌ I met him this morning; *جَاءَ يَوْمَ الْجُمُعَةِ سَحَرٌ* he came on
Friday in the morning; *جِئْتُ يَوْمَ الْخَمِيسِ بُكْرَةً* I came on
Thursday in the morning; *لَقِيتُهُ فُتُوَّةً بَعْدَ فُتُوَّةٍ*
I met him time after time; [*لَقِيتُهُ سَحَرًا* would mean I met him on a
certain morning].

b. *The local extension of an act, and, if general and indefinite, B*
the place in which it is performed; as *سَارُوا أَرْبَعَةَ أَمْيَالٍ* they travelled
four miles; *مَشَيْتُ فَرَسَخَيْنِ* I walked two parasangs; *جَرَى غُلُوَّةٌ*
he ran a bowshot; *نَظَرَ يَمِينًا وَبَسَارًا* (وَشِمَالًا) he looked right and left;
انْتَصَرَ عَلَى الْعَدُوِّ بَرًّا وَبَحْرًا he conquered the enemy by land and sea;
أَمَامَ, before; *وَرَاءَ*, behind; *وَسَطَ* in the middle; *حَوْلَ*
around; *فَوْقَ* above; *تَحْتَ* under; *عِنْدَ* beside, by; etc. [Here we
may add the adverbial expressions *ذَاتَ الْيَمِينِ* and *ذَاتَ الشِّمَالِ* in the C
direction of the right hand and of the left.]

REM. a. When the place of the act is definitely specified, the
preposition *فِي* must be used; as *جَلَسْتُ فِي الدَّارِ* I sat down in the
house; *صَلَّيْتُ فِي مَسْجِدِ النَّبِيِّ* I prayed in the mosque of the
prophet; *أَقَمْتُ فِي مَقْتَلِ الْحُسَيْنِ* I stopped at the place where El-
Hossein was killed; not *جَلَسْتُ الدَّارَ*, *صَلَّيْتُ مَسْجِدَ*, and *أَقَمْتُ مَقْتَلَ*.*

Excepted is the case when a vague noun of place, such as *مَكَانٌ* D
or *مَقَامٌ*, is construed with a verb conveying the idea of stopping
or remaining, as *جَلَسْتُ مَكَانَ زَيْدٍ* I sat down in Zeid's place;

* [Sometimes, however, the definite noun of place is put in the
accusative against the rule, as in *ذَهَبْتُ إِلَى الشَّامِ* I went to Syria, *قَالَا خَيْمَتِي*
أَمْرٌ مَعْبُدٌ the two stayed during midday in the tents of 'Umm Ma'bul (see
the Gloss, to *Takarrû* in v. *بيت* and comp. § 70, rem. c). D. G.]

- A and also the case when a noun of place is construed with the verb from which it is derived, as *جَلَسْتُ مَقْعَدَ زَيْدٍ*, or *قَعَدْتُ مَقْعَدَ زَيْدٍ*, *I sat down in Zaid's seat*; *قَامَ مَقَامَهُ* *he stood up in his place*, or *supplied his place*.—The nouns *جَانِبٌ*, *وَجْهٌ*, *جِهَةٌ*, *نَاحِيَةٌ*, *side*, *quarter*, *خَارِجٌ* *outside*, *دَاخِلٌ*, *جَوْفٌ*, *inside*, require *فِي* as *نِمْتُ فِي* *I slept*, *خَارِجَ الدَّارِ* *I slept outside the house*; but in later Arabic we often find the accusatives *جَانِبٌ*, *خَارِجٌ*, and *دَاخِلٌ*, as also *قُرْبٌ* *near*, for *فِي قُرْبٍ* *on the east*, *فِي غَرْبٍ* *on the west*, for *فِي شَرْقٍ*, and the like.—Observe also such phrases as: *هُوَ مِنِّي* *he is as far from me as (the place where) the Pleiades (hang in the sky)*; *هُوَ مِنِّي مَزَجَرَ الْكَلْبِ* *he is as far from me as the farthest place where one can chide (or cry out to) the dog*; *هُوَ مِنِّي مَقْعَدَ الْإِزَارِ* *he is as close to me as the place where my waist-wrapper is fastened*.
- REM. b. The accusative of time and place is called by the grammarians *الْمَقَرُّ* *the vessel* (see Vol. i. § 221, rem. a), or *الْمَفْعُولُ فِيهِ* *that in which the act is done*.
- c. The *state or condition*, *الْحَالُ*, of the subject or object of an act, or of both, whilst the act is taking place; as *جَاءَ زَيْدٌ رَاكِبًا* *Zaid came riding*; *وَقَفَ عَلَى بَابِ الْكَهْفِ مُسَلِّمًا عَلَيْهِ قَائِلًا لَهُ* *he stood at the entrance of the cave, saluting him (and) saying to him*; *وَادْخُلُوا الْبَابَ سُجَّدًا* *and enter the gate, prostrating yourselves*; *الَّذِينَ يَذْكُرُونَ اللَّهَ قِيَامًا وَقُعُودًا* *who bear God in mind, standing up and sitting down*; *يَقُومُ بِالتَّقَابِ الْعُودُ لَدُنَا* *a piece of wood can be straightened with the tīqāf (a kind of tool), while it is soft*; *خُلِقْتُ نَشَاطٍ بِهِ غُلَامًا* *a habit with which I grew up as a young man*; *كَانَ قُلُوبُ الطَّيْرِ رَطْبًا* *(it is) as if the hearts of birds, fresh and dry, beside her nest, were the red fruit of the jujube or*
- B
- D

decaying dates; رَكِبْتُ الْفَرَسَ مُسَوِّجًا I rode the horse saddled; لَقِيتُ A
لَقِيتُ أَلْسُلْطَانَ عِنْدَهُ بَاكِيًا I met the sultān in his house, weeping; and whose
وَمَنْ يَعْصِ اللَّهَ وَرَسُولَهُ وَيَتَعَدَّ حُدُودَهُ يُدْخِلْهُ نَارًا خَالِدًا فِيهَا
shall rebel against God and his Apostle, and shall transgress his
ordinances, He shall make him enter into fire, to abide in it for ever;
مَرَرْتُ بِزَيْدٍ جَالِسًا I passed by Zēid, (as he was) sitting down;
كُنْتُ and she brought him forth long-limbed; كُنْتُ
فِي أَيْبَتَانِ زَاهِرًا I was in the garden, whilst it was in bloom; B
وَأَصْبَحَ عَنِّي بِالْقَمِيصَاءِ جَالِسًا فَرِيقَانِ مَسْئُولٌ وَآخَرُ يَسْتَلِ
next morning two parties, (one) asked and another asking about me,
(whilst I was) sitting at el-Gomdīnā; وَإِنَّا نَوَفُّ نُودِرْكَنَا أَلْمَنَايَا مُقَدَّرَةً; [مُقَدَّرَةً
the Fates will overtake us, they being destined for us, as
we are destined for them]; لَقِيتُهُ رَاكِبَيْنِ I met him, (whilst we were)
both riding; مَا تَلَقَّنِي فَرْدَيْنِ whenever thou meetest me, both (of
us being) alone; لَقِيتُهُ مُصْعِدًا مُنْهَدِرًا I met him, (whilst the one of us
was) going up (and the other) coming down.

REM. a. The *حَال* is, in relation to the grammatical structure of the phrase to which it belongs, a *فَضْلَةٌ* or *redundancy*, for *جَاءَ زَيْدٌ*, *Zēid came*, is a complete, intelligible, sentence, without the addition of *رَاكِبًا* *riding*. It answers the question *كَيْفَ* *how?* in regard to the state or condition of the subject or object of the act, [and may be *مُقَدَّرٌ* indicating a future state, or *مُقَارِنٌ* indicating a simultaneous state (§ 74), like the Imperf. (§ 8, d and e)].

REM. b. The *حَال* depends upon a regent (*عَامِلُ الْحَالِ*), which may be either a verb, as *جَاءَ زَيْدٌ رَاكِبًا*; or a verbal adjective (Vol. i. §§ 230, 231), as *زَيْدٌ ضَارِبٌ عَمْرًا قَائِمًا* *Zēid is beating 'Amr standing*, *زَيْدٌ حَسَنٌ قَائِمًا* *Zēid is beaten standing*.

- A *Zdid looks handsome standing, زَيْدٌ قَائِمًا أَحْسَنُ مِنْهُ قَائِمًا* *Zdid looks more handsome standing than he does sitting*; or an expression that has a verbal force (مَعْنَى فِعْلٍ), as a preposition with its complement, a demonstrative pronoun, an interrogative, or a word like *لَيْتَ* and *كَيْفَ*, as *زَيْدٌ فِي الدَّارِ قَائِمًا* *Zdid is in the house standing* (where *فِي الدَّارِ* is equivalent to *مُسْتَقَرٌّ فِي الدَّارِ*), *فِيهَا زَيْدٌ* *in it is Zdid standing*, *عِنْدَكَ عَمْرُو جَالِسًا* *beside thee (or in thy house) is 'Amr sitting*, *هَذَا عَمْرُو مُنْطَلِقًا* *this is 'Amr (in the act of) going away* (equivalent in sense to *إِلَيْهِ مُنْطَلِقًا* *look at him going away*, or *أَشِيرُ إِلَيْهِ مُنْطَلِقًا* *I point to him going away*), *مَا شَأْنُكَ قَائِمًا* *what is thy object (in) standing?* (where *شَأْنُكَ* = *مَا تَفْعَلُ* *what art thou doing?*) *وَأَيْهَا مَا لَكَ قَائِمًا* *what art thou about, standing (there)?* *وَهَذَا بَعْلِي شَيْخًا* *and this is my husband, an old man* (= *and this, my husband, is an old man*); *فَمَا لَبِثَ عَنِ التَّذَكُّرَةِ* *what then ails them that they turn aside from the warning?*
- C REM. c. The *حَال* is usually (1) an adjective (وصف or صفة) expressing a transitory state (حَالٌ مُتَقَلِّدٌ); though it may also be permanent (غَيْرُ مُتَقَلِّدٍ), as *دَعَوْتُ اللَّهَ سَبِيحًا* *I called upon God as a (constant) hearer (of prayer)*.—It may likewise be (2) a maṣdar, substantially equivalent in meaning to a participial adjective [comp. Vol. i. § 230, rem. c*], as *قَتَلْتُهُ صَبْرًا* *I killed him bound* (in cold blood), i.e. *مَضْبُورًا*; *أَتَيْتُهُ رَهْطًا* *I came to him riding hard*, i.e. *رَاحِطًا*; *أَخَذْتُ ذَلِكَ مِنْهُ سَمْعًا* *I received that from him by hearing* (I learned it from him by hearing him say it), i.e. *سَامِعًا*; *طَلَعَ بَغْتَةً* *he came into view suddenly*, i.e. *بِغَاتَةٍ*; *لَقِيتُهُ فُجَاءَةً* *I met him suddenly or unawares*, i.e. *مُفَاجِئًا*; *لَقِيتُهُ عِيَانًا* *I met him face to face*, i.e. *مُشَافِهًا*; *كَلَّمْتُهُ مُسَافِهَةً* *I spoke to him face to face*, i.e. *مُشَافِهًا*; *لَقِيتُهُ كَفَّةً كَفَّةً* *I met him face to face (each of us hindering the*
- D

* [Rather, according to Nöldeke, to a gerundium.]

other, for كَفَّةً كَفَّةً).—It may also be (3) a concrete substantive, ^A as طَلَعَ الْقَمَرُ بَدْرًا the moon rose full; كَرَّ زَيْدٌ أَسَدًا Zaid charged (like) a lion; بَعَثَ بِعَهُ مَدًّا بِدِرْهَمٍ sell it (at the rate of) a mudd for a dirham; جَاءَ الْبُرِّ قَفِيزَيْنِ the wheat is come, (at the rate of) two kafsiz (for a dirham); بَعَثْتُ الْشَّاةَ شاةً وَدِرْهَمًا I have sold the sheep at a dirham apiece; بَايَعْتُهُ بِدَا بَيْدٍ I dealt, or traded, with him, hand in hand (i.e. for ready money); بَيَّنْتُ لَهُ حِسَابَهُ بَابًا بَابًا I explained his account to him item by item; ^B بَيَّنْتُ إِلَى بَيْتٍ he is my nextdoor neighbour (lit. house to house, for بَيْتٌ إِلَى بَيْتٍ or بَيْتًا لِبَيْتٍ); كَلَّمْتُهُ فَاهُ إِلَى فِيٍّ I spoke to him face to face (lit. his mouth to my mouth); هَذَا عَنَّا أَطْيَبُ مِنْهُ زَبِيْبًا this (fruit) is better as a grape than as a raisin; تَفَرَّقَ الْقَوْمُ أَيْدِي سَبَا or أَيْدِي سَبَا the people dispersed (like) the bands of Saba (for سَبَا).—Lastly, the ^C حَال may be (4) a proposition, جُمْلَةٌ (see § 183).—There may be more than one حَال referring to the subject or object of an act, or to both; e.g. جَاءَ زَيْدٌ رَاكِبًا ضَاخِكًا Zaid came riding (along) laughing; لَقِيَ أَبْنِيَّ هَذَا زَيْدٌ وَالْقَا مُتَحَدِّثًا this is Zaid standing talking; لَقِيَ ابْنِي أَخُوِي خَائِفًا مُنْجِدِيهِ فَأَصَابُوا مَغْنَمًا my son, in alarm, met his two brothers, coming to help him, and they won spoil; لَقِيتُ هِنْدًا مُصْعِدًا I, (whilst) going up, met Hind (a woman) coming down. ^D The only case in which a difficulty can arise is when both the ^D hals are of the same gender and number, as لَقِيتُ زَيْدًا مُصْعِدًا مُنْجِدِرًا or رَأَيْتُ زَيْدًا مَاشِيًا رَاكِبًا. Some of the grammarians say that, in this case, the first حَال refers to the subject and the second to the object, I, (as I was) going up, met Zaid coming down; but others maintain that the first حَال refers to the object and the second to the subject, I, (as I was) riding, met Zaid walking.

REM. d. The حَال may be مُوَكِّدَةٌ, strengthening, or مُوَكِّدَةٌ.

- A As **مَوْكِدَةً** it may refer either to the verbal regent or to a preceding proposition as a whole. If it refers to the verbal regent, it may be derived from the verb itself, though this is a comparatively rare case; as **وَأَرْسَلْنَاكَ لِلنَّاسِ رَسُولًا** and we have sent thee to mankind as an Apostle; **وَسَخَّرَ لَكُمُ اللَّيْلَ وَالنَّهَارَ وَالشَّمْسَ وَالْقَمَرَ** and He hath subjected to you the night and the day, and the sun and the moon and the stars, subjected by His command. If it refers to a preceding proposition, this must be a nominal proposition, consisting of two definite concrete nouns as subject and predicate; as **زَيْدٌ أَبُوكَ عَطُوفًا** Zaid is thy father, as being affectionate; **هُوَ زَيْدٌ مَعْرُوفًا** he is Zaid, as well known; **هُوَ أَنَا فَلَانٌ بَطَلًا شَجَاعًا** I am so and so, valiant (and) brave; **هُوَ وَهُوَ الْحَقُّ مُصَدِّقًا لِمَا مَعَهُمْ** it is the truth, as manifest; and it is the truth, as confirmatory of what is with them (of the Scriptures which they have already received); **أَنَا عَبْدُ اللَّهِ أَجَلًا** I am the servant of God, eating as the servants (of God) eat; **أَنَا أَهْنُ دَارَةِ مَعْرُوفًا بِهَا نَسَبِي** I am the son of Dāra, my lineage being well known through her. The **حَال** is explained in these cases by an ellipsis of **أَعْرِفُهُ**, **أَحَقُّهُ**, **أَثْبَتُهُ**, I know him (or it), know it to be true, know him (or it) for certain, and the like; e.g. **أَنَا فَلَانٌ أَحَقُّ بَطَلًا شَجَاعًا**, **زَيْدٌ أَبُوكَ أَحَقُّهُ عَطُوفًا**, etc.
- B
- C

REM. c. The **حَال** is ordinarily **نَكْرَةٌ** or indefinite; but it is

- allowable to define it by the article in cases where it may be explained as involving a condition (**مَعْنَى الشَّرْطِ**), as **زَيْدٌ الرَّاجِبُ** (إِذَا رَكِبَ) Zaid, when he is riding, looks more handsome than he does when walking (إِذَا مَشَى), instead of the more usual **زَيْدٌ رَاجِبًا أَحْسَنُ مِنْهُ مَاشِيًا**. Further, it may be defined by a pronominal suffix, or otherwise, in various cases, in which it can be explained by, or is equivalent to, an indefinite **حَال**; e.g. **فَعَلْتُ** (مَنْفَرِدًا ...) **مَرَرْتُ بِهِ وَحْدَهُ** I passed by him by himself or alone.
- D

ذَلِكَ جَهْدَكَ thou hast done this to the best of thy ability (= مُجْتَهِدًا) ;
 تَفَرَّقَ الْقَوْمُ ; مُشَافَهَةً I spoke to him face to face (= مُشَافَهَةً) إِلَى فِي
 أَتَنِى سُلَيْمٌ قَطْبًا بِقَضِيضِهَا (= مُتَبَدِّدِينَ see rem. c, 3) ;
 (the tribe of) Sulaim came to me, its gravel with its pebbles (i.e. small
 and great, one and all, = جَمِيعًا) ; فَأَرْسَلَهَا الْعَرَاكُ and so he let them
 (the camels) go in a body, or a crowd, to water (= مُعْتَرِكَةً) ;
 جَاءُوا الْجَمَاءَ الْغَبِيرَ they came all together (lit. in a great mass,
 covering the ground, = جَمِيعًا).

REM. f. The subject or object of the action to which the **حَال** B
 refers, **صَاحِبُ الْحَالِ** or **هُوَ الْحَالِ**, is usually definite, **مَعْرُوفَةٌ**. The
 principal cases in which it is indefinite, **نَكِرَةٌ**, are the following.
 (1) When the **حَال** precedes it, as **فِيهَا قَائِمًا رَجُلٌ** in it (the house)
 is a man standing ; **لِعِزَّةٍ مُوحِشًا طَلَلٌ قَدِيمٌ** 'Azza's is an ancient
 ruin, left desolate ; **وَبِالْجَسْرِ مَنَى بَيْتًا تَوَّعَلْتِهِ شُحُوبٌ** and in my
 body there is, manifestly, if thou didst (but) know it, a sad change ;
وَتَحْتَ الْقَوَالِي وَالْقَنَا مُسْتَظِلَّةٌ ظِلَابٌ and under the spearheads and
 shafts, seeking shelter, are gazelles (women). (2) When the **صَاحِبُ**
الْحَالِ is followed by an adjective or a complement in the genitive,
 as **فِيهَا يَقِفُ كُلُّ أَمْرٍ حَكِيمٍ أَمْرًا مِنْ عِنْدِنَا** in it (that night) is
 settled each wise thing, as a thing proceeding from us ; **نَجَّيْتَ يَا رَبِّ**
نُوحًا thou didst deliver Noah, O my Lord, and didst answer his prayer, in a ship cleaving
 the sea heavily laden ; **عِنْدِي غُلَامٌ رَجُلِي قَائِمًا** in my house is a
 man's slave standing ; **فِي أَرْبَعَةِ أَيَّامٍ سَوَاءٍ لِلسَّائِلِينَ** in four days
 complete—(this) for inquirers. (3) After a negative or an inter-
 rogation, as **مَا حَرَّمَ مِنْ مَوْتٍ جَمِيٍّ وَإِلَيَّا** there is no interdicted spot
 appointed to preserve (one) from death ; **لَا يَرْكَنَنَّ أَحَدٌ إِلَى الْإِحْصَامِ** let no one incline to hang back on the day

- A of battle, fearing death; *يَا صَاحِبَ هَلْ حُمِرَ عَيْشُ قَائِلًا* O friend, is a life decreed as lasting?—Sībawaih, however, admitted the correctness of such a phrase as *فِيهَا رَجُلٌ قَائِلًا*, and in a tradition we find *صَلَّى رَسُولُ اللَّهِ صَلَّى صَلَاحًا قَاعِدًا وَرَأَاهُ وَجَالَ قِيَامًا* the Apostle of God prayed sitting, and there prayed behind him (some) men standing.

- REM. g. As to the position of the *حَال* in a sentence, the following remarks must suffice, in connection with what will be said elsewhere.—(1) As a rule, the *حَال* is placed after the regent. It may, however, precede it, if the regent be a fully inflected (*مُتَصَرِّفٌ*) verb or verbal adjective, as *رَاحِبًا جَاءَ زَيْدٌ* riding came Zaid; *زَيْدٌ مُسْرِعًا ذَا رَاحِلٍ* in haste is this (man) departing; but we cannot say *زَيْدٌ ضَاحِكًا أَحْسَنُ مِنْ غَمْرٍو* and *ضَاحِكًا مَا أَحْسَنَ زَيْدًا*, instead of *زَيْدٌ أَحْسَنُ مِنْ غَمْرٍو ضَاحِكًا* and *مَا أَحْسَنَ زَيْدٌ ضَاحِكًا*, because neither *أَحْسَنُ* as *فِعْلٌ التَّعْجِبِ*, nor *أَحْسَنُ* as *أَفْعَلُ التَّفْضِيلِ*, is *مُتَصَرِّفٌ*. An exception to the latter case is when an object in a certain state is compared with itself, or with another object, in a different state, in which case the one *حَال* must precede *أَفْعَلُ*, and the other follow it, as *زَيْدٌ قَائِلًا أَحْسَنُ مِنْهُ قَاعِدًا* Zaid standing looks more handsome than he does sitting, or *زَيْدٌ مُفْرَدًا أَفْعُ مِنْ* *زَيْدٌ مُعَاوَاةً* Zaid alone is more useful than 'Amr assisted (by others). If the regent be a *عَامِلٌ مَعْنَوِيٌّ* (see rem. b), the *حَال* must follow it, with rare exceptions in the case of a preposition and its complement. We cannot use *عَطُوفًا هَذَا أَبُوكَ مُجَرَّدَةً تِلْكَ هُنْدٌ*, *رَاحِبًا كَأَنَّ زَيْدًا أَسَدًا*, *أَمِيرًا لَيْتَ زَيْدًا أَخُوكَ*, *تِلْكَ هُنْدٌ مُجَرَّدَةً*, *كَأَنَّ زَيْدًا رَاحِبًا أَسَدًا*, *لَيْتَ زَيْدًا أَمِيرًا أَخُوكَ*, *هَذَا أَبُوكَ عَطُوفًا*; nor is it usual to say *زَيْدٌ قَائِلًا هُنْدَكَ* or *الْأَدَارِ فِي* *زَيْدٌ* for *زَيْدٌ قَائِلًا* or *زَيْدٌ فِي الْأَدَارِ قَائِلًا*, though some read in the Kor'an *وَالسَّمَوَاتِ مَطْوِيَّاتٍ بِيَمِينِهِ* and the heavens, folded together,
- D

(shall be) in his right hand, instead of مَطْوِيَّاتٍ, and the heavens A
 (shall be) folded together in his right hand.—(2) The حَال may pre-
 ceede the صَاحِبِ الْحَالِ, when the latter is the subject (nomin.) or
 direct object (accus.), as فَصَارَ فَاحِشًا زَيْدٌ, فَصَارَ فَاحِشًا زَيْدٌ; unless
 the حَال be restricted by إِلَّا, as وَمَا نُرْسِلُ الْمُرْسَلِينَ إِلَّا مُبَشِّرِينَ
 وَمَا نُرْسِلُ الْمُرْسَلِينَ إِلَّا مُبَشِّرِينَ and we do not send the Apostles but as announcers and
 warners. If the صَاحِبِ الْحَالِ be governed by a preposition, the
 حَال must follow it, as مَرَرْتُ جَالِسَةً بِهَيْدٍ, not مَرَرْتُ بِهَيْدٍ جَالِسَةً. B
 Only a poet could venture on an emergency to say كَلَنْ يَرُدُّ
 نَيْنٌ كَلَنْ يَرُدُّ نَيْنٌ if ever the coolness of
 water was dear to me when parched and thirsty, verily she is dear (to
 me), for أَفَلَاؤُا أُصْبَنَ وَنِسْوَةٌ فُلُكُنْ; or حَبِيبًا إِلَى هَيْمَانَ صَادِيًا
 حَبِيبًا إِلَى هَيْمَانَ صَادِيًا; and though (your) herds of camels and
 (your) women be seized, yet ye must not let the murder of Hilāl pass
 unavenged, for بِقَتْلِ حَبَالٍ فَرَعًا. The حَال may be dependent upon C
 a preceding مُضَافٍ إِلَيْهِ (see § 75), when the مُضَافٍ or governing
 word, is naturally capable of being its regent (masdar, nomen
 agentis, etc., see rem. b), as هَذَا صَارِبٌ هِنْدٍ مُجَرَّدَةٌ; to God shall be your return
 altogether; أَقُولُ أَبْتَنِي إِنْ أَنْطَلَقَكَ وَاحِدًا إِلَى الْوُجُحِ يَوْمًا تَارِكِي
 أَقُولُ أَبْتَنِي إِنْ أَنْطَلَقَكَ وَاحِدًا إِلَى الْوُجُحِ يَوْمًا تَارِكِي my daughter says, Verily thy departing alone to war will
 one day leave me without a father; or when the مُضَافٍ is a part, D
 really or tropically, of the مُضَافٍ إِلَيْهِ, as وَلَوْفَمَا مَا بِي صُدُورِهِمْ مِنْ
 وَلَوْفَمَا مَا بِي صُدُورِهِمْ مِنْ غِلٍّ إِنْخَوَانًا and We will remove what is in their breasts of rancour
 as brethren (إِنْخَوَانًا dependent on the suffixed pronoun in صُدُورِهِمْ);
 ثُمَّ أَوْحَيْنَا إِلَيْكَ أَنْ اتَّبِعْ مِلَّةَ إِبْرَاهِيمَ حَنِيفًا
 ثُمَّ أَوْحَيْنَا إِلَيْكَ أَنْ اتَّبِعْ مِلَّةَ إِبْرَاهِيمَ حَنِيفًا then We revealed unto
 thee, Follow the law of Abraham as a hanif, i.e. inclining to the
 right state or sound in faith (حَنِيفًا dependent on إِبْرَاهِيمَ, مِلَّةٌ being

that the actual *حَال* itself is suppressed, and only a word or phrase, ^A
which is dependent upon it, expressed; as *وَالْمَلَائِكَةُ يَدْخُلُونَ عَلَيْهِمْ*
وَالْمَلَائِكَةُ يَدْخُلُونَ عَلَيْهِمْ مِنْ كُلِّ بَابٍ سَلَامٌ عَلَيْكُمْ and the angels shall go in unto them
through every gate, (saying, *قَالُوا*) Peace be upon you.

d. The motive and object of the agent in doing the act, the
cause or reason of his doing it; as *هَرَبْتُ خَوْفًا* I fled for fear;
ثُمَّ لَمْ تَخْرُجْ عَنِ الْحَرْبِ جُنَا thou didst refrain from going forth to war
out of cowardice; *فَرَبْتُ ابْنِي تَأْوِيلًا لَهُ* I beat my son for the sake ^B
of correcting him; *إِذَا رَأَيْتَهُ أَلُمْتُ لَهُ تَعْظِيمًا لِاسْتِادِي* when I see him,
I stand up before him to show respect to my teacher; *بِئْسَمَا اشْتَرَوْا بِهِ*
بِئْسَمَا اشْتَرَوْا بِهِ أَنْفُسَهُمْ أَنْ يَكْفُرُوا بِمَا أَنْزَلَ اللَّهُ بَقِيًا vile is the price for which they
have sold their souls, that they should not believe in what God has
sent down (revealed), out of envy; *وَدَّ كَثِيرٌ مِنْ أَهْلِ الْكِتَابِ لَوْ يَرُدُّوكُمْ*
وَدَّ كَثِيرٌ مِنْ أَهْلِ الْكِتَابِ لَوْ يَرُدُّوكُمْ many of those who have ^C
Scriptures would like if they could make you unbelievers again, after
ye have believed, out of selfish envy; *فَعَلْتُ كَذَا مَخَافَةَ الشَّرِّ* I did so
and so for fear of harm, or *فَعَلْتُ كَذَا مَخَافَةَ أَنْ تَكُونَنِي* for fear that thou
shouldst reproach me; *وَمِنْ أَتَابِ مَنْ يَشْرِي نَفْسَهُ ابْتِغَاءَ مَرْضَاتِ اللَّهِ*
and of men there are who sell themselves (give up their lives) to win
the favour of God (for *مَرْضَاة*); *وَأَغْفِرُ عَوْرَةَ الْكَبِيرِ آيَاةَ وَأَعْرِضُ عَنْ*
وَأَغْفِرُ عَوْرَةَ الْكَبِيرِ آيَاةَ وَأَعْرِضُ عَنْ I forgive the harsh language of the noble, that I may ^D
treasure him up (as a friend in time of need), and I disregard the
abuse of the vile out of generosity; *يَجْعَلُونَ أَصَابِعَهُمْ فِي آذَانِهِمْ مِنْ*
يَجْعَلُونَ أَصَابِعَهُمْ فِي آذَانِهِمْ مِنْ they put their fingers in their ears on account
of the claps of thunder, through fear of death. Such an accusative
is usually either indefinite or else in the construct state; definition
by the article is not common, as *لَا أَلْعَدُ الْجَهَنَّمَ عَنِ الْهَيْجَاءِ* I refrain
not from battle out of cowardice.

- A REM. This accusative, which must always be a مُصَدَّرٌ قَلْبِيٌّ, a mental or intellectual nomen verbi, is called by the grammarians اَلْمَفْعُولُ لِأَجْلِهِ (مِنْ أَجْلِهِ), اَلْمَفْعُولُ لَهُ, that on account of which something is done. It is the answer to the question لِمَ why?

- a. Various other determinations and limitations of the predicate ;
 as طَابَ الْوَرْدُ لَوْنًا *Zaid is cheerful in spirit* ; طَابَ زَيْدٌ نَفْسًا *the rose is charming in colour* ; تَصَبَّبَ زَيْدٌ قَرْنًا *Zaid streamed with perspiration* ;
 B وَاشْتَغَلَ الرَّأْسُ شَيْبًا *and my head glistens with hoariness* ;
 أَحْلَامُنَا تَرِبُنَ الْجِبَالِ رِزَانَةً *our grave minds surpass the mountains in weight (or firmness)* ;
 أَنْبَرَحْتَ طَرْمًا *thou art a marvel of generosity* ;
 رَفَعْتُ الشَّيْخَ قَدْرًا *I raised the chief in dignity* ;
 وَغَرَسْتُ الْأَرْضَ شَجَرًا *I planted the land with trees* ;
 وَفَجَّرْنَا الْأَرْضَ عُيُونًا *and we made the earth break forth with springs* ;
 اللَّهُ عَظِيمٌ قُدْرَةً *God is great in might* ;
 أَنْتَ أَعْلَى مَنْزِلًا وَأَكْثَرُ *he is a Hātim in generosity* ;
 هُوَ حَاتِمٌ جُودًا *he is a Hātim in generosity* ;
 C فَبِي كَالْجِبَارَةِ *thou art higher in station and richer in wealth* ;
 أَوْ أَشَدَّ قَسْوَةً *and they (your hearts) were like stones, or even harder (lit. stronger as to hardness)* ;
 أَكْرَمَ بِأَبِي بَكْرٍ أَبًا *or مَا أَكْرَمَ أَبًا بَكْرٍ أَبًا* ,
 how noble is Abū Bākr as a father !
 زَيْدٌ نِعَمٌ صَاحِبًا *excellent is Zaid as a companion* !
 بِشَرٍّ خَلَامًا *very bad is Bīr as a slave* !
 وَنِعْمَ الْوَزَادُ زَادُ أَبِيكَ زَادًا *and excellent is the provision, thy father's provision, as a provision* !
 نَصْرُكَ بِهِ نَاصِرًا *thy sufficiency is in Him* ;
 D (He suffices thee) as a helper ;
 لَبَّيْ دُرَّةً قَارِسًا *what a man he is as a horseman* ! (lit. to God belongs his outflow or emanation, from none other could he emanate) ;
 وَبَيْحَةً رَجُلًا *what a man he is* ! (being here a حَرْفٌ تَعْجِيبٍ or particle of surprise) ;
 هُوَ خَيْرٌ رَاجِلًا مِنْهُ قَارِسًا [*he is better as a pedestrian than as a horseman, § 48, c, rem. a*].

REM. a. This accusative is called اَلْمُفَوِّزُ or اَلْمُفَوِّزُ, the specifica-

tion, and also التفسير or المفسر, and التبيين or المبين, the explanation. A
 It is an indefinite substantive, اسم نكرة, placed immediately after the proposition of which it limits or defines the predicate. In the grammatical structure of the sentence it is a فصلة, like the حال (see c, rem. a). The grammarians regard it as governed by the verb in the preceding clause, of which it was the فاعل or مفعول, before its transference to the place of تمييز to the actual فاعل or مفعول; or, if the preceding clause be nominal, as having been B transferred from the place of the مبتدأ. Thus طاب زيد نفسا is equivalent, they say, to طابت نفس زيد; رقت الشئخ قدرا; رقت قدر الشئخ; and قدر الله عظمته to الله عظيم قدره; رقت قدر الشئخ; and مال زيد أكثر من مالك to زيد أكثر منك مالا. The تمييز may be explained by من with the genitive when it is منقول من المفعول, as شجرة من شجرة, instead of شجرة; but not when it is C منقول من الفاعل, for طاب زيد من نفس is nonsense. [Instead of ويحه رجلا and لله درة فاربا in the phrases quoted and رجلا and فاربا we may use من رجل and من فارس. See § 48, b.]—The تمييز may occasionally be placed, by poetic license, before the predicate which it limits, as أتجبر سلمى بالفراق حبيبها وما طقان نفسا بالفراق تطيب, will Selma sever herself from her lover by going away (from him), though she is not cheered in spirit by going away! D وما أرعويت وشيها and I did not refrain, though my head glistened with hoariness. Such phrases as بئس غلاما بشر and نعر صاحبا زيد are no exceptions to the ordinary rule, as they stand for نعر هو بئس الرجل غلاما بشر. The transposition of the تمييز can take place only when the previous clause contains a verb which is متصرف (see c, rem. g), as اشتعل and تطيب in the

- A above examples*. Should it even happen that the *فِعْلٌ مُتَصَرِّفٌ* bears the meaning of a *فِعْلٌ غَيْرُ مُتَصَرِّفٍ*, no transposition can take place; we cannot say *كَفَى بِزَيْدٍ عَالِمًا*, instead of *كَفَى عَالِمًا بِزَيْدٍ*, *there is a sufficiency in Zaid (Zaid suffices) as a scholar*, because *كَفَى بِهِ عَالِمًا* is here equivalent to *مَا أَكْفَاهُ عَالِمًا*, and a *فِعْلٌ تَعْجِيبٌ* is *غَيْرُ مُتَصَرِّفٍ*.
- B REM. b. The accusative after the cardinal numbers from 11 to 19 and from 20 to 99 (see Vol. i. §§ 322, 323), is also of this class, being a *تَمْيِيزُ الْقَدْرِ* or *specification of number*; as *أَحَدٌ عَشَرَ رَجُلًا* eleven men, *تِسْعَ عَشْرَةَ سَنَةً* nineteen years, *أَحَدٌ وَعِشْرُونَ عَامًا* one and twenty years, *إِبْنٌ ثَمَانِينَ سَنَةً* eighty years old (lit. a son of eighty years).
- REM. c. To this class also belongs the *specification of weight*
- C (*الْمِيزَانُ*, *الْمِيزَانُ*, *الْمِيزَانُ*), in which the *تَمْيِيزُ* follows a single indefinite noun, and specifies the article of which that noun expresses the quantity; as *رَطْلٌ زَيْتًا* a pint of olive-oil, *مَنْوَانِ سَمْنًا* two manas (four pounds) of clarified butter (ghoe), *قَفِيزٌ بُرًّا* a *qafiz* of wheat, *رِوَاعَانِ جُوعًا* two cubits of cloth, *لِي جَرِيْبٌ نَخْلًا* I bought two *qā's* of dates, *إِشْتَرَيْتُ صَاعَيْنِ تَمْرًا* I own a *qārib* of date-trees; *ذَنْوْبٌ مَاءً* a bucket of water, *بَحْنِي سَمْنًا* a skin of ghoe, *رَأْوُذٌ خَلًّا* a jar of vinegar, *خُبٌّ عَسَلًا* a pot of honey; *خَاتَمٌ حَدِيدًا* a ring of iron, *بَابٌ سَاجًا* a door of teak-wood, *جُبَّةٌ خَرًّا* a coat of silk; *لَيْسَ عِنْدِي ثِقْلٌ خَزَوْلَةً دَهْنًا* I have not got
- D

* [The transposition of *دَمْعًا* in the words *فَلَمْ أَدْرِ دَمْعًا أَيُّنَا كَانَ* and *أَسْجَمًا* and *I did not know, which of us two shed the most tears* (Dozy, *Supplém.* i. 654, a, l. 6) is allowed because *أَسْجَمًا* is the comparative of *سَاجِمٌ* pouring forth. But perhaps *دَمْعًا* is here *مَفْعُولٌ لَهُ* for tears (Fleischer, *KL. Schr.* ii. 556). D. G.]

the weight of a grain of mustard-seed in gold, **مَا فِي السَّمَاءِ قَدَرُ رَا حِدَةٍ** (or **مَوْضِعُ طَلَبِ سَخَابَا**) there is not in the sky a cloud the size of a hand; **لَنْ يَنْقَبَلَ مِنْ أَحَدٍ مِلْءُ الْأَرْضِ ذَهَبًا** there shall not be received from any one (of them) the full of the earth in gold; **عَلَى الْأَثْمَرَةِ** on each date its like in fresh butter (a piece of fresh butter of the same size).—This **تَمِيْزُ الْقَوَيْنِ وَالْكَثَلِ** is equivalent to the إضافة (§ 75) or to the preposition **مِنْ** with the genitive; e.g. **بُرَا** **فِيْهِزْ مِنْ بَرٍ** or **فِيْهِزْ بَرٍ** = **فِيْهِزْ بَرًا**. In some cases, however, there may be a difference; e.g. **ذَنْوْبٌ مَّاءٍ** means a bucket (full) of water, a bucketful of water, whereas **ذَنْوْبٌ مَّاءٍ** may mean not only a bucket of water, but also a bucket for water, a water-bucket.

REM. d. Finally, to this class belongs the accusative after the interrogative nouns of number **كَمْ** and **كَمْيَا**, *how much? how many?* and the indefinite **كَمْذَا**, *so and so much or many* [included under the name **الْكَتَابَاتُ** (1)].—**كَمْ** (contracted for **كَمْيَا** the like of what, = **مِثْلُ مَا** or **قَدَرُ مَا**, see Vol. i. § 351, rem.) is either interrogative, = **أَيُّ عَدَدٍ** *what number?* or **خَبَرِيَّةٌ** assertory or predicative (or exclamatory), = **كَثِيْرٌ** *much, many*. (a) As interrogative, **كَمْ** is followed by an indefinite substantive in the accus. sing., as **كَمْ رَجُلًا عِنْدَكَ** *how many men are there in thy house?* **كَمْ غُلَامًا لَكَ ذَاهِبٌ** *how many slaves of thine are going away?* **كَمْ عَبْدًا سَتَشْتَرِيْهِ** *how many slaves wilt thou buy?* **كَمْ خَيْرًا مِنْهُ لَكَ** *how many like it hast thou?* **كَمْ خَيْرًا مِنْهُ لَكَ** *how many better than it hast thou?* A phrase like **كَمْ لَكَ غُلَامًا** *how many slaves hast thou?* is no exception to the rule, because the **مَوْضِعُ** of **كَمْ** has been omitted, viz. **نَفْسًا**, and **غُلَامًا** is in the accus. as a **حَالٌ** (see c, rem. b and rem. c, 3). If governed in the genitive by a preceding substantive or a preposition, the **مَوْضِعُ** may be put in the genit. as well as the

- A accus.; e.g. *أَطْلَقْتَ (رَجُلًا) رِزْقَ كَظَرٍ رَجُلًا* the pension of how many men hast thou granted? *هَذَا أَشْتَرَيْتَ هَذَا بِكَظَرٍ دِرْهَمًا* for how many dirhams didst thou buy this? *سَقَفْتَ بَيْتَكَ عَلَى كَظَرٍ جِدْعًا (جِدْعٍ)* on how many beams hast thou placed the roof of thy house? (β) As assertory or predicative (or exclamatory), *كَظَرٍ* is followed by a substantive in the genitive of the singular or of the broken plural, and requires a verb in the perfect; as *كَظَرٍ فَلْيَانٍ مَلَكَتُ* many a slave have I owned, or how many a slave have I owned / = *كَظَرًا مِنْ* *كَظَرٍ دِرْهَمٍ أَتَقَلَّتْ* many a dirham have I spent, or how many a dirham have I spent! This genitive is explained by an ellipsis of *مِنْ*, which is often expressed; as *وَكَظَرٍ مِنْ مَلِكٍ لِي السَّمَوَاتِ لَا تُغْنِي* and there is many an angel (or how many an angel is there) in heaven, whose intercession shall be of no avail; *وَكَظَرٍ مِنْ قُرْبَةٍ أَهْلَكْنَاهَا* and many a town have We destroyed, or how many a town have We destroyed! If, however, *كَظَرٍ* be separated from the *مُمَيَّز*, the latter should be put in the accusative, not in the genitive, as *كَظَرٍ نَالَنِي مِنْهُمْ قُضْلًا عَلَى عَذِيرٍ* many a bounty have I received from them when (I was) in want; *تَوَّأَ بَنَانًا وَكَظَرٍ ذُوْتَهُ مِنَ الْأَرْضِ مُخَدَّوْدًا* she (the camel) makes for Sinan, but on this side of him there is many a tract of land, the valley of which is deeply hollowed; though the genitive is also admissible in poetry, as *كَظَرٍ ذُونُ مَيْةٍ مَوْمَاءَ بِهَالٍ* there is on this side of Maiya many a frightful desert; *كَظَرٍ لِي* there is among the *بَنِي سَعْدِ بْنِ بَكْرِ سَيِّدٍ فَخِيمٍ الدَّيْبَةِ مَا جِدَ نَفَاحٍ* there is among the Bnd Sa'd' ibn Bakr many a chief large in gifts, glorious and useful (to his tribe).—Unless it be governed by a preceding substantive or a preposition, *كَظَرٍ* always stands at the beginning of the clause. If a singular *مُمَيَّز* be followed by a pronoun referring to it, that pronoun may be either singular or plural, as *كَظَرٍ رَجُلٍ رَأَيْتَهُ* or *مُمَيَّزٍ* *وَكَظَرٍ مِنْ مَلِكٍ أَلْعَ لَقِيْتُهُنَّ* or *كَظَرٍ أَمْرَأَةٍ لَقِيْتَهَا* *رَأَيْتُهُنَّ* may, of course, be often omitted after *كَظَرٍ*, as *كَظَرٍ مَالِكَ* how much
- B
- C
- D

is *thy property*? scil. دِينَارًا ; كَمْ غِلْمَانُكَ how many slaves hast *A*
thou? scil. نَفْسًا ; كَمْ بَرْتِ how far hast *thou* travelled? scil.
 كَمْ عَبْدُ اللَّهِ مَاكِثٌ ; مِيلًا or قَرَسْنَا how long will 'Abdu 'llāh
delay? scil. سَاعَةً or يَوْمًا ; زَيْدٌ كَمْ جَاءَكَ زَيْدٌ how often has Zēil come
 to *thee*? scil. مَرَّةً ; إِبْنُ كَمْ كَانَ حَسَّانُ مَقْدَمَ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ صَلَّى عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ how many years old was Hassan, when the Apostle of God
 arrived at 'El-Medina?].—(2) كَأَيِّ or كَأَيِّنْ, compounded of كَ B
 and the genitive of أَيُّ who? which? [Vol. i. § 351, 353, rem. c]
 is scarcely ever employed interrogatively, as قَالَ أَبُو بَنْ كَعْبٍ
 لِبَنِّ مَسْعُودٍ كَأَيِّنْ تَقْرَأُ سُورَةَ الْأَنْزَابِ فَقَالَ ثَلَاثًا وَسَبْعِينَ
 'I bēi 'ilm Ka'b said to 'Ibn Mas'ūd, As how many (verses) dost thou read the
 Chapter of the Confederates (Kor. xxxlii.)? And he said, Seventy-
 three. Its ordinary use is assertory or predicative (or exclamatory),
 followed by the accus. singular, as كَأَيِّنْ رَجُلًا رَأَيْتُ many a man
 (or how many a man) have I seen; but more usually by مِنْ with C
 the genitive, as وَكَأَيِّنْ مِنْ نَبِيٍّ قَاتَلَ مَعَهُ رِبِّيُونَ كَثِيرٌ and how
 many a prophet (is there), with whom many myriads have fought!
 وَكَأَيِّنْ مِنْ آيَةٍ فِي السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ يَمُرُّونَ عَلَيْهَا وَهُمْ عَنْهَا مُعْرِضُونَ
 and how many a sign is there in heaven and earth, by which they
 pass, turning away from it! وَأَكْثَى مِنْ أَسَى أَكْثَى الْأَسَى many a
 grief is too great to be consoled by any examples (of resignation).
 It is disputed whether it can be preceded by a preposition, as in D
 the phrase بِكَأَيِّ تَبِيعُ هَذَا الثَّوْبَ for how much wilt thou sell this
 piece of cloth? (another example of the interrogative use).—(3) كَذَا
 (sometimes written كَذَى), so and so much or many [Vol. i. § 340,
 rem. d], requires after it an indefinite accus. in the singular, as
 عِنْدِي كَذَا دِرْهَمًا I possess so and so many slaves; كَذَا دِرْهَمًا
 I have so and so many dirhams by me. It is more usually doubled,
 كَذَا وَكَذَا, as قَالَ مِنَ الشَّعْرِ كَذَا وَكَذَا بَيْتًا he made (lit. said) so

- A *and so many verses of poetry*; وَكَذَا جَارِيَةً *the 'amir bought so and so many slave-girls*; عِدَّة النَّفْسِ نَعْمًا بَعْدَ بُؤْسَالٍ *promises thy soul ease after thy affliction, calling to mind such and such favours, through which trouble is forgotten. The conjunction is sometimes omitted, and some say that there is a distinction between وَكَذَا وَكَذَا and وَكَذَا وَكَذَا; e.g. كَذًا كَذًا بِرَقْمًا means, according to them, I owe him so and so many dirhams, from 11 to 19, whereas كَذًا وَكَذَا بِرَقْمًا means at least 21 dirhams.*
- B

- f. An act expressed by a *nomen verbi*, with which another act, expressed by a finite tense, is compared; as قَتَلُوهُ قَتْلَ آبَيْهِ أَخَاهُ عَمْرًا *they killed him in the same way as his son killed their brother 'Amr*; زَيْدًا تَعْلِيْبَةً إِسْمَاعِيلَ أَبُو زَيْدٍ *he tortured Zaid just as 'Isma'il, Zaid's father, had tortured him*; وَلَوْ يَعْجِلُ اللَّهُ لِلنَّاسِ الشَّرَّ اسْتَعْجَلْتُمْ *and if God should hasten evil upon men, as they would fain hasten good, verily their end (death) would be decreed. For this accusative may be substituted لَ with the genitive of the nomen verbi, or كَذًا with a finite tense of the verb; e.g. in the first example, كَذًا قَتَلَ آبَيْهِ or كَقَتَلَ آبَيْهِ [comp. § 27, b].*
- C

45. If an entire clause, consisting of a subject and a predicate, be annexed to another clause, to define or limit either the subject or object of the latter, then the predicate of the former is placed before its subject and put in the accusative, the subject being left in the nominative (see § 73). For example: وَلَّى تِمْرُنْكَ مَكْسُورًا *Timur-lank (Tamerlane) turned his back, after his van had been broken and his rear struck with panic*; هُوَ الَّذِي أَثْنَا *He it is who produceth gardens with trollees for vines and without them, and the palmtrees and the grain, with their various edible fruits*
- D

4. سَأُغْلِبُ عَنِّي الْعَارَ بِالسَّيْفِ ; (مُحَاقِبَاتُنَا أَهْلَهُ مُخْتَلِفًا = مُخْتَلِفًا أَهْلَهُ)
جَالِبًا عَلَيَّ قَضَاءَ اللَّهِ مَا كَانَ حَاجِبًا I will wipe away my disgrace
with the sword, let God's decree bring upon me what it may (جَالِبًا عَلَيَّ
= جَالِبًا in rhyme for جَالِبًا. وَإِنْ جَلَبَ عَلَيَّ).

(b) *The Prepositions.*

46. The prepositions all originally designate relations of *place* (local relations), but are transferred, first, to relations of *time* (temporal relations), and next, to various sorts of *ideal* relations, conceived under the figure of the local relations to which they correspond.—They are divided into *simple* and *compound*.—The simple prepositions are again divisible into three classes, indicating respectively motion proceeding from or away from a place, motion to or towards it, and rest in it.

47. The prepositions which indicate motion proceeding from or away from a place, are مِنْ (*ex*) out of, from, and عَنْ (*ab*) away from.

REM. In Hebrew and Aramaic ׀ supplies the place both of عَنْ and مِنْ.

48. مِنْ (with pronominal suffixes مِنِّي, مِنْكَ, مِنْهُ) designates:—

(a) The *local point of departure*, departure from a place; as سَقَطَ مِنْ يَدِهَا it fell from her hand; خَرَجَ مِنْ مَكَّةَ he went forth from Mekkā; سُبْحَانَ الَّذِي أَسْرَى بِعَبْدِهِ لَيْلًا مِنَ الْمَسْجِدِ الْحَرَامِ (I declare) the glory of Him who transported His servant by night from the sacred Temple (at Mekkā). Hence it is connected with verbs which convey the idea of separation, departure, holding oneself or another aloof from any person or thing, liberating, preserving, fleeing, frightening away, forbidding, and the like; as هُوَ الْحِصْنُ هُوَ الَّذِي يَنْجِي مِنْ جَمِيعِ الشَّدَائِدِ this is the fortress which preserves (us) from

- A *all calamities*; **أَعُوذُ بِاللَّهِ مِنَ الْطَّمَعِ** *I take refuge with God (pray God to preserve me) from covetousness*; **الدُّنْيَا تَمْنَعُ مِنَ الْخَيْرِ** *the world holds (us) back from good*; **الَّذِي خَلَقَكُمْ مِنْ نَفْسٍ وَاحِدَةٍ** *who hath created you (brought you into existence) from one soul*. Hence too its use to signify, on the one hand, *by or through*, as **دَخَلَ مِنَ الْبَابِ** *he came in by, or through, the door*; **أَبْرَاجُهَا الَّتِي يَتَرَقَّى الْبَاءُ مِنْهَا** *its towers through which the water ascends*;
- B **إِذَا نَظَرُ إِلَى الشَّمْسِ وَالْقَمَرِ** *when we look at the sun and moon through an opening in the clouds*; and, on the other hand, *in place of, instead of* (**بَدَلَ** = **بَدَلُ**), as **أَرْضَيْتُمْ بِالدُّنْيَا مِنَ الْآخِرَةِ** *are ye contented with the life of this world instead of the next?* **وَلَوْ نَشَاءُ نَجْعَلَنَّ مِنْكُمْ مَلَائِكَةً** *and if we pleased, we could place (or create) in your stead angels to succeed (you) on the earth*; **وَلَمْ تَكُنْ مِنَ الْكَافِرِينَ** *and she had not tasted the pistachio-nut instead of (common) vegetables*;
- C **فَلَيْتَ لَنَا مِنْ مَاءِ زَمْزَمَ شَرِبَةً** *oh would that we had a draught instead of the water of Zamzam!**
- (b) The temporal point of departure, the point at which an act or state has commenced; as **عَبَدَ اللَّهَ مِنْ شَبَابِهِ** *he served God from his youth*; **وَلَقَدْ أَتَعْلَمُ مِنَ الْعَهْدِ إِلَى الْعَهْدِ** *the time of learning extends from the cradle to the grave*; **نُصِيبُونَ مِنْ أَرْزَاقِ يَوْمِ حَلِيمَةَ** *they have been chosen from the times of the battle (lit. day) of Halima*.

* [In the words **لَا يَنْفَعُكَ إِذَا هَدَيْتُكَ مِنْكَ الْجِدُّ** Zamahsari, *Paik*, i. 159, explains **مِنْ** by **بَدَلَ** i.e. **بَدَلَ طَاعَتِكَ وَعِبَادَتِكَ**, *riches will not profit the possessor thereof instead of Thee, i.e. the obedience and subservience to Thee*. Commonly it is said to have here the signification of **عِنْدَ** with *Thee* (comp. Lane in v. **جَدُّ**). D. G.]

REM. a. The Arab grammarians say that مِنْ, when used in the A above significations, is employed *لِاتِّبَاعِ الْكَلَامِ فِي الْمَكَانِ وَالزَّمَانِ* to denote the commencement of the limit in place and time, or simply *لِلاتِّبَاعِ* to denote the commencement.

REM. b. The tribe of Huzail used مَتَى in these senses as well as مِنْ; e.g. أَخْرَجَهَا مَتَى كَيْدِهِ (مِنْ) he brought it out of (مِنْ) his claws; they (the clouds) drank of the sea-water, then they rose from (مِنْ) the dark. B green flood with the sound of the storm.

[REM. a. On مِنْ in the signification of مِمَّنْ see § 61, rem. d.]

(c) The causal point of departure, the origin and source of a thing; as *إِلَافٌ مِنْ لَدُنِّي* this is in consequence of information that reached me; *وَقَفَّ يَتَعَجَّبُ مِنْهَا* and he stood admiring it (or wondering at it, his wonder proceeding from, or being caused by, it); C *مِمَّا خَطِبْتُمْ إِلَيْهِمْ أَفْرَقُوا* they were drowned because of their sins (the particle مَا is merely expletive and does not interfere with the government of مِنْ); *يُكَلِّمُ خِيَمًا وَيُخْفِي مِنْ مَهَابَتِهِ* he is silent out of modesty, and others are silent through fear of him. Hence its use after verbs meaning to sell and to give in marriage, as *بَاعَ مِنْهُ قَرَسًا* he sold to him a horse; *يَعْتَمِدُ مِنْ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ صَلَّى* I sold to the Apostle of God a pair of trousers; D *إِسْمَاعِيلُ أَبْنَتَهُ مِنْ آيْنِ أَخِيهِ الْعَبِيسِ بْنِ إِسْحَاقَ* Ishmael gave his daughter in marriage to his nephew, Esau the son of Isaac.

REM. a. The grammarians say that مِنْ is used in this case *لِلتَّعْلِيلِ* to assign the reason.

REM. b. In speaking of persons مِنْ أَجْلِ, on account of, is always used instead of مِنْ, and often too in other cases; as

- A *أَجْلَهَا* *she on whose account, or for whose sake, thou weepst*; *فَعَارٌ ثُمَّ عَارٌ ثُمَّ عَارٌ شَقَاءُ الْفَقْرِ مِنْ أَجْلِ الطَّعَامِ* *it is a threefold disgrace for a man to be in misery on account of (for want of) food*; *مِنْ أَجْلِ كَلَامِهِ* *because of what he said.*

- (d) The *distance* from a place, person, or thing, particularly after words which signify proximity, such as *قُرْبٌ* or *دَنَا* *to be near*, *قُرْبٌ* *near*, etc. (compare Lat. *prope ab eo*, Fr. *près de lui*, *rapproché de lui*);
 B e.g. *قُرْبَ الْجَيْشِ مِنْهُمْ* *the army was near them*; *دَنَا مِنِّي* *he was not far from me* (*دَنَا إِلَيَّ* would mean *he came up close to me*); *يَنْهَى لِطَالِبٍ* *it behoves the student not to sit near, or close to, the teacher.* [Hence its figurative use in the phrases quoted § 44, b, rem. a near the end: *هُوَ مِثْلِي مَنَاطُ الْقُرْبَى* etc., and in the following examples: *مَا هَذَا الْفُلَامُ مِنْكَ* *what relation is this lad to you?* *هُوَ مِنْكَ وَأَنْتَ مِنْهُ* *he is close to you and you are close to him* (in birth and rank); *فَإِنِّي لَسْتُ مِنْكَ وَلَسْتُ مِنِّي* *I am not in union with you nor you with me*; *مَا أَنَا مِنْ دٍ وَلَا الْقُدُ مِنِّي* *I have no concern with diversion, nor has diversion any concern with me.* In the last two phrases *فِي شَيْءٍ* may be supplied, in which case *مِنْ* has the partitive meaning, as in *لَيْسَ مِنَ الْعِلْمِ فِي شَيْءٍ* *he is in no part of science*, i. e. *he has nothing to do with science.*]
- D

- (e) The *difference* between two persons or things which are contrasted or compared with one another; as *هَلْ تَعْرِفُ الْخَيْرَ مِنَ الشَّرِّ* *doest thou know the good from the bad?* *وَاللَّهُ يَعْلَمُ الْمُنْصِرَ مِنَ الْمُنْصِلِ* *but God knows him that dealeth foully from him that dealeth fairly*; *أَنْتَ مِنْ نُوحٍ وَطُولِ عُمُرِهِ* *what a difference there is between thee and Noah in length of life!* lit. *where art thou from Noah and his length of life?* Hence the use of *مِنْ* after comparative adjectives; as

لَنَحْنُ أَحَقُّ بِالْمَلِكِ مِنْهُ *he is more excellent than I*; *we are more deserving of (or have a better right to) the kingdom than he.* A

REM. a. If an object be compared with itself in a different respect, the appropriate pronominal suffix must be attached to the preposition مِنْ; as *النَّاسُ أَشْبَهُ بِزَمَانِهِمْ مِنْهُمْ بِأَبَائِهِمْ* *people are more like the time in which they are born than they are like their fathers*; *هُمْ لَلْكَفَرِ يَوْمَئِذٍ أَقْرَبُ مِنَ الْإِيمَانِ* *they were nearer unbelief on that day than belief*; *أَشَوْقُ مِنْنِي* *أَشَوْقُ مِنْنِي* B
فَقَالَ يَا أَبَتِ أَنَا وَاللَّهِ إِنِّي طَعْنَةٌ نَائِلَةٌ
أَنَا مِنْكُمْ عَلَى الْعَرَبِ *but he said: O my father! I have more longing for a piercing thrust than I have to see my son*; *أَخَوْفُ مِنْنِي مِنَ الْعَرَبِ عَلَيْكُمْ* *I have more fears of injury to the Arabs by you than I have of injury to you by the Arabs*; *وَلَأَنَا أَهْمُ*
أَنَا أَهْمِلُ إِلَى كَوْنِهَا مِنْ هَذَا الْأَصْلِ مِنْنِي إِلَى كَوْنِهَا مِنْ *and verily I was more concerned about the wounds of the Apostle of God than I was about my own* C
أَنَا أَهْمِلُ إِلَى كَوْنِهَا مِنْ هَذَا الْأَصْلِ مِنْنِي إِلَى كَوْنِهَا مِنْ *wounds*; *ذَوَاتِ النَّوْنِ* *I am more inclined to its being (derived) from this root than I am to its being (derived) from (one of) those which contain the letter n*; *وَكَانَ رَحِمَهُ اللَّهُ بِالْعِلْمِ أَخْبَرَ مَا هُوَ بِالْحَرْبِ* *he possessed, may God have mercy on him! more knowledge of science than of war (with ما explet.)*.—Sometimes, in a less careful style of speaking or writing, the preposition مِنْ is annexed to the latter of the two objects, instead of to the person or thing which is D
أَقْوَى مِنْهُ بِالسَّلَاحِ *he began to fight them with the stick more sturdily than with the weapons* (for *أَقْوَى مِنْهُ بِالسَّلَاحِ*); *أَلْبَحُّ مِنْهُ مِنْ غَيْرِكُمْ* *because wrong proceeding from you is worse than from others* (for *أَلْبَحُّ مِنْهُ مِنْ غَيْرِكُمْ*).—
 with its complement is sometimes omitted; e.g. *اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ* *God*

A is most great, lit. God is greater **مِنْ** **غَيْرِهِ** than any other being ;
إِنَّ اللَّهَ أَعْلَمُ God knows best, lit. God knows better **مِنْ** **غَيْرِهِ** than any
 other being ; **إِنَّ الَّذِي سَكَنَ السَّمَاءَ بَنَى لَنَا بَيْتًا دَعَائِمُهُ أَعِزُّ وَأَطْوَلُ**
 verily He, who reared the Heavens, hath built for us a house, the
 props (or pillars) of which are more glorious and taller, soil. **مِنْ** **بَيْتِكَ**
 than (those of) thy house, or **مِنْ** **كُلِّ بَيْتٍ** than (those of) every
 (other) house*.

B REM. b. When thus used **أَفْضَلُ** is invariable in form ; as **مِنْذُ**
النَّمْرُوتَانِ Hind (a woman) is better than *Zdinb* ; **الْفُضْلُ مِنَ الزَّيْنَبِ**
الْأَمْثَلُ the two freeborn women are better than the two
 female slaves ; **الْفُضْلُ مِنَ الْعُلَمَاءِ** the learned are better than
 the ignorant ; **الْمُؤْمِنَاتُ الْفُضْلُ مِنَ الْكَافِرَاتِ** the (female) believers
 are better than the unbelievers.

REM. c. **مِنْ** with its complement is occasionally placed in
 C poetry before the comparative adjective ; as **بَلْ مَا زَوَّدَتْ مِنْهُ أَطْيَبُ**
 nay, what she gave (us) as provision was (even) sweeter than it
 (honey) ; **لَا شَيْءٌ مِنْهُمْ أَكْثَلُ** nothing is lazier than they ; **فَأَسْمَاءُ**
أَمْلَحُ then 'Asmā is more beautiful than that
 woman. In prose this inversion takes place only with an inter-
 rogative pronoun or a word in the construct state before an inter-
 rogative pronoun ; as **مِمَّنْ أَنْتَ خَيْرُ** than whom art thou better ?
 D **أَفْضَلُ** **أَبِي أَيُّهُمْ أَنْتَ الْفُضْلُ** than the father of which of them art thou
 better ?

REM. d. In the other Semitic languages, which do not possess
 a peculiar comparative form of the adjective, the comparison is like-
 wise expressed by means of the same preposition ; Heb. **מִן**, Aram.

מִן, Eth. **አሁን** or **አሁን** ::

* [Fleischer denies that phrases like **إِنَّ اللَّهَ أَعْلَمُ** are elliptical, taking
أَعْلَمُ as an absolute superlative ; *Kl. Schr.* i. 684, 789, ii. 721.]

(f) The relation which subsists between the part and the whole, ^A the species and the genus; as عَلِمَ الطِّبَّ سَبَبٌ مِنَ الْأَنْشَابِ the science of medicine is one of the professions; وَمِنْ تَعْظِيمِ الْعِلْمِ تَعْظِيمُ الْكِتَابِ and respect for the book is a part of the respect due to sciences; and رَأَى أَنَّ الْحَيَوَانَ وَالنباتَ لَا تَكْتُمُ حَقَائِقَهَا إِلَّا مِنْ مَعَانٍ كَثِيرَةٍ he saw that the natures of animals and plants are compounded of numerous elements; لِبَاسُهُ مِنْ (النَّيِّ) B a *garment of silk*; أَخْبَرَهُ his garment is of silk.

REM. a. When مِنْ precedes a definite noun, especially in the plural, it often indicates an indefinite quantity or number, = كَيْفَ or بَعْضٌ; as شَرِبْتُ مِنَ الْمَاءِ I drank some of the water; أَخَذَ مِنْ قَدْ أَرَاكُمْ مِنْ آيَاتِهِ he has already shown you some of the signs; [إِنِّي لَأَتِي لَسُبِّهِ مِنْ ثَنَائِي] lo I am about to pay the homage of my praises; and وَفَجَّرْنَا فِيهَا مِنَ الْعُيُونِ and we caused a number of springs to gush forth in it; مِنْهُمْ مَنْ قَصَصْنَا of some We have told thee, and of others We have told thee nothing. Accordingly مِنْ with an indefinite genitive may be the subject of a sentence, e.g. فَمِنْ قَائِلٍ بِأَلْوَحْيَاتٍ وَمِنْ قَائِلٍ بِالْهَيَاجِلِ وَمِنْ قَائِلٍ بِالْأَصْنَامِ there are some who believe in the spiritual beings as gods, others in the celestial ^D bodies, others again in the idols]. Compare in French *de* with the article, as *du lait*, "some milk." We here see the nominal origin of مِنْ, which is clearly a substantive, meaning a part or portion.

REM. b. After negative particles, and after interrogatives put in a negative sense, مِنْ prefixed to an indefinite noun means none at all, not one; as مَا جَاءَنِي مِنْ رَجُلٍ or مِنْ أَحَدٍ no one came to me; مَا جَاءَنَا مِنْ بَشِيرٍ وَلَا نَذِيرٍ there hath come to us no bearer

- A of good news and no warner; لَا يَأْتِيهِ مِنْ أَحَدٍ let no one come to me; مَا لَهُمْ مِنْ إِلَهٍ غَيْرُهُ ye have no god but Him; لَا فِي الدَّارِ مِنْ رَجُلٍ; (لَا نَاصِرِينَ لَهُمْ=) they have no helpers there is no man in the house (= لَا رَجُلٌ فِي الدَّارِ); هَلْ مِنْ مَزِيدٍ is there any addition or increase? هَلْ مِنْ خَالِقٍ غَيْرِ اللَّهِ is there any creator but God? هَلْ تُبْصِرُ مِنْهُمْ مِنْ أَحَدٍ dost thou perceive any one of them? هَلْ لَنَا مِنَ الْأَمْرِ مِنْ شَيْءٍ have we any portion of that thing? With أَحَدٍ مِنْ compare the Hebrew אֶחָד מִן, Levit. iv. 2, Deuter. xv. 7.

- [REM. c. Very often مِنْ preceded by an indefinite noun, is followed by the definite plural of the same noun, in order to signify that a person or thing is wholly undefined, as مَلِكٌ مِنَ الْمُلُوكِ a certain king; وَشَيْءٌ مِنَ الْأَشْيَاءِ a certain manner. But when an indefinite noun denoting a state or condition is followed by مِنْ with the same noun defined in the singular, it signifies a high degree of that state or condition, as عَجَبٌ مِنَ الْعَجَبِ a wonder of wonders; دَاءٌ مِنَ الدَّاءِ a very great disease; شَأْنٌ مِنَ الْأَشْيَاءِ a very important affair; زَيْنٌ مِنَ الزَّيْنِ a great ornament. D. G.]

- [REM. d. The adverbial expressions (مِنْ الْغَدِ) مِنْ غَدٍ to-morrow, D مِنْ اللَّيْلِ at night correspond to the Latin *de mane* (demain), *de nocte*, and signify properly in a part of the following day, in a part of the night. Other examples are خَرَجَ مِنْ يَوْمِهِ he went out on the same day; رَجَعَ مِنْ قَوْمِهِ he returned immediately (comp. Lane s. v. and Fleischer, *Kl. Schr.* i. p. 457 seq.); مِنْ دَاخِلِ الْمَسْجِدِ inside the mosque. This is called مِنْ بِمَعْنَى فِي min with the signification of *fi*, though there is a slight difference between the use of the two prepositions, as has been pointed out by Fleischer, i. p. 414. D.G.]

REM. c. When مِنْ indicates a part of a whole, it is said to ^A be used لِلتَّبْعِيَّةِ to indicate division into parts; when it indicates the parts of which a whole is composed, لِلتَّرْكِيبِ to indicate composition.

(g) The definition or explanation of a general or universal by a special or particular term, the latter being one of several objects that go to make up the former; as عَلِمَ أَسْوَالَ الْقَلْبِ مِنْ مَنْ وَكَذَلِكَ يَتَرَفَّضُ عِلْمُ أَسْوَالِ الْقَلْبِ مِنْ مَنْ and in the same way we are enjoined to take cognizance of the different states of the heart, such as trust (in God), B and repentance, and fear (of Him); فَتَمَظَّحَ جَمِيعَ الْأَجْسَادِ الَّتِي فِيهَا and he examined all the bodies which there are in this world of existence and decay, both animals, plants, and minerals; كُلُّ مِنْ هَابِلَ وَقَابِلَ both (of them), Abel as well as Cain; إِخْوَانَنَا هَؤُلَاءِ مِنْ الْأَنْصَارِ these brethren of ours, the 'Anṣār (or Helpers of the Prophet); لَا يَحْصُلُ مَقْصُودُهُمْ مِنَ الْعِلْمِ C their object, namely learning, is not attained; فَاجْتَنِبُوا التَّوَحُّشَ مِنْ مَنْ وَالْعَرَبُ تُحَدِّثُ هَذَا therefore avoid the abomination of idols; هَذَا وَالْفِعْلُ مِنْ قَالٍ وَيَقُولُ and the Arabs omit this verb *qāla yakūlu*. Hence it serves to indicate the relation between the material and the article made of it, as صَنْمَرٍ مِنَ الذَّهَبِ (مِنْ ذَهَبٍ) a statue of gold; فَصَعَبَ عَلَيْهِ لَعْدِمِ D ثَوْبٍ مِنَ الْحَرِيرِ (مِنْ حَرِيرٍ) a garment of silk; and it was difficult for him, because of the want of instruments, and because those (which he had) were made only of stones and reeds. In this way مِنْ is constantly used after the indefinite pronoun مَا [and مِمَّا], what, whatever, which cannot be construed with a genitive; as مَا ذَهَبَ مِنَ الْبَالِ the money which has been spent; مَا تُنْفِقُوا مِنْ خَيْرٍ يَوْفَىٰ إِلَيْكُمْ whatever ye lay out in charity, shall be amply made up to you; مَا يَفْتَحُ اللَّهُ

- A *لِلنَّاسِ مِنْ رَحْمَةِ فَلَا مُمْسِكَ لَهَا* the mercy which God sendeth forth for man, none can keep back. [In some cases this مِنْ after مَا may be considered as the partitive مِنْ.]

REM. In the language of the grammarians, مِنْ is here used لِلْبَيَانِ, or لِتَبْيِينِ, to make clear or explain, or لِجِنْسِ to explain the genus.

- B [(h) The specifying (الْتَمِيْزُ) of the general term, as *لِلَّهِ دَرَكٌ مِنْ* what a man thou art as a horseman! (where *مِنْ* *فَارِسٍ* is the equivalent of *فَارِسًا* § 44, e); *نَاهِيكَ مِنْ رَجُلٍ* what a wonderful man he is! *جَزَاكَ اللَّهُ مِنْ أَخٍ خَيْرًا* may God repay thee good, excellent brother as thou art; *عَدِمْتُكَ مِنْ حُبٍّ* might I only be rid of thee, love (that makest me miserable)! *أَرَشَدَهُ*! *حَتَّى يَقُولُوا إِذَا مَرُّوا عَلَى جَدَّتِي* that they may say when passing by my tomb, God directed him aright, warrior as he was, and verily he followed the right course; *هَذَا آهَنُ سَيِّدِ قُرَيْشٍ وَهُوَ مُسْتَرْضَعٌ فِيْنَا مِنْ غُلَامٍ يَتِيمٍ* this is the son of the lord of Kurdis: he is nursed among us, orphan as he is, having no father; *وَكَانَ رَجُلًا نَابِغًا فَاضِلًا فَقِيهًا* he was a pious, distinguished, and learned man, namely a man inclined to the love of the family of the Apostle of God. A special branch of this is the use of *مِنْ*, which is called *لِلتَّجْرِيدِ*, to designate the person or thing, in which a certain quality is prominent, as *لَقِيتُ مِنْهُ الْأَسَدَ* I encountered in him a lion; *لِي مِنْ فُلَانٍ صَدِيقٌ حَبِيمٌ* I have in So-and-So an affectionate friend; *لَقِيتُ مِنْهُ بَخْرًا* I found him to be a man of exceeding generosity. In such phrases *مِنْ* has the same meaning as *فِي* and *بِ*.
- C *لَقِيتُ مِنْهُ الْأَسَدَ* I encountered in him a lion; *لِي مِنْ فُلَانٍ صَدِيقٌ حَبِيمٌ* I have in So-and-So an affectionate friend; *لَقِيتُ مِنْهُ بَخْرًا* I found him to be a man of exceeding generosity.
- D *لَقِيتُ مِنْهُ الْأَسَدَ* I encountered in him a lion; *لِي مِنْ فُلَانٍ صَدِيقٌ حَبِيمٌ* I have in So-and-So an affectionate friend; *لَقِيتُ مِنْهُ بَخْرًا* I found him to be a man of exceeding generosity.

REM. a. Observe the elliptical phrases مَنْ لِي مِنْ ابْنِ الْأَشْرَفِ A
who will deliver me from Ibn el-Ashraf? وَأَنَا مِنْكَ وَإِلَيْكَ I am of thee
and related to thee, I belong to your family. On the meaning of
 الْقَبْرُ مِنْكَ وَإِلَيْكَ, see Goldziher in *Zeitschr. D. M. G.* xlviii. p. 95
seq. (comp. p. 425 *seq.*) D. G.]

REM. b. مِنْ is used in vulgar Arabic, like مِّنْ in Syriac and
 ጸጋጋጋጋ in Æthiopic, to indicate the agent in connection with the
 passive voice of a verb; as لَا يَصْلُحُ بَعْدَ لَيْسَىٰ إِلَّا لِأَنْ يَطْرَحَ B
it is good for nothing at all but to be
thrown out and trodden under foot by men, instead of يَطْرَحُهُ النَّاسُ.

49. عَنْ (with pronominal suffixes عَنِّي, عَنْكَ, عَنْهُ) designates
 distance from, motion away from, departure from a place or from
 beside a person; as جَلَسَ عَنْ يَمِينِهِ he sat at (a certain distance from)
 his right hand [comp. however, this §, *f.* rem. c]; رَمَى السَّهْمَ عَنِ C
he shot the arrow from the bow; سَافِرٌ عَنِ الْبَلَدِ take thy
 departure from the town; لَا تَحْتَاجَ إِلَىٰ تَرْكِهِ وَالْإِعْرَاضِ عَنْهُ
that thou mayest not be compelled to leave him and turn away from him.
 Hence it is used:—

(a) After verbs denoting flight, avoidance, caution, abstinence,
 self-defence, guarding and setting free, forbidding and hindering, and,
 in general, to express the doing of something (e.g. fighting or paying)
 for or in behalf of another [comp. § 69, *g*]. For example: الْهَرَبُ عَنْ D
it is impossible to flee from the decree of God
Almighty; تَنَحَّ عَنْ الْقَبِيحِ avoid what is disgraceful; يَنْبَغِي أَنْ
it is necessary that he should avoid what injures him;
 يَنْبَغِي أَنْ يَصْبِرَ عَمَّا تُرِيدُهُ نَفْسُهُ it is necessary that he should patiently
 abstain from what his soul desires (his passions desire); تَبَرَّأْتُ عَنْ وَلَائِهِمْ
I declare myself free from all connection with them (as client); يَتَخَلَّصُ

- A *أُطْعِمَهُ* *he is saved from punishment in the next world* ; *عَنْ عَذَابِ الْآخِرَةِ* *he fed him (to save him) from hunger* ; *عَنْ الْجُوعِ* *he clothed him (to save him) from nakedness* ; *عَنِ الْفَنَكَرِ* *the prohibition of what is wicked* ; *عَنِّي* *he acts as my deputy* ; *عَنْهُ* *he fights for, or to protect, him* ; *عَنِ الَّذِينَ يَخْتَانُونَ أَنْفُسَهُمْ* *do not contend, or plead, for those who act wrongly to themselves* ;
- B *لَا تَجْزِي نَفْسٌ عَنْ نَفْسٍ شَيْئًا* *(one) soul shall not make satisfaction for (another) soul at all* ; *حَمَلَ عَنْهُ كَذَا وَكَذَا دِرْهَمًا* *he paid so and so many dirhams in his stead, lit. 'he bore, or took upon himself, for him.*

(b) After verbs denoting uncovering, laying bare, opening, revealing, informing, asking and answering ; for in these verbs there lies the idea of the removal of a covering, real or figurative. For example :

- لَوْ كُشِفَ عَنِّي سِتْرُ الدُّنْيَا* *if the veils of this world were removed from me (from before my eyes)* ; *الْتَّلَلُ أَتَيْتِ أَنْشَقَتْ عَنْ بُيُوتٍ* *the mounds which were laid open so as to disclose chambers* ; *إِنْ كُنْتَ تَبْغِي شَاهِدًا* *if thou wantest a witness who can inform thee regarding what is hidden* ; *سَأْنِيكَ عَنْ مَجْمُوعَةٍ* *I will tell thee about all of them* ; *هَذَا سُؤَالٌ سُئِلَ عَنْهُ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ فَأَجَابَ عَنْهُ* *this is a question about which the Apostle of God was questioned, and he gave an answer to it* ; *وَجَّهَ عَنْهُ إِلَى الْأَنْدَلُسِ أَبُوهُ* *his father sent to Spain to look for him* ; *فَسَأَلَهُمْ عَنِّي وَقَالَ وَجِّهُوا عَنْهُ* *and he asked them about me and said, Send to look for him* ; *فَقَصِدَتْ الْخَزَائِنُ عَنِ الْأَسْلِحَةِ* *and they made for the arsenals to look for arms* ; *كَانَتْ تَبْسُمُ عَنْ ثُلُوثٍ مُنْقَصِدٍ* *she smiles so as to display (teeth like) strung pearls or hailstones (in whiteness).*

(c) After verbs denoting abandonment or neglect, and the ability to dispense with (عَنْ) one thing because of the possession of another

(ب [§ 56, c]); because in them is implied the notion of turning away A
 (أَعْرَضَ). For example: [رَغِبَ عَنِ الشَّيْءِ] *he did not wish for the thing,*
he avoided it; صَفَحْتُ عَنْ ذَنْبِهِ or عَفَوْتُ I forgave him his sin;
رَضِيَ عَنْهُ he was satisfied with him (and had nothing more to ask from
 him) as in the words of the Kcr'an رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُمْ وَرَضُوا عَنْهُ *God is*
well pleased with them, and they are well pleased with Him. D. G.];
 لِي فِي طَلَابِ الْعِلْمِ غِنًى وَهُوَ غَنِي عَنْهَا *a man must not be neglectful of*
himself; he does not require it; B
 أَغْنِي بِحَلَالِكَ عَنْ حَرَامِكَ وَأَكْفِي بِفَضْلِكَ *I find in study such contentment that I can dispense with*
the singing of women;
 سَوَاءٌ لِي بِمَا تَرْضَى مِنْ شَيْءٍ أَوْ لَا تَرْضَى *satisfy me with what Thou allowest, so that I may be able to*
dispense with what Thou forbiddest, and suffice me with Thy goodness,
so that I may not have occasion for any other but Thee. Similarly:
 شَغَلَهُ ذَلِكَ عَنِ الْفِكْرِ فِي كُلِّ شَيْءٍ إِلَّا فِيهِ *this circumstance occupied*
him so that he could not think of anything but it; C
 إِنِّي أَكْبَيْتُ حُبَّ كُلِّ الْمَنَاقِبِ *I am unable to mention all the virtues;*
 أَلْخَيْرُ عَنْ ذِكْرِ رَبِّي *I have loved the good (of this world) so as to neglect*
all thought of my Lord;
 يَخْلُ عَنْ نَفْسِهِ *he is so stingy as to deny*
himself everything.

(d) After verbs signifying to leave one behind or to surpass one ;
 as أَفْضَلْتُ عَنِّي *thou dost not surpass me in anything.* Hence the
 expression فَضْلًا عَنْ *not to mention, much more or much less* (according D
 to the context); as أَكْبَرَهَا عَنْ أَكْبَرِهَا *not to mention (and much*
more in) the largest of them, such traces of wisdom as set him in the
greatest astonishment; لَا يُوْجَدُ فِي الشَّامِ بِأَسْرَافٍ فَضْلًا عَنْ صَفَدٍ *it is not*

A found in the whole of Syria, not to mention (much less in) *Safed*. Hence too the use of *عَنْ* in comparisons (like *مِنْ*, § 48, e); as *أَيْنَ أَنْتَ عَنِ الْبَيْتِ الْتَدْرِ الْجَامِعِ لِمُسَبَّهَاتِ الشَّعْرِ* where art thou (where are thy verses) in comparison with this rare verse, which contains all the things wherewith the mouth can be compared? *تَعَالَى عَمَّا يُشْرِكُونَ* He is exalted above whatever (gods) they join (with Him).

[REM. If *فَضْلًا عَنْ* is followed by a clause with *أَنْ*, *عَنْ* is very often omitted, as is frequently the case with prepositions in general, before *أَنْ* and *أَنَّ*. D. G.]

- (e) *عَنْ* also indicates the source from which something proceeds; as [*إِنَّمَا الْبَيْعُ عَنْ تَرَاضٍ* selling or buying is only (resultant) from mutual agreement; *صَدَرَ عَنْ رَأْيِ فُلَانٍ* he acted after the counsel of such a one]; *لَا نَفْعُ لِهَذَا عَنْ قَوْلِكَ* we will not do this at your word (as it were, setting out from your word, moved by your authority);
- C *كَانَتِ الْيَهُودُ لَا تَسْكُنُ مَدِينَةَ مَرَّاكُشَ عَنْ أَمْرِ أَمِيرِهَا* the Jews did not dwell in the city of Marräkus (Morocco) by the order of its governor. Hence it shows (a) the authority for any statement, tradition, or the like; as [*أَخَذْتُ الْعِلْمَ عَنْهُ* I acquired knowledge from him; *رَوَى عَنْ فُلَانٍ* he related (a tradition) from such a one]; *وَكَانَ أَسَاتِذُنَا يَحْكِي عَنْ* it is related on the authority of *Es-Sāfi'i*; *وَشَيْخٌ مِنْ أَلْمَشَائِخِ* and our teacher used to narrate on the authority
- D of a certain *shāikh*; *حَدِيثٌ صَحِيحٌ عَنْ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ* an authentic tradition of the Apostle of God; *وَعَنِ النَّبِيِّ أَنَّهُ قَالَ* and it is told of the prophet that he said; and (β) the cause from which an effect proceeds as its source; as *الْلازِمُ عَنْهُ* that which necessarily follows from it; *مَا هَلَكَ أَمْرٌ عَنْ مَشُورَةٍ* no one ever perished through asking advice (of others).

(f) Lastly, عَنْ is used of time as equivalent to بَعْدُ *after*; as أَفْ أ تَتَرَكَّبْنَ طَبَقًا عَنْ طَبَقٍ *ye shall encounter (or experience) state after state*; كَمَا قَدْ تَمَّ عَنْ صَدِّ الْحَسَامِ فِرْنَدُهُ *as the temper of a (good) sword betrays itself (even) after it has become rusty*; عَنْ قَرِيبٍ يَكُونُ *in a short time it will be much*; عَمَّا قَلِيلٍ *after a little while* (where عَمَّا is redundant, as in an example in § 48, c).

REM. a. Observe the phrases: مَاتَ عَنْ ثَمَانِينَ سَنَةً *he died B aged eighty*; وَلَدٍ صَغِيرٍ مَاتَ عَنْ *he died leaving a young child*; قُتِلُوا عَنْ آخِرِهِمْ *they were slain to the last man*. [In expressions like عَفَا عَنْ قُدْرَةٍ *he forgave, though he had the power to punish*, عَنْ can be replaced by عَلَى, عِنْدَ, or مَعَ.—For marking the distance, as عَنْ خَمْسِينَ فَرْسَخًا مِنْ عُمَّانَ *at a distance of fifty parasangs from 'Omān*, it is synonymous with عَلَى (comp. the Gloss. Geogr.).—On the elliptical phrases اخُذْ عَنْكَ, اذْهَبْ عَنْكَ, etc. see O the Gloss. to Tabarī. D. G.]

REM. b. Because of their being related in meaning, مِنْ and عَنْ are sometimes used indifferently; for example, after مَنَعَ *to hinder*, اجْتَنَبَ *to avoid*, بَرِيَ *free from, clear of*, and the like. Compare § 48, c, with § 49, d. [After the verbs *to take, to borrow*, etc. مِنْ is used of transportable objects, as أَخَذْتُ مِنْهُ الدَّرَاهِمَ *I got from him the dirhems*; but we ought to say أَخَذْتُ عَنْهُ الْعِلْمَ D *I acquired knowledge from him*. Others say that مِنْ is used for what is near, as سَمِعْتُ مِنْهُ الْحَدِيثَ *I heard from him the narrative*, عَنْ for what is remote, as وَهُوَ الَّذِي يَقْبَلُ التَّوْبَةَ عَنْ عِبَادِهِ عَنْ *He it is who accepts repentance from His servants* (Kor'an xlii. 24).]

REM. c. عَنْ is sometimes used as an indeclinable noun, signifying *side*, which is its original meaning; e.g. مِنْ عَنْ يَمِينِهِ

- A إِذَا مَا جَعَلْتُ السِّيفَ [عَلَى عَنْ] *on his right and his left*; إِذَا مَا جَعَلْتُ السِّيفَ (شِمَالِيَا) *when I place the sword on my left side* (شِمَالِيَا in rhyme for شِمَالِي, شِمَالِي). Compare يَمِي, يَمِي, يَمِي.

REM. d. According to the grammarians, عَنْ is used لِلْبُعْدِ to express distance from anything and passing away from it.

- B 50. The prepositions which indicate motion to or towards a place, are إِلَى *to*, حَتَّى *up to*, and لِ *to*.

51. إِلَى (with pronominal suffixes إِلَيْكَ, إِلَيْهِ) is opposed (مُعَارِضَةً) to مِنْ and عَنْ; as مِنَ الْمَهْدِ إِلَى اللَّحْدِ *from the cradle to the grave*; سِرْتُ مِنَ الْبَصْرَةِ إِلَى بَغْدَادَ *I went from el-Basra to Bagdād*; انْقَطَعَ عَنْهُ *he severed himself from him, abandoned his cause*, but انْقَطَعَ إِلَيْهِ *he was devoted to his cause*; إِلَيْكَ عَنِّي *stand off!* (see the end of the section). It signifies:—

- (a) Motion [or direction] to or towards a place; as جَاءَ إِلَى *he came to the city*; سُبْحَانَ الَّذِي أَسْرَى بِعَبْدِهِ لَيْلًا مِنَ الْمَسْجِدِ *to the Temple which is most remote (at Jerusalem)*; (see § 49, a) *at that time they used to pray turning towards Jerusalem*; نَظَرَ إِلَيَّ *he looked towards me, he regarded me*; مَالَ إِلَيْهِ *he or it inclined towards him or it*. Hence, because the notion of being inclined is implied in it,
- D لُبُّ الْمَرْأَةِ إِلَى الْخُحِّ *the heart of woman is inclined to foolishness*; كُلُّ حُزْنٍ إِلَى قُرْحٍ *each sorrow leads to joy*; لَوْنُهُ إِلَى السَّوَادِ *its colour verges on black*; هُوَ إِلَى الطُّوْلِ مَا هُوَ *it is somewhat long*; إِنَّ الدُّنْيَا إِلَى الزَّوَالِ مَا هِيَ *see, the world is somewhat on its decline**. D. G.]

* [For the explanation of this (هِيَ) مَا هُوَ see Fleischer, *Kl. Schr.* i. 477 seq., Dozy, *Supplém.* sub مَا and infra § 136, a, rem. e.]

(b) Transferred to time, the point up to which something lasts A or continues; as صُمْتُ إِلَى الْمَغْرِبِ *I fasted till sunset*; لَنْخَبِرَنَّ مِنْ لُخَيْرٍ أَرْمَانَ يَوْمِ حَلِيمَةٍ إِلَى الْيَوْمِ قَدْ جَرَّبْنَا كُلَّ اتِّجَارِبٍ (see § 48, b) *down to the present day (and) have been tested with every sort of test*; لَا تَزَالُ طَائِفَةٌ مِنْ أُمَّتِي ظَاهِرِينَ عَلَى الْحَقِّ إِلَى يَوْمِ الْقِيَامَةِ *a part of my people shall not cease to hold fast the truth till the day of the resurrection*. It occurs in a somewhat different sense in the phrases لَيَجْمَعَنَّكُمْ إِلَى يَوْمِ الْقِيَامَةِ *He will certainly assemble you to the day of* B *the resurrection (for it)*; أَنْتِ طَائِقٌ إِلَى سَنَةٍ *thou art divorced till this day year*].

REM. In these two cases إِلَى is used لِلْإِتْبَاءِ *to designate the limit of the act*. [See § 52, rem. b.]

(c) إِلَى also shows that one thing is added to another (لِلْمَصَاحَبَةِ or لِلْمَعِيَّةِ), and hence we find it construed with زَادَ *to increase, augment*; as لَا تَأْكُلُوا أَمْوَالَهُمْ ضَرَّ هَذَا إِلَى هَذَا *add this to that*; لَا تَأْكُلُوا أَمْوَالَكُمْ إِلَى أَمْوَالِكُمْ *do not devour their substance in addition to your own*; زَادُوا حِكْمَةً إِلَى حِكْمَتِهِمْ *they have added knowledge to the knowledge they (already) possessed*. [Hence also it signifies *reaching up to* (= نَامٍ إِلَى), *belonging to* (= مَمْلُوكٌ إِلَى), *entrusted to* (= مَوْكُولٌ إِلَى) etc., as وَهُوَ إِلَى بَنِي أُمَيَّةٍ *and he belonged to the Bēnū 'Umdiya*; لَيْسُوا إِلَى عَرَبٍ مِنَّا فَتَعْرِفُهُمْ *they belong to none D of our Arab tribes, that we should know them*; وَذَكِّرُوا أَنَّ الْجَزِيرَةَ كَانَتْ إِلَى قَنْسَرِينَ *and they said that *El-Jazīra belonged formerly to Kinnasrīn*; كَانَ إِلَيْهِ بِمَارِسْتَانُ الْبَرَامِكَةِ *the hospital of the Barma-kides was entrusted to him*.]—It is also construed with adjectives of the form أَفْعَلٌ and others, derived from verbs signifying love or hatred and used in a passive sense, to indicate the subject of the feeling (see § 34, rem. a); as أَحَبُّ *dearer*; مَحْبُوبٌ *dear*; حَبِيبٌ *dearer*; أَبْغَضُ *hated, hateful*; أَبْغَضُ *more hateful*.—It is used too with قَرِيبٌ

- A *near*, and similar words, in so far as they convey the idea of approach or approximation, opposed to *بَعِيدٌ عَنْ* *far from*, e.g. *فَأَنَّهُ أَقْرَبُ إِلَى* *for this comes nearer to reverence*; whereas in so far as they convey the idea of the measurement of the distance of one place from another, they are construed with *مِنْ* (§ 48, d). [The same idea of approach is indicated by *إِلَى* in the expressions *إِلَى جَانِبِهِ* *on his side*; *خَيْمَتُهُ إِلَى خَيْمَتِهِ* *his tent (stood) beside the tent of the other*.]—Finally, notice the phrases: *إِلَى غَيْرِ ذَلِكَ*, lit. *on to other than this*, and *إِلَى آخِرِهِ* *to the end of it*, i.e. *et cetera*; *إِلَيْكَ*, lit. *to thyself*! and *إِلَيْكَ عَنِّي*, lit. *to thyself from me*! = *تَدَحَّ* *stand off*! *هَذَا إِلَيْهِ*, scil. *مُفَوَّضٌ* or *مُسَلَّمٌ*, *this is committed or entrusted to him*.

[REM. On the phrase *إِلَيْكَهَا* *there it is for you*! see § 35, b, δ, rem. b.]

52. *حَتَّى* differs from *إِلَى* in indicating motion towards and at the same time arrival at an object, whether this object be actually touched and included or not; whereas *إِلَى* merely implies the motion towards an object, whether this be arrived at or not; as *سَلَامٌ هِيَ حَتَّى مَطْلَعِ الْفَجْرِ* *it is peace till the break of day*; *أَكَلْتُ الْفِشَ حَتَّى رَأْسَهَا* *I slept last night till it was morning*; *أَكَلْتُ الْفِشَ حَتَّى رَأْسَهَا* *I ate the fish to its (very) head*; *لَيَسْجُنَنَّهُ حَتَّى جِينٍ* *they would imprison him for a (certain) time*. However, when *مِنْ* and *إِلَى* are used in opposition to one another to designate the terminus a quo and terminus ad quem, *إِلَى* necessarily includes the idea of reaching the object (§ 51, a, b). Further, when the reaching of the object is distinctly expressed by the governing verb or verbal noun itself, the meaning of *إِلَى* is naturally modified thereby; as *إِنْتَهَيْتُ إِلَيْهِ* *I came up to him*; *الْإِتِّبَاءُ إِلَيْهِ* *the attaining to it*. That *حَتَّى* does not necessarily include the object reached or attained is evident from its being occasionally used to indicate *exceptions*, like the German *bis auf*.

REM. a. حَتَّى is scarcely ever [i.e. only by poetio license] used, A
with pronominal suffixes; as فَلَا وَاللَّهِ لَا يُلْقِيْ اُنَاسٌ فَتًى حَتَّاكَ يَابْنَ as
no, by God, men will never find a man (coming) up to thee,
O 'Ibn 'Abī Ziyād; اَتَتْ حَتَّاكَ تَقْصِدُ كُلَّ فَجٍّ she has come to thee,
making for every mountain-pass.

REM. b. The grammarians, when they wish to make a distinc-
tion, say that إِلَى is used لِإِلَاقَتِهِآ, to designate the limit (of the B
act), whilst حَتَّى is employed لِلْغَايَةِ or لِاتِّهَاءِ الْغَايَةِ, to designate the
attainment of the extremity or utmost limit.

REM. c. When حَتَّى is a simple copulative particle (حَرْفٌ
لِلْعَطْفِ, or عَاطِفَةٌ, or لِّلْعَطْفِ), in the sense of *even*, it exercises, like
the other copulatives (such as وَ, ف, and ثُمَّ), no independent
influence upon the following noun, which remains under the same
government as the preceding one; e.g. قَدِمَ الْحَجَّاجُ حَتَّى الْمَشَاةِ C
the pilgrims have arrived, even those travelling on foot; مَاتَ النَّاسُ
وَفَارَقُوهُ حَتَّى أَخُوهُ; حَتَّى الْأَنْبِيَاءِ
and they left him, even his brother; أُعْجِبْتَنِي الْجَارِيَةُ حَتَّى حَدِيثِهَا
the girl pleased me, even her conversation; أَكَلْتُ السَّمَكَةَ حَتَّى رَأْسَهَا
I have eaten the fish, even the head of it; وَكَانَ يُشَاوِرُ رَسُولَ اللَّهِ
وَصَلَّعَ مَعَ أَصْحَابِهِ فِي جَمِيعِ الْأُمُورِ حَتَّى حَوَائِجِ الْبَيْتِ D
and the Apostle of God used to consult his companions on all matters, even
household affairs.

REM. d. A dialectic variety of حَتَّى is عَتَّى, through which it
may perhaps be etymologically connected with the corresponding
Hebrew word עַד.

53. لِ (with pronominal suffixes لِي, لَكَ, لَهُ) is etymologically
connected with إِلَى, and differs from it only in this, that إِلَى mostly
expresses concrete relations, local or temporal, whilst لِ generally

A indicates abstract or ideal relations. Hence *لِ* is rarely employed
 بِلَاتِنَهَا (see § 51, b, rem.); as كُلٌّ يَجْرِي لِأَجْلِ مُسْتَى each (of them-) *travels to an appointed goal**. Its principal use is to show the passing on of the action to a *more distant* object, and hence it corresponds to the Latin or German *dative*; but it may also express the relation of the action to a *neurer* object, and so stand in place of the *accusative* (compare §§ 29, 31, 33, 34). Hence *لِ* indicates:—

(a) The simple relation of an act to the more distant object; as
 B مَبِّ لِي مِنْ لَدُنْكَ قَالَ لَهَا وَهَبَهُ لَهُ he gave it to him; he said to her;
 وَاللّٰهُ جَعَلَ لَكُمْ مِنْ ذُرِّيَّتِكُمْ أَزْوَاجًا give me from Thyself good descendants; and God hath made for you wives of yourselves (of your own race).

REM. a. After the middle forms of the verb, *لِ* often expresses the yielding oneself up to the action of another or to the effect of a thing; as جَرُّوا لَهُ الْخَطِيمَ مَا أَنْجَرْتُمْ pull his (the camel's) leading-rein as long as it can be pulled by you;
 C مَنْ خَدَعَنَا بِاللّٰهِ أَنْخَدَعْنَا لَهُ if any one deceives us with God (i.e. with a pretence of devoutness), we let ourselves be deceived by him.

REM. b. Some grammarians say that the لَامُ الْجَرِّ, or preposition *لِ*, is used in this case لِلتَّعْدِيَةِ, to express the passing on of the action; but others consider that it is here employed لِلتَّمْلِيكِ and لِشِبْهِ التَّمْلِيكِ, to signify the giving possession (of something) or the like, and restrict the term لِلتَّعْدِيَةِ to the cases laid down in §§ 29, 31, 33, and 34.

* [After verbs that signify to fall (as وَقَعَ, سَقَطَ, خَرَّ) *لِ* has the meaning of on (= عَلَى), as خَرَّ لِلذَّقَنِ he fell down prostrate with his chin on the ground. Hence the expression وَلَيْدَيْنِ وَلَيْفَمٍ, on which see the Gloss. to Tal. rī sub فَم. D. G.]

(b) The dative (a) of possession; as الرَّجُلُ مَنْ لَهُ رَأْيٌ صَائِبٌ A the man is he who has a right opinion or a correct judgment; اَلْحَمْدُ لِلّٰهِ praise belongs to God; اِنَّا لِلّٰهِ we are God's; اَلْمَالُ لِزَيْدٍ the property is Zaid's; اَلسَّرَجُ لِلْفَرَسِ the saddle belongs to the horse; [رَأَيْتُ لَهُ بَرِيقًا I saw that it had a glistening]; whence it is used to indicate the author of a proverb, poem, etc.; as كَمَا قِيلَ لِمُحَمَّدِ بْنِ اَلْحَسَنِ B as has been said by Muhammad 'ibn el-Hasan: اُنْشَدَ لِبَعْضِهِمْ he recited (a poem) by one of them (the poets); اُنْشِدْتُ وَقِيلَ اَنَّهُ لِعَلِيِّ a poem was recited to me, and I was told it was by 'Alī; (β) of permission [or right]; as لَهُ اُنْ فَلَهُ ذَلِكَ then this is allowed him (lit. is to him); [لَهُ اُنْ] he has a right to do such a thing]; (γ) of advantage, as opposed to عَلَى, which indicates injury; as اَلْفِغَةُ مَعْرِفَةُ اَلنَّفْسِ مَا لَهَا learning is the soul's cognizance of what is for its good and C for its hurt; [دَعَا لَهُ he blessed him, § 23].

REM. a. The grammarians say that لِ, when it indicates possession, is used لِلْمَلِكِ to indicate the right of property, or لِلَاخْتِصَاصِ to show that something is ascribed to one as his own, or لِلِاِسْتِحْقَاقِ to show that he has a right to it. Compare the Hebrew usage, *מִזְמֹר לְדָוִד* a psalm composed by David; etc.

REM. b. As the Arabs have no verb corresponding to our *have*, D they are obliged to express it by the preposition لِ with the genitive of the possessor; as كَانَ لِلْمَلِكِ زُهَيْرٌ مِائَتَا عَبْدٍ king Zuhair had two hundred slaves; لَهُ فِي بَيْغَدَادَ سِتْمِائَةِ صَاحِبِ خَبَرٍ he had in Baghdād six hundred secret police; مَا لِيْ أَبٌ وَلَا أَبْنٌ I have neither father nor son.

REM. c. لِ is often used, instead of a simple pronominal suffix, in order to avoid rendering a noun definite, e.g. مَاتَ لِيْ أَخٌ "a

- A *brother of mine is dead*; whereas *مَاتَ أَخِي* would mean *my* (it may be, *only*) *brother is dead* [§ 92].

REM. d. In pecuniary transactions ل is used to indicate the creditor, whilst عَلَى expresses the debtor [§ 59, c]; as لِي عَلَيْكَ *thou owest me* (lit. *there are to me upon thee*) *a thousand dirhams*.

- REM. e. Observe the expressions of admiration: *لِلَّهِ دَرَّةٌ* *what a man he is!* *لِلَّهِ دَرْكٌ مِنْ رَجُلٍ* *what a man thou art!* *لِلَّهِ أَبُوكَ* *what a man thy father was!* *لِلَّهِ أَنْتَ* *what a man thou art!* *لِلَّهِ الْقَائِلُ* *how beautiful is (the saying of) the poet!* (lit. *to God belongs his outflow or emanation, from none other could he emanate*; compare Jonah iii. 3, *وَبَنِيْنَةُ نَيْنِوَهٍ كَبِيْرَةٌ كَذَلِكَ هِيَ كَبِيْرَةٌ كَثِيْرَةٌ* and *Nineveh was a very large city*). Remark also such phrases as: *هَلْ لَكَ فِي الشَّرَابِ* *wouldst thou like some wine?* *هَلْ تَفْعَلُوْا هَذَا* *have ye a wish to do this?* *أَنْ تَطْعِمَنِي* *dost thou wish then to give me some food?* where we must supply the substantive *رَغْبَةٌ* *desire, wish*; *مَا لِي وَلَهُ* *what object or reason have we that?* *مَا لَنَا أَنْ* *what have I to do with him?* *أَرَأَيْكَ تَفْعَلُ كَذَا* *what has happened to me that I (i.e. why do I) see thee doing thus?* *مَنْ لِي* *who will be for me as helper?* *أَنَا لَهَا* *I am the man for it*].

- D (c) The purpose for which, and the reason why, any thing is done (relation of the action to its purpose and cause); as *قَامَ لِنِعَاوَتِهِ* *he arose to help him*; *ضَرَبْتُهُ لِلتَّأْدِيْبِ* *I beat him to correct him*; *مَا أَلْعَلُّمُ إِلَّا لِلْعَمَلِ* *science (or theory) is only for the purpose of being applied in practice*; *طَلَبَ الْجَاهَ لِلْأَمْرِ بِالْمَعْرُوفِ* *he sought the dignity (or office) for the purpose of ordering good*; *وَلِهَذَا قِيلَ* *and for this reason it is said*; *لِأَنَّهُ يَضُرُّ* *because it does harm*; *عَجِبْتُ لِقَوْلِهِ* *I wondered at (because of)*

what he said; وَإِنِّي تَعْرُونِي لِذِكْرِكِ هَذِهِ and verily a feeling of joy A comes over me at remembering thee.

REM. In this case ل is said to be used لِلتَّعْلِيلِ, or لِبُعْلَةٍ, to indicate the cause. [Comp. § 44, d, § 48, c.]

(d) After the verb قَالَ, it often indicates the object in reference to which something is said; as وَلَا تَقُولُوا لِمَنْ يُقْتَلُ فِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ أَمْوَاتٌ say not in regard to those who are slain on God's path, They are dead B (do not call those who are killed fighting for God's cause, dead); وَكُلُّ كَبِيرَةٍ تَرْتَجِمُ الْمُسْلِمُونَ عَلَى أَنَّهُ [أَتَقُولُونَ لِحَقِّ لَمَّا جَاءَكُمْ أَسِحْرٌ هَذَا come to you, Is this magic? and a man who has committed a great sin, but such as the Muslims do not agree in calling infidelity, is said to have acted wickedly, but is not termed a wicked man without restriction. Hence the very common يُقَالُ لَهُ C يُقَالُ لَهُ يَقُولُ لَهُ مُحَمَّدٌ he is called Muḥammed, from the active مُحَمَّدٌ he says of him Muḥammed, i.e. he calls him M.] Similarly: قَالَ مَسْلَمَةُ بْنُ عَبْدِ الْمَلِكِ يَوْمًا لِنَصِيبٍ أَمْتَدَحْتَ فَلَانًا لِرَجُلٍ مِنْ أَهْلِهِ قَالَ قَدْ فَعَلْتَ Maslama, the son of 'Abdu'l-malik, said one day to Nasaib, Didst thou compose a poem in praise of so and so? meaning a man of his family; he said, I did. [And so frequently after a demonstrative pronoun, as إِنْ عَثَبَةً أَرْسَلَنِي إِلَيْكَ بِكَذَا وَكَذَا لِلَّذِي قَالَ see, 'Otba has sent me to you with such and such a message, according to what he had said; D أَنْ رَسُولَ اللَّهِ حِينَ وَقَفَ بِعَرَفَةَ قَالَ هَذَا الْمَوْقِفُ لِلْجَبَلِ الَّذِي هُوَ عَلَيْهِ that the Apostle of God, when he stood on 'Arafat, had said: this is the station, meaning the mountain on which he found himself. D. G.]

[(e) Finally, ل is used to mark the time from which, or at which, any thing took place لِلتَّأْرِيخِ, as صُمْنَا لِلْعُمَى we fasted from the time of the mist; لِسَنَةِ مَضَتْ مِنْ مُلْكِهِ he died on that same day; لِيَوْمِهِ

- A *when one year of his reign had elapsed* ; *لَيْلَةً مَضَتْ مِنَ الشَّهْرِ* *when one night of the month had passed, i.e. the first* ; *لِسَنَةٍ* *to the completion of a year.* See § 111, and an example § 70, rem. b. D. G.]

- REM. After the interjection *يَا*, the preposition *لِ* is frequently prefixed to the name of a person called to aid, as well as to the name of him against whom help is implored, in which case it is said to be used *لِلْإِسْتِغَاثَةِ* *to ask help*. If there be only one *مُسْتَعَاثٌ* or *مُسْتَعَاثٌ بِهِ*, i.e. person called to aid, the preposition takes the vowel *fetha* (just as with the pronominal suffixes, Vol. i. § 356, rem. b); as *يَا لَزَيْدٍ* *O for Zèid ! i.e. help, Zèid !* *يَا لَإِلَاحٍ* *alas for the humiliation ! help, tribe of Taglib !* But if there be several, *لِ* is used with the first alone, and *لِ* with the rest, unless the interjection be repeated before each name, when *لِ* is retained throughout ; as *يَا لَزَيْدٍ وَلَعَمْرٍو*, *help, Zèid and 'Amr !* *يَا لَلْكُهُولِ وَلِلشَّبَابِ* *help, old and young !* *يَا لِقَوْمِي* *help, O my family and ye who are like my family !* If the name of the person against whom aid is required, *أَلْمُسْتَعَاثُ مِنْ أَجْلِهِ* or *أَلْمُسْتَعَاثُ لَهُ*, be expressed, it takes *لِ* (with *kèsra*) before it, as *يَا لَزَيْدٍ لِعَمْرٍو* *help, Zèid, against 'Amr !* *يَا لَلنَّاسِ* *help, people, against this liar !* If an adjective be annexed to the *مُسْتَعَاثُ بِهِ*, it may be put either in the genitive or in the accusative ; as *يَا لَزَيْدٍ الْكَرِيمِ* or *يَا لَزَيْدٍ الْكَرِيمَ*. In the case of the *مُسْتَعَاثُ بِهِ*, the vocative termination *ا* (see § 38, c) is sometimes used instead of *لِ* with the genitive ; as *يَا زَيْدًا لِعَمْرٍو* *help, Zèid, against 'Amr !*—These expressions are also employed [(1) to call or invite, as *يَا لَلرِّجَالِ لِمَاءَ* *O ye men, come to the water !* *يَا لَلْكُهُولِ وَلِلشَّبَابِ* *come here, young and old, to wonder ; hence* [(2)] *مَتَّعَجِبٌ مِنْهُ*, *to express surprise, in which case the*

§ 55] *The Verb.*—3. *Gov't of Verb.*—(b) *Prepositions:* فِي. 153

or object that causes surprise, is treated in the same way as the A
 به مُسْتَعْتَابٌ; e.g. يَا لَلْعَجَبِ O the wonder! يَا لَلدَّاهِيَةِ O the
 misfortune! يَا لَخُسْرَانِ طَالِبِيْمِ إِنِّي لَفَضْلٍ مِنْ أَعْبَادِ but O the
 disgrace of those who seek it (learning) in order to obtain benefits
 from men.—Similar forms of expression are يَا لَكَ, يَا لَهُ, etc.,
 followed by the accus. or, more usually, by the preposition مِنْ
 with the genit. (see § 44, e, rem. a); as جَاءَنِي رَجُلٌ وَيَا لَهُ رَجُلًا
 or جَاءَنِي رَجُلٌ وَيَا لَهُ مِنْ رَجُلٍ, there came to me a man, and what a man he was! B
 يَا لَكَ مِنْ حَدِّ أَسِيلٍ O what a happy night! يَا لَهَا مِنْ تَيْلَةٍ
 a soft cheek! يَا لَكَ مِنْ تَيْلٍ and O what a splendid night! يَا لَكَ
 يَا لَكَ مِنْ قُبْرَةٍ بِمَغْمَرٍ O happy lark in a meadow!—In all these cases ل
 seems to point out the person or thing, in reference to which
 the exclamation is uttered, as being the origin and cause of it.
 [There can be no reasonable doubt that, as the grammarians of
 el-Kūfa teach, this يَالْ with following genitive was originally آل
 followed by the name of the kinsmen of the man who called for C
 aid. See Fleischer, *Kl. Schr.* i. 393 seq., Lane sub آل. R. S.
 This war-cry of the Time of Ignorance (دَعْوَى آلِجَاهِلِيَّةٍ) was
 forbidden by the Prophet, who substituted يَا لِلْمُسْلِمِينَ and يَا لِلَّهِ.]

54. The prepositions which indicate rest in a place, are فِي in,
 into, بِ at, in, by, with, مَعَ with, along with, لَدُنْ, or لَدَى, at, with,
 in the possession of, and عَلَى over, above, upon. D

55. The preposition فِي (with pronominal suffixes فِيْهِ, فِيْكَ, فِيْ),
 on the difference between which and بِ see § 56, indicates:—

(a) Rest in a place or during a time and motion into a place, in
 which latter case it corresponds to the Greek εἰς or the Latin in with
 the accusative; as فِي الْبَيْتِ in the house; فِي تِلْكَ السَّنَةِ in this year;
 فِي أَيَّامٍ مَّعْدُودَاتٍ during a certain number of days; فِي الْكُوْزِ

- A *the water is in the jug*; الرُّكُضُ فِي الْمَيْدَانِ *the racing is in the maidān*; وَقَعَ فِي الْبُئْرِ *he fell into the well*; وَكَتَبَ عَلَى الْخِطَابِ *he wrote on the back of the letter*; يُوَفِّعُهُ اللَّهُ فِي الْقَرْيَاتِ *God will cast him into (make him dwell in) the villages*; ادْخُلْ يَدَكَ فِي جَيْبِكَ *put thy hand into thy bosom*; [أَضَعْتُ الْخَاتَمَ فِي إصْبَعِي] *by inversion for أَضَعْتُ فِي الْخَاتَمِ I inserted my finger into the signet-ring*. This
- B signification is then transferred to the relation subsisting between any two things, the one of which is regarded as the place in which the other is, or happens, or into which it goes or is put; as *in the state of pupilage*; فِي حَالِ التَّعْلِيمِ *whatever good there is in it*; مَا فِيهِ مِنَ الْخَيْرِ *safety lies in speaking the truth*; الْبَصِيرَةُ فِي الصِّدْقِ *skilful in his trade*; نَظَرَ فِي الْكِتَابِ *he looked into, or read in, the book*; دَخَلَ فِي حَاجَتِهِ *he exerted himself about his business*; فِي دَعَا *he commenced studying*; اتَّعَلَّمَ *God will let them enter into His mercy*; يُدْخِلُهُمُ اللَّهُ فِي رَحْمَتِهِ *he has nothing to do with science*; لَيْسَ مِنْ الْعِلْمِ فِي شَيْءٍ
- C

- (b) فِي is sometimes equivalent in meaning to مَعَ *with*, or بَيْنَ *among*; as *enter with generations which passed away before you*; أَدْخَلُوا فِي أُمَمٍ قَدْ خَلَتْ مِنْ قَبْلِكُمْ *she came forward with (some) women of the tribe*; قَوَّجَهُ فِي خُمُسِينَ أَلْفًا *he set out with 50,000 men*. [The proper meaning of فِي being *in the midst of*, the following noun ought to be a plural or a collective; but the signification of *with* became so prevalent, that we find actually *and he did not go out with more than one servant*. In a somewhat different sense فِي is used in the phrase *we were four of us men*.—The signification
- D

of *with* comes to denote a combination of two qualities, as سَوَادٌ فِي حُمْرَةٍ *blackness blending with redness*. D. G.]

(c) It indicates the subject of thought or conversation, that in which these move; as تَأْمَلُ شَهْرَيْنِ فِي اخْتِيَارِ الْأُسْتَاذِ *reflect two months upon the choice of a teacher*; أَنْ يَتَفَكَّرَ فِي ذَلِكَ *he must meditate upon this*; تَكَلَّمَ فِي ذَلِكَ *he spoke about this* (whereas تَكَلَّمَ بِذَلِكَ would mean *he spoke this out, he gave utterance to this* B *opinion*); أَتَحَاجُّونَنَا فِي اللَّهِ *do ye argue with us concerning God?* [وَمَنْ يَكُ فِي حُبِّي بُتَيْنَةً يَمْتَرِي *whoever may doubt my love for Butðina*]. Hence it is used in stating the subject of a book or chapter; as فَصَّلَ فِي صَنْفِ كِتَابٍ فِي الْأَخْلَاقِ *he compiled a book on morals*; كِتَابُ النَّجُومِ *a chapter treating of the nature of science*; كِتَابُ الزَّاهِرَةِ فِي مُلُوكِ مِصْرَ وَالْقَاهِرَةِ *the book of the shining stars, treating of the kings of Miṣr and ʿl-Kākira*. Similarly: نَهَضَ فِيهِ *he got up* C *(to go and look) for him*; وَجَّهُونِي فِيهِمَا *they sent me to look for them, or to fetch them*; فَبَعَثَ فِي السُّلْطَانِ أَبِي عَبْدِ اللَّهِ *and he sent for the Sulṭān 'Abū 'Abdi 'llāh*. [It also denotes the assigning of a cause, as ضَرَبَهُ أَلْحَدَ فِي شُرْبِ الْخَمْرِ *he flogged him with the prescribed number of stripes for drinking wine*; لَامَهُ فِي ذَلِكَ *he blamed him because of it*; إِنَّ أَمْرَأَةً دَخَلَتْ النَّارَ فِي هِرَّةٍ حَبَسَتْهَا *verily a woman entered Hell* D *because of a cat which she confined without food*.]

(d) فِي is used after verbs signifying desire, like طَمِعَ and رَغِبَ, in connection with the object desired; as مَنْ وَجَدَ لَذَّةَ الْعِلْمِ وَالْعَمَلِ بِهِ فَلِمَ يَرْغَبُ فِيهَا عِنْدَ النَّاسِ *why should he, who has experienced the sweetness of knowledge and of the application of it in practice, desire anything that men possess?* يَنْبَغِي أَنْ لَا يَطْمَعَ فِي أَمْوَالِ النَّاسِ *he must not covet people's property*. Compare § 53, b, rem. e.

- A (e) It is employed in the comparison of two objects, governing the thing with which the other is compared; as مَا الْحَيَوةُ الدُّنْيَا فِي مَا الْخَرَجُكَ بِكَثِيرٍ فِي كُنْهِ مَا تُحْسِنُ مِنَ الْأَعْمَالِ [this life is merely a temporary usufruct, compared with the life to come; thy tax is not high, in proportion to the number of handicrafts of which thou art master]; مَا عَلِمُكَ فِي بَحْرِهِ إِلَّا قَطْرَةٌ only a drop compared with his ocean; lit. when put into it, the smaller object being, as it were, placed within the larger one for the purpose of comparing the two.

- (f) Lastly, فِي is used to express proportion (e.g. length and breadth) and multiplication; as طَوْلُهُ خَمْسُونَ ذِرَاعًا فِي أُنْتَى عَشَرَ ذِرَاعًا its length is fifty cubits, by twelve cubits in breadth (Germ. bei or auf, Fr. sur); مِقْدَارُهَا عَشْرَةُ فَرَاسَخٍ فِي مِثْلِهَا its size is ten parasangs by the same; ثَلَاثَةٌ فِي خَمْسَةٍ three into five or three times five, according to the phrase ضَرَبَ عَدَدًا فِي عَدَدٍ he multiplied one number by another (lit. struck the one into the other).

REM. فِي is said by the grammarians to be used لِلظَّرْفِيَّةِ, to indicate time and place.

56. فِي (with pronominal suffixes بِه, بِكَ, بِى) differs from فِي in this, that فِي, like the Latin and German in, shows that one thing is actually in the midst of another, surrounded by it on all sides; whereas بِ merely indicates that the one is close by the other or in contact with it, and corresponds therefore to the Latin prepositions prope, juxta, apud, ad, and the German an or bei. For example: قَرْيَةٌ بَبَابِ الْقَاهِرَةِ a village at (close to or hard by) the gate of el-Kāhira; مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ I passed by a man; جَلَسَ بِهِ he sat beside (or by) him; نَصَرَكَمُ اللَّهُ بِبَدْرٍ God helped you at Bèdr; كَانَ بِالْمَدِينَةِ كَانَ there was at (or in, Germ. zu, Fr. à) el-Medīna a merchant;

قَرْيَةً بِمِصْرَ a town in Egypt; وَبِيَدِهِ سَيْفٌ with a sword in his hand; ^A
 بِه دَاءٌ there is in him a disease; اجْتَنِبْ دَارَنَا بِالنَّهَارِ avoid our house by
 day (= نَهَارًا); وَإِنَّكُمْ تَمُرُّونَ عَلَيْهِمْ مُصْبِحِينَ وَبِاللَّيْلِ and verily ye
 pass by them in the morning and at night (= لَيْلًا).—Hence it is
 construed with verbs signifying to attach, connect, or adhere to
 (e.g. عَلِقَ, وَصَلَ, لَصِقَ), [go round, surround (e.g. دَارَ, أَحَاطَ, طَافَ)],
 seize, take, or begin (e.g. أَخَذَ, بَدَأَ), ask about, know, or be acquainted ^B
 with (e.g. عَلِمَ, سَأَلَ, بَصَرَ), flee for refuge to, believe in, and swear by
 (e.g. آقَسَ, آمَنَ, عَادَ). For example: رُفُوسُهُمْ لَا يَصِفُّهُ بِأَكْتَافِهِمْ لَا
 أَعْنَاقُ لَهُمْ their heads adhere to their shoulders (and) they have no necks;
 وَلَئِنْ الدُّودَ يَتَّعَلِقُ بِالثَّمَارِ because the worms stick to the fruit; وَصَلَ
 وَذَرْتُ بِأَعْدَائِي and I hovered round enemies; أَخَاطَ بِالشَّيْءِ عَلِيًّا he comprehended it, knew ^C
 it thoroughly]; بَدَأَ بِالسَّبْقِ he began to study the lesson; خُذْ
 فَإِنْ تَسْأَلُونِي بِالنِّسَاءِ فَإِنِّي بَصِيرٌ بَأَدْوَاءِ النِّسَاءِ take hold of the nose-rein;
 and if ye ask me about women, truly I am skilful in the diseases of
 women; نَعُوذُ بِاللَّهِ مِنْ سَخَطِهِ we take refuge with God from His
 wrath; أَقْسَمْتُ (حَلَفْتُ) آمَنْتُ بِاللَّهِ الْوَاحِدِ I believe in the one God;
 بِاللَّهِ I swear by God; بِكَ لَا زُورَ بَيْنَكَ by Thyself (I swear), I will
 visit Thy house; بِوَأْسِكَ مَا أَهَابِي no, by thyself, I care not; ^D
 إِذَا lo! see! introducing a person or thing that comes suddenly into view
 (إِذَا الْهَفَاجَةُ) or (إِذَا الْفَجَائَةُ); as بَيْنَمَا هُوَ يَسِيرُ إِذَا بِرَفْجٍ
 فَلَمَّا تَوَسَّطْتُ الدَّرَبَ إِذَا أَنَا بِصَوْتٍ suddenly perceived a cloud of dust;
 and after I had got to the middle of the lane, I all at once heard
 a great noise; وَتَحْنُ فِي الْحَدِيثِ وَإِذَا بِضَجَّةٍ عَظِيمَةٍ عَلَى الْبَابِ

- A *and whilst we were talking, a great clamour suddenly arose at the door*; إِذَا بَرَجِلَ يُقَالُ لَهُ أَسِيدَ بَرَكَهُ قَدْ أَقْبَلَ *behold, a man called the sidiyd Bēraka came forward*. Here we must supply the participle of the verb أَحَسَّ *to perceive* [or بَصَرَ *to see*], which is construed with بِ, as, for instance, in the second of the above examples, إِذَا أَنَا مُحِسٌّ. The same remark applies to كَانَ in such phrases as بِصَوْتٍ عَظِيمٍ. كَأَنِّي بِكَ تُخَادِعُنِي *it seems to me that thou art trying to deceive me*;
- B كَأَنِّي بِكَ تَنْحَطُّ إِلَى الْكُنْدِ *it is as if I saw thee being let down into the grave*; [كَأَنَّكَ بِي قَدْ يَا ذَرِيحَ قَضَيْتَ] *it is, O Darīh, as if thou sawest me already dead*; كَأَنِّي بِكَ قَتِيلًا *methinks I see thee slain*; i.e. كَأَنِّي مُحِسٌّ بِكَ, or كَأَنِّي أَبْصُرُ بِكَ.—From the idea of contact there arises, in the case of a superior and inferior or primary and secondary object, that of companionship and connection; as سَارَ بِأَهْلِهِ *he set out with his household*; دَخَلَ عَلَيْهِ بِثِيَابِ السَّفَرِ *he came into his presence in his travelling dress*; اشْتَرَى الْخِمَارَ بِإِلْجَامِهِ *he bought the ass together with its bridle*; [بِخَيْرٍ] *well, properly with well-being in answer to the question كَيْفَ أَصْبَحْتَ how do you do this morning?*] Under this idea are figuratively represented the following relations:

- (a) The relation between subject and predicate, especially in negative propositions; as أَلَيْسَ اللَّهُ بِكَافٍ عَبْدَهُ *is not God sufficient for His servant?* لَسْتُ بِعَالِمٍ *I do not know*; مَا رَبُّكَ بِظَلَامٍ لِّلْعَبِيدِ *thy Lord will not deal wrongly with His servants*; مَا هُمْ بِمُؤْمِنِينَ *they are not believers*; وَإِنْ مَدَدتِ الْأَيْدِي إِلَى الزَّادِ لَمْ أَكُنْ بِأَعَجَلِهِمْ *and if hands are stretched out to food, I am not the quickest of them (to do it)*; فَكُنْ لِي شَفِيعًا يَوْمَ لَا ذُو شَفَاعَةٍ بِيغْنِي قَتِيلًا عَنْ سَوَادِ بْنِ قَارِبٍ *and be an intercessor for me on the day when no (other) intercessor can avail Sdwād 'ibn Kārīb in the least*. An example of the rare use of

أَوَلَمْ يَرَوْا أَنَّ اللَّهَ يَفْعَلُ بِمَا يَشَاءُ أ. *أَوَلَمْ يَرَوْا أَنَّ اللَّهَ يَفْعَلُ بِمَا يَشَاءُ* in affirmative propositions is *أَوَلَمْ يَرَوْا أَنَّ اللَّهَ يَفْعَلُ بِمَا يَشَاءُ* *do they not see that God has power to bring the dead to life?* [Comp. in Hebrew *בְּכֹחַ יְהוָה* Job xxiii. 13. D. G.]

(b) The relation between the act and its object. (a) This is always the case after *intransitive* verbs, as *بَخِلَ بِشَيْءٍ* *he was stingy of something*, opposed to *سَمَحَ بِهِ* *he was liberal of it*; *بَرَّ بِوَالِدِهِ* *he treated his father with filial piety*; *إِذْ أَخْرَجَنِي مِنْ* B *قَدْ أَحْسَنَ بِي* *he acted well towards me, when he brought me forth from the prison*; *أَمَرَ بِهِ فَقُتِلَ* *he gave an order respecting him, and accordingly he was slain*; *دَعَا بِي بِالتَّوْبَةِ* *he prayed (God) to grant me steadfastness*]; especially such as indicate *motion*, e.g. *جَاءَ* *أتى* *to come*, *ذَهَبَ* *to go away*, *رَاحَ* *سَارَ* *to depart, set out*, *قَامَ* *نَهَضَ* *to get up, rise*, *سَما* *to be high*, etc. These verbs are construed with ب and the genitive of the thing, accompanied by, or in connection with, C which one performs the act they denote; and they must be translated into English by transitive verbs. For example: *فَأْتُوا بِسُورَةٍ مِثْلِهِ* *then bring (lit. come with) a sūra (chapter) like it*; *ذَهَبَ اللَّهُ بِنُورِهِمْ* *God took away (lit. went away with) their light*; *قَامَ بِالْحَقِّ* *he upheld the truth*; *نَهَضَ بِأَعْيَانِ الْمَمْلَكَةِ* *he took upon him the burden of the government*; *سَما بِهِ* *he lifted it up on high*; *بِأَيِّهِ* *bring thou him*, § 59, rem. a]. (β) The same construction is also employed with D *transitive* verbs, not only when they signify motion but in other cases too, and the verbs must then be used absolutely*; as *بَعَثَ إِلَيَّ بِهِمْ* *he sent them to me (lit. he performed the act of sending to me in connection with, or by means of, them, using them as the objects*

* [In many cases this construction is the consequence of the omission of the proper object, e.g. with verbs signifying "to send" without mention of the bearer of the message, etc., with those that signify "to throw" without mention of the thing aimed at, etc. D. G.]

- A through which he realized that act; *رَمَى بِالسَّهْمِ* he shot the arrow (from the bow); *أَلْقَى بِيَدِهِ إِلَيْهِ* he gave himself up, or surrendered himself, to him; *سُودَ الْمَحَاجِرِ لَا يَقْرَأَنَّ بِالسُّورِ* dark-eyed (women), who do not read the *sūras* (the Kor'an). This happens particularly when the transitive verb is used in a *figurative* sense, and the preposition is then called *بَاءُ الْمَجَارِ* the *figurative* *ب*; as *كَسَرَ الْعَصَا* he broke the stick, but *كَسَرَ قَلْبِي* he has broken my heart [along with *قَلْبِي*];
- B *جَبَرَ الْعِظَمَ* he set the bone, but *جَبَرَ قَلْبِي* he has comforted my heart [along with *قَلْبِي*. Likewise, *أَشَادَ الْبِنَاءَ* he raised the building, but *أَشَادَ ذِكْرَهُ* he raised his fame as well as *أَشَادَ بِذِكْرِهِ* he drew or pulled the cord, but *جَذَبَ بِضَبْعِهِ* he rendered his name famous more generally used than *جَذَبَ ضَبْعَهُ*.] The relation of the acts of breaking and setting to their objects, in a tropical or spiritual sense, may be expressed by a prepositional exponent, as being a less
- C immediate relation than when they are used in their ordinary material sense.

- (c) 'The relation between the act and the instrument with which, the means by which, or the reason why, it is performed; as *كَتَبْتُ بِالْقَلَمِ* I wrote with the reed-pen; *قَتَلَهُ بِالسَّيْفِ* he slew him with the sword; *يَرْزُقُهُ اللَّهُ الصَّبْرَ بِبِرْكَةِ دُعَائِهِ* God will grant him patience through the salutary power of prayer to Him; *بِتَوْفِيقِ اللَّهِ حَاجَجْتُ*
- D *بِتَوْفِيقِ اللَّهِ* by God's help I have performed the pilgrimage (to Mekka); *فَيُظْلَمُ مِنَ الَّذِينَ هَادُوا حَرَمْنَا عَلَيْهِمْ طَيِّبَاتٍ أُحِلَّتْ لَهُمْ وَبِصَدِّهِمْ عَنْ سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ* and because of wrong done by those who were Jews, we have forbidden them good things, which were allowed them (before), and because of their turning away many (men) from the path of God; *فَبِمَا نَقَضُوا مِيثَاقَهُمْ لَعَنَّاهُمْ* wherefore, because of their breaking their covenant, we have cursed them (مَا redundant, see § 49, f).—Connected

herewith is the use of ب with surnames, etc., after عَرِفَ *to be known*; A
as also after كَفَى *to be enough, to suffice*, with the person or thing
that suffices or is enough for one; e.g. حَسَنُ بْنُ عَلِيٍّ الْمَعْرُوفُ
بِالْمَرْغِينَانِي *Hasan 'ibn 'Alī, known by the name of El-Margīnānī*;
كَفَى بِاللَّهِ قَرْيَةُ تُعْرَفُ بِبَقْوَى *a village known by the name of Baḳwā*; B
كَفَى بِلَذَّةِ الْعِلْمِ دَاعِيًا وَبَاعِثًا لِلْعَاقِلِ *God sufficeth as a witness**;
the pleasure of knowledge is a sufficient motive and incentive to a
sensible man. [Comp. § 49, c.]—The price of any article is also
expressed by the preposition ب after verbs signifying to buy, pay, etc.,
as being the instrumental means with which the act is performed; e.g.
بَعْتُ الثَّوْبَ مِنْهُ *he bought a reed-pen for a dirham*; C
بَدَيْنَارٍ *I sold the piece of cloth (or the garment) to him (see § 48, c) for a*
dīnār; وَشَرَوْهُ بِثَمَنِ بَخْسٍ *and they sold him for an insufficient (or*
trifling) price; اشْتَرَوْا الضَّلَالَةَ بِالنَّهْدَى *they have purchased error at*
the price of truth; لَهُمْ عَذَابٌ أَلِيمٌ بِمَا كَانُوا يَكْذِبُونَ *theirs is a painful*
punishment, for having deemed (the prophet) a liar (بِمَا كَانُوا = يَكُونُهُمْ);
فَلَيْتَ لِي بِهِمْ قَوْمًا إِذَا رَكِبُوا شَتَا الْإِغَارَةَ فُرْسَانًا وَرُكْبَانًا
would then that I had, instead of them, a tribe who, when they ride (forth), pour
down (on their enemies) from every side, mounted on horses and camels
(بِهِمْ at the price of them, in exchange for them, = بَدَلَهُمْ).—[Hence its
use after verbs signifying to kill, slay, etc. in the sense of *in retaliation*

* [In this and the following example the preposition ب is said to D
be redundant after كَفَى in order to emphasize the relation between
subject and predicate, اللَّهُ being the agent (comp. Bèidāwī i. 211,
l. 21 seq., ii. 226, l. 2 seq., Abū Zèid, *Nawādir*, 204, l. 3 seq.). In like
manner it is said to be redundant before the predicate in بِحَسْبِكَ زَيْدٌ
Zèid is a person sufficing thee. It is better, however, to take كَفَى
as containing its subject in itself, viz. كَفَايَةً, and thus being used
impersonally (comp. Fleischer, *K7. Schr.* i. 199, Anm. 2, 374). D. G.]

A *for, as an equivalent for, as* **يَقْتُلَنَّ بِهِ مِنْكُمْ كَيْشٌ** *certainly, a chief of your tribe will be killed in retaliation for him; بُوْ بِشْنَعِ نَعْلِ كَلْبِ* *be thou slain as an equivalent for the thong of Koldib's sandal.]*

- REM. a. In such phrases as **أَنْتَ وَأُمِّي** *thou art as dear to me as my father and mother*, **بِأَبِي مَنْ وَدِدْتُهُ** *dear to me as my father is one whom I love*, the preposition depends upon the word **مَفْدِيٌّ** *ransomed*, or **فُدِيَ** *may he be ransomed*, which is understood,
- B and the literal meaning is: *thou art to be, or shalt be, ransomed with my father and mother, may one whom I love be ransomed with my father*. This is called by the grammarians **بَاءُ التَّقْدِيرِ** the **ب** which expresses ransom; but it is in reality the **بَاءُ الثَّمَنِ** or **ب** of price, as used after **اِشْتَرَى**, **بَاعَ**, etc. (see above, no. c, at the end). In the same way are used **بِنَفْسِي** and **بِرُوحِي**.—Observe also the phrase **إِنْ أَجَبْتُ** [or simply **فِيهَا**] *good and well*, as **فِيهَا وَنِعْمَتْ**
- C **وَإِطَعْتُ فِيهَا وَنِعْمَتْ** *if thou consentest and obeyest, good and well; مَنْ تَوَضَّأَ لِلْجُمُعَةِ فِيهَا وَنِعْمَتْ *if one performs the wudu' for the Friday, good and well*. This is explained, by an ellipse, as equivalent to **فِيهِذِهِ الْفَعْلَةِ أَوْ الْخَصْلَةِ يُنَالُ الْفَضْلُ وَنِعْمَتِ الْفَعْلَةِ أَوْ** *by this act or practice is excellence attained, and good is the act or practice*. Others regard **فِيهَا** as equivalent to **فَعَلَيْكَ بِهَا**, **فَعَلَيْهِ بِهَا**, etc., *keep thou to it, let him keep to it, etc.* (see § 59, rem. a); and other words, such as **السُّنَّةُ** *the practice of the Prophet*, or **الرَّخْصَةُ** *the ordinance of indulgence*, may be supplied according to circumstances.*
- D

REM. b. In phrases like **مَاتَ قَبْلَ النَّبِيِّ بِقَلِيلٍ (بِمَسِيرٍ)** *he died a little before the Prophet*, **قَدِمَ بَعْدَ ذَلِكَ بِشَهْرَيْنِ وَأَيَّامٍ** *he arrived two months and some days after this*, **ب** is the **ب** of measure, and quite different in meaning from the accusative of time how long: **سَافَرَ: قَبْلِي يَوْمَيْنِ** *means he travelled for two days before me*, *profectus est*

biduum ante me, Germ. *er reiste zwei Tage lang vor mir*, but A
 سَافَرَ قَبْلِي بِيَوْمَيْنِ, *he started two days before me*, profectus est
 biduo ante me, Germ. *er reiste zwei Tage vor mir ab*. Observe
 that ب with its genitive must in this case always be placed after
 يَوْمَيْنِ, قَبْلِي, etc.

REM. c. The preposition *without* is expressed in Arabic by
 بِلَا and بِغَيْرِ, more rarely by مِنْ غَيْرِ and بِدُونِ, as well as the
 simple دُونَ (§ 69, f'). بِلَا can be used only with an indefinite
 substantive, بِغَيْرِ [and مِنْ غَيْرِ, as also دُونَ and بِدُونِ] with one B
 which is either definite or indefinite; as سُلْطَانٌ بِلَا عَدْلِ كَنْهَرٍ
 بِلَا مَاءٍ *a ruler without justice is like a river without water*; جِئْتُ
 بِغَيْرِ ضَرُورَةٍ *thou art come without (bringing any) provisions*; بِلَا زَادٍ
without necessity; بِغَيْرِ الْحَقِّ *unjustly*; مِنْ غَيْرِ خِلَافٍ *without*
controversy; مِنْ غَيْرِ سَيْفٍ وَدَمٍ مُهْرَاقٍ *without sword and bloodshed*.—
 Compare in Hebrew בְּלֹא, בְּדֹא, בְּדֹלִי C

[REM. d. Observe the phrases مَنْ لِي بِكَذَا *who will be re-*
sponsible to me for such a thing? (where we must supply ضَامِنٌ);
 أَنَا بِهَا *I have done it* (where جِئْتُ may be supplied); نَحْنُ بِاللَّهِ
 (نَتَّقُ or نَعُوذُ) *we put our trust in God, then in thee* (suppl. نَعُوذُ or نَتَّقُ);
 كَيْفَ بِكَ إِذَا كَانَ كَذَا *how wilt thou be, when such a thing is the*
case? The ب in بِسْمِ اللَّهِ denotes according to some the aid or
 instrument; others say that we ought to supply أُبْتَدِئُ *I begin* D
with the name of God. In the expressions لَقِيتُ بَزِيدٍ الْأَسَدَ
I met in Zeid the lion, etc. ب is the equivalent of مِنْ, see § 48, h. On
 the expressions هُوَ بِنَفْسِهِ or هُوَ بَعَيْنِهِ see § 139. On the use of ب in
 the formula أَفْضَلُ بَزِيدٍ see Vol. i. § 184 and rem. a.]

REM. e. The grammarians denote the various uses of ب by
 saying that it is used لِلْإِصْطِقِ to express adhesion: لِلظَّرْفِيَّةِ time

and בְּ, e.g. Job i. 22, בְּכָל-זֶמֶן, Deut. i. 32, וּבְדֶבֶר הַיָּדָה, Num. A
xiv. 11, בְּכָל הָאֲתוֹת; and in Pers., بَا and وَجُودِ.—Lastly, مَعَ
is used in comparisons, and must then be translated into English by
compared to, in comparison with; as اَلْخَضِرُ مَعَهُ وَتَدُ compared with
him *el-Haḍir*, or *el-Hidr* (Elias, the wandering Jew of the Mu-
hammadans), *is a tent-peg*, i.e. fixed and motionless, an expression
used of one who leads an unsettled vagabond life.

REM. مَعَ is, as the Arab grammarians remark, properly the
accusative of a noun, signifying *association, connexion*; see Vol. i. B
§ 359. The expression ذَهَبْتُ مِنْ مَعِهِ, *I went away from beside*
him, is recorded by Sibawih.—To it corresponds in Hebrew עִמּוֹ,
in Syriac ܡܥܝܐ.

58. لَدُنْ (with suffixes لَدُنِّي, لَدُنْكَ, لَدُنَّا, or لَدِي, also written
لَدَا (with suffixes لَدَيْ, لَدَيْكَ, لَدَيْهِ), is a comparatively rare word,
signifying *beside, near, at or by, in the possession of* (Lat. *apud*,
Fr. *chez*); as وَالْقَا سَيِّدَهَا لَدَا آلْبَابِ and they found her lord at the C
door; إِذِ الْقُلُوبُ لَدَى الْحَنَاجِرِ when (their) hearts shall be in (their)
throats; اِعْتَقَدَ أَنَّ النَّارَ أَفْضَلُ الْأَشْيَاءِ آتَتْ لَدَيْهِ he believed that fire
was the most excellent of the things which were in his possession.

REM. a. لَدُنْ chiefly occurs in composition with مِنْ (see § 70),
and, like that preposition, is used لَدُنْ أَوْ مَكَانٍ or لَدُنْ فِي زَمَانٍ
to denote the commencement of the limit in place or time. It may be
connected with a proposition, as وَتَذَكَّرُ نِعْمَاهُ لَدُنْ أَنْتَ يَافِعُ and D
thou art mindful of His benefits since thou art grown up; [فَمَاذَا
تُرَانِي ضَرَرَنِي أَنْ سَنَيْتَنِي لَدُنْ أَنْ نَشَأْنَا and what, thinkest thou, did
it harm me that thou hatedst me since we grew up?—When con-
nected with the word غَدْوَةٌ morning, it usually takes it in the
accus., as لَدُنْ غَدْوَةٌ حَتَّى دَنَتْ لِّلْغُرُوبِ from morning till it (the sun)
was near setting, though غَدْوَةٌ is admissible. The former construc-

- A tion is explained by an ellipse, viz. *كَانَتْ السَّاعَةُ غُدُوَّةً* since the hour, or time, was morning. If another word be connected with *غُدُوَّةً*, it may be put either in the accus. or the genit., as *لَدُنْ غُدُوَّةٍ وَعَشِيَّةٍ* from morning and evening. Some grammarians admit the nominative likewise, *لَدُنْ غُدُوَّةً*, by an ellipse of *كَانَ*, viz. *لَدُنْ كَانَتْ غُدُوَّةً*.

- REM. b. *لَدَى* differs from *عِنْدَ* (§ 66) in being restricted to material objects which are actually with, or on the person of, the speaker [or the person spoken of]. You say *هَذَا الْقَوْلُ عِنْدِي صَوَابٌ* this assertion is right in my opinion; *عِنْدَ فُلَانٍ عِلْمٌ بِهِ* So-and-so knows about it; not *لَدَى* and *فُلَانٍ لَدَى*. And again you say *عِنْدِي مَالٌ*, I have money, whether it be about your person or not, whereas *لَدَى مَالٌ* means that you actually have it about you. [*لَدُنْ* can never form the predicate of a nominal sentence. One may say *زَيْدٌ لَدَيْنَا* Zèid is with us, but not *لَدُنَا زَيْدٌ*.]
- C

59. *عَلَى* (with pronominal suffixes *عَلَيْكَ, عَلَيْهِ*) over, above, upon, is used:—

- (a) In its original local sense (*يَلَا سِعْلَاءَ*, to denote higher elevation); as *فَأَقْبَلَتْ تَحْوُمَ عَلَى حَائِطٍ* Zèid is on the roof; *وَجَدَ إِنْسَانًا عَلَى الطَّرِيقِ* and it (the pigeon) began to hover over a wall; *نَظَرَ عَلَى الْحَائِطِ صُورَةَ رَجُلٍ* he saw on the wall the figure of a man; *عَلَى ثِيَابٍ قُطُنٍ* I had on cotton clothes; *فَإِذَا أَسْتَوَيْتَ أَنْتَ وَمَنْ مَعَكَ عَلَى الْفُلِكِ* and when thou, and they who are with thee, are safe on board the ship. The same sense is further exemplified in: *جَلَسَ عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ* he sat at the table (because a person sitting at table rises above the level of it); *وَقَفَ عَلَى النَّهْرِ*
- D

he stood by the river; قَعَدَ عَلَى بَابِ دَارِهِ he sat at the door of his A
house; وَقَفَ عَلَى رَأْسِ فُلَانٍ he stood by the head of So-and-so;
فِي وَقْتِ شَهْوَتِهِ فِي الْوُقُوفِ عَلَى خَصَائِصِ أَعْضَاءِ الْحَيَوَانِ at the time
when he was very eager to investigate the peculiarities of the limbs of
animals; الْقَرْيَةُ عَلَى اثْنَيْ عَشَرَ مَيْلًا مِنَ الْقُسْطَاطِ [the village is
situated at a distance of 12 miles from el-Fostāt]; جَاَزَ عَلَيْهِ, or مَرَّ عَلَيْهِ,
he passed by him; كَانَ الْحَجَّاجُ أَمِيرًا عَلَى الْعِرَاقِ el-Haǧǧaǧ was B
ēmir (or governor) of el-'Irāk; طَانَعَ عَلَى شَيْءٍ he contemplated or
examined something; اِطَّلَعَ عَلَى شَيْءٍ he became acquainted with, or
acquired a knowledge of, something; قَرَأَ عَلَيْهِ, either he (the pupil)
read (a book) before him (the teacher), studied under him, or he (the
teacher) read (a book) to him (the pupil); تَلَا الرِّسَالَةَ عَلَيْهِمْ he read the
letter to them; بَدَأَ بِكِتَابِ الصَّلَاةِ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ he began the book of C
(canonical) prayer before Muḥammad, began to read it under him as
his instructor. Similarly in the phrases: غَشِيَ عَلَيْهِ (عَلَيْهَا) he (she)
fainted (lit. there was a covering of darkness over him or her); أَغْمَى
أَعْيَى do.; مَغَشَى عَلَيْهِ (عَلَيْهَا) in a faint; سَلَامٌ عَلَيْكُمْ peace be upon
you! رَحْمَةُ اللَّهِ عَلَيْهِ God's mercy be upon him (may God have mercy
on him).

(b) In a hostile sense, in which case it can generally be rendered by D
against or upon; as خَرَجَ عَلَيْهِ he went out against him (with an army),
he rebelled against him; دَعَا عَلَيْهِ he cursed him, § 23; قَضَى عَلَيْهِ he
pronounced a (legal or other) decision against him, as opposed to قَضَى لَهُ;
هَجَرَ عَلَيْهِ he rushed upon him; فَأَعِنْ عَلَيْهِ therefore give aid against
him; يَنْبَغِي أَنْ يَصْبِرَ عَلَى الْإِمْحَنِ he must bear his troubles patiently
(lit. must exercise patience against them); كَيْلًا يَكُونَ عَقْلُهُ وَعِلْمُهُ
حُجَّةً عَلَيْهِ that his intelligence and his knowledge may not become an

- A *argument against him*; *أَلْفَقَهُ مَعْرِفَةُ النَّفْسِ مَا لَهَا وَمَا عَلَيْهَا* *learning is the soul's cognizance of what is for its good and for its hurt* (see § 53, *b*, *γ*). Similarly in the phrases: *صَعْبٌ (عَسِيرٌ) عَلَىَّ* *difficult for me*, opposed to *سَهْلٌ (يَسِيرٌ) عَلَىَّ* *easy for me*; *عَزِيزٌ عَلَىَّ* *difficult for me*, but also *dear to me*, opposed in both senses to *هَيِّنٌ عَلَىَّ*; *خَفِيٌّ عَلَىَّ* *hidden from me, obscure to me*, opposed to *جَلِيٌّ عَلَىَّ* *clear to me*. It is therefore construed with verbs signifying *to be angry with* and *to incite or instigate*; as *عَتَبَ عَلَيْهِ* *he was angry with him*; *لَمْ يُكَلِّمْهُ سَخَطًا عَلَيْهِ* *he did not speak to him out of anger with him* [and *رَضِيَ عَلَيْهِ* *he was content with him*, as opposed to *سَخِطَ عَلَيْهِ*]; *أَغْرَى الْكَلْبَ عَلَيْهِ* *he urged on the dog against him, set the dog at or upon him* (*بِهِ* would mean *he made the dog attack itself to him*). Frequently, however, when construed with these latter verbs, it does not imply a hostile movement against an object, but merely motion towards it to get possession of it or do it*; e.g. *أَلْحَثَ عَلَى الْفِعْلِ* *urging or inciting to action*; *خَاطَبُوهُ مُحَرِّضِينَ إِيَّاهُ عَلَى تَصْنِيفِ كِتَابٍ* *they talked to him, urging him to compose a book*; *فَمَرَّ الْآخِرَةَ يَحْمِلُ* *concern for the life to come induces man to do well* (lit. *carries him towards good*); *مَا حَمَلَكَ عَلَى هَذِهِ الدَّعْوَى الْبَاطِلَةِ* *what induced you to set up this empty claim?* Hence too *حَرَصٌ*, *to be greedy or covetous*, and its derivatives *حِرْصٌ*, *greed*, and *حَرِيصٌ*, *greedy*, are construed with *عَلَى* and the genitive of the thing coveted.—The phrase *دَخَلَ عَلَى فُلَانٍ*, *to go in to one*, is used when

* [Hence we can decide only by the context whether *اجْتَمَعُوا عَلَيْهِ* and similar expressions are to be translated by *they collected themselves against him* or *to him*. Similarly *أَعَانَهُ عَلَى الشَّيْءِ* may signify *he helped him to avert the thing* or *to accomplish it*.]

the person sought is in his house or room, so that we actually find A him; دَخَلَ إِلَى فُلَانٍ merely means *to go into one's house or room*.

(c) Of a debt which one owes, and a duty which is incumbent upon one; as عَلَيْهِ دَيْنٌ *he owes a debt*, opposed to لَهُ دَيْنٌ *a debt is due to him*; لِي عَلَيْكَ دِينَارَانِ *thou owest me two dinārs* (see § 53, b, rem. d); طَلَبَ الْعِلْمَ فَرِيضَةً عَلَى كُلِّ مُسْلِمٍ *the search after knowledge is an ordinance for every Muslim (every Muslim is bound by divine command to seek after knowledge)*; عَلَيْكَ أَنْ تَفْعَلَ هَذَا *it is incumbent B upon thee to do this, thou must do this*; عَلَيْكَ أَنْ تَتَحَرَّرَ عَنِ الْغِيْبَةِ *thou must refrain from slander or backbiting*. [Hence it is employed with verbs signifying *to decree, to make incumbent or unavoidable*, as كَتَبَ, أَوْجَبَ, حَتَمَ, قَضَى]

(d) Of the advantage, superiority, or distinction, which one person or thing enjoys over another; as فَضَّلَ آدَمَ عَلَى الْمَلَائِكَةِ *Adam's superiority over the angels*; الَّذِينَ يَسْتَحِبُّونَ الْحَيَاةَ الدُّنْيَا *who love the present life more than the life to come*; C عَلَى الْآخِرَةِ الَّذِينَ يَخْتَارُونَ *he preferred it to the rest, selected it in preference to the others*.

(e) Of the condition in which any one is in respect to religion, trade or profession, health, fortune, mental or bodily gifts, etc. (properly, the ground or basis on which he stands in these respects). For example: النَّاسُ عَلَى دِينِ مُلُوكِهِمْ *people follow, or conform to, the religion of their kings*; قَالَتِ الْيَهُودُ نَحْنُ النَّصَارَى عَلَى شَيْءٍ *the Jews say, The Christians are not (grounded) upon anything, have nothing to stand upon*; كَانَ عَلَى دِينِ الْمَسِيحِ *he followed the religion of the Messiah*; لَمْ يَجِدْ أَمْرًا عَلَى خِلَافِ مَا كَانَ يَعْتَقِدُهُ *he found nothing contrary to what he believed*; سَوَاءٌ كَانَتْ عَلَى صُورَةِ إِنْسَانٍ *no matter whether they be endowed with human form or not*; عَشِقَ قَبِيْنَةً عَلَى أَوْفَرِ مَا يَكُونُ مِنَ الْجَمَالِ وَالْمَعْرِفَةِ بِالْإِفْنَاءِ وَالضَّرْبِ

- A *he loved a slave-girl, endowed with the highest degree both of beauty and of knowledge of singing and instrumental music*; [إِسْرَ الْجَنِّسِ] *the common noun is divisible into two classes; (it is) a noun denoting a concrete object, or a noun denoting an abstract idea*]; *the state or condition in which I am*; كُنْتُ عَلَى أَنْ أُجِيبَ دَاعِيَ الْأَمِيرِ (the orders of) the *emir's messenger*; *many* وَكَأْسٍ شَرِبْتُ عَلَى لَذَّةٍ *and he entered the city at a time when its inhabitants were off their guard*; عَلَى صُرُوفِ الدَّهْرِ, or عَلَى الْهَالَاتِ, *amid the changes, or vicissitudes, of time or fortune*; عَلَى التَّابِيدِ *always, continuously*.
- B *a cup have I quaffed with delight*; وَدَخَلَ الْمَدِينَةَ عَلَى حِينِ غَفْلَةٍ *and he entered the city at a time when its inhabitants were off their guard*; عَلَى صُرُوفِ الدَّهْرِ, or عَلَى الْهَالَاتِ, *amid the changes, or vicissitudes, of time or fortune*; عَلَى التَّابِيدِ *always, continuously*.

- (f) Of the ground on which, the cause or reason why, one does a thing; as أَخَذَهُ عَلَيْهَا مَا لَا يَمْلِكُهُ *he was seized with a passion for her which he could not restrain (lit. there seized him on her account something which he could not master)*; الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ عَلَى مَا صَنَعَ *praise belongs to God for what He has done*; يُعَاتِبُهُ عَلَى تَرْكِ الْمَهَادَاةِ *he reproached him for having neglected to send him a present in return*; وَتُكَبِّرُوا اللَّهَ عَلَى مَا هَدَيْكُمْ *and that ye glorify God for having guided you*; عَلَى أَيِّ شَيْءٍ أُعْطِيكَ مَالِي *why am I to give you my money?* تَأْخُذُ الْجَارِيَةَ وَالْخَادِمَ عَنْ غَيْرِ صَنَاعَةٍ عَلَى وَجْهِهِمَا أَلْفَ دِينَارٍ وَأَكْثَرَ *a slave, whether female or male, fetches, without taking account of any accomplishments they may possess, only for their faces, a thousand dīnārs and more*]; جَاءَ عَلَى أَنَّهُ مَلِكٌ *he came, on the ground of his being a king*; أَتَى بَابَ الْمَلِكِ عَلَى أَنَّهُ أُخْتُهُ *he came to the king's gate, pretending to be his sister*; لَا أَسْأَلُكُمْ عَلَيْهِ مَالًا *I do not ask you for money on that account (scil. building upon it, or مُعْتَمِدًا عَلَيْهِ relying on it)*; particularly in the common phrase بِنَاءً عَلَى أَنْ *building upon, reckoning or relying upon, such and such a thing*.
- C *a slave, whether female or male, fetches, without taking account of any accomplishments they may possess, only for their faces, a thousand dīnārs and more*]; جَاءَ عَلَى أَنَّهُ مَلِكٌ *he came, on the ground of his being a king*; أَتَى بَابَ الْمَلِكِ عَلَى أَنَّهُ أُخْتُهُ *he came to the king's gate, pretending to be his sister*; لَا أَسْأَلُكُمْ عَلَيْهِ مَالًا *I do not ask you for money on that account (scil. building upon it, or مُعْتَمِدًا عَلَيْهِ relying on it)*; particularly in the common phrase بِنَاءً عَلَى أَنْ *building upon, reckoning or relying upon, such and such a thing*.
- D *building upon, reckoning or relying upon, such and such a thing*.

(g) Of the terms or conditions, as the ground or basis, on which, A
anything is done; as عَلَى هَذَا الشَّرْطِ *on this condition*; أَجَابَهُمْ إِلَى
ذَلِكَ عَلَى أَنْ يُعِدُّوهُ بِالسَّلَاحِ *he consented to this proposal of theirs,*
on condition that they should aid him (by providing him) with weapons;
صَالَحَهُ عَلَى أَلْفِ دِرْهَمٍ *he made peace with him on (the condition that he*
should pay him) a thousand dirhams.

(h) In saying that one thing happens in spite of or notwith- B
standing another thing, which might have prevented it; as أَعْدَبَكَ
عَلَى كِبَرِ سِنَّكَ *I will punish thee, notwithstanding thy great age*
(lit. in thy state of great age, see f); قَتَلَ أَسَدًا عَلَى صِغَرِ سِنِّهِ *he slew*
a lion, notwithstanding his extreme youth; أَلْخَبِلُ تَجَرِي عَلَى مَسَاوِيهَا *horses run,*
notwithstanding their vices, or diseases; إِنَّ رَبَّكَ لَذُو مَغْفِرَةٍ لِلنَّاسِ عَلَى ظُلْمِهِمْ *verily thy Lord is merciful unto men, despite*
their wrong-doing (compare لَا, Job x. 7, xvi. 17); C
فِيهَا عَلَى الْآثِنِينَ *she can gallop in spite of her fatigue.* R. S.]

(i) Of the rule or standard according to which something is
done; as عَلَى نِسْبَةِ مَحْفُوظَةٍ *after this manner*; عَلَى هَذِهِ الطَّرِيقَةِ *according to a duly observed proportion*; عَلَى مَا رَأَيْتُ فِي الْكُتُبِ *according to what I have seen (stated) in books*; عَلَى مَا حَكَاهُ *according to what he related.* [Hence its construction with the verbs D
that signify to fashion, to mould (ضَرَبَ, فَطَرَ, طَبَعَ, جَبَلَ) as جَبَلَتْ
الْقُلُوبَ عَلَى حُبِّ مَنْ أَحْسَنَ إِلَيْهَا وَبُغْضِ مَنْ أَسَاءَ إِلَيْهَا *hearts are*
created with a tendency to love him who does good to them and to hate
him who does evil to them; يُحْمَلُ اللَّفْظُ عَلَى نَقِيضِهِ *a word is made to*
accord in form with its contrary in meaning. D. G.]

(j) Of the thing of which we speak, which forms, as it were, the
basis of our conversation (compare *super*, Germ. *über*); as قَالَ عَلَى

- A **أَمْ تَقُولُونَ عَلَى اللَّهِ مَا** *he said concerning this, on this matter*; **لَا تَعْلَمُونَ** *or do ye say concerning (or of) God what ye know not?*

[(k) Of a person who is excluded or thrust back (comp. **دُونُ**, § 69, f), as **تَوَلَّوْا عَلَيْهِمْ هَذَا الْأَمْرَ** *make yourselves masters of this business over their heads, excluding them* (Tab. i. 1841, l. 13, 1842, l. 10, 13); **أُرْعَى سَائِرَ بِلَادِ الرَّبْدَةِ النَّاسَ عَلَى بَنِي ثُعَلْبَةَ** *he made the whole land of ʿr-Rabada public pasture ground, without taking notice of the claims of the Bènū Ta'labu* (Tab. i. 1879, l. 6); **أُتَجِيرُ عَلَيْهَا عَدُوَّنَا** *dost thou grant protection to our enemy in spite (defiance) of us?* D. G.]

- REM. a. Observe the following phrases: **عَلَى بِهِ** *fetch him to me*, scil. **أُدْخُلُوا** or some similar word (see b, at the end); **عَلَى الرَّأْسِ** *(it is) upon the head and eye*, i.e. *it shall be done most willingly and promptly*; **عَلَى الْبَرِيْقِ** *on an empty stomach, fasting* (lit. *on the saliva*); **عَلَى حِينٍ (عَبْدٍ، مُلْكٍ) فُلَانٍ** *in the time, or reign, of So-and-so*; **عَلَى يَدَيْهِ (يَدِهِ)**, or simply **عَلَيْهِ**, *by his means, through him*, as **وَعَدْتَنَا عَلَى رُسُلِكَ** *and give us what Thou hast promised us by Thy apostles*, **قَالَ عَلَى لِسَانِ رَسُولِهِ** *He said it by the mouth (lit. tongue) of His apostle**; **لَا بَأْسَ عَلَيْكَ لَا عَلَيْكَ** *for there is no fear for thee* (§ 39, d, rem. a), **لَا عَلَيْكَ أَنْ تَفْعَلَ** *do what thou likest*; and the adjurations **بِحَيَاتِي عَلَيْكَ، بِاللَّهِ عَلَيْكَ**, *I implore thee by God, by my life (to do so and so)*, which are usually followed by the particle **إِلَّا** [or **لَمَّا**], lit., *this oath with all its consequences be upon you, if you do not do so and so*.—The phrase **عَلَيْكَ زَيْدًا**, *seize Zèid*, has already been mentioned in § 35, b, δ, rem. b. In this sense **عَلَيْكَ** is also construed with the preposition **بِ** [§ 56, b]; as **بِالْبَرَجَالِ عَلَيْكُمْ** *attack those men*, **بِالْيَمَامَةِ عَلَيْكُمْ** *invade ʿl-Yemāma*; **بِالرَّفَقِ عَلَيْكَ** *keep thou to gentleness*].
- D

* **عَلَى لِسَانِ فُلَانٍ** often signifies *under somebody's name*, i.e. *falsely ascribed to him*. D. G.]

REM. b. As being originally a substantive, عَلَى may take the A preposition مِنْ before it, عَلَى مِنْ *from off* (lit. *from upon*, Heb. *מֵעַל*); as نَزَلَ مِنْ عَلَى فَرَسِهِ he dismounted from his horse; غَدَتْ مِنْ عَلَيْهِ بَعْدَ he sprang from off its back; مَا تَرَ ظُهُورَهَا أَتَتْ مِنْ عَلَى thou on the right hand and I on the left. B

60. 'To these three classes of prepositions may be added مُنْذُ or مُذْ since, وَ and تَ by (in swearing), and كَ like, as.

61. مُنْذُ is derived, by assimilation of the first vowel, from مِنْ and ذُو (see Vol. i. § 340, with rem. c, and § 347, with the rem. b C and e, and compare the phrase فَيَعُودُ مِنْ ذِي قَبْلُ that he may return to his former condition). It is contracted into مُذْ, which usually becomes in the *wasl* مُذْ (see Vol. i. § 20, d and § 358, i). These words signify *from which time*, and may be construed with the *nominative* as well as the *genitive*, the latter being more particularly used when a yet unexpired period of time is spoken of*. For

* [Theoretically مُنْذُ or مُذْ is construed with a definite noun of D time in the *nominative* to designate the *terminus a quo*, as مُذْ يَوْمَ الْجُمُعَةِ since it was Friday, i.e. since last Friday; with an undefined noun of time in the *nominative*, when the expired period is spoken of, as مُذْ سَنَةً it is a year since; with a defined noun of time in the *genitive* to mark a yet unexpired period, as مُنْذُ الْيَوْمِ since the beginning of this day, i.e. to-day. But in course of time THE CONSTRUCTION WITH THE GENITIVE PREVAILED IN ALL CASES. Comp. Fleischer, *Kl. Schr.* i. 408—411, ii. 100 seq.]

- A example : مَا رَأَيْتُهُ مُنْذُ يَوْمِ الْجُمُعَةِ *I have not seen him since last Friday* (lit. *the terminus a quo* is *Friday*), or مُنْذُ يَوْمَانِ *for the last two days*, or مُنْذُ أَوَّلِ مِنْ أَوَّلِ مِنْ أَمْسٍ *since last year*, or مُنْذُ أَوَّلِ مِنْ أَوَّلِ مِنْ أَمْسٍ *since the day before the day before yesterday*; مُنْذُ انْتِصَافِ اللَّيْلِ *from midnight till the time when the sun has passed the meridian*; مُنْذُ أَوَّلِ الشَّهْرِ إِلَى مُنْتَصَفِهِ *from the first of the month to the middle of it*; أَلَمْ تَرَ مُنْذُ عَامَانِ أَمْلَكَ عَصْرِنَا يَصِيحُ بِهِمْ لِلْمَوْتِ وَالْقَتْلِ صَاحِحٌ أَنَا أَعْلَمُ أَنَّهُ جَائِعٌ *hast thou not seen, for the last two years, the kings of our time summoned by fate to death and slaughter? I know that he has been starving for the last five days*; مُنْذُ خَمْسَةِ أَيَّامٍ *I know that he has been starving for the last five days*; مَا كَلَّمْتُهُ مُنْذُ شَهْرِنَا هَذَا *I have not spoken to him since (the beginning of) this month*, or مُنْذُ يَوْمِنَا, or مُنْذُ الْيَوْمِ, *since this morning, to-day*.

- C REM. a. The lexicographers give the rare forms مُنْذُ and مُنْذُ. — مُنْذُ may be pronounced in the *wasl* as مُنْذُ, and the forms مُنْذُ and مُنْذُ are also mentioned.

- REM. b. مُنْذُ and مُنْذُ are used لِابْتِدَاءِ الْغَايَةِ فِي الزَّمَانِ *to denote the commencement of the limit in time*, or, as it may be otherwise expressed, to denote الْأَمَدَ *the starting-point*, or أَوَّلَ الْمُدَّةِ *the commencement of the period*, and جَمِيعَ الْمُدَّةِ *the whole of the period*.

- REM. c. مُنْذُ and مُنْذُ never take a pronominal suffix, and cannot be joined with any substantives but those which denote *time*. They may, however, be directly connected with propositions; as مَا رَأَيْتُهُ مُنْذُ خُلِقَ *I have not seen him since he was born*, or قَدْ عَشْتَمَا مُصْطَحِبَيْنِ مُنْذُ *since the tribe departed*; كُنْتُمَا صَغِيرَيْنِ *ye two have lived as companions since ye were little*; لَمْ يُنْسِنِي ذِكْرُكُمْ مُنْذُ لَمْ أَلْقَ تَكْمُ عَيْشٍ *no life (however comfortable)*

has made me forget you, since the time that I have not met you (since A I no longer meet you); مَا زَالَ مُذْ عَقَدَتْ يَدَاهُ إِزَارَهُ قَسِيًّا he has not ceased to be handsome from the day his hands fastened his robe; مَا زِلْتُ أَبْغِي أَلْهَالَ مُذْ أَنَا بِأَفِئْ I have not ceased to seek after wealth from the time I grew up.

REM. d. The Bédawīn use مِنْ instead of مُنْذُ, as مِنْ سَنَةٍ = مُنْذُ سَنَةٍ. Compare the Kor'ān, ix. 109, أُسِّسَ عَلَى اتَّقْوَى مِنْ أَوَّلِ يَوْمٍ, which was founded upon the fear of God from the first day. B

62. The particle وَ, which is frequently used in swearing, is construed with the genitive of the object sworn by; as وَاللَّهِ by God! وَرَبِّ الْكَعْبَةِ by the Lord of the Ka'ba (the mosque of Mèkka)! This وَ is employed, however, only when a substantive follows, and the verb of swearing is omitted; before a pronominal suffix, as well as when the verb is expressed, the preposition بِ must be used (see § 56). C Sometimes the particle فَ is prefixed to وَ, as فَوَاللَّهِ by God then!—The particle ت (the origin of which is very obscure [comp. Vol. i. § 356, b, footnote]) is construed like وَ, but is seldom used except in the oath تَاللَّهِ by God! Other examples mentioned by the grammarians are: تَرَبِّ الْكَعْبَةِ by the Lord of the Ka'ba, تَرَبِّي by my Lord, تَأْتَرَحْمَنِ by the Compassionate, and تَحْيَاكَ by thy life.

REM. a. The oath (الْقَسْمُ), whether expressed by وَ, بِ, or ت, D requires a complement (جَوَابُ الْقَسْمِ), of which the following are the principal conditions. If the complement be an affirmative nominal proposition (جُمْلَةٌ اِسْمِيَّةٌ مُثَبَّتَةٌ), it is introduced by لَ, as وَاللَّهِ لِحَمْدِ رَسُولِهِ by God, verily Muḥammad is His apostle; or by إِنَّ, as وَاللَّهِ إِنَّ مُحَمَّدًا رَسُولُهُ, in which case لَ may be prefixed to the predicate, as وَاللَّهِ إِنَّ مُحَمَّدًا لَرَسُولُهُ. If the complement

- A be an affirmative verbal proposition (جُمْلَةٌ فِعْلِيَّةٌ مُثَبِّتَةٌ), with the verb in the perfect, it requires لَقَدْ, as وَاللَّهِ لَقَدْ هَلَكَ أَبُو جَهْلٍ by God, 'Abū Gahl is dead indeed; but if the verb be in the imperfect, it takes the energetic form, with لَ prefixed, as وَاللَّهِ لَأَفْعَلَنَّ by God, I will do it! [see § 19, a]. If the complement be negative, no particle is prefixed to the ordinary negatives مَا and لَا; as وَاللَّهِ مَا وَاللَّهِ لَا يَهْلِكُ الْيُؤْمِنُ by God, Muhammad is not a liar; by God, Muhammad has not lied; by God, the believer shall not perish! [On the oath preceding conditional sentences, see § 17, c, rem. a, (1).]
- B وَاللَّهِ مَا كَذَبَ مُحَمَّدٌ by God, Muhammad is not a liar; وَاللَّهِ لَا يَهْلِكُ الْيُؤْمِنُ by God, Muhammad has not lied; وَاللَّهِ لَا يَهْلِكُ الْيُؤْمِنُ by God, the believer shall not perish! [On the oath preceding conditional sentences, see § 17, c, rem. a, (1).]

- REM. b. In such phrases as لَأَفْعَلَنَّ مِنَ الرَّبِّ by the Lord, I will do it! مِنْ رَبِّي, or مِنْ رَبِّي, by my Lord! مِنَ اللَّهِ, مِنْ رَبِّي, by God! the words مِنْ and مِ are abbreviations of أَيْمُنُ oaths (see Vol. i. § 19, rem. b), which is contracted in various other ways. Some grammarians, however, regard مِنْ and مِنْ in مِنْ رَبِّي as being really the preposition مِنْ (§ 48).
- C

63. Among the prepositions is usually reckoned كَ as, like. This is, however, not a preposition, but a substantive, synonymous with مِثْلُ likeness. It is formally undeveloped (like ذُو), but may stand in any case as مُضَافٌ, or governing word, to a following noun in the genitive (see § 73); as وَعَلَى رَأْسِهِ كَأَلْقَنْسُوءٍ and on the top of it (the pillar) is (something) like a pointed cap, = مِثْلُ أَلْقَنْسُوءٍ; لَنْ يَنْهَى ذَوِي سَطَطٍ كَالطَّلَعِ nothing hinders oppressors (or wrongers) like a lance-thrust; إِنَّكَ لَمْ يَفْخَرْ عَلَيْكَ كَفَاحِرٌ ضَعِيفٌ no one crows over thee like a feeble boaster (one who has little reason to boast); بِمِثْلِ السُّودَانِ with (a horse) like a falcon (in speed) = بِمِثْلِ السُّودَانِ; يَضْحَكُنَّ عَنْ كَأَبْرِدٍ أَلْمَنِهِمُ they laugh so as to show (teeth) like
- D

melting hailstones (as white as hailstones); تَتَّخِذُ فِي الشَّجَرَةِ الْعَادِيَةِ **A**
it makes in (at the foot of) an aged tree (something)
like a cell, to which it resorts, = مِثْلَ الْبَيْتِ; تُبْرِزُ كَالْقَرْنَيْنِ *it puts*
forth (something) like two horns. The name of *preposition* can be
 applied to it, at the most, only when it virtually stands in the
accusative, as a صِفَةٌ, *adjective or relative adjectival clause*, to an
 infinitive which is understood; as جِئْتَ كَزَيْدٍ *thou camest like Zèid*,
 i.e. جِئْتَ مَجِيئًا كَمَجِيٍّ (مِثْلَ مَجِيٍّ) زَيْدٍ **B**
like the coming of Zèid. Or we might regard it as being a حَالٌ,
 or conditional expression, dependent upon the pronominal suffix of
 the second pers. sing. masc. in جِئْتَ as فَاعِلٌ or *agent*; i.e. جِئْتَ
 كَأَنَّكَ كَزَيْدٍ (مِثْلَ زَيْدٍ) *thou camest being like Zèid.*

REM. a. كَ is [frequently joined to the personal pronouns of
 the 3d person, as كَهُوَ, كَهِىَ, كَهِمَا, etc., sometimes also to those of **C**
 the 2d and 1st person, as كَأَنَا, كَأَنْتَ, but] very rarely to a
 pronominal suffix, as وَلَا تَرَى بَعْلًا وَلَا حَلَالًا كَهُ وَلَا كَهَنَّ إِلَّا **C**
and thou dost not see a husband or wives like him and like
them, save one who is jealous; and equally rare is the use of the
 redundant مَا after it, as وَنَعْلَمُ أَنَّهُ كَمَا النَّاسِ مَجْرُومٌ عَلَيْهِ وَجَارُمٌ **D**
and we know that he is, like (other) men, sinned against and sinning
(جَارُمٌ in rhyme for جَارُمٌ). In Hebrew כִּדְם and כִּדְהִם, or כִּדְהִם, **D**
 are used; but with the other pronominal suffixes כִּמָּה = كَمَا is
 always employed, as also occasionally before substantives.

REM. b. كَ is sometimes used redundantly along with the
 synonymous مِثْلُ; as تَيْسٌ كَيْثْلِهِ شَيْءٌ *there is nought like Him.*—
 [On the compounds كَمِ and كَأَيْنِ see Vol. i. §§ 351, rem., 353,
 rem. c. On the elliptical phrase كَمَا أَنْتَ *keep where thou art*, see

- A the Gloss. to Tabarī. Sometimes كَمَا means *as soon as*, e.g. سَلِّمْ كَمَا تَدْخُلُ salute as soon as thou enterest. D. G.]

REM. c. لَ is said by the grammarians to be used لِلتَّشْبِيهِ to compare (one object with another).

- [REM. d. كَمَا may be prefixed adverbially to a verbal clause, like رَبَّهَا (§ 84, rem. b) and with just the same meaning, as اِنْتَظِرْنِي كَمَا آتَيْكَ وَأَرْقُبْنِي كَمَا أَلْحَقَكَ wait for me, perhaps I may come to thee, and look out for me, perhaps I may overtake thee ;
B قُلْتُ لِشَيْبَانَ أَدْنُ مِنْ لِقَائِهِ كَمَا تُغْدِي الْقَوْمَ مِنْ شَوَائِهِ I said to Šeibān, try to draw near to him (the ostrich), perhaps thou mayest procure a morning meal for the men with his roasted flesh.]

64. Many words, which are obviously substantives in the accusative of place (see § 44, b), may be conveniently regarded in a certain sense as prepositions ; e.g. نَحْوُ, عِنْدُ, قَبْلُ, بَيْنَ, تَحْتَ, فَوْقَ, and دُونَ.

- C 65. نَحْوُ (the accusative of نَحَا to go towards ; comp. § 82, g) means (a) towards a place, as ثَمَّ يَسِيرُونَ نَحْوُ ثُمَّ يَسِيرُونَ نَحْوُ then they will journey towards Jerusalem ; خَرَجَ نَحْوَ مَكَّةَ he set out towards, or in the direction of, Mekkah ; and (b) according to, as نَحْوُ قَوْلِهِ according to his saying, as he says (compare the use of لَ in § 53, d).

- D 66. عِنْدُ (the accusative of عِنْدَ a side or quarter) signifies beside, near, by ; as عِنْدَ الْحَائِطِ at, near the wall ; وَكَانَ يَضَعُ عِنْدَهُ دِفَاتِرَ and he used to lay notebooks beside him ; وَلَا يَتَنَدَّى الْكَلَامَ and he must not commence to speak before him unless with his permission. Used of time, it shows that something is closely connected with what took place at a particular time, by happening either simultaneously or immediately after ; as فَقَالَ عِنْدَ مَوْتِهِ and he

said as he was dying; جِئْتُكَ عِنْدَ طُلُوعِ الشَّمْسِ I came to thee at A
sunrise; عِنْدَ ذَلِكَ whilst this took place or immediately after this took
place, hereupon; مَا عِنْدَ مَا whilst, during, or immediately after.—
Further, عِنْدَ, like مَعَ (§ 57), implies [a] possession and [b] comparison;
as (a) مَا كَانَ عِنْدِي إِلَّا دِينَارٌ وَاحِدٌ I had only a single dīnār by me;
مَا عِنْدَ النَّاسِ what the people have or possess; لَا أَقُولُ لَكُمْ عِنْدِي
خَزَائِنُ اللَّهِ I do not say to you, With me (known to me) are the hidden B
things of God; لِي عِنْدَ فُلَانٍ حَاجَةٌ I want a thing of such a one;
عِنْدَهُ خَيْرٌ وَقُضِلَ he possesses goodness and excellence. Hence you say
of a woman كَانَتْ عِنْدَ فُلَانٍ she was married to such a one, in which
signification it is a synonym of تَحْتَ (§ 68); (b) عَلَى صِغَرِ سِنِّهِ عِنْدَ سِنِّ
مُعَاذٍ notwithstanding his youth as compared with the age of Mo'ād];
عِنْدَ اللَّهِ تَرَابٌ the kings of the earth are dust compared C
with (lit. at the side of) God.—Lastly عِنْدَ (like the Latin *apud*,
Fr. *chez*, and Persian نَزْدِيكَ) implies in one's mind, in his opinion;
as مَا فَعَلَهُ مَشَائِخُنَا عِنْدِي the right thing in my opinion is
what our shēikhs have done; كَانَ عِنْدَهُ أَنَّ الْقُرْآنَ مَخْلُوقٌ his opinion
was that the Kor'ān was created; عِنْدَكُمْ يَسْتَحِيلُ أَنْ يَفْعَلَهُ according
to you it is impossible that He should do it.

REM. a. [عِنْدَكَ means *keep where thou art, take care*, and also D
advance.]—On the phrase خُذْ زَيْدًا = عِنْدَكَ زَيْدًا, see § 35, b, δ,
rem. b.—On the difference between عِنْدَ and لَدُنْ or لَدَى, see § 58,
rem. b.

REM. b. عِنْدَ is sometimes (in modern Arabic generally) pro-
nounced عُنْدَ, rarely عُنْدَ. It corresponds in form to the Heb.
לְאִמְרָא, but in signification also to לְאִמְרָא.

- A REM. c. Nearly synonymous with *عِنْدَ*, in its local sense, is *قَبْلَ* (the accusative of *قَبْلَ* front), Lat. *coram*, *apud*, *pene*; as *حَاضِرٌ قَبْلَهُ* present before him; *لِي قَبْلَ فُلَانٍ حَقٌّ* I have a claim upon So-and-so; *فَمَا لِالَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا قَبْلَكَ مُهْبَطِينَ* and what (has come) to (for the unbelievers that they run hastily around thee? It also signifies towards, as *لَيْسَ أَكْبَرُ أَنْ تَوَلَّوْا وُجُوهَكُمْ قَبْلَ الشَّمْرِ* piety does not consist in your turning your faces towards the east and the west.
- B

67. *بَيْنَ*, between, among, is the accusative of the substantive *بَيْنَ*, signifying intervening space, which may be regarded either as uniting or as separating two or more objects, whence *بَيْنَ* may be construed with verbs of either meaning; as *جَمَعَ بَيْنَنَا* he united us, *فَرَّقَ بَيْنَنَا* he parted us, lit. he united our separation and parted our connection; *أَلَّفَ اللَّهُ بَيْنَ قُلُوبِكُمْ* God has united your hearts.—If two genitives follow *بَيْنَ*, and either or each of them is a pronominal suffix, the preposition must be repeated before the second, and the conjunction *وَ* inserted; as *بَيْنِي وَبَيْنَهُ* between me and him; *بَيْنَكُمْ وَبَيْنَ أَخِيكُمْ* between you and your brother. But if both are substantives, this is not usually done; as *بَيْنَ السَّمَاءِ وَالْأَرْضِ* between heaven and earth; *بَيْنَ حَرَّانَ وَآلِهَا* between Harrān and 'ar-Ruhā (Edessa); *بَيْنَ الطُّوفَانِ وَبَيْنَ الْهَجْرَةِ* between the Flood and the Hīgra.—Instead of the simple *بَيْنَ*, we often meet with *مَا بَيْنَ* what is between, and *فِيمَا بَيْنَ* in what is between; as *وَاللَّبُّ مَا بَيْنَ* and the kernel between its two shells; *اِقْتَتَلُوا فِيمَا بَيْنَهُمْ* they fought with each other; [*بَيْنَ الْأَيَّامِ* or *فِيمَا بَيْنَ الْأَيَّامِ* in or during the space of several days]. Both *بَيْنَ* and *مَا بَيْنَ* are often used in the sense of both—and, and of partly—partly (*tam—quam, partim—*
- C
- D

partim); as مَا بَيْنَ مَعْرُوفٍ وَمَجْهُولٍ *partly known and partly A*
unknown; مَا بَيْنَ فَاقِرٍ وَغَنِيٍّ *there came to me both rich and*
poor; الْقَوْمُ بَيْنَ قَتِيلٍ وَأَسِيرٍ *the tribe was partly slain, and partly*
taken prisoners; [بَيْنَ بُرْدٍ وَمُجَسَّدٍ *sometimes in a bord (a garment*
made of a certain kind of cloth) and sometimes dressed in a saffron
robe. R. S.]. In such cases مَا بَيْنَ or بَيْنَ holds the place of a
substantive expressing that which unites both objects as parts of
one whole.—If we wish to indicate the entire interval between two B
places or points of time, إِلَى is used before the second substantive;
as بَيْنَ الْبَصْرَةِ إِلَى مَكَّةَ between el-Basra and Makkah; فِيمَا بَيْنَ
الْيَوْمِ الثَّانِي مِنْ شَبَاطٍ إِلَى الْيَوْمِ الثَّامِنِ مِنْ أَذَارَ between the second day of
Šubāṭ and the eighth day of 'Aḏār.—Observe the phrases [بَيْنَ أَظْهَرِهِمْ
or بَيْنَ ظُهُورِهِمْ and بَيْنَ ظُهُورَانِهِمْ in the midst of them]; بَيْنَ يَدَيَّ
before any one, in his presence, lit. between his hands; as
قَبَّلَ الْأَرْضَ بَيْنَ يَدَيِ الْخَلِيفَةِ he kissed the ground before the caliph; C
أَخْطَأْتُ بَيْنَ يَدَيْكَ I have sinned before thee; انْهَزَامَ الذِّئْبِ بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ
the fleeing of the wolf before him (the dog); of time, بَيْنَ مُصَدِّقًا لِمَا
بَيْنَ confirming what was before it (or preceded it); بَيْنَ نَذِيرٍ
he is nought but a warner to you before
a severe punishment; in the plural, بَيْنَ وَيَضَعُهَا بَيْنَ وَجَعَلَ يُكْسِرُ الدَّجَاجَ
and he began to break up the fowls and to set them before us. D

REM. From بَيْنَ are formed the conjunctive adverbs of time
 بَيْنَمَا and بَيْنَمَا *whilst*, which naturally exercise no influence upon the
 following clause; as بَيْنَمَا نَحْنُ نَرْقُبُهُ أَتَانَا *whilst we were watching*
for him, he came to us; بَيْنَمَا نَحْنُ نَسُوسُ النَّاسَ *whilst we govern the*
people; بَيْنَمَا نَحْنُ فِي الْحَدِيثِ *whilst we were conversing*; بَيْنَمَا
 فِي أَسْوَاقِهِمْ *whilst the people are in their markets. [Comp.*
 Vol. i. § 362, b.]

- A **68.** **تَحْتَ** (the accusative of **تَحْتُ** the lower or under part) signifies *below, beneath, under*, as **مَا تَحْتِ الثَّرَى** *what is beneath the soil*; **وَكَانَ تَحْتَهُ كَنْزُهُمَا** *and under it (the wall) was a treasure of theirs*; metaphorically, **سَارَ تَحْتَ اللَّيْلِ** *he travelled under (the shade of) night*; **تَحْتَ يَدِهِ**, or **تَحْتَ أَمْرِهِ**, *under his power or authority*. It is said of a married woman, **كَانَتْ تَحْتَ فُلَانٍ** *she was under (the authority of) So-and-so*, as **كَانَتَا تَحْتَ عَبْدَيْنِ مِنْ عِبَادِنَا صَالِحِينَ** *they were under two righteous servants of ours* (viz. Noah and Lot).

REM. a. **تَحْتُ** has a diminutive **تَحِيتُ** a little below or under.

- REM. b. Opposed to **تَحْتُ** is **فَوْقُ** (the accusative of **فَوْقُ** the upper part), with its diminutive **فُوقِي**, signifying *above, over, upon*, as **فَوْقَ سَرَاةٍ أَذْهَمَ مُلْجَمٍ** *upon a well-beaten road*; **فَوْقَ مَوْرِ مُعَبَّدٍ** *upon the back of a bridled black (horse)*; **الْعِمَامَةُ فَوْقَ الرَّأْسِ** *the turban is upon the head*; metaphorically, **وَهُوَ الْقَاهِرُ فَوْقَ عِبَادِهِ** *and He is the All-powerful over His servants*; **وَجَاعِلُ الَّذِينَ اتَّبَعُوكَ فَوْقَ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا** *and (I) will place those who have followed thee above those who have not believed*; **زِدْنَاهُمْ عَذَابًا فَوْقَ الْعَذَابِ بِمَا كَانُوا يُفْسِدُونَ** *we will add to them a punishment in addition to the punishment for their corrupt doings*; **فَإِنْ كُنَّ نِسَاءً فَوْقَ اثْنَتَيْنِ** *and if they be females more than two*; **فَعَلَ بِهَا فَوْقَ مَا فَعَلَ بِحَلَبَ** *he treated it worse than he had treated Aleppo*; **بِعُوضَةٍ وَمَا فَوْقَهَا** *a gnat and what exceeds it (in smallness or in largeness)*; **وَهُوَ دَابَّةٌ فَوْقَ السَّتُورِ** *and it is an animal a little above the size of a cat*.

69. **دُونُ** (the accusative of **دُونُ** *what is beneath, under, less, or inferior*, related to **دَنَا** *to come near*, and **دَنُو** *to be low or vile*), with its diminutive **دَوِينُ**, and **مِنْ دُونِ**, in which combination **مِنْ** has a partitive force, signify *under, below, beneath*. They indicate:—

(a) That a person or thing dwells or is situated, or that an action A takes place, *below* some place, or *near* it; as دُونَ قَدَمِكَ خُدَّ عَدُوَّكَ and *may the cheek of thy enemy be under thy foot*; إِنَّ بِالْغَيْبِ الَّذِي دُونَ in the ravine that is below Səla' (there lies) a murdered man; مَضْرُفًا دُونَهَا مِنَ الْبِلَادِ they met near Šan'ā; صَنَعَاءَ دُونَ مِصْرَها and the adjacent countries.

(b) That one person or thing comes *near* or approximates to B another, especially a higher one (properly, stands under it, does not reach it); as فَأَلْحَقْنَا بِأَلْبَادِيَاتٍ وَدُونَهُ جَوَاحِرُهَا and *he (the horse) made us overtake the foremost (of the herd), whilst near him were those of them that lagged behind*; هَذَا دُونَ ذَاكَ this is nearer than that; أَتُنُّ دُونَكَ come nearer (to me)! lit. approach not far from yourself (towards me); زَيْدًا دُونَكَ seize Zəid (who stands not far from you, see § 35, b, δ, rem. b); دُونَكَ الْدِرْهَمَ take the dirham; دُونَكَمُوهُ C take ye him.

REM. دُونَكَ and دُونَكُمْ, as interjections, are equivalent to رَمِّمْ أَمَامَكَ (see § 35, b, β) [and عِنْدَكَ, § 66, rem. α], *look out! take care!* [sometimes *advance!*] as دُونَكَ صِرَاعِي beware of wrestling with me; دُونَكُمْ لَا تَقِيلُوهُمْ take care [or advance] (and) give them no quarter; دُونَكَ فَتَمَرَّسْ بِي take care (or advance) and keep to me].

(c) That one space, distance, or number, does not equal or D complete another; as: وَبَيْنَهُمَا دُونَ رَمِيَةِ حَجَرٍ and *between them there was less than a stone's throw*; لَيْسَ فِيهَا دُونَ خَمْسِ أَوْاقٍ صَدَقَةٌ there is no poor-rate (to be exacted) on what is under (or less than) five ounces; لَنْ نَقْبَلَ لِمَسْعُودٍ دُونَ عَشْرِ دِيَّاتٍ we will not accept for Mas'ūd less than ten fines for homicide.

(d) That one thing is smaller or worse than another; as أَلْتَحَاسُ أَلْقَبْصَةُ دُونَ أَلْحَدِيدِ دُونَ أَلْتَحَاسِ copper is of less value than silver,

A *and iron of less value than copper*; اَلَّذِى يَقُومُ بَعْدَكَ دُونَكَ *he who shall arise (as king) after thee, will be inferior to thee*; وَمِنْ دُونِهِ عِزُّ اَلْعُلَى *and magnificent splendour in the retinue of princes is less (glorious) than it (learning).*

(e) That a quality which belongs to one person or thing is not possessed by another, and that the latter is therefore in this respect

B opposed to the other: as مِنْهُمْ اَلصَّالِحُونَ وَمِنْهُمْ دُونَ ذَلِكَ *some of them are good, and some of them not so (lit. and some of them remain under that, do not attain to that quality)*; اِنَّ اَللّٰهَ لَا يَغْفِرُ اَنْ يُشْرَكَ *verily God will not forgive the joining of other gods with Himself, but He will forgive what is other than that to whom He pleuseth**; وَمِنْ اَلشَّيَاطِينِ مَنْ يَغُوصُونَ لَهُ وَيَعْمَلُونَ عَمَلًا *and of the evil spirits some who should dive for him (into the*

C *sea) and do work other than that.* In this sense دُونَ is equivalent to غَيْرَ (see § 82, d). [Hence it can also signify *beyond, of higher quality*, as in the last quoted sentence, where it may be rendered by *and still greater works*. Likewise when a man has said اِنَّ زَيْدًا لَشَرِيفٌ *verily, Zaid is a noble man*, another replies وَدُونَ ذَلِكَ *and above that*; اَلَيْسَ اَنْتَ اَقْوَى بِدُونِ مَا يَقْوَى بِهِ عَلِيٌّ *thou art more powerful than 'Alī.* D. G.]

(f) That a person or thing is excluded or excepted, neglected or D postponed (properly that the action affects him or it to a less degree than it does another); as يَدْعُو مِنْ دُونِ اَللّٰهِ مَا لَا يَضُرُّهُ وَمَا لَا يَنْفَعُهُ *he invokes, to the exclusion or neglect of God, what can neither injure him nor benefit him*, he invokes what can neither etc., but not God; اَهْلُ هَذِهِ اَلْمَدِينَةِ يَعْبُدُونَ اِلَاصْنَامَ مِنْ دُونِ اَللّٰهِ *the people of this city*

* [Many interpreters render the words دُونَ ذَلِكَ by *and others (that are) below them*, and مَا دُونَ ذَلِكَ by *and what is less than that.* Compare Fleischer, *Kl. Schr.* i. 417.]

worship idols and not God ; وَلَا نَصِيرَ A
ye have no patron and no helper except God ; عَمِلْتُمْ بِأَحَدِهِمَا دُونَ الْآخَرِ
ye act according to one of these two (rules), but not the other ; هَذَا لِي
this belongs to me exclusively of thee, thou hast no part or
share in it ; أَنْ يَنْبَغِيَ أَنْ يَخْتَارَ الْعَتِيقُ دُونَ الْمُحَدَّثَاتِ
he ought to choose the old in preference to the new ; وَأَمَّاكُمْ دُونَ الْإِنَامِ طَرًّا
and he sought you out in preference to all other men.—Here must also be mentioned B
دُونَ, and the rarer بِدُونِ, in the sense of *without* ; as دُونَ الْجَهْرِ مِنْ
لَيْسَ أَكْتَسَابُ الْهَالِ دُونَ مَشَقَّةٍ without speaking loudly ;
إِنَّ الْإِنْسَانَ لَا يَتَأْتَى بِدُونِ طَرَفَيْنِ cannot be acquired without trouble ;
مُسْنَدٌ وَمُسْنَدٌ إِلَيْهِ the 'isnād, or relation of attribution, cannot be
effected without two extremes, an attribute, or predicate, and a subject ;
يَأْخُذُهَا تَجَارٌ بِدُونِ ثَمَنِ the merchants of the country C
of Malabar take them without (paying any) price (for them) ; فَلَا مَجْدَ
يَبْنَى بِدُونِ الْجِهَادِ وَلَا جَهْدَ يَغْنَى بِدُونِ الْقَدَرِ
for no glory is built up without a hard struggle, and no effort is of avail without the decree
(of fate in thy favour, الْقَدَرُ in rhyme for الْقَدَرُ).

(g) That one object is placed before another, either (α) as a
hindrance or obstacle to prevent a person from getting at it, or (β) as
a protection to defend it from some one ; e.g. دُونَ ذَلِكَ جَمْرُ الْغَضَا D
وَحَرْطُ الْقَتَادِ before this there are the coals of the gadā and the stripping
of the katād, that is to say, before you can obtain this, you have many
serious obstacles to surmount (the wood of the gadā being noted for
its long retention of fire, and the katād for the number and size of its
thorns) ; إِنَّ مَزَارَهَا قَرِيبٌ وَلَكِنْ دُونَ ذَلِكَ أَهْوَالٌ
the time or place for visiting her is near, but there are many terrors in the way ; لَيْسَ دُونَهُمْ
وَكُنَّ مَجْنَى there is no curtain or barrier in front of them ;

- A *my shield (or protection) against those whom I feared was three persons*; *إِنَّ أَمْرَ الْقَيْسِ جَرَى إِلَى مَدْيَ* *Imru'u 'l-Kais ran for a goal, but death intercepted him before he reached that goal*; *وَأَعْتَاقَهُ حِمَامُهُ دُونَ الْهَدْيِ* *before (thou reachest) the river, there is a number of men (to be encountered), = قَبْلُ أَنْ تَصِلَ إِلَى النَّهْرِ*. Hence verbs signifying to shut a door against
- B one, to fight for one, and the like, are construed with *دُونَ* (compare § 49, a); e.g. *ثُمَّ ضَرَبَ إِلَى جَنْبِهَا فَبَعَثَهَا وَقَامَ دُونَهَا* *then he struck her (the camel) on the side, and made her get up, and stood in front of her (to prevent any one from touching her)*; *قَاتَلَ دُونَهُمْ سَاعَةً* *he fought for, or in defence of, them for some time*; *إِنَّ الْمَحِبَّ الصَّادِقَ يَبْذُلُ* *a true friend gives up his life for his friend*; *إِلَّا أَنْ تَقْدَ نَارُ الْجُوعِ وَتَحُولَ دُونَ الْجُوعِ* *unless indeed the fire of hunger burn and stand in the way of sleep*. In this case *دُونَ* is synonymous with *أَمَامَ* *in front of, before*.—Hence too it often denotes *on this side of* (*cis, citra*); as *جَمِيعُ مَا دُونَ جَيْحُونَ* *all the region on this side of the Oxus*; in which case it is opposed to *وَرَاءَ* *behind, beyond*, as *وَرَاءَ النَّهْرِ مَا* *Transoxania (lit. what is beyond the river Oxus)*.
- C

REM. Other important words belonging to this class of prepositions are:—

- D (a) *قَبْلُ*, with its diminutive *قَبِيلُ*, *before, of time*; as *قَبْلَ مَوْتِهِ* *before his death*; *يَا لَيْتَنِي مِتُّ قَبْلَ هَذَا* *O would that I had died before this*; *وَأَعْلَمُ مَا فِي الْيَوْمِ وَالْأَمْسِ قَبْلَهُ* *and I know what happened to-day and yesterday before it*; *قَبْلُ التَّهْدِيدِ* *before threatening (without waiting to threaten)*; *قَدِمَ مَكَّةَ قَبْلُ الْمَدِينَةِ* *he came to Mekka before (his coming to) *El-Medina*.—Opposed to it is *بَعْدَ*, diminutive *بُعَيْدَ* *after*; as *بَعْدَ ثَلَاثَةِ أَيَّامٍ* *after three days*; *بَعْدَ*

مَجِيكَ after thy arrival; بَعْدَهُ after him, i.e. after his departure, A
or after his death; قَدْ تَغَيَّرْتَ بَعْدِي thou hast become changed after
me, i.e. after I parted from thee, since I last saw thee, = بَعْدَ عَهْدِي
فَمَا ذَا بَعْدَ الْحَقِّ إِلَّا الضَّلَالُ بِكَ and what is there after the truth
(when the truth is gone), but error? [Tropically كَرِيمٌ
وَهُوَ بَعْدَ هَذَا أَدِيبٌ So-and-so is generous and moreover well
educated. A synonym of بَعْدَ is غَبَّ.]

(b) قُدَّامَ and أَمَامَ, before, of place; as لَا يَمْشِي أَمَامَهُ that he B
should not walk before him; قَبْرُهُ قُدَّامَ الْبَابِ his grave is before the
gate; قُتِلَ فِي حِصَارِ قَلْعَةِ سَابُورَ قُدَّامَ الْأَمِيرِ he was killed at the
siege of the castle of Sabūr before the emīr (in his presence, =
بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ); tropically, الصَّلَاةُ أَمَامَكَ the (time of) prayer is before
thee; بَلْ يُرِيدُ الْإِنْسَانُ لِيَفْجُرَ أَمَامَهُ nay, but man wishes to go on
in his wickedness (in the time that is) before him. [On the use of
أَمَامَكَ as an interjection see § 35, b, β.] C

(c) وَرَاءَ behind; as دَخَلَ عُنْتَرُ وَرَاءَهَا 'Antar came in behind her
(her back being turned to him); فَانْبَذُوهُ وَرَاءَ ظُهُورِهِمْ they cast it
behind their backs; مَا وَرَاءَكَ what is behind thee? i.e. what news
dost thou bring? hence beyond (Lat. trans, ultra), opposed to فُون
(see § 69, g, at the end); and relating to time, after, as وَيَكْفُرُونَ
بِمَا وَرَاءَهُ but they disbelieve in what (hath been sent down or revealed)
after it (the Pentateuch); tropically, beyond, besides, more than,
وَمَا وَرَاءَ ذَلِكَ بُلْغَةُ مَجْلِسٍ but anything beyond this (merely) serves D
to (make a show in) society; تَبْتَغُوا بِأَمْوَالِكُمْ وَرَاءَ ذَلِكَ أَنْ تَبْتَغُوا بِأَمْوَالِكُمْ
and He hath permitted you, besides this, to seek out (wives) by means
of your wealth; فَمَنْ أَبْتَغَى وَرَاءَ ذَلِكَ فَأُولَئِكَ هُمُ الْعَادُونَ but they who
desire more than this, are transgressors. [On the use of وَرَاءَكَ as
an interjection, see § 35, b, β.]—Synonymous with وَرَاءَ is خَلْفَ
behind, after; as وَالشَّعْرُ يُسْحَبُ خَلْفَ ظَهْرِهَا and her hair hung

- A down to the ground behind her back; *فَقُمْتُ لِأَعْدُو خَلْفَهُ* and I got up to run after him; *كَيْفَ مَضَيْتَ خَلْفَهَا إِلَى الشَّطِّ* how thou wentest after her to the bank; *فَجَعَلْنَاهَا نِكَالًا لَهَا بَيْنَ يَدَيْهَا وَمَا خَلْفَهَا* and we made them a warning to their contemporaries and to those after them; *وَإِذَا لَا يَلْبَثُونَ خَلْفَكَ إِلَّا قَلِيلًا* and in that case they would not have tarried after thee but a little.
- B (d) *حَوْلَ* around; as *حَوْلَهُ مَا أَضَاءَتْ* and after it (the fire) has lighted up the space around him; *ثُمَّ لَنُحْضِرَنَّ حَوْلَ جَهَنَّمَ جُثِيًّا* then we will set them around Hell on their knees; *طَافَ حَوْلَهُ* he went round it (the temple); *حَوْلَهُ جَمَاعَةٌ مِنَ الْجَوَارِي* around him were a number of women.—*وَسَطَ* in the midst of, in, among; as *وَسَطَ رَوْضَةٍ* in the midst of a garden; *وَسَطَ الْبَرَاكِ* among the reeds; *وَسَطَ الدِّيَارِ* among the houses.
- C

70. Compound prepositions, though by no means rare in ancient Arabic, are more common in the later stages of the language. The first part of the compound is generally *مِنْ*, and the second part another so-called preposition, now however no longer in the accusative, but in the *genitive*. Such are:—

- (a) *مُحَمَّدٌ هُوَ الْمَخْصُوصُ مِنْ بَيْنِ كَافَّةٍ* (Heb. *בְּיַיִן*); as *مِنْ بَيْنِ*
- D *الْخَلْقِ بِالْفَضْلِ وَالْكَمَالِ* *Muhammad is the one preeminently distinguished among all mankind for excellence and perfection* (lit. from among all mankind); *مِنْ بَيْنِ يَدَيْهِ* from his presence (lit. from between his hands); *مِنْ بَيْنِ أَيْدِيهِمْ وَمِنْ خَلْفِهِمْ* from before them and behind them; *فِي آذَانِنَا وَقُرْ وَمِنْ بَيْنِنَا وَبَيْنَكَ حِجَابٌ* in our ears is hardness of hearing, and between us and thee there is a partition-wall. In this last example *مِنْ* is partitive, the literal meaning being: and in a part of the space between us and thee, etc.

(b) جَعَلَ فِيهَا رَوَاسِيَ مِنْ فَوْقِهَا ^A and مِنْ تَحْتِهَا; as *he placed immovable (mountains) upon it (the earth); طَلَعَ مِنْ فَوْقِ* he ascended the hill and descended by the other side (lit. behind it); جَنَّاتٍ تَجْرِي مِنْ تَحْتِهَا الْأَنْهَارُ *gardens under (the trees of) which streams flow.* In these examples مِنْ is partitive; the mountains form a part of what is raised above the earth; the man ascends a part of the hill-side, and descends by a part of the other side; the streams occupy a part of the space ^B under the trees.

(c) مِنَ الَّذِينَ مِنْ قَبْلِكُمْ and مِنْ بَعْدِ; as *those who were before you; مِنْ قَبْلِ صَلَوةِ الْفَجْرِ* before the morning prayer; ثُمَّ بَعَثْنَاكَ مِنْ بَعْدِ مَوْتِكَ *then we brought you again to life after your death; فَخَلَفَ مِنْ بَعْدِهِمْ خَلْفٌ* and there has come after them an evil generation. Here again مِنْ is partitive, in a portion of the ^C space of time before or after.

(d) مِنْ عِنْدِ (Heb. מֵעַד) and مِنْ لَدُنْ (but not مِنْ لَدَى); as *هَذَا مِنْ عِنْدِ اللَّهِ* this is from (lit. from the side of, from beside) God; *قَدْ بَلَغْتَ مِنْ لَدُنِّي عُذْرًا* she came from him; *هَبْ لَنَا مِنْ لَدُنْكَ رَحْمَةً* now hast thou obtained from me an excuse (for leaving me); *give us mercy from (lit. from beside) Thee.*

(e) مِنْ قِبَلِ; as *كَانَ أَمِيرًا بِأَلْسَامٍ مِنْ قِبَلِ عُثْمَانَ* ^D *he was governor of Syria for 'Oṭmān* (lit. from beside 'Oṭmān, with whom lay the option of sending him as such); *قَدِمَ عَلَيْهِ جَوَابُ كِتَابِهِ مِنْ قِبَلِ أَبِي بَكْرٍ* there came to him an answer to his letter from (Fr. de la part de) Abū Bəkr; *سَلَامٌ مِنْ قِبَلِي عَلَى مَنْ تَيَمَّنَنِي بِظُلْمِهَا* *peace be from me (Fr. de ma part) upon her who has enslaved me by her pleasing address.*

- A (f) *مِنْ وَرَاءَ جُدُرٍ* as *مِنْ خَلْفٍ* and *مِنْ وَرَاءَ* walls; *إِنَّهُ جَالِسٌ مِنْ وَرَاءَ السَّتَارَةِ يَشْرَبُ* he is sitting behind the curtain drinking (*مِنْ* partitive); *مِنْ بَيْنِ أَيْدِيهِمْ وَمِنْ خَلْفِهِمْ* from before them and behind them (see a); *وَنَزَلَ مِنْ خَلْفِهِ* and he descended by the other side of it (the hill, see b).

- (g) *وَلَوْ كُنْتَ فَظًّا غَلِيظَ آلْقَلْبِ لَآتَفَضُوا مِنْ حَوْلِكَ* as *مِنْ حَوْلٍ*
 B and if thou hadst been harsh and hard-hearted, they would have dispersed from around thee; *وَتَرَى الْمَلَائِكَةَ حَاقِينَ مِنْ حَوْلِ الْعَرْشِ* and thou shalt see the angels surrounding the Throne (*مِنْ* partitive).

REM. a. We have already spoken of *مِنْ عَنِ*, § 49, rem. c; *مِنْ مَعَ*, § 57, rem.; *مِنْ عَلَى*, § 59, rem. b; *مِنْ دُونِ*, § 69; *بِدُونِ*, § 56, rem. c, and § 69, f; *بِغَيْرِ مِنْ غَيْرِ*, and *بِلَا*, § 56, rem. c.

- C REM. b. Other prepositions are occasionally found in composition, as *مُذْ لَدُنِ الصُّبْحِ إِلَى أَنْ تَزُولَ الشَّمْسُ* from the morning until the sun declines; *فَارَقَنِي لَمُنْذُ أَمْسٍ هَذَا الْيَوْمِ* he left me since yesterday]; especially *إِلَى* in the compounds *إِلَى دُونِ* (and *لِعِنْدِ*), *إِلَى نَحْوِ*, *إِلَى فَوْقِ*, which are, however, condemned by the grammarians.

- D REM. c. The preposition is very rarely omitted, especially by a poet, and the genitive notwithstanding retained; as *كَيْفَ أَصْبَحْتَ عَلَى خَيْرٍ* how art thou this morning? quite well, for *خَيْرٍ* [or *بِخَيْرٍ*]; *إِذَا قِيلَ أَيُّ النَّاسِ شَرُّ قَبِيلَةٍ أَشارَتْ كَلَيْبُ بِالْأَصَابِعِ* when the question is asked, Who of mankind are worst as a tribe? the fingers point with the hands to Kulèib (for *أشارَتْ إِلَى كَلَيْبٍ*); *حَتَّى تَبَدَّخَ* (أشارَتْ إِلَى كَلَيْبٍ) until he became haughty, and ascended the heights (of pride), for *فَارْتَقَى إِلَى الْأَعْلَامِ*.

REM. d. The preposition is likewise very rarely separated by A another word from the substantive which it governs; as **إِنَّ عَمْرًا** ^أ *as for 'Amr, there is no good in 'Amr to-day,* instead of **لَا خَيْرَ الْيَوْمِ فِي عَمْرٍو** and **وَلَيْسَ إِلَىٰ مِنْهَا أَنْتَزُولٌ سَبِيلٌ** ; **لَا خَيْرَ الْيَوْمِ فِي عَمْرٍو** ; *there is no way (or means) to get down from it, for* **إِلَىٰ أَنْتَزُولٍ مِنْهَا** ; *I bought it, by God, for a dirham, instead of* **إِشْتَرَيْتُهُ بِوَاللَّهِ دِرْهَمٍ** *instead of* **وَاللَّهِ بِدِرْهَمٍ**.

REM. e. Sometimes, by a more concise and bolder construction B **[تَوَشَّعَ or اتَّسَاعَ]**, the accusative is used instead of a preposition with the genitive (especially **لِ**) ; as **دَخَلْتُ الْبَيْتَ** *I entered the house,* for **فِي الْبَيْتِ** or **إِلَىٰ الْبَيْتِ** ; **سَكَنْتُ الدَّارَ** *I inhabited, or dwelt in, the house,* for **فِي الدَّارِ** ; **وَيَوْمَ شَهِدْنَاهُ سُلَيْمًا وَعَامِرًا** ; *and many a day we met face to face Sulëim and 'Amir,* for **فِيهِ** ; **شَهِدْنَا فِيهِ** ; **هَدَيْتُهُ** ; *therefore whosoever of you shall be* C **فَمَنْ شَهِدَ مِنْكُمْ الشَّهْرَ فَلْيَصُرْ فِيهِ** *present in the month, he shall fast therein,* for **فِيهِ** ; **خَامَ الْقِتَالِ** ; **إِلَىٰ الطَّرِيقِ** or **لِلطَّرِيقِ** *I showed him the way* for **الطَّرِيقِ** *he held back in battle (through cowardice),* for **فِي الْقِتَالِ** ; **كَمَا عَسَلَ** ; **فِي الطَّرِيقِ** *as the fox trots along the path,* for **الطَّرِيقِ** (see § 44, b, rem. a) ; **إِلَى الشَّامِ** ; **ذَهَبَ الشَّامَ** *he went to Syria,* for **إِلَى الشَّامِ** ; **وَأُخْفِيَ الَّذِي لَوْلَا الْأَسَى لَقَضَانِي** ; *and I hide (within me) that which,* D **لَقَضَىٰ عَلَيَّ** ; *were it not for patience, would be the death of me,* for **عَلَيَّ** ; **نَأَىٰ صَاحِبِي وَقَرِيبِي** *my friends and relatives were far from me,* or *kept aloof from me,* for **نَأَىٰ عَنِّي** ; **أَمَرْتُكَ الْخَيْرَ فَأَفْعَلْ مَا أَمَرْتُ بِهِ** ; *I bade thee do good, do therefore as thou wast bidden,* for **بِالْخَيْرِ** ; **مِنْ ذَنْبِي** ; *I ask pardon of God for my sin,* for **أَسْتَغْفِرُ اللَّهَ ذَنْبِي** ; **وَأَخْتَارَ مُوسَىٰ قَوْمَهُ سَبْعِينَ رَجُلًا** ; *and Moses chose from his people* **مِنَّا الَّذِي اخْتِيرَ الرِّجَالُ سَبَاَحَةً** ; *of us* **مِنْ قَوْمِهِ** ;

- A *was he who was chosen from among men for (his) generosity, for*
 بَغَى لَهُ ; *he sought the thing for him, for* مِنْ الرِّجَالِ ;
 وَإِذَا كَالُوهُمْ ; *I caught game for thee, for* صِدْتُ لَكَ ;
 وَزَنُّوهُمْ يُخْسِرُونَ *and when they measure unto them or weigh*
unto them, they give less (than is due), for وَزَنُوا لَهُمْ ;
 وَلَقَدْ جَنَيْتُكَ أَكْمُؤًا وَعَسَاقِلًا *and I have gathered for thee mushrooms*
of different kinds, for جَنَيْتُ لَكَ (عَسَاقِلَ in rhyme for عَسَاقِلَ) ;
 B *but we made ready noble spirits to*
encounter these (calumnies), for رَحَلْنَا لَهَا ; *he (the wild*
he-ass) passed the summer with them (the she-asses), for تَصَيَّفَ مَعَهَا .

REM. *f.* As we have seen above, لَدُنْ and مُنْذُ or مُذْ may be directly connected with a following proposition (§§ 58 and 61). The other prepositions require the interposition of أَنْ, أَنَّ, or مَا ; as عَلَى أَنْ تَأْجِرَنِي ثَمَانِي حَجَجٍ *until I grew up ;*

- C *on condition that thou wilt be my hired servant for eight years ;*
 عَلَى أَنْ تَأْجِرَنِي ثَمَانِي حَجَجٍ *notwithstanding that old age hath come upon me ;*
 وَعَلَا عَنْ أَنْ يَكُونَ لَهُ نَظِيرٌ *and He is exalted above having any equal ;*
 خَيْرٌ وَأَكْرَمٌ لِي مِنْ أَنْ أَرَى مِنْنًا مَعْقُودَةً لِلثَّامِ النَّاسِ فِي عُنُقِي *(con-*
tented poverty is) better and more honourable for me than to see gifts of
the base hung round my neck ; أَلْتَهْدِمَ أَسْهَلَ مِنَ الْبِنَاءِ *though it*
is easier to destroy than to build ; ذَلِكَ بِأَنَّهُمْ كَانُوا يَكْفُرُونَ بِآيَاتِ اللَّهِ *that was because they used to disbelieve in the signs of God ;*
 D *after the waving locks of thy*
 قَدْ دَفَنَهَا التُّرَابُ مِمَّا *head have become like the gray tagām (a plant) ;*
 تَسْفِي التُّرَابَ عَلَى هَذِهِ الْآبَارِ *the dust has stopped up these*
wells since the wind has swept the dust over them ; قَضَى *after ('Ibn) Haribar perished on the*
 بَعْدَ مَا قَضَى *battle-field ;* ذَلِكَ بِمَا عَصَوْا *that was because they disobeyed :* كَمَا

أَرْسَلْنَا إِلَىٰ فِرْعَوْنَ رَسُولًا *as we sent an apostle to Pharaoh.*— A
 مَا is often inserted after مِنْ, عَنْ, and بِ, without affecting their
 regimen [and is therefore called *مَا الزائدة*]: as مِمَّا خَطِيئَاتِهِمْ أُغْرِقُوا *they were drowned because of their sins*; عَمَّا قَلِيلٍ لِّيُصْبِحُنَّ نَادِمِينَ *after a little (while) they will become repentant*; فَبِمَا رَحْمَةٍ مِنَ اللَّهِ لِنْتَ لَهُمْ *by the mercy of God thou hast been gentle unto them.* After
 كَ this use of مَا is very rare (see § 63, rem. a). Compare מִזְ (i.e. מִה) in Hebrew; as בְּמִשְׁכָּלָה (Job ix. 30, Kārī), בְּמִשְׁכָּלָה B
 (Ps. xi. 2), לְמִשְׁכָּלָה (Job xxvii. 14), בְּמִשְׁכָּלָה (Exod. xv. 5).

[REM. g. Before أَنْ and أَنَّ the prepositions are often omitted,
 as لَوْ نَظَرْتَ إِلَيْهَا فَبِأَنَّهُ أُخْرَىٰ أَنْ يُؤْذِمَ بَيْنَكُمَا *thou mightest have a look
 at her (before marrying her), for this affords a better chance of a
 good understanding between thee and her (for أُخْرَىٰ بِأَنَّ);* أَيْغَلِبُ
 (أُخْرَىٰ بِأَنَّ); أَحْذَكُمُ أَنْ يُصَاحِبَ النَّاسَ مَعْرُوفًا C
is any one of you unable to
associate with men kindly? (for عَلَىٰ أَنْ, lit. is he overpowered so as
to be unable?); لَقَدْ أَثَرْتُ أَنْ أَفْعَلَ كَذَا *I have assuredly purposed to*
do such a thing (for عَلَىٰ أَنْ); فَتَرَامَىٰ بِهِ الْأُمُرُ أَنْ صَارَ لِحَدِيحَةٍ: (عَلَىٰ أَنْ)
and his affair led eventually to his becoming the property of Hadīga
(for إِلَىٰ أَنْ); إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يَسْتَحْيِي أَنْ يَضْرِبَ مَثَلًا; (إِلَىٰ أَنْ)
see! God is not
ashamed to use a parable (for مِنْ أَنْ). See also § 49, d, rem. and
 § 167, rem. b.

On the omission of the preposition along with the suffix in D
 relative sentences, see § 175, c. D. G.]

B. THE NOUN.

1. The Nomina Verbi, Agentis and Patientis.

71. As we have already spoken of the idea of the *nomen verbi* or
 abstract verbal noun (Vol. i. § 195), of its use as *الْمَفْعُولُ الْبَاطِلِيُّ* or
 objective complement of the verb (§ 26), and of its rection, in so far

- A as it possesses verbal power (§§ 27—29), we have now only to remark that it is not (as might at first sight appear) rendered definite by the very nature of its idea, and, in consequence, able to dispense with the article in order to become definite; but is, on the contrary, like other nouns, indefinite, when it stands without the article. E.g. قِتَالٌ فِيهِ كَبِيرٌ وَصَدٌّ عَنْ سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ وَكُفْرٌ بِهِ وَالْمَسْجِدِ الْأَحَرَامِ وَإِخْرَاجُ قِتَالٍ فِيهِ كَبِيرٌ وَصَدٌّ عَنْ سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ وَكُفْرٌ بِهِ وَالْمَسْجِدِ الْأَحَرَامِ وَإِخْرَاجُ قِتَالٍ فِيهِ كَبِيرٌ *to fight in it* (one of the sacred months) *is* (a) great (sin), but to turn (others) away from the path of God, and
- B not to believe in Him and (to prevent access to) the sacred mosque, and to turn His people out of it, is (a) greater (sin) in the sight of God (قِتَالٌ a fighting, not the fighting, and so with وَصَدٌّ and كُفْرٌ);
- الطَّلَاقُ مَرَّتَانٍ فَاِمْسَاكِ* بِمَعْرُوفٍ أَوْ تَسْرِيحٍ بِإِحْسَانٍ *the divorce may take place twice* (and the woman be taken back after each time), but after that ye must either retain (your wives) with kindness or dismiss (them) with benefits (الطَّلَاقُ the divorce, اِمْسَاكِ a retaining,
- C تَسْرِيحٍ a dismissing); لَا يَسْتَطِيعُونَ لَهُمْ نَصْرًا *they are not able to give them (any) help* (نَصْرًا مَا = نَصْرًا or مَنْ نَصْرٍ, whereas النَّصْرُ would mean, *they are not able to give them the help necessary in the particular case*).

72. Of the rection of the *nomina agentis* and *patientis* or concrete verbal nouns, in so far as they possess verbal power, we have already treated in §§ 30—32. They designate the person or thing, to which

- D the verbal idea attaches itself as descriptive of it; e.g. أَلْبَاعَثُ *the exciting cause, the motive*; أَلْبَانِعُ *the hindering object, the hindrance*. Now, as both the person or thing and the verbal idea are something firm and abiding, it follows that the concrete verbal noun indicates a lasting and continuous action on the part of an agent or passion on that of a patient. This idea it possesses in common with the Imperfect (see § 8), to which it is often related in outward form (see Vol. i. § 236, with rem. a). The difference between them is, that

* Viz. فَاِلْوَاِجِبُ (هُوَ) اِمْسَاكِ or فَاِمْسَاكِ وَاِجِبُ.

the concrete verbal noun designates a person or thing, to which the verbal idea closely attaches itself and consequently remains immovable; whilst the Imperfect, as a *verbum finitum*, expresses the verbal idea as movable and indeed in constant motion*. The employment of the concrete verbal noun as a perfect results from its use as a fixed immovable substantive.

73. To what point of time this lasting and continuous state of the agent or patient, as designated by the *nomen verbale concretum*, is to be referred, can be deduced only from some other word in the sentence, which points to a specific time, from the nature of the thing or the character of the thought, or from the connection of the context. The *nomen agentis* or *patientis* itself does not include the idea of any fixed time. [Comp. § 30, a.]

(a) In a clause that is *not circumstantial* [comp. § 183], whether it be absolute or dependent upon another clause, the concrete verbal noun shows that the verbal idea contained in it refers either to the present, the proximate future, or the future in general. E.g. زَيْدٌ نَاكِحٌ غَدًا *Zaid's son is to be married to-morrow to Zubaida* (the reference of نَاكِحٌ to the proximate future is shown by غَدًا); أَنَا قَاتِلُهُ *I am going to kill him*; أَنَا قَاتِلُكَ *I will kill you* (ego te interficiam); هَذَا مَقْتُولٌ *this man must be killed*; هِيَ مَحْمُودَةٌ [*she is praiseworthy*]; (in these four examples the context fixes the meaning); وَأَعْلَمُوا أَنَّهُمْ غَيْرُ مُعْجِزِي اللَّهِ وَأَنَّ اللَّهَ مُخْزِي الْكَافِرِينَ *and know that ye shall not escape God, and that God will put the unbelievers to shame*; الَّذِينَ يَظُنُّونَ أَنَّهُمْ مُلَاقُوا رَبِّهِمْ *who think that they shall meet their Lord*; قَدْ أَطْرَقَ يُنْتَظَرُ مَا هُمْ صَانِعُونَ *he kept*

* The Arab grammarians ascribe to the finite verb, in general, the idea of اَلْحُدُوثُ *the becoming new, the coming into existence of the act*; to the imperfect, in particular, that of اَلتَّجَدُّدُ *constant renewal or repetition* (see § 8); to the verbal noun, that of اَلثَّبُوتُ, or اَلثَّبَاتُ, *fixedness, immobility*.

A *silence in order to see what they would do* (the reference of صَانِعُونَ to the future results from يَنْظُرُ).

REM. a. When the perfect كَانَ is prefixed to a concrete verbal noun which refers to the future, the idea of futurity is transferred to a past time; as أَمَرَ كَانَ مَفْعُولًا a thing which should have been done (equivalent to أَمَرَ كَانَ حَقِيقًا أَنْ يُفْعَلَ); (أَمَرَ كَانَ حَقِيقًا أَنْ يُفْعَلَ) quid futurum esset si etc. Compare the composition of the imperfect with كَانَ, § 9.

[REM. b. Verbal adjectives of the form فَعِيلٌ with a passive sense may refer also to the future, as بِسِلَاحٍ مَا يُقْتَلَنَّ الْقَتِيلُ by one or another weapon will certainly be killed whosoever is destined to be killed; أَنَا ابْنُ الذَّبِيحَيْنِ I am the son of the two intended victims.]

(b) But if the concrete verbal noun stands in a circumstantial clause (حَالٌ), the state which it describes belongs to the same period of time as the verb in the leading clause. E.g. أَنشَدَ وَهُوَ مَحْبُوسٌ بِمَكَّةَ he recited, whilst he was in prison at Makkah, (the following verses); جَدَّ الْمَهْدِيُّ فِي الْهَرَبِ وَقَدِمَ طَرَابُلُسَ الْغَرْبِ وَزِيَادَةُ اللَّهِ مُتَوَقِّعٌ عَلَيْهِ ʿl-Mahdī fled with all speed and reached Tarābulus (Tripolis) in North Africa, whilst Ziyādetu'llāh was constantly on the look-out for him; وَمَنْ يُسَلِّمْ وَجْهَهُ إِلَى اللَّهِ وَهُوَ مُحْسِنٌ فَقَدِ اسْتَمْسَكَ بِالْعُرْوَةِ الْوُثْقَى and whoso turns himself wholly towards God, whilst he does good, has laid hold on the surest handle. In such subordinate clauses the imperfect is used in almost the same way as the concrete verbal noun (§ 8, e).

74. In like manner, the concrete verbal noun refers to the same period of time as the verb with which it is connected, when it is annexed to the verb as an adverbial accusative. This may happen even when the subjects are different (§ 44, c). E.g. قَوْلَى أَتَوْرَ هَارِبًا

the ox turned his back fleeing; سَافَرَ بَارِيًّا أَخُوهُ الْقَوْسُ *he set off whilst A*
his brother was shaping the bow; خَرَجَ قَاعِدًا أَبُوهُ *he went out whilst*
his father was seated; لَقِيتُ السُّلْطَانَ عِنْدَهُ بَاكِيًا *I met the sultan in*
his house weeping; كُنْتُ فِي الْبُسْتَانِ زَاهِرًا *I was in the garden whilst*
it was in bloom; وَمَنْ يَعْصِ اللَّهَ وَرَسُولَهُ وَيَتَعَدَّ حُدُودَهُ يُدْخِلْهُ نَارًا *and whoso shall rebel against God and His Apostle, and*
shall transgress His ordinances, He shall make him enter into fire, to
abide in it for ever (here the حَال or circumstantial term, خَالِدًا فِيهَا, B
is not a حَال مُقَارِن, or *hāl* which indicates a state present at a
past time, but a حَال مُقَدَّر, or *hāl* which indicates a future state
[comp. § 44, c, rem. a]). The same is the case after بَقِيَ *to remain*,
دَامَ *to last, continue*, لَا يَزَالُ *he will not cease*, and the like (see § 42, a);
as لَمْ يَزَلْ قَاعِدًا *he did not cease sitting*; لَا تَزَالُ طَائِفَةٌ مِنْ أُمَّتِي ظَاهِرِينَ
عَلَى الْحَقِّ إِلَى يَوْمِ الْقِيَمَةِ *a part of my people shall not cease to*
hold fast the truth till the day of the resurrection; مَا دَامَ الرُّوحُ C
سَاكِنًا فِي الْجَسَدِ *as long as the spirit continues to dwell in the*
body; كُنَّ الْعُلَمَاءُ يَبْقَى *he remained in amazement*; كُنَّ الْعُلَمَاءُ يَبْقَى
عِزُّهُ مُتَضَاعِفًا *the reputation of the learned shall continue multiplied*
(after his death). The Imperfect is also used after these verbs in many
cases [§ 42, rem. f], with this difference, that the Imperfect designates
the constantly repeated action, the concrete verbal noun the lasting
condition of the agent; as قَعَرَ مَغَارَتِهِ فِي السُّكُونِ *he did not cease to restrict himself to sitting quietly at the bottom of his*
cave; وَلَمْ يَزَلْ يُنْعِمُ النَّظَرَ فِيهَا *and he did not desist from investigating*
it carefully (يُنْعِمُ = يُنْعِنُ). Compare § 8, e.

REN. The concrete verbal noun is sometimes annexed, like the
imperfect (§ 9), to the verb كَانَ, to express the *praesens praeteriti*

- A or Greek and Latin imperfect; as *كَانَ نَازِلًا* *he was dwelling*; *كَانَتْ مَرْكُوزَةً* *they (the spears) were sticking in the ground* (*كَانَتْ تُرْكُزُ* would mean *they were stuck into the ground*).

2. The Government of the Noun.

The Status Constructus and the Genitive.

75. The idea of one noun is very often more closely determined
 B (*يَتَخَصَّصُ*) or defined (*يَتَعَرَّفُ*) by that of another*. When this is the case, the noun so defined is shortened in its pronunciation by the omission of the *tênwin*, or of the terminations *نِ* and *نَ* (Vol. i. § 315), on account of the speaker's passing on rapidly to the determining word, which is put in the genitive. The determined noun is called by the Arab grammarians *الْمُضَافُ* *the annexed*; the determining noun, *الْمُضَافُ إِلَيْهِ* *that to which annexation is made or to which another word is annexed*; and the relation subsisting between
 C them is known as *الِإِضَافَةُ* *the annexation*. European grammarians are accustomed to say that the determined or governing word is in the *status constructus*.

- REM. The Arab grammarians speak of two kinds of annexation. The one is called *الِإِضَافَةُ الْحَقِيقِيَّةُ* *the proper or real annexation*, *الِإِضَافَةُ الْمَحْضَةُ* *the pure annexation*, or *الِإِضَافَةُ الْمَعْنَوِيَّةُ* *the logical annexation*; the other, *الِإِضَافَةُ غَيْرُ الْحَقِيقِيَّةِ* *the improper annexation*, *الِإِضَافَةُ غَيْرُ الْمَحْضَةِ* *the impure annexation*, or *الِإِضَافَةُ اللَّفْظِيَّةُ*
 D *the (merely) verbal or grammatical annexation*. The latter consists in this, that an adjective, a participle active intransitive, or a participle passive, takes a definite noun in the genitive instead of

* [The *تَخْصِصُ* consists in qualifying an indefinite noun by an adjective, or an expression equivalent to an adjective, as a preposition with a genitive, or the genitive of an undefined noun, *تَعْرِيفُ* is the defining of the noun by the genitive of a defined noun.]

an indefinite *tamyiz*-accusative (see § 44, *e*); or that the participle A active of a directly transitive verb, being used with the meaning of *المُضَارِعُ* or the Imperfect (see § 30, *a*), takes the object in the genitive instead of the accusative. In both cases the genitive is only a looser, representative construction, instead of the stricter accusative, and consequently exercises no defining or limiting power (*تَغْرِيفُ* or *تَخْصِصُ*) upon the preceding governing word (see § 89). We have here to deal almost exclusively with the real annexation.

76. By the genitive is indicated : (a) the person to whom [or the B thing to which] the quality designated by the governing word belongs, as *حِكْمَةُ اللَّهِ* the wisdom of God; [*صَفَاءُ الْمَاءِ* the limpidness of the water;] (b) the material of the form and the form of the material, as *بَيْضَةُ فِضَّةٍ* an egg of silver, *فِضَّةُ الدِّرَاهِمِ* the silver of the dirhams (in the former case the annexation is *explicative*, *إِضَافَةٌ بَيَانِيَّةٌ*, the original expression being *بَيْضَةُ فِضَّةٍ*, i.e. *بَيْضَةُ هِيَ فِضَّةٌ*, see § 94); (c) the cause of the effect and the effect of the cause, as *خَالِقُ الْأَرْضِ* the C creator of the earth, *حَرُّ الشَّمْسِ* the heat of the sun; (d) the part of the whole (*partitive* annexation, *إِضَافَةٌ تَبْعِيضِيَّةٌ*) and the whole as embracing the parts (*explicative* annexation), as *رَأْسُ الْحِكْمَةِ* the beginning of wisdom, *كُلُّ الْمَخْلُوقَاتِ* the totality of created things; (e) the thing possessed by a possessor and the possessor of a thing possessed, as *خَزِينَةُ السُّلْطَانِ* the treasury of the sultān, *سُلْطَانُ الْبَرِّ* D *وَالْبَحْرِ* the lord of the land and sea; and (f) the object of the action and of the agent, as *خَلْقُ السَّمَاءِ* the creation of heaven, *كَاتِبُ الرِّسَالَةِ* the writer of the letter.

77. The Arab grammarians say that in the real annexation is implied the force of a preposition, which is either *لِ* (which also represents the accusative, §§ 29—34), *مِنْ*, or *فِي*. For example :

- A *الْغَلَامُ الَّذِي لِرَيْدٍ* *Zaid's slave*, = *الْغَلَامُ الَّذِي لِرَيْدٍ* *the slave who (belongs) to Zaid*; *كَأْسُ فِضَّةٍ* *a silver cup*, = *كَأْسٌ مِنْ فِضَّةٍ* *a cup (made) of silver* (see § 48, f); *صَوْمُ الْيَوْمِ* *to-day's fast*, = *الصَّوْمُ فِي الْيَوْمِ* *the fast (held) on to-day* (see § 55 a).

- REM. The annexation is resolved by *مِنْ*, when the *مُضَافٍ إِلَيْهِ* is the genus or material of the *مُضَافٍ*, as *ثَوْبٌ خَزٍّ* *a silk dress* [comp. § 48, g]; by *فِي*, when the *مُضَافٍ إِلَيْهِ* is the *ظَرْفُ* (see Vol. i. § 221, rem. a) of the *مُضَافٍ*, as *عَرَبُ الْحِجَازِ* *the Arabs of el-Hijāz*, *مَكْرُ اللَّيْلِ وَالنَّهَارِ* *plotting by night and day*.
- B

78. The determining noun is, in the real annexation, always either a substantive or a word regarded as such, a pronoun, or an entire clause. For example: *كَلِمَةُ إِنْ رَسُولَ اللَّهِ* *the Apostle of God*; *تَنْكِيرُ إِنْسَانٍ* *the meaning of (the verb) katalu*; *كَلِمَةُ أَلَّا* *etc.*, because words, regarded as substantives, are by their very nature definite, just like proper names, and therefore do not require the article); *مَعْنَاهُ* *its meaning*; *هَذَا يَوْمٌ يَنْفَعُ الصَّادِقِينَ صِدْقُهُمْ* *this is the day (when) their truthfulness shall benefit the truthful*; *إِلَى يَوْمٍ يُبْعَثُونَ* *till the day (when) they (the dead) shall be raised*; *يَوْمَ تَوَلَّتِ الْأَطْلَعَانُ* *the day (that) the women (setting out on their journey) turned away from us*; *زَمَنَ الْحِجَاغِ أَمِيرٍ* *at the time (when) el-Haǧǧāǧ was ḥmīr*; *وَقْتُ أَنْ اسْتَتَارَ* *at the time (when) he hid himself*, = *وَقْتُ اسْتِتَارِهِ* *at the time of his hiding himself*; *حِينَ يَرَوْنَ الْعَذَابَ* *when they shall see the punishment*; *حِينَ يَخْرُجُ مِنْ بَيْتِهِ* *from the moment he goes out from his house*; *عَصْرَ حَانَ مَشِيبٍ* *at the time (when) old age is coming on*; *أَنْ يَفْعَلَ كَذَا* *for fear of his doing so-and-so*;
- C
- D

سَقَتْهُ الْمَيِّتَةُ كَأْسٌ وَسُقُوا مَاءً حَمِيمًا *till death made him drink the* A
cup of "and they were given boiling water to drink" (el-Kor'an, xlvii. 17).—The *determined* noun, on the contrary, can be only a substantive; for the numerals and prepositions (خَمْسَةُ رِجَالٍ *five men*, بَعْدَ سَنَةٍ *after the lapse of a year*) are in reality substantives, and adjectives, standing in the position of defined nouns, have the force of substantives, as خَيْرُ الْبَرِيَّةِ *the best of (God's) creatures* (see § 86), [حَسَنُ الْوَجْهِ *the handsome face*, § 89, rem.], عاجِلٌ طَعْنَةً *a hurried* B
thrust, وَمُشْرِفٌ آلَانَ بَعَالِي أَنَسِرِ الصَّاحِبِ أَبِي الْقَاسِمِ *and honoured now by the exalted name of the Ṣāḥib 'Abu 'l-Kāsim*. [Comp. § 86, rem. b, § 93 at the end, and § 95, e.]

REM. a. In the pure annexation, the article *أل* can never be prefixed to the مُضَافٌ; in the impure, it may (see §§ 30, a, and 89).

REM. b. Occasionally in ancient poetry, and frequently in later prose writers, we find such phrases as سَيْفٌ وَرُمْحٌ زَيْدٍ *Zēid's sword and spear*, for which the correct expression would be سَيْفٌ زَيْدٍ C
 e.g. قَطَعَ اللَّهُ يَدَ وَرِجْلَ مَنْ قَالَهَا وَرُمْحُهُ *may God cut off the hand and foot of him who said it*; بَيْنَ ذِرَاعَيْ وَجْهِهِ الْأَسَدِ *between the two paws and the forehead of the Lion* (the constellation Leo); إِلَّا عِلَالَةً أَوْ بُدَاهَةَ سَابِحٍ *save the after-running or the first running of a courseer*; سَقَى الْأَرْضَيْنِ الْغَيْثُ سَهْلًا وَحَزْنًا *may the rain water the lands, both rugged and level, for* سَهْلًا وَحَزْنًا. D

79. Not only common nouns, but also proper names, may be determined by a genitive; as رَبِيعَةُ الْقُرَيْسِ *Rabī'a of the horse*; النَّابِغَةُ الدُّبْيَانِيَّةُ *en-Nābiḡa of (the tribe of) Dubyān*, = النَّابِغَةُ الدُّبْيَانِيَّةُ; تَغْلِبُ بْنُ وَائِلٍ *Taglib, (son) of Wā'il*, for تَغْلِبُ بْنُ وَائِلٍ; حَاتِمُ طَيِّءٍ *Hatim of (the tribe of) Taiy'*; عَمْرُو الْكَلْبِ *Amr of the dog* (because

- A he was always accompanied by one); حَبِيرَةُ النَّعْمَنِ *el-Hira*, (the capital of the kingdom) of *en-No'mān*; طَرَابُلُسُ الشَّامِ *Tripolis* in *Syria*; طَرَابُلُسُ الْغَرْبِ *Tripoli* in *North Africa*; أَقَامَ بَبْغَدَادِ الْعِرَاقِ *he dwelt in Bagdād of (in) el-'Irāk*, but his yearning for the people of *Damascus of (in) Syria* was a painful yearning; عَلَا زَيْدُنَا يَوْمَ النَّقَا رَأْسَ زَيْدِكُمْ بِأَبْيَضٍ *our Zēid, on the day (at the battle) of en-Nakā*
 B (or the sand hill), smote the head of your Zēid with a bright (sword) of *el-Yemēn*, the edges of which bit deep; فَغَادَرُوا مَسْعُودَهُمْ مُتَجَدِّلاً *and they left their Mas'ūd thrown down upon the ground.*

80. It often happens, too, that a noun is qualified by the genitive of another noun, when in other languages an adjective would be employed; as رَجُلٌ سَوٌّ *a bad man*; حِمَارٌ وَحْشٍ *a wild ass*; ثَوْبٌ صَدِيقٍ *a piece of cloth of good quality*, مَبْوَأٌ صَدِيقٍ *a good place of abode*,
 C صَاحِبٌ صَدِيقٍ *a good comrade*; إِخْوَانُ الصَّافَا *the pure or sincere brethren (or brotherhood)*. This is particularly the case in specifying the material of which a thing is made; as بَيْضَةٌ فِضَّةٌ *ovum argenteum, a silver egg*; ثَوْبٌ حَرِيرٍ *vestis serica, a silk dress* (see §§ 76, 77). In the same way a genitive is attached to the name of a person, to express something peculiar to and descriptive of him; as زَيْدُ الضَّلَالِ *the erring (apostate) Zēid*, = زَيْدُ ذُو الضَّلَالِ; سَعْدُ الْخَيْرِ *the good*
 D *Sa'd*, = سَعْدُ ذُو الْخَيْرِ, to which would be opposed سَعْدُ السُّوءِ, or ذُو الشَّرِّ *the wicked Sa'd*, = سَعْدُ ذُو السُّوءِ or ذُو الشَّرِّ.

[REM. This sort of annexation is called إِضَافَةُ الْعَيْنِ إِلَى الْمَعْنَى i.e. the annexation of the concrete to the abstract noun.]

81. The Arabs also use several nouns, which convey, at least secondarily, the ideas of possession, companionship, origination, etc.,

in combination with a following substantive (usually expressing a quality) in the genitive, as a substitute for adjectives. These quasi-adjectives, when actually in apposition to a substantive, are placed after it, like real adjectives. They are principally the following:

ذُو *the (man) of* such and such a thing, its owner or possessor (Vol. i. § 340, rem. c); صَاحِبٌ *companion, possessor*; أَهْلٌ *family, people*; أَبٌ *father*, and أُمٌّ *mother*, i.e. originator, cause, origin, or principle of a thing; ابْنٌ *son*, and ابْنَةٌ or بِنْتُ *daughter*, i.e. originating from, caused by, dependent upon or related to something; أَخٌ *brother*, i.e. connected with or related to something. The nouns ذُو, صَاحِبٌ, and أَهْلٌ, are constantly used in this way in ordinary prose; the others, being metaphorical, belong almost exclusively to poetry and poetical diction. For example: ذُو الْخَيْرِ *the good*, ذُو الْعِلْمِ *the learned*, ذُو فَضْلِ *gracious*, ذُو مَالٍ *wealthy*, ذُو رَحِمٍ *a relation*, أَرْضُ ذَاتِ شَوْكٍ *a piece of land covered with thorns*, أَوْلُو الْأَثْبَابِ *intelligent persons*, صَاحِبُ الطَّبْعِ الْمُسْتَقِيمِ *one with good natural parts*, صَاحِبُ الْخَطِيئَةِ *the person who has committed a fault*, صَاحِبُ خَبَرٍ *a scout, spy, or mouchard*, صَاحِبُ عِلْمٍ *a man of learning*, أَصْحَابُ الْجَنَّةِ وَالنَّارِ *the inmates of Paradise and Hell*; أَهْلُ السَّنَةِ *those who conform to the practices [and sayings] of Muḥammad*, أَهْلُ الْأَفْوَاءِ *persons of erroneous opinions, heretics*, أَهْلُ الْعِلْمِ *the learned*, أَهْلُ اللَّغَةِ *lexicographers*; أَبُو الْأَضْيَافِ *a hospitable man*, أَبُو الْحَيَاةِ *the father (supporter) of life*, i.e. the rain, أُمُّ الْخَبَائِثِ *the father (constructor) of the little fortress*, i.e. the fox; أُمُّ الطَّرِيقِ *the mother (cause) of disgraceful acts*, i.e. wine, ابْنُ السَّبِيلِ *the son of the way*, i.e. the traveller, ابْنُ حَرْبٍ *a warrior*, ابْنُ آوَى *the son of*

- A howling, i.e. the jackal; *بِنْتُ الْجَبَلِ* the daughter of the mountain, i.e. the echo; *أَخُو الْخَيْرِ*, *أَخُو الْجَهْدِ*, *أَخُو الْغِنَى*, *أَخُو الْعِلْمِ*, the good, the laborious, the wealthy, the learned, *أَخُو تَمِيمٍ* a brother of Tēmīm, one of the tribe of Tēmīm; *أَخُو الْخَمْرِ* the brother of wine, i.e. a man drunk with wine. Connected herewith is the use of *ابْنُ*, *ابْنَةُ* (*بِنْتُ*) to indicate the age of a person, as *هُوَ ابْنُ ثَمَانِينَ سَنَةً* he is eighty years old (lit. he is the son of eighty years). A poet (*Ḥamāsa*, p. 6) employs *أَخُ* in the same manner: *أَخُو خَمْسِينَ* fifty years old].

82. Further, some secondary ideas, such as those of the whole, the part, the like, and the different, which we usually designate by adjectives, prepositions, or compound words, are expressed in Arabic by substantives, taking the primary substantives, to which they are attached, in the genitive. Such are:—

- C (α) *كُلٌّ* (Heb. *כָּל*, Syr. *ܟܠܐ*, *ܟܠܐ*, Æth. *ክላ* *kwēll*) the totality, the whole (lit. what is rolled and gathered together; compare *دَلَلٌ* to roll, *حِلْمٌ*, *إِكْلِيلٌ*, a crown, *دَلَلٌ* to make complete or perfect, *دَلَلٌ* perfect, the whole). If the leading substantive is definite, and signifies something single and indivisible, *كُلٌّ* means whole, as *كُلُّ الْبَيْتِ* the whole house, *كُلُّ الْيَوْمِ* the whole day; if it is definite, but a plural or a collective, *كُلٌّ* means all, as *كُلُّ الْحَيَوَانَاتِ* all the animals, *كُلُّ النَّاسِ* all mankind; if it is indefinite, *كُلٌّ* means each, every, as *مَا كُلُّ سَوْدَاءَ تَمْرَةٍ وَبَيْضَاءَ شَحْمَةٍ* not everything which is black is a date, and (not everything which is) white a bit of fat; *أَكُلُّ أَمْرٍ*; *تَحْسِبِينَ أَمْرًا وَنَارٌ تَوَقَّدُ بِاللَّيْلِ نَارًا* dost thou consider every man a (true) man, and (every) fire that blazes at night a (true) fire (really deserving of the name)? *كُلُّ يَوْمٍ* every stratagem, *كُلُّ يَوْمٍ* every day, *كُلُّ مَنْ* each single one, *كُلُّ وَاحِدٍ* (أَحَدٍ) every one who (in

which case the annexation is explicative, *إِضَافَةُ التَّفْسِيرِ وَالْبَيَانِ*, each, *أ*
viz. stratagem, etc.)*.—Frequently, however, the definite primary
substantive is put first, and *كُلُّ* is placed after it, in annexation to
a pronominal suffix agreeing with the primary substantive, which is;
as it were, repeated in the suffix; as *كُلُّهُ* *أَتَيْتُ* *كُلُّهُ* *the whole house*,
كُلُّهَا *الْأَرْضُ* *كُلُّهَا* *the whole earth*, *كُلُّهُمْ* *النَّاسُ* *كُلُّهُمْ* *all mankind*. Instead of
this construction, we sometimes find *أَكُلُّ*, *τὸ πᾶν*, and even *كُلُّ*,
which is definite, notwithstanding the *tênwîn*, and stands, according *B*
to circumstances, for *كُلُّنَا*, *كُلُّكُمْ*, etc.; as *وَقَدْ تَجَمَّعَتِ الصَّعَالِيكُ*
وَالْأَرَامِلُ وَالْأَيْتَامُ وَأَكُلُّ قَدْ أَتَوْا لِيَسْقُوا جِمَالَهُمْ وَالْأَغْنَامَ وَيَقُوا أَكُلُّ
عِنْدَ آلِهَاءَ قِيَامًا *and the poor and widows and orphans had assembled,*
and had all come to water their camels and flocks, and they all
remained standing near the water (*كُلُّهُمْ = أَكُلُّ*); *وَعَادَ وَفِرْعَوْنُ*
وَأَخْوَانُ لُوطٍ وَأَصْحَابُ الْأَيْكَةِ وَقَوْمُ تُبَّعٍ كُلُّ كَذَبَ الرُّسُلِ *C*
and Pharaoh, and the brethren of Lot, and the inhabitants of the
grove, and the people of Tubba', all accused the apostles of imposture
وَهَبْنَا لَهُ إِسْحَاقَ وَيَعْقُوبَ وَكُلًّا; (*كُلُّ* *وَاحِدٍ مِنْهُمْ* or *كُلُّهُمْ = كُلُّ*)
وَجَعَلْنَا نَبِيًّا *we gave him (Abraham) Isaac and Jacob, and each of them*
we made a prophet (*كُلُّ* *وَاحِدٍ مِنْهُمَا = كُلًّا* or *مِنْهُمْ*); *كُلُّ يَمُوتُ*
all must die, i.e. كُلُّ أَحَدٍ مِنَ النَّاسِ; *فَكُلُّ أُنْبَاةٍ وَيَابَعٍ* *and they all*

* [In poetry *كُلُّ*, followed by an indefinite noun in the genitive *D*
singular, is often used, like the German word *lauter*, to denote a
number of objects *all of which* possess this or that quality, e.g.
وَلَا أَلْتَمَحُّ إِلَّا كُلَّ جَرْدَاءٍ صَلِيمٍ *and (he cared for) no treasure save*
only mares, all of them short-haired and hard-hoofed; *مَعِيَ كُلُّ فَضَّاضٍ*
with me were comrades, each of them clad in a loose-fitting
tunic, in German, es begleiteten mich lauter Freunde mit weiten Kleid-
ern.]

A assented and swore allegiance; [إِن كُتِلَ إِلَّا كُذِّبَ الرُّسُلُ] *there was not any one but accused the apostles of lying*.

REM. This last remark applies also to غَدٌ *to-morrow*, = غَدُ الْيَوْمِ and غَدُ ذَلِكَ الْيَوْمِ, and to قَابِلٌ *next year*, = قَابِلُ هَذَا الْعَامِ and قَابِلُ ذَلِكَ الْعَامِ; as أَرْسَلَهُ مَعَنَا غَدًا *send him with us to-morrow*; إِذَا مَا حَوَيْتَ جَنَى نَخْلَةٍ فَلَا تُقْرِئْنَهَا إِلَى قَابِلٍ *when thou gettest the plucking of a palm-tree, do not put it off till next year*.

(b) With the use of كُلُّ coincides in most points that of جَمِيعٌ *the totality, the whole* (lit. *what is collected*, from جَمَعَ, connected with جَمَعَ); as جَمِيعُ النَّاسِ, or النَّاسُ جَمِيعُهُم, *all mankind* (but also جَمْرٌ); جَمِيعَةُ الْمَدِينَةِ, whereas النَّاسُ كُلُّهُ is inadmissible); فَلَمَّا وَلِيَ الْمُلْكَ قَتَلَ الْجَمِيعَ *and after he obtained the sovereignty, he put them all to death* (الْجَمِيعُ, τὸ ὅλον, equivalent in this case to جَمِيعُهُم); فَإِذَا هُمْ جَمِيعٌ لَدَيْنَا مُحْضَرُونَ *and lo, they shall be assembled before us all together*.

REM. Similar is the use of عَامَّةٌ *the great mass or bulk, the greatest part, [the whole]* (properly the fem. participle of عَمَرَ *to comprise or comprehend*); as يَجْرِي فِي سِكَكِهِمْ وَعَامَّةُ دُورِهِمْ *it (the water) runs in their streets and the greatest part of their houses and baths*; وَعَامَّةُ أُنْبِيَائِهَا حِجَارَةٌ *and the greatest part of its buildings are (of) stone*; الْجَيْشُ عَامَّتُهُ *the great bulk of the army, [the whole army]*; قَرَأَ الْعَامَّةُ عَلَى الْفِعْلِ الْمَجْهُولِ فِيهِمَا *most (readers of the Kor'an) read according to the passive voice in both (words)*; جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ عَامَّةً *the people came in a body*.—The word سَائِرٌ *the rest, the remainder* (properly the participle of سَرَى *to be over, to be left*, Heb. שָׁרַי), is incorrectly used by later [even elegant] writers in the sense of *all*; as قَدِمَ سَائِرُ الْحَاجِّ *all the pilgrims*

have arrived; اسْتَوْفَى سَائِرَ الْخَرَاجِ the whole of the property-tax A has been collected*.

(c) **بَعْضُ** *a part, a portion*, is used with the genitive of a plural or a collective to signify *some one or more, a certain one, some one, one*; as **خَاطَبَ بَعْضُ التَّلَامِيذِ مُحَمَّدَ بْنَ الْحَسَنِ** *one of his pupils addressed Muhammad the son of el-Hasan*; **فِي بَعْضِ الْغَايِرِ** *in a certain cave*; **فِي بَعْضِ الْأَيَّامِ** *one day*; **أَنْشَدَ لِبَعْضِهِمْ** *he recited (the following verses) composed by one of them (one of the poets, by a certain poet)*; **وَأَحْذَرُهُمْ أَنْ يَفْتِنُوكَ عَنْ بَعْضِ مَا أَنْزَلَ اللَّهُ إِلَيْكَ** *and beware of them, lest they lead thee astray from part of what (from any of the precepts which) God has sent down (revealed) unto thee*.—If **بَعْضُ** be repeated as a correlative, no pronominal suffix is added to it in the second place; as **بَعْضُ الشَّرِّ أَهْوَنُ مِنْ بَعْضِ** *some evils are easier to be borne than others*; **وَلَوْ كَانَ بَعْضُهُمْ لِبَعْضٍ ظَهِيرًا** *even though the one of them should aid the other*; **إِنْ يَعِدُ الظَّالِمُونَ بَعْضُهُمْ بَعْضًا إِلَّا** *the wicked make to one another only vain (or deceitful) promises*; **ظُلُمَاتٌ بَعْضُهَا فَوْقَ بَعْضٍ** *darknesses one upon another (darkness upon darkness)*. In modern Arabic the second **بَعْضُ** is often omitted.—Lastly, **الْبَعْضُ** [and even **بَعْضُ** without the article] is sometimes used instead of **بَعْضُ** with the genitive; as **إِذَا قَامَ بِهِ الْبَعْضُ فِي** *when some (people) in a town observe it, it is not required of (lit. it falls off from) the rest*; **وَقَدْ خَالَفَهُمُ الْبَعْضُ**

* [To the same class belong also **جَدُّ** and **حَقُّ** in expressions like
جَدُّ لَيْمٍ *very mean* = **لَيْمٌ جَدًّا**; **جَدُّ عَالِمٍ** *I am not very learned*
= **عَالِمٌ جَدًّا**; **حَقُّ دَائِبٍ** *most trustful* = **أَمِينٌ حَقًّا**; **حَقُّ دَائِبٍ** *an*
intensely hot day = **دَائِبٌ حَقًّا**. Comp. § 137, rem. b and the Gloss. to
Tabarī s. v. **حَقُّ**. D.G.]

- A أَخَذْتُ بَعْضًا وَتَرَكْتُ بَعْضًا *some opposed them in this matter*; [أَخَذْتُ بَعْضًا وَتَرَكْتُ بَعْضًا] *I took a part (of it) and left a part*].

(d) **غَيْرٌ** *alteration, difference*, as a concrete, *something different*, is used with a following genitive to designate one or more objects *other than, differing from, or the opposite of*, the object or objects expressed by the genitive. In the last case it corresponds to our negative prefix *un* or *in*; in the others it may be rendered by *another*,

- B *other, et cætera*, and the like. For example: **الْمَلُوكُ وَغَيْرُهُمْ** *kings and others*; **الشَّجَاعَةُ وَالْقُوَّةُ وَالشَّفَقَةُ وَغَيْرُهَا** *bravery, strength, clemency, and other qualities*; **جَاءَ التَّوَرَّاءُ وَالْقَضَاةُ وَغَيْرُهُمْ** *there came the vizirs, judges, etc.*; [وَعِزٌّ ذَلِكُ] *et cætera*; **أَفَغَيْرَ دِينِ اللَّهِ تَبْتَغُونَ** *do you then seek another religion than that of God?* **مَنْ إِلَهٌ غَيْرُ اللَّهِ يَأْتِيكُمْ بِهِ** *what god is there but God, who would bring it (back) to you?* **غَيْرُ مَخْلُوقٍ** *uncreated*; **غَيْرُ الْمَخْلُوقِ** *the uncreated*; **غَيْرُ مُمَكِّنٍ** *impossible*; **غَيْرٌ**
- C **أَلْعَرَبِ** *not Arabs*; **وَجْهَهُ إِلَى غَيْرِ مِصْرَ** *his face was not turned towards Egypt*; **فَنَزَلَ عَلَى غَيْرِ مَاءٍ** *and he halted away from water, or without access to water*.—**الْغَيْرُ** is very rarely used instead of **غَيْرٌ** with the genitive; as **تُصَافِحُهَا أَكْثُ الْغَيْرِ** *the hands of others clasp them* (= **غَيْرِهِمْ**).—When in the accusative, **غَيْرٌ**, which always remains a substantive, often requires to be translated by a preposition or conjunction, such as *except, but*; e.g. **قَامَ الْقَوْمُ غَيْرَ أَبِي بَكْرٍ** *the people stood up, except 'Abū Bokr*; **لَا تُرَى غَيْرَ جَاهِلٍ** *thou wilt never seem (or be thought) but a fool**.—On **بِغَيْرٍ** and **مِنْ غَيْرٍ**, *without*, see § 56, rem. c. The expressions **لَا غَيْرَ** and **لَيْسَ غَيْرَ** are used in the sense of *not otherwise, nothing more* [Vol. i. § 363]; as **لَا غَيْرَ** *that which is used as an accusative of time, not otherwise*; **بِالْزَمِ لَا غَيْرَ**

* [On **لَا غَيْرَ** = **إِلَّا أَنْ** comp. the footnote to Vol. i. § 367.]

in the nominative, not otherwise; *عِنْدِي دِرْهَمٌ لَيْسَ غَيْرٌ* I have a ^A
dirham about me, nothing more; i.e. *لَيْسَ غَيْرُ ذَلِكَ, لَا غَيْرُ ذَلِكَ*.

REM. a. When the sense demands a repetition of *غَيْرٌ*, the particle *لَا* is used instead, likewise followed by the genitive; as *بِغَيْرِ عِلْمٍ وَلَا هُدًى* without father and mother; *وَلَا كِتَابٍ مُنِيرٍ* without either knowledge or guidance or a book to give them light; *لَا ظُلُومٍ وَلَا ظُلُومٍ* I know him to be neither ^B
envious nor tyrannical; *صِرَاطَ الَّذِينَ أَنْعَمْتَ عَلَيْهِمْ غَيْرِ الْمَغْضُوبِ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا الضَّالِّينَ* the path of those to whom Thou art gracious, with whom Thou art not angry, and who go not astray.

REM. b. Instead of *غَيْرٌ* in the nom., genit. or accus., followed by the genit. of an adjective, we sometimes find *لَا* with the corresponding case of the adjective; as *لَا بَقَرَةٌ* an unbroken heifer, = *غَيْرُ ذَلُولٍ*. C

(e) *سِوَا* (rarely *سُوى* and *سِوَا*), another (besides So-and-so), likewise runs through all the cases; as *وَسِوَاكَ مَا نَعِ فَضْلَهُ الْمَحْتَاَجِ* whilst others than thou withhold their benefits from the needy (see § 30, b, rem. b); *وَأَنْتَ الْمُسْتَرِي وَسِوَاكَ بَائِعُهَا* then another than thou is the seller and thou art the buyer; *وَأَكْفِنِي بِفَضْلِكَ عَنْ سِوَاكَ* and suffice me with Thy bounty, so that I may have no need of any ^D
other but Thee; *دَعَوْتُ رَبِّي أَنْ لَا يَسْلُطَ عَلَى أُمَّتِي عَدُوٌّ مِنْ سِوَى أَنْفُسِنَا* I have prayed to my Lord that He would let no enemy conquer my people, that belonged to another race than themselves; *وَلَا يَنْطِقُ* and no one of them speaks a foul word, either when they sit with us or with others than us; *وَإِنَّ سِوَاكَ مَنْ يُؤْمِلُهُ يَخْشَى* and he who places hope in any other than thee is wretched.—When in the accusative, it must

- A often be translated by *besides* (compare *غَيْر* in d); as *سَوَى الْعِلْمِ* *besides science*; *رَوَتْكَ الْمَجْلِسِ سَوَى كَوْنِهِ* *besides its [or his] being an ornament in society.*

- (f) *مِثْل*, plur. *أَمْثَال*, *likeness*, as an adjective, *like*, also runs through all the cases; as *ذَلِكَ بِأَنَّهُمْ قَالُوا إِنَّمَا الْبَيْعُ مِثْلُ الرِّبَا* *this because they say, Selling is merely like usury*; *إِنْ أَنتُمْ إِلَّا بَشَرٌ مِثْلُنَا* *ye are nothing but men like us*; *لَهَا أَجْنَحَةٌ مِثْلُ الْخُقَافِ* *they have wings like (those of) bats*; *عَلَى الْأَثْمَرَةِ مِثْلَهَا زُبْدًا* *on each date the like of it in butter (a piece of butter of the same size)*; *لَيْسَ كَمِثْلِهِ شَيْءٌ* *there is nothing like unto Him*; *لَيْسَ أَجْتَمَعَتِ الْإِنْسُ وَالْجِنُّ عَلَى أَنْ يَأْتُوا بِمِثْلِ هَذَا الْقُرْآنِ* *if mankind and the jinn united to produce the like of this Kor'an, they could not produce the like of it*; *كَذَلِكَ قَالَ الَّذِينَ لَا يَعْلَمُونَ مِثْلَ قَوْلِهِمْ* *similarly, those who have no knowledge say the like of their saying (of what they say)*; *لَوْ أَتَقَى أَحَدُكُمْ كُلَّ يَوْمٍ مِثْلَ أَحَدٍ ذَقَبَا* *if one of you spent every day the like of (the hill of) 'Oḥod in gold (a quantity of gold as large as the hill of 'Oḥod)*; *لَوْ كَانَ السَّابَّاعُ مُصَوِّرِينَ مِثْلَ بَنِي آدَمَ* *if the wild beasts were painters like men*; [*مَرَّ مِثْلَ الْبَرْقِ* *he passed like the lightning*]; *لِي مِثْلًا مَا لَكَ* *I have twice as much as thou*; *يَرَوْنَهُمْ مِثْلَهُمْ* *they thought them twice as many as themselves*; *كَأَمْثَالِ* *وبها قُرُودٌ بَيْضٌ* *and in it are white apes, like (as big as) large rams*; *أَمَرَ أَنْ يُعْطَى عَشْرَةُ أَمْثَالِ مَا سَأَلَ* *he ordered that he should be given ten times as much as he asked*; [*الْمِثْلُ* is used instead of *مِثْل* with the genitive in expressions like *ثَمَنُ الْمِثْلِ* *the price paid for a similar thing (= مِثْلِهِ)*, *مَهْرُ الْمِثْلِ* *the dowry given to a lady of her rank (= مِثْلَهَا)*].

REM. a. Exactly like **مِثْل**, but formally undeveloped, is **كَ** the ^dA like of. See § 63.

REM. b. Similar is the use of **شِبْه**, [or **شَبِيه**,] *likeness, the like*, **قَدْر**, or **مِقْدَار**, *measure, size, quantity, worth*, and **زُهَاء** *computation (by conjecture)*, which last may usually be translated by *about*; as **وَنَحَتَ الْأَوَّلُونَ فِي الْجَبَلِ شِبْهَ دَرَجٍ يُصْعَدُ عَلَيْهِ** and the ancients have cut out in the mountain (something) like steps (or a stair), by which one can ascend; **هِيَ فِي شَبِيهِ الْجَزِيرَةِ** it (the town) lies in a sort of peninsula; **هُوَ شَبِيهِ شَجَرِ الْأُتْرُجِ** it (this tree) has the likeness of a lemon-tree; also construed with **بِ** as **فَخَرَجَ مِنْهُ** *and he edited from this work the Book of Purification in (a volume) of about 1500 leaves*; **صَنَعَ قَدْرَ الرَّجُلِ الْمُعْتَدِلِ الْخِلْقَةِ** a statue the size of (as tall as) a well-proportioned man; **طُوَاوِيسُ رُقْطٍ وَخُضْرُ قَدْرِ النَّعَامِ الْكِبَارِ** peacocks, speckled and green, as big as large ostriches; **هُمْ قَدْرُ مَائَةٍ** they are as many as a hundred; **تَحْتَ الرُّمَانَةِ عُنُقُ مِقْدَارِ سِتَّةِ أَصَابِعَ** under the knob is a neck (or shaft) measuring six fingers; **هُوَ مَاءٌ كَثِيرٌ قَدْرُ مَا يُدِيرُ رَحَى** it is a large body of water, as much as would turn a mill; **بَارِضُ الْهِنْدِ بَحِيرَةٌ مِقْدَارُ عَشْرَةِ فَرَاسِخَ فِي مِثْلِهَا** in the country of India is a lake, measuring ten parasangs (in length) by the same (in breadth); **يَجْتَمِعُ مَائُهَا فِي غُدِيرٍ مِقْدَارِ** its water collects in a pond, measuring a bowshot by a bowshot; **رَأَى فِي الْمَاءِ سَكَّةَ مِقْدَارِ ذِرَاعٍ** he saw in the water a fish, measuring a cubit (in length); **اجْتَمَعَ لَهُ فِي أَيَّامِ** there were collected of them by him, in the days of *el-Ma'mūn*, about 3000 slaves; **لَعَلَّهُ يَكُونُ عَلَى النَّجِيَّتِ مِنْهَا زُهَاءُ أَلْفِ ذِرَاعٍ** perhaps there may be on each corpse about 1000 ells of it; **إِلَى زُهَاءِ نِصْفِهَا** to about the half of it;

- A طُولُ الصَّنَمِ زُهَاءٌ ثَلَاثِينَ ذِرَاعًا *the length (height) of the image is about thirty cubits*. This last word is sometimes construed with *مِنْ*, as نَحْنُ زُهَاءٌ مِنْ خَمْسِ مِائَةِ رَجُلٍ *we were about 500 men in number*.

- (g) نَحْوٌ properly signifies *direction, quarter*, and is used in the accusative as a preposition (see § 65). But more usually نَحْوٌ is employed, in all its cases, as a substantive or adjective, to signify *such as, like*; as رَجُلٌ نَحْوُ زَيْدٍ *a man like Zèid*; وَكَذَلِكَ فِي سَائِرِ كَالصَّلَاةِ وَالصَّوْمِ *and similarly in regard to the other moral qualities, such as liberality and niggardliness*; تَكَلَّمَ نَحْوُ زَيْدٍ *(i.e. as prayer, fasting, and the like)*; تَكَلَّمَ تَكَلَّمًا نَحْوَ تَكَلُّمِ زَيْدٍ *(he spoke like Zèid)*. As a substantive it also means *about*, in which case it may be followed (like زُهَاءٌ in *f*, rem. *b*) by *مِنْ*; as وَالشَّمْعُ نَحْوُ مِنْ مِائَةِ شَمْعَةٍ *and the wax-candles were about a hundred*; لَمْ يَفْلِتْ مِنْ أَهْلِهَا إِلَّا نَحْوُ ثَلَاثِينَ رَجُلًا *there escaped of its inhabitants only about thirty men*; كَانَ فِي نَحْوِ أَرْبَعَةِ *he was at the head of about 4000*; عَلَى نَحْوِ سِتِّ مَرَاحِلَ *at (a distance of) about six marches*; فِيهَا حَيَّاتٌ صَغَارٌ نَحْوُ الشَّيْبَرِ *in it are small snakes, about a span (long)*; صَادَ سَكَّةٌ نَحْوُ الشَّيْبَرِ *he caught a fish about a span (long)*; هِيَ فِي الْكَبْرِ نَحْوُ مِنْ فَيْدٍ *it is about the size of Fèid*; وَهُمْ نَحْوُ مِنْ أَرْبَعِ مِائَةِ رَجُلٍ *and they were about 400 men (in number)*; رَوَى نَحْوًا مِمَّا ذَكَرْنَا *he handed down nearly the same (story) as we have mentioned*; أَعْطَى عُبَيْدُ اللَّهِ الْهَارِثَ نَحْوًا مِنْ خَمْسِينَ أَلْفَ دِرْهَمٍ *Obèidu'llāh gave el-Hārith about 50,000 dirhams*.

83. كِلَانٍ, fem. كِلَتَانِ, both, a pair (compare Heb. כִּלְאִים two things of different kinds, Æth. ክልኢ: fem. ክልኢቲ: two),

is always construed with the genitive dual of a definite noun or A pronoun, or, it may be, with the gen. sing. or plur. of a pronoun, when it is to be taken in the sense of the dual; as **كِلَا الرَّجُلَيْنِ** both the men; **كِلَا الْجَنَّتَيْنِ** both the gardens; **أَحَدُهُمَا أَوْ كِلَاهُمَا** one of the two or both of them; **وَيَعْلَمُ أَنْ سَيَلْقَاهُ كِلَانَا** and He knows that both of us will meet Him (at the judgment); **إِنَّ لِلْخَيْرِ وَالشَّرِّ مَدًى** both good and evil have their limit, and both are plain and clear (**قَبْلُ** in rhyme for **قَبْلُ**). This word is not B inflected except when it is connected with a pronominal suffix; as **مَرَرْتُ بِكِلْتَا** (not **كِلَى**) **رَأَيْتُ كِلَا أَخَوَيْكَ** I have seen thy two brothers; **إِنَّ أَلْمَعْلَمَ** (not **بِكِلْتَى**) **أُخْتَيْكَ** I passed by thy two sisters; but **مَرَرْتُ** **وَالطَّبِيبَ كِلَيْهِمَا** the teacher and the physician, both of them, **مَرَرْتُ** **بِزَيْنَبَ وَفَاطِمَةَ كِلْتَيْهِمَا** I passed by Zèinab and Fāṭima, both of them. Although dual in form, it takes the predicate in the singular; as **كِلَاهُمَا مُحِبٌّ لِصَاحِبِهِ** each of them loves his friend, i.e. they C love one another; **كِلَانَا غِنَى عَنْ أَخِيهِ حَيَوَتُهُ** each of us can dispense with his brother, all his life long; **كِلَانَا إِذَا مَا نَالَ شَيْئًا أَفَاتَهُ** when either of us obtains anything, he lets it slip; **كِلَا أَخَوَيْنَا كَانَ قُرْعًا دِعَامَةً** each of our two brothers was an eminent man, a support of his people; **كِلْتَا** **كِلَاكُمَا لَمْ يَصِبْ** [neither of you has hit the right thing]; **كِلْتَا** **الْجَنَّتَيْنِ آتَتْ أَكْلَهَا** each of the gardens produced its fruit; **هَهُنَا** D **رَجُلَانِ كِلَاهُمَا إِلَيْكَ بَغِيضٌ** here are two men, both of whom are hateful to you.—In poetry it is sometimes joined to two singular genitives, as **كِلَا أَخِي وَخَلِيلِي وَاجِدِي عَضْدًا فِي النَّائِبَاتِ** my brother and my friend both find me a help in misfortunes; but in prose we cannot say **كِلَا زَيْدٍ وَعَمْرٍو** both Zèid and 'Amr, instead of **زَيْدٌ وَعَمْرٍو** or **كِلَاهُمَا** **زَيْدٌ وَعَمْرٍو**.

or رُبَّهَا أَمْرَةٌ, *many a woman*; رُبُّهُمْ رِجَالًا *many men*; لِرُبَّهِنَّ نِسَاءٌ A *many women*.

REM. a. Other forms of this word are: رُبَّتْ, رَبَّ, رَبَّ, رَبُّ, رَبُّ, of which the most common are رَبَّ and رُبَّتْ; as أُمَيْمَةُ هَلْ تَذَرِينَ أَنَّ رَبَّ صَاحِبٍ فَارَقْتُ يَوْمَ حُشَّاشٍ غَيْرَ ضَعِيفٍ 'Umèima, dost thou know that I parted on the day (i.e. at the battle) of Hoshâs from many a sturdy friend (ضَعِيفٍ in rhyme for ضَعِيفٍ); رُبَّ خُطْبَةٍ B *many a long oration* (in rhyme for مُسَحْنِفَةٍ).—The addition of مَا أَلْكَافَةُ (see § 36, rem. d) usually hinders the regimen of رَبَّ, as رُبَّهَا أَلْجَامِلُ أَلْمَوْبِلُ فِيهِمْ رَبَّ *many a large and thriving herd of camels is (to be found) among them*; but it is sometimes added without producing any effect ([مَا أَلْزَائِدَةُ]; see § 70, rem. f), as رُبَّهَا ضَرْبَةٌ بِسَيْفٍ صَقِيلٍ C *many a stroke with a polished sword*; رُبَّهَا غَارَةٌ *many a raid* (see rem. c).

REM. b. From رَبَّ and مَا is formed the adverb رُبَّمَا *many a time, sometimes, perhaps*, which may be prefixed to either a nominal [in which case مَا is مَا أَلْكَافَةُ] or a verbal clause [in which case مَا is مَا أَلْمُضَدَّرِيَّة]; as رُبَّمَا زَيْدٌ فِي الْبَيْتِ *perhaps Zèid is in the house*; رُبَّمَا يَوْمٌ أَلْذِينَ *many a time has Zèid come to me*; رُبَّمَا كَفَرُوا لَوْ كَانُوا مُسْلِمِينَ D *wish that they had been Muslims*; رُبَّمَا يَقُولُ مَا لَا تَقْبَلُهُ أَلْعُقُولُ *perhaps he may say something which our undertakings cannot receive (which we cannot admit)**.

* [In the verse رُبَّمَا تَكْرَهُ أَلْنَفُوسُ مِنْ أَلْأَمْرِ لَهُ فُرْجَةٌ كَحَلِّ الْعِقَالِ *for many a thing that the souls dislike there is a removal (as easy) as the loosing of a camel's rope*, مَا is a مَوْصُوفَةٌ (Vol. i. § 348), with مَا أَلْأَمْرِ as بَيَانٌ, and لَهُ فُرْجَةٌ الْخ as صِفَةٌ. See Fleischer, *Kl. Schr.* i. 420.]

- A REM. c. رُبُّ is the accusative of a substantive رُبٌّ, Heb. רַב, *multitude, quantity*, dependent upon the interjection يَا (§ 38, α, β), which is generally understood, though sometimes expressed; as
 يَا رُبَّ كَاسِيَةٍ فِي الدُّنْيَا عَارِيَةٌ يَوْمَ الْقِيَمَةِ *many a (woman who is) clothed in this world, (will be) naked on the day of the resurrection*;
 يَا رُبَّ صَائِيَةٍ لَنْ يَصُومَهُ *many a one who is keeping its fast (now) shall not keep its fast (again)*, meaning the fast of Ramadān;
- B
 يَا رُبَّ خَالٍ لِي أَغْرَأْتَنِي يَا رُبَّ مِثْلِكَ فِي (أَبْلَجَ) *many a maternal uncle have I, noble and bright of countenance* (أَبْلَجَ in rhyme for أَيْلَجَ);
 يَا رُبَّ مِثْلِكَ فِي (أَبْلَجَ) *many a one like thee among women, inexperienced in love affairs*;
 مَآوِيَّ يَا رُبَّتَمَا غَارَةً شَعْوَاءَ كَاللَّذَعَةِ بِالْإِيمِسِيرِ *Māwīya, many a far extending raid is like a burn with the branding iron*. Together with its genitive it has the value of a whole clause, to the indefinite noun in which there is added a صِفَةٌ, that is to say,
- C
 an adjective or a clause taking the place of an adjective. This صِفَةٌ the grammarians call جَوَابُ رُبِّ, *the answer or complement of رُبِّ*.—It is curious to note that رُبُّ has passed, like the German *manch*, Fr. *maint*, and Eng. *many a . . .*, from its original signification of *multitude*, into one which is almost the opposite, viz. *not a great many*. The same remark applies to رُبَّتَمَا and the Germ. *vielleicht, perhaps*. Hence some of the Arab grammarians say that رُبُّ is used لِلتَّقْلِيلِ to denote a small number; others, لِلتَّكْثِيرِ to denote a large number.
- D

85. In consequence of the elision of رُبِّ, we frequently find the indefinite genitive alone after the conjunction وَ (وَ رُبِّ) *the wāw of rubba, equivalent in meaning to rubba*); as
 وَكَأْسٍ شَرِبْتُ وَأَرَاكَةَ ضَرَبْتُ سَمَاءَ فَوْقَنَا *many a cup have I quaffed; many an 'arāka-tree formed a roof over us*;
 وَلَيْلٍ كَمَوْجِ الْبَحْرِ أَرْخَى سُدُولَهُ عَلَيْنَا *many a night, like (dark as) the waves of the sea, has let down its curtain*

upon me; أَوْثِقَاحَةٍ مِنْ سَوْسَنِ صَيْغٍ نِصْفَهَا وَمِنْ جُلْنَارٍ نِصْفَهَا وَشَقَاتِي A
there is many an apple, the one half of which is fashioned of a lily,
and the other half of a pomegranate blossom and an anemone.—The
same is the case, though rarely, after ف, and still more rarely after
بَل; as بَلْ فَمِثْلِكَ حُبْلَى قَدْ طَرَقْتُ وَمَرْضِعُ many a one like thee have I
visited by night, pregnant and nursing a child; بَلْ بَلَدٍ مَلَأَ الْفَجَاجَ قَتْمُهُ
nay, many a town, the dust of which fills the wide roads (قَتْمُهُ in rhyme
for قَتْمُهُ); (قَتْمُهُ in rhyme for قَتْمُهُ); بَلْ مَهْمَةٍ قَطَعْتُ بَعْدَ مَهْمَةٍ B
have I traversed; بَلْ جَوْرِ تَيْهَاءَ كَظْهَرِ الْحَجَفَتِ
of a desert, like the back of a shield (الْحَجَفَةُ in rhyme for الْحَجَفَةُ).
Occasionally even these particles are omitted, and the genitive alone
appears; as رَسِيرٌ دَارٍ وَقَفْتُ فِي طَلَلِهِ many a deserted abode, amid the
ruins of which I have stood (طَلَلِهِ in rhyme for طَلَلِهِ); نَرْجِسٍ بَاكَرْتُ
many a garden of lilies have I C
visited early in the morning, in which it was sweet and pleasant to
pass the time (وَعَذْبٌ in rhyme for وَعَذْبٌ).

[REM. The theory about this وَ with a following genitive is that of most native and European scholars. Nevertheless, I think it ought to be rejected. There are a great many cases where it is impossible to render it by *many a*, as it appears from the context that a single person, a single object, or a single fact is recorded, so that we must translate it by *I remember, I think of, D*
O that! etc., as وَتَاجِرٍ فَاجِرٍ جَاءَ الْإِلَهُ بِهِ Oh that unbelieving wine-
merchant, a real godsend! whom the poet robbed; وَجَفْنٍ سَلَّاحٍ
I think about that scabbard of mine that I have been
deprived of; وَمُرْسِلٍ وَرَسُولٍ Oh sender and sent one! (on that
splendid evening); وَنَوَاعِمٍ I think of those tender ladies, who spoke
on the day of my departure; وَأُطْلَسَ عَسَالٍ Oh that dust-coloured
wolf! says el-Farazdaq, telling of his meeting with a wolf. I take

- A this وَ to be the remnant of a word, like the وَ in **وَاللَّهِ** (comp. Vol. i. § 356, footnote). In fact, though the elision of **رُبَّ** after a copulative وَ is not impossible, as is sometimes the case after **فَ** and **بَلْ**, I do not remember ever to have seen **وَرُبَّ** at the beginning of a sentence, nor do we ever find **رُبَّ** employed where only a single person, object or fact is mentioned. D. G.]

86. With the genitive are also construed verbal adjectives expressing the superlative, whether of the common form **أَفْعَلُ** (Vol. i. § 234), or of any other form, such as **فَعْلٌ** (e.g. **خَيْرٌ**); as **أَعْلَمُ** **خَيْرُ الْبَرِيَّةِ** *the most learned of the philosophers*, **خَيْرُ الْبَرِيَّةِ** *the best of created things* (see § 93). Here the genitive designates the whole, out of which some one or something is brought conspicuously forward as its most remarkable part. As **أَفْعَلُ** and **فَعْلٌ** are in this construction definite substantives, and not adjectives, they do not conform in gender and number to the object or objects referred to; so that
- C **أَفْضَلُ الْقَوْمِ** or **خَيْرُ الْبَرِيَّةِ** may be said of a single man or woman, or of two or more persons of either sex [comp. § 93, rem. a].—To indicate that an object is the greatest or most distinguished of its kind, the substantive is often repeated in the form of the definite genitive plural; as **أَمِيرُ الْأُمَرَاءِ** *the emir of the emirs*, i.e. *the chief emir*; **قَاضِي الْقَضَاةِ** *the chief judge*; **طَلْحَةُ الطَّلَحَاتِ** *the Talḥa of the Talḥas*, i.e. *the noblest of those who bear the name of Talḥa*.—To show that certain objects possess the highest degree of a quality, the adjective
- D which designates that quality is construed with the genitive plural of the substantive, and becoming then virtually a substantive need not vary with the gender and number of the objects spoken of; as **نَفِيسُ الْجَوَاهِرِ** *the most precious gems* (lit. *the precious of gems*); **سَابِغُ الْبَرَاعِ**, or **سَوَابِغُ الْبَرَاعِ**, *the most ample favours*; **صَالِحُ الْإِخْوَانِ** *the truest friends*; **صَالِحُ نِسَاءِ كُرْدِشٍ** *the best women of Kurdîsh*; **صَالِحُ الْأَخْلَاقِ** *the best manners*.—Another manner of expressing the

same is the use of the superlative followed by مَا (المَصْدَرِيَّةُ) with the A
corresponding person of كَانَ or another verb, or with the cor-
responding personal pronoun, as هَذَا أَحَبُّ مَا كَانَ or هُوَ هَذَا أَحَبُّ مَا هُوَ
he is the craftiest man that lives; فَقَاتَلُوهُ كَأَشَدِّ مَا يَكُونُ مِنْ الْقِتَالِ
they fought against him as fierce a fight as is possible; وَالْآنَ أَحْوَجُ
وَأَلَّا نَحْتَاجُ مَا كُنَّا إِلَى زَادٍ and at present we have the greatest want of
provisions; أَوْجَرَ مَا أَتْنَا بِبَيْعَةٍ أَكْثَرِ مَا كَانَتْ for the highest price; أَنَا
أُوجِرُ مَا أَتْنَا بِبَيْعَةٍ أَكْثَرِ مَا كَانَتْ I dislike nothing more than (the name of) Samlaka; B
هَذَا أَحَبُّ مَا هُوَ هَذَا أَحَبُّ مَا هُوَ this (horse) is indeed most excellently trained.
Comp. Fleischer, *Kl. Schr.* i. 475 seq., 685 seq. iii. 16 and my note
Journ. Asiat. 1883, i. 541, 542. D. G.]

REM. a. The numeral adjective أَوَّلُ first, being strictly a super-
lative, is also construed with the genitive, as أَوَّلُهُمُ the first of them,
أَوَّلُ يَوْمٍ the first day = أَوَّلُ الْيَوْمِ; but this construction is not
extended in classical Arabic to the other ordinal numbers (Vol. i. C
§ 328), which are nomina agentis from transitive verbs (see § 109),
though later writers not unfrequently use them in this way, as
الثَّانِيَّةُ for the second time = الثَّانِيَّةُ. Modern and vulgar are
such constructions as الثَّانِي يَوْمٍ the second day, الثَّالِثُ مَرَّةً the
third time. [Comp. § 108.]

REM. b. In such phrases as عَزِيزُ كِتَابِكُمْ your honoured letter,
the genitive does not designate the whole, of which the مضاف is a
part, but it is (as in نَهْرُ الْأُرْدُنِّ the river Jordan) merely explicative D
(see § 95); so that عَزِيزُ كِتَابِكُمْ = عَزِيزُ كِتَابِكُمْ =
لَيْسَ لَهُ رُسْتَاقٌ كَبِيرٌ = لَيْسَ لَهُ كَبِيرٌ رُسْتَاقٌ. [Similarly كَبِيرٌ رُسْتَاقٌ
it has no great territory*.]

* [On the use of كَبِيرٌ and كَثِيرٌ with a following genitive in
negative sentences, see the Gloss. to Ṭabarī s. v. أَحَد. D. G.]

- A 87. The interrogative pronoun أَيُّ, fem. أَيَّة (Vol. i. §§ 349, 353), is construed with the genitive, indefinite or definite; as أَيُّ رَجُلٍ *which man?* أَيُّ رَجُلَيْنِ *which two men?* أَيُّ الرَّجُلَيْنِ *which of the two men?* أَيُّ رِجَالٍ *which men?* أَيُّ الرِّجَالِ *which of the men?* أَيُّ مَنِ رَأَيْتَ أَفْضَلَ *which of those whom thou hast seen is the better, or the best?* أَيُّ الَّذِينَ لَقِيتَ أَكْرَمَ *which of those whom thou hast met*
 B *is the noblest?* أَيُّهُمَا *which of the two?* أَيُّهُمْ *which of them?* In the former case the annexation is explicative, in the latter partitive.—With a definite singular أَيُّ can be construed only when the annexation is strictly partitive, as أَيُّ الرَّجُلِ أَحْسَنُ *what (part or feature) of the man, or of Zaid, is the most handsome?* or else when أَيُّ itself is repeated, as أَيُّي وَآيِكَ كَانَ شَرًّا فَأَخْرَاهُ اللَّهُ *whichever of us (two) be the bad one, may God bring him to shame;*
 C *why dost thou not ask the people, which of us, on the morning we met, was the best and the most noble?* (أَيُّنَا = أَيُّي وَآيِكَ and أَيُّيكَ).

88. The genitive of a verbal noun is not unfrequently resolved into a clause consisting of أَنْ or مَا and a finite form of the verb; as مِنْ قِيَامِكَ = عَجِبْتُ مِنْ أَنْ قُمْتَ *I wonder at thy standing up*; وَإِنَّمَا سَمِيَ = وَقْتُ اسْتِتَارِهِ *at the time he hid himself*; طَالِبُ الْعِلْمِ مَا تَقُولُ لِكثْرَةِ مَا يَقُولُونَ فِي الزَّمَانِ الْأَوَّلِ مَا تَقُولُ فِي هَذِهِ الْمَسْئَلَةِ *the student of science was named Mā-taḥūlu (what dost thou say?) for no other reason than that, in the olden time, they used constantly to say, What dost thou say (mā taḥūlu) about this question? = لِكثْرَةِ قَوْلِهِمْ*; عَجِبْتُ مِمَّا ضَرَبْتَ زَيْدًا *I wonder at thy beating Zaid*, = مِنْ ضَرْبِكَ *because they have forgotten the day of reckoning*, = يَنْسِيَانَهُمَا *because they have forgotten the day of reckoning*.

وَحَبَّتْ and the earth became (too) narrow for you, notwithstanding its A breadth. In the same way, a verbal or nominal clause is often found as the مَضَافُ إِلَيْهِ or genitive after substantives, especially those denoting time or portions of time. Compare §§ [23, rem. c], 70, rem. f, and 78.

REM. In this case the أَنْ or مَا is مُضَدَّرِيَّةٌ, because the clause which it introduces is equivalent to the *maṣḍar* or infinitive of the verb, [Vol. i. § 195, rem.].

89. Adjectives and participles may take after them a restrictive B or limitative genitive; as طَاهِرُ الْقَلْبِ حَسَنُ الْوَجْهِ handsome of face; طَاهِرُ الْقَلْبِ pure of heart; شَدِيدُ الْحَرَارَةِ very warm; صَرِيعُ الْكَأْسِ smitten down by the wine-cup, intoxicated (compare יָיִן הַלְלוּמִי, Isaiah xxviii. 1); قَلِيلُ الْحَبْلِ smitten by (enamoured of) the fair sex; كَثْرَةُ نَفْسٍ having few wives or shifts; عَظِيمُ الْأَمَلِ having great hopes; كُلُّ نَفْسٍ هَدَىٰ بَالِغَ الْكَعْبَةِ every soul shall taste death; ذَائِقَةُ الْمَوْتِ which arrives at the Ka'ba (بَالِغٌ is construed with the accusative of C the object reached); جَانِلَةُ الْوِشَاحِ (a woman) whose waist-band, or girdle, fits loosely; مَحْمُودُ السَّيْرِ one whose conduct is praised or praiseworthy; مُسْتَجَابُ الدُّعَاءِ sagacious of mind; رَجُلَانِ حَسَنَا الْوُجْهِينِ [two or more men with handsome faces]. Compare in Latin *aeger animi, integer vitae scelerisque purus*, etc. This annexation is D an improper one (§ 75, rem.), standing in place either of a *təmyiz-accusative* (§ 44, e) or an accusative of the object*. Hence the genitive, though always defined by the article, exercises no defining

* [The two constructions may even occur in the same sentence, as إِنَّمَا أُولَئِكَ الصَّغَارُ الْأَخْطَارُ الدِّقَاقُ هِمَامًا those (who do such things) are only the men of little dignity and of mean aspirations. D. G.]

- A influence upon the governing word, any more than the accusative which it represents; and consequently, if we wish to define the governing word, we must prefix to it the article; as **مُحَمَّدٌ الْحَسَنُ** *Muhammad, the handsome of face*, or **الْحَجْدُ الشَّعْرُ** *with the curly hair*; **زَيْدٌ الضَّارِبُ رَأْسَ الْجَانِي** *Zaid, who smites the head of the offender*; **هِنْدُ الْجَائِلَةُ الْوُشَاحَ** *Hind, whose girdle fits loosely*; **الضَّارِبُ الرَّجُلَ** *he who strikes the man*, **الضَّرَابُ الرَّجُلَ** *those who strike the man*, **الضَّوَارِبُ الرَّجُلَ** *those (women) who strike the man*, **الضَّرِبَاتُ الرَّجُلَ** *those (women) who strike the man's slave*; **الْمُقِيمُوا الصَّلَاةَ** *those who perform (the rites of) prayer*; **الْمُبْدِيكَ** *He who created thee*; **اللَّائِمِي** *he who rebukes me* (compare **יִצְחָק**, Isaiah ix. 12); **الْمُوعِدِي** *he who threatens me*; **النِّسَاءُ الَّتِي رَضَعَاتِكَ** *the women that have suckled thee*; **الْمُرْسِلَهَا** *he who has let her go out*].
- C REM. Observe, however, that the annexation may in some of these cases be a proper one, either of a partitive or an explicative character. For example, **حَسَنُ الْوَجْهِ** may possibly mean *the handsome (part) of the face*, or even *the handsome face*; **مُسْتَجَابُ الدُّعَاءِ** *that part of the prayer which has been answered*; **شَدِيدُ الْحَرَارَةِ** *the most intense portion of the heat* (compare § 86, with rem. b, and § 95). In this case the article can, of course, never be prefixed to
- D the **مُضَافٍ**.

90. No word can be interposed between the noun in the status constructus and the genitive, and consequently an adjective which qualifies the former must be placed *after* the latter; as **كِتَابُ اللَّهِ** *the glorious book of God*; **يَدُهُ الْيُمْنَى** *his right hand*. Exceptions to this rule are very rare, and found almost exclusively in the poets, who sometimes take the liberty of interposing an oath or some other word. For example, in prose: **فَلَا تَحْسِبَنَّ اللَّهَ مُخَلِّفَ وَعْدِهِ رُسُلِهِ**

think not then that God will fail to keep His promise to His apostles, A
 (èl-Kor'an, xiv. 48, according to one reading); وَكَذَلِكَ زَيْنَ لِكَثِيرٍ
 and in like manner the killing of their children by their companions was made to seem good to many
 of the polytheists (èl-Kor'an, vi. 138, according to one reading);
 هَلْ أَنتُمْ تَارِكُو لِى صَاحِبِى do you not leave me my companion? (words
 of the Prophet, reported by 'Abū 'd-Darda); تَرُكْ يَوْمًا نَفْسِكَ وَمَوَاهَا
 to let your soul alone one day with its lust is an B
 effort towards its destruction; إِنَّ الشَّاةَ تَسْمَعُ صَوْتَ وَاللَّهِ رَبِّهِ the sheep
 hears the voice, by God, of its master. Again, in poetry: [وَلِلَّهِ مُلْكٌ
 how many kingdoms (to God the glory!) did I not enter, and how many horsemen did I not pierce! Tab. i. 1964,
 l. 16 with لِلَّهِ (§ 53, b, rem. e) put between the وَأَوْ رَبِّ and the
 genitive. D. G.]; well done he who has to-day C
 rebuked her! أَوْ يَزِيلُ as a book, or letter, was written one day by the hand of a Jew, writing
 (the lines) nearer or farther (from one another); فَرَجَجْتُهَا بِمِرْجَةٍ رَجَّ
 and I stabbed her with a short lance, as 'Abū
 Məzāda stabs a young camel (مَزَادَةٌ in rhyme for مَزَادَةٌ); فَسُقْنَاهُمْ سَوْقَ
 and we put them to flight as falcons put to flight
 kites; they D
 (the locusts) rub down the grains of the full ears in the fields, as the
 mihlāḡ (an iron instrument) rubs down the cotton, (clearing it of its
 seeds); وَسِوَاكَ مَانِعُ فَضْلِهِ الْمُحْتَاجِ whilst others than thou withhold
 their benefits from the needy; وَفَاقُ كَعْبٍ مُنْعِدٌ لَكَ مِنْ تَعْجِيلِ agreement with Buḡeir saves thee, Ka'b, from
 speedy destruction and from remaining for ever in hell (for وَفَاقُ

- A *O Abū 'Iṣām, it is as if Zèid's hack were an ass made thin by the bridle (by constant riding);* نَجَوْتُ وَقَدْ بَلَ أَلْمُرَادِيُّ سَيْفَهُ مِنْ ابْنِ أَبِي شَيْخِ الْأَبَاطِحِ طَالِبِ *I escaped, but the Murādī ('Abdu 'r-Raḥman 'ibn Mulgām) wetted his sword with the blood of ('Ali), the son of 'Abū Tālib, the chief of the valleys (of Mèkka);* وَلَيْتَنُ حَلَفْتُ عَلَى
- B *and verily, if I swear before thee, I swear with the oath of a swearer which is more truthful than thy oath (for (بَيِّمِينَ مُقْسِرَ أَصْدَقٍ مِنْ يَمِينِكَ مُقْسِرٍ وَلَا تَرَعَوِي عَنْ نَقْضِ (بَيِّمِينَ مُقْسِرَ أَصْدَقٍ مِنْ يَمِينِكَ مُقْسِرٍ) but our desires do not refrain from breaking our resolutions; they are the brothers in war of him who has no brother. From these examples it appears that the word interposed is usually either an oath, an objective*
- C *complement of the مُضَافٍ, an adverbial accusative of time, or a vocative.*

- REM. Of the insertion of مَا الزَّائِدَةُ, or the redundant mā, after certain of the prepositions and رَبِّ we have already given some examples, §§ 70, rem. f, 84, rem. a. It sometimes occurs in other cases, as: *وَيْحَمَا زَيْدُ! woe to Zèid! غَضِبْتَ مِنْ غَيْرِ مَا جُرِمَ! thou art angry without any offence; أَيُّمَا الْأَجَلَيْنِ قَضَيْتَ whichever of the two terms I fulfil; يَا شَاةَ مَا قَنَصَ لِمَنْ حَلَّتْ لَهُ! O antelope of chase for him (to be chased and caught by him) for whom it is lawful; كَلَّ مَا عَامَ تَلِدُ! who brings forth (for تَلِدُ) every year.* [The insertion of لَا is explained by its forming one word with the following genitive, as: *غَضِبَ مِنْ لَا شَيْءٍ he was angry for nothing; تَرَكْتَنِي حِينَ لَا مَالٍ أَعِيشُ بِهِ he came without food; جَاءَ بَلَا زَادٍ thou hast abandoned me at a time when there was nothing that I could live by. D. G.]*

91. The relative adjectives ending in **ي** (Vol. i. § 249), because A standing to some extent in the place of a genitive, admit of a genitive in apposition to them; as **رَأَيْتُ التَّيْمِيَّ تَيْمِرَ عَدِيٍّ** *I saw the Taimi, (namely) of (the tribe of) Taim ('ibn) 'Adi, = تَيْمِرُ مِنَ التَّيْمِ **رَأَيْتُ الرَّجُلَ مِنْ تَيْمِرَ** *Othba 'ibn Gazwān el-Māzinī, (namely) of (the tribe of) Māzin of Kais, founded el-Baṣra; يَقُولُ عَبْدُ اللَّهِ بْنُ الزُّبَيْرِ الْأَسَدِيُّ* *says 'Abdu 'llāh 'ibn ẓ-Zubīr el-Asadī, of (the tribe of) Asad ('ibn) B Ḥozēima; وَلَقِيَ أَبَا الْقَتَحِ ابْنَ الرِّدْدَانَكَانِيِّ بَلَدٍ بَيْنَ سَرَّحَسَ وَمَرْوَ* *and he met Abū 'l-Feth 'ibn 'ar-Riddānakānī, (from Riddānakān), a town between Sērāḥs and Mērw; لَهَا كَانَتْ الْأَيَّامُ النَّاصِرِيَّةُ مُحَمَّدٍ* *after there came the Nāsirean days, (I mean the days of el-Melik ẓ-n-Nāsir) Muḥammad 'ibn Kalā'ūn; and even with the interposition of a word, أَبُو عُبَيْدَةَ مَعْمَرُ بْنُ أَلْمُنَى التَّيْمِيُّ بِالْوَلَاءِ* *Abū 'Obēida Ma'mar 'ibn el-Mutannū, by clientship of C the tribe of Taim, (namely) Taim of Korēis.**

92. In the proper annexation, if the second noun be indefinite, the first is so too; but if the second be definite, so is the first likewise. For example, **بِنْتُ مَلِكٍ** is *a daughter of a king, a king's daughter, a princess*, Fr. *une fille de roi*, Germ. *eine Königstochter*; but **بِنْتُ الْمَلِكِ** is *the daughter of the king, the king's daughter*, Fr. *la fille du roi*, Germ. *die Tochter des Königs* (either his only D daughter or that daughter of his who has been already spoken of).—If we wish the first noun to remain indefinite, whilst the second is definite, we must substitute for the annexation the construction with the preposition **لِ** (§ 53, b, rem. c); e.g. **بِنْتُ لِلْمَلِكِ** *a daughter of the king*; **مَاتَ لِي أَخٌ** *a brother of mine is dead* (whereas **مَاتَ أَخِي** would mean *my brother is dead*, that is to say, either *my only brother* or *that one of my brothers of whom we have been speaking*).

- A —There are some nouns, however, of a wide and general signification, which may remain indefinite even when followed by a definite genitive; for instance, *نَظِيرُهُ نَحْوُهُ*, *مِثْلُهُ*, [شَبِيهُهُ], *something like him or it*; *بَعْضُ الْفُقَرَاءِ* *some poor people*; *بَعْضُ الْأَغَايِرِ* *a cave*; (see § 82, c, f [and rem. b], g); *أَحَدُهُمْ* *some one of them*; *جُزْأُهُ* *a part of it*; *ثُلُثُهُ* *a third of it*. Likewise we find *أَوَّلُ النَّاسِ* and *أَفْضَلُ قَوْمِهِ* used B in an indefinite sense*].

- REM. In such phrases as *أَمْرٌ آخِرَةٌ وَدُنْيَا*, *a matter of this life and the life to come*, the indefinite *إِلَيْهِ مَضَافٍ* shows that the *مَضَافٍ* is to be regarded as a single part, *some one matter*, etc. In such cases the genitive may even be *virtually* definite, but nevertheless it does not take the article, in order to preserve the governing word from becoming definite. *أَمْرٌ آخِرَةٌ وَدُنْيَا* is in fact equivalent in meaning to *أَمْرٌ مِنْ أُمُورِ الْآخِرَةِ وَالْدُّنْيَا*. The same remark C applies to those indefinite annexations which supply the place of compound nouns or adjectives; e.g. *قَصْرٌ مَلِكٍ*, *a royal castle*, nearly the same as *قَصْرٌ مِنْ قُصُورِ الْمَلِكِ*; *إِمْرَأَةٌ حَجَّامٍ* may be *a barber's wife* and *the wife of a (certain) barber*, though in the latter case it would be better to write *إِمْرَأَةٌ حَجَّامٍ مِنَ الْحَجَّامِينَ*. D. G.]

93. Nouns of the forms *أَفْعَلٌ*, *فَعْلٌ*, etc., used as superlatives (see § 86), are construed as substantives in the singular masculine D with the genitive of the word denoting the objects among which the one spoken of is preeminent. The genitive is at times indefinite and explicative, at times definite and partitive†. Examples of the indefinite

* [I owe this observation to Prof. Nöldeke. D. G.]

† [Such expressions as *هُوَ أَفْضَلُ إِخْوَانِهِ* *he is the most excellent of his brethren*, or *هُوَ خَيْرُ أَصْحَابِهِ* *he is the best of his companions*, are not exceptions to the rule, for they mean *هُوَ أَفْضَلُ الْإِخْوَانِ الَّذِينَ هُوَ* *أَحَدُهُمْ*. Though Ḥariri, *Durrat*, 9 condemns them strongly, they are not rare. D. G.]

genitive : هُوَ أَفْضَلُ رَجُلٍ *he is a [or the] most excellent man* ; هِيَ أَفْضَلُ أَمْرَأَةٍ *she is a [or the] most excellent woman* ; هُمَا أَفْضَلُ رَجُلَيْنِ *they are two [or the two] most excellent men* ; هُنَّ أَفْضَلُ نِسَاءٍ *they are most [or the most] excellent women* ; اللَّهُ خَيْرُ حَافِظٍ *God is the best preserver* ; كُنْتُمْ خَيْرَ أُمَّةٍ أُخْرِجَتْ لِلنَّاسِ *ye are the best nation that has been created for mankind* ; أَلِفُّهُ أَفْضَلُ قَائِدٍ إِلَى الْبِرِّ وَأَعْدَلُ *learning is the best guide to piety, and walks in the straightest* B *of paths* ; وَصَفَ الْيَهُودَ بِالْبُخْلِ وَالْحَسَدِ وَهُمَا شَرُّ خَصَلَتَيْنِ *he described the Jews as being avaricious and envious, and these two are the worst of qualities. Examples of the definite genitive* : هِيَ أَفْضَلُ النِّسَاءِ *she is the best of the women* ; وَمَيَّةٌ أَفْضَلُ الثَّقَلَيْنِ جَمْدًا *and Maiya is the fairest as to neck of all beings* (الثَّقَلَانِ means *mankind and the ginn*) ; هُمَا أَفْضَلُ الْقَوْمِ *these two are the two best of the tribe* ; C *ye two are the most truthful of the truthful* ; أَلَا أُخْبِرُكُمْ بِأَحَبِّكُمْ إِلَيَّ وَأَقْرَبَكُمْ مِنِّي مَجَالِسَ يَوْمِ الْقِيَمَةِ *I will tell you who are the dearest of you to me, and who of you shall have the nearest seats to me on the day of the resurrection* ; وَلَتَجِدَنَّهُمْ أَحْرَصَ *and verily thou wilt find them the greediest of men after life* ; خَيْرُ الْأُمُورِ أَوْسَاطُهَا *the best of things are the mediums (or means between two extremes)* ; شَرُّ النَّاسِ مَنْ يَذْهَبُ بِدِينِهِ لِدِينٍ غَيْرِهِ *the worst of men is he who changes his religion for that of others* ; D *the best of times are early youth and early morning. Compare in general § 86. Here must also be mentioned the indefinite genitive after* أَوَّلُ *first*, and آخِرُ *last*, these words being (as already remarked in reference to the former, § 86, rem. a) really superlatives ; e.g. إِنَّ أَوَّلَ بَيْتٍ وُضِعَ لِلنَّاسِ لِلَّذِي *the first house (temple) which was founded for mankind, was that*

- A in *Bèkka* (*Mèkka*); *مَسْجِدٌ أُسِّسَ عَلَى اتَّقْوَى مِنْ أَوَّلِ يَوْمٍ* a mosque which was founded upon the fear of God from the first day (of its existence); *عَنِ ابْنِ عَبَّاسٍ أَنَّهَا آخِرُ آيَةٍ نَزَّلَ بِهَا جِبْرِيلُ*, (it is stated) on the authority of 'Ibn 'Abbās that this is the last verse (of the *Kor'ān*) which was revealed by Gabriel (lit. with which Gabriel came down). Instead of *أَوَّلِ يَوْمٍ* it is, however, very usual to say *الْيَوْمِ* *الْأَوَّلِ*.—On the construction of a positive adjective, used substantively, with a definite or indefinite genitive, see § 78 (at the end [*عَاجِلٌ* *طَعْنَةٌ*]) and § 86, rem. *b* [*عَزِيزُ كِتَابِكُمْ*].
- B

- REM. *a*. If the genitive be definite, the governing adjective may also agree in gender and number with the object or objects spoken of; as *هِيَ فُضِّلَى النِّسَاءِ* she is the best of the women; *هُمَا أَفْضَلَا الْقَوْمِ* these two are the two best of the tribe; *هُمْ أَفْضَلُو* *هُنَّ فُضِّلِيَّاتُ* *هُمْ أَفْضَلُ الْقَوْمِ*, or *أَفْضَلُ الْقَوْمِ*, they are the best of the tribe; *هُنَّ فُضِّلِيَّاتُ* *وَكَذَلِكَ*, or *هُنَّ فُضِّلُ النِّسَاءِ*, or *النِّسَاءِ*, they are the best of the women; and similarly *جَعَلْنَا فِي كُلِّ قَرْيَةٍ أَكْبَرَهُمْ مُجْرِمِينَ لِيُمَكِّرُوا فِيهَا* We have placed in every town its greatest sinners to plot in it; *النَّاقِصُ وَالْأَشَجُّ* the best of you in moral character; *أَعْدَلَا بَنِي مَرْوَانَ* the Lessener (Yèzid 'ibn 'l-Wèlid, so called because he lessened the pay of the troops) and the Scurred (le Balafre, 'Omar 'ibn 'Abdu 'l-'Aziz) were the two most just of the *Bènū Marwān*; *أَنْتَ أَشْعَرُ أَهْلِ جِلْدَتِكَ* thou art the greatest poet of the people of thy colour (words addressed to the negro poet *Noṣaib*). In these last two examples, however, many grammarians say that *أَعْدَلَا* and *أَشْعَرُ* are not superlatives, but stand for *عَادِلَا* and *شَاعِرُ*.
- C
- D

REM. *b*. In such constructions as *أَفْضَلُ رَجُلٍ*, *أَوَّلُ يَوْمٍ*, *خَيْرُ أُمَّةٍ*, *عَزِيزُ كِتَابِكُمْ*, *عَالِي أَسْرِ الصَّاحِبِ*, *عَاجِلُ طَعْنَةٍ*, *شَرُّ خَصْلَتَيْنِ*, the genitive is explicative (as in *مَدِينَةُ بَغْدَادَ*, § 95), and not, as

might at first sight appear, a substitute for a *tamyiz-accusative* A (§ 44, e). *أَفْضَلُ رَجُلًا* is not = *أَفْضَلُ رَجُلًا* most excellent as a man (*très distingué en tant qu'homme*); for we cannot say *هُمَا أَفْضَلَا* *أَللَّحِيَّةِ طَوِيلَا* as we say *هُمَا طَوِيلَا* they are both long of beard, instead of *هُمَا طَوِيلَانِ لِحْيَةٍ*, but, on the contrary, we must say *هُمَا أَفْضَلُ رَجُلَيْنِ*.

94. The substantive that denotes the material of which anything is made, is put in the genitive, definite or indefinite, after the B substantive designating the thing; as *ثَوْبُ حَرِيرٍ* a silk dress, *صَنْمُ الذَّهَبِ* the golden image (see §§ 76, 77, 80, and 92). Frequently, however,—and this is the older construction,—the substantive denoting the material is put in apposition to the object as a determinative of kind (*بَيَانٌ*), both being either definite or indefinite. For example: *الْكُاسُ الْفِضَّةُ*; (*الصَنْمُ الذَّهَبِ*) *الصَنْمُ الذَّهَبُ* the golden image (not *الصَنْمُ الذَّهَبِ*); *الْكُاسُ الْفِضَّةُ* the silver cup; *الْأَلْطَانِيَّةُ الصِّينِيَّةُ* the porcelain (or china) dish; *الْأَلْطَانِيَّةُ الصِّينِيَّةُ* the wooden crosses; *عِجْلًا جَسَدًا* a calf of red gold; *وَوَجَدَ فِي وَسْطِهِ حَوْضًا* he made a dress of brocade; *اتَّخَذَ ثَوْبًا دِيْبَاجًا* and he found in the centre of it a sarcophagus of marble, with a cover; *وَعَلَيْهَا مِثْلَانِ سَاجٍ [مُرَبَّعَةٍ]* and beside it are two [square] posts of teak-wood [§ 136, a, rem. e]; *إِخْمِلْ إِلَيْهِ دِرْعِي الْحَدِيدِ* carry to him my iron coat of mail; *فَنَزَعُوا عَنْهُ ثِيَابَهُ الْحَرِيرَ وَالتَّبَسُّوهُ ثِيَابًا* and they stripped off from him his silken garments, and clothed him in garments of hair; *الْفِرَآءُ الْبُرْطَاسِيَّةُ* mantles of *Burtāsī* (i.e. of fur from the country of the *Burtās*); *الْغَضَائِرُ الصِّينِيَّةُ* porcelain (or china) bowls or plates; *الْتِيَابُ الْعَتَّابِيَّةُ* robes of (the stuff called) *al-Attābī* (manufactured in *الْعَتَّابِيَّةُ*, one of the quarters of Bagdad);

- A **الثَّوْبُ الدَّرَجِينِيّ** *cloaks of (the stuff called) 'd-Darginī* (manufactured in Dargin in North Africa)*.

REM. a. In this case the construction rises from the particular to the general, from the individual or special to the generic; but the reverse may hold good. For example, instead of **عِمَامَةٌ سَخْقُ**

- B **عِمَامَةٌ سَخْقُ** *an old worn-out turban*, **بُرْدٌ خَلَقُ** *an old tattered garment*, **ثِيَابٌ أَخْلَاقُ** *old tattered clothes*, **بُرْدَةٌ جَرْدُ** *a thread-bare old garment*, **ثَوْبٌ أَسْمَالُ** or **قَطِيفَةٌ سَمَلُ** *an old worn-out garment*, we may say **أَخْلَاقُ خَلَقُ بُرْدُ** *a worn-out old (thing) of a turban*, **أَسْمَالُ ثَوْبُ** *two small worn-out robes* (**مَلَكِيَّةٌ** dimin. of **مَلَأَةٌ**); **لَيْسَ عِنْدَنَا مِنْ مَالِ الْمُسْلِمِينَ إِلَّا جَرْدُ هَذِهِ الْقَطِيفَةِ** *there is nothing in our possession of the property of the Muslims but this thread-bare old garment*.

- C REM. b. Different from the above are such constructions as **رِطْلُ زَيْتٍ** *a pint of olive oil*, **الْبَيْتُ الْحَرَامُ** *the sacred house (temple)*, **الْأَشْهُرُ الْحُرُمُ** *the sacred months*, **الْكَعْبَةُ الْحَرَامُ** *the holy Ka'ba*, **الرَّجُلُ السَّوُّ** *the bad man*. In the first of these, **زَيْتٍ** is not a **بَيَانٌ**, but a **بَدَلُ** or permutative, instead of which we may employ a **temyiz-accusative** (**رِطْلًا زَيْتًا**) or a **genitive** (**رِطْلِ زَيْتٍ**); in the others, **حَرَامُ**, plur. **حُرُمُ**, **خَرَابُ**, and **سَوُّ**, are adjectives of both genders (originally infinitives), [see § 136, a].

- D REM. c. Similarly, in Hebrew and Syriac **הַבָּקָר הַנְּחֹשֶׁת** *the brazen oxen* (2 Kings, xvi. 17), **דִּנְרָא דְּסַחֲלָא** *a golden dīnār*.

* [It is not improbable that in the words of the Kōr'ān **بَلَدَةٌ مَيْتَا**, **مَيْتَا** is to be considered as a substantive meaning *a land that has not yet been brought into a state of cultivation* (for **بَلَدٌ مَيْتٌ**, as **مَوَاتٌ** is used for **أَرْضٌ مَوَاتٌ**), and put in apposition to **بَلَدَةٌ** as the material of which the tract of land consists (comp. Fleischer, *Kl. Schr.* i. 672).]

95. The genitive construction is also often extended in Arabic A to things that are identical, the second of which ought strictly to be in apposition to the first*. This remark applies:—

(a) To nicknames in connection with the names of persons; as *سَعِيدُ الْكَرْزِ* Sa'id (nicknamed) Kurz, i.e. wallet, = *سَعِيدُ الْكَرْزِ* *سَعِيدُ الْقَفَّةِ* Kais (nicknamed) Kuffa, i.e. dried gourd; *زَيْدُ بَطَّةٍ* Zeid (nicknamed) Batṭa, i.e. bottle.

REM. In such cases as *سَعِيدُ الْكَرْزِ* the use of the apposition is B equally correct, nom. *سَعِيدُ الْكَرْزِ*, gen. *سَعِيدِ الْكَرْزِ*, acc. *سَعِيدًا كَرْزًا*. If the name is defined by the article, the apposition alone is allowable; as *الْحَرْثُ الْكَرْزُ*. The same thing holds good, if either word is a compound (e.g. *عَبْدُ اللَّهِ* 'Abdu 'llāh, or *أَنْفُ النَّاقَةِ* camel's nose); as *أَبُو زَيْدٍ قَفَّةٌ عَبْدُ اللَّهِ بَطَّةٌ سَعِيدُ أَنْفِ النَّاقَةِ* *عَبْدُ اللَّهِ الْكَرْزُ*. Some, however, allow the nickname to be put in the accusative, when the name is in the nominative; in the nominative, when the name is in the accusative; and in either case, when the name is in the genitive; as *هَذَا سَعِيدُ أَنْفِ النَّاقَةِ* (scil. *أَعْنِي* I mean); *رَأَيْتُ مَرْرَتُ بِسَعِيدِ أَنْفِ النَّاقَةِ* (scil. *الَّذِي هُوَ*).

(b) [To specific nouns, when preceded by a noun designating the genus, as *حَشَبُ السَّاجِ* the olive-tree (= *الشَّجَرُ الزَّيْتُونُ*); *حَشَبُ السَّاجِ* *حَجَارَةُ الصَّوَّانِ* teak-wood; *حَجَارَةُ الصَّوَّانِ* flint-stones.] D

* [Excepted are the definitions of measure, number, weight and colour, as also those of the genus by its species, of the whole by its parts. It is not allowed to say *قَصِيدَةُ خَمْسِينَ جَزِيرَةُ خَمْسَةِ فَرَاسِخَ* *رَيْشُ أَلْوَانٍ بَيْتًا*, which ought to be *جَزِيرَةُ خَمْسَةِ فَرَاسِخَ* an island five parasangs in extent, *قَصِيدَةُ خَمْسُونَ بَيْتًا* a poem of fifty verses, *رَيْشُ أَلْوَانٍ* feathers of divers colours, as a *بَدَلُ* or permutative; comp. Fleischer, *Kl. Schr.* i. 552, ii. 33 seq.]

A (c) To the names of towns, rivers, mountains, etc., when preceded by the words for *town*, *river*, etc.; as *مَدِينَةُ بَغْدَادَ* the city of *Bagdād* (= *الْمَدِينَةُ الَّتِي هِيَ بَغْدَادُ*); *نَهْرُ الْفُرَاتِ* the river *Euphrates*; *بَحْرُ النَّيْلِ* the river *Nile*; *طُورُ سَيْنِينَ* mount *Sinai*; *شَهْرُ رَمَضَانَ* the month of *Ramadhān*.

(d) To words, regarded merely as such, and governed by a word signifying *word*, such as *كَلِمَةً* or *لَفْظًا*; e.g. *كَلِمَةً كَانَ* the word *kāna* (see § 78).

(e) To nouns governed by other nouns, when the governing word signifies something to which the object designated by the governed word is similar; as *لُجَيْنُ الْمَاءِ* the silvery water (lit. the silver of the water), = *الْمَاءُ الَّذِي هُوَ الْمَاءُ*, i.e. *مِثْلُ اللَّجَيْنِ*. Here the *مُضَافٌ إِلَيْهِ* is the *primum comparationis*, and the *مُضَافٌ* C the *secundum comparationis*.

(f) To adjectives defined by the article in connection with substantives not so defined; as *بَيْتُ الْمُقَدَّسِ* the Holy Temple (i.e. *Jerusalem*), = *الْبَيْتُ الَّذِي هُوَ الْمُقَدَّسُ*, or, shortly, *الْبَيْتُ الْمُقَدَّسُ*; *رَبِيعُ الْأَوَّلِ* the first *Rabī*, = *الْبَابُ الصَّغِيرُ*, the little gate (as a name), and *رَبِيعُ الْآخِرِ* the last (second) *Rabī* (names of D months); *عَامُ الْأَوَّلِ* last year; *جَانِبُ الْغَرْبِيِّ* the western side, = *الْمَسْجِدُ*; *الْجَانِبُ الْغَرْبِيُّ* the congregational mosque, = *الْمَسْجِدُ*; *بَقْلَةُ الْحَمَقَاءِ* the foolish herb, purslane, = *الْبَقْلَةُ*; *الْحَمَقَاءُ*; *دَارُ الْآخِرَةِ* the other world, the world to come, = *الْأَخْرَى*. In these and similar annexations some grammarians see an *إِضَافَةُ الْمَوْصُوفِ* إضافة الموصوف، or annexation of the thing described to the descriptive epithet, i.e. of the substantive to the adjective; but as such an annexation is impossible (see § 78), those grammarians are correct

who regard the adjective as having been raised to the level of ^A substantive. Strictly speaking, *بَيْتُ الْمُقَدَّسِ* means *the house of the holy place* (taking *مُقَدَّسٌ*, if we like, as *nomen loci* from *قَدَّسَ* to sanctify, Vol. i. § 227); *رَبِيعُ الْأَوَّلِ*, *the Rabi' of the first place, first in order*; etc. On the other hand, in *صَلَاةُ الْأَوَّلَى* the annexation is an ordinary, proper one (*إِضَافَةٌ حَقِيقِيَّةٌ*), the word *سَاعَةٌ*, *hour*, being understood; *صَلَاةُ الْأَوَّلَى* = *صَلَاةُ السَّاعَةِ الْأَوَّلَى*, i.e. *السَّاعَةُ فِي الْأَوَّلَى* (see § 77). Similarly, some grammarians consider *جَانِبُ الْغَرْبِيِّ* ^B *مَسْجِدُ الْمَكَانِ الْجَامِعِ* = *مَسْجِدُ الْجَامِعِ*, *جَانِبُ الْمَكَانِ الْغَرْبِيِّ* = *مَسْجِدُ الْجَامِعِ*, *بَقْلَةُ الْحَبَّةِ الْحَقِيقَا* = *بَقْلَةُ الْحَقِيقَا*, *مَسْجِدُ الْوَقْتِ الْجَامِعِ* or *أَفْضَلُ* *دَارُ الْحَيَاةِ الْآخِرَةِ* = *دَارُ الْآخِرَةِ*. Here too the constructions

* [Accordingly too *يَوْمَ السَّابِعِ* is explained by Zamahsari (*Fa'ik* i.

163) as *يَوْمَ اللَّيْلِ السَّابِعِ* on the day of the seventh night. The real explanation, however, seems to be that we have in *بَيْتُ الْمُقَدَّسِ*, ^C *باب الصَّغِيرِ*, etc. the first instances of the omission of the article before the qualified substantive, which is prevalent in modern Arabic. The end-vowels of the word were generally not pronounced in common speech, if no misunderstanding could arise, according to the rule *لَا تَسْتَعْمِلُوا الْإِعْرَابَ فِي كَلَامِكُمْ إِذَا خَاطَبْتُمْ وَلَا تَخْلُوا مِنْهُ كُتُبَكُمْ إِذَا كَاتَبْتُمْ* do not make use of case-endings in your speech, when you address people, but employ them in full in your letters, when you correspond. This was called *السَّلَاقِيَّةُ* and deemed elegant (*Fa'ik* ii. 94). ^D

Hence this omission of the article caused no difficulty whatever, till the grammarians attempted to find a place for these abbreviated expressions in their syntactical system, comparing the Kor'anic *دِينُ* *دَارُ الْحَيَاةِ الْآخِرَةِ* for *دَارُ الْآخِرَةِ* and *دِينُ الْمِلَّةِ الْقَيِّمَةِ* for *الْقَيِّمَةِ*. The grammarian *El-Lait ibn Naṣr* disapproved of the use of *مَسْجِدُ* *الْجَامِعِ*, etc. which he called a mistake. D. G.]

- A *عَزِيزُ كِتَابِكُمْ*, *عَاجِلُ طَعْنَةٍ*, *رَجُلٍ*, etc., find a place (see § 78, at the end, § 86, rem. b, and § 93).

REM. a. This sort of annexation is called by the grammarians *إِضَافَةُ التَّفْسِيرِ*, or *الْإِضَافَةُ التَّفْسِيرِيَّةُ*, the *interpretative annexation*, as also *إِضَافَةُ الْبَيَانِ*, or *الْإِضَافَةُ الْبَيَانِيَّةُ*, the *explicative annexation*. The special sort mentioned under e is named *إِضَافَةُ التَّشْبِيهِ* the *comparative annexation*.

- B [REM. b. It may not be superfluous to mention here the genitive by attraction, called *جَرُّ الْجَوَارِ* or *جَرُّ الْمَجَاوِرَةِ* (genitive of proximity. Comp. *Hamāsa*, 38, l. 16), as in *هُوَ جَحْرُ ضَبِّ خَرِبٍ* (*this is a deserted hole of a dabb* (a large kind of lizard), instead of *خَرِبٌ*; *كَأَنَّ غَزَلَ الْعَنْكَبُوتِ الْمُرْمَلِ* (*it is*) as if the woven web of the spider, instead of *الْمُرْمَلِ*, though *عَنْكَبُوتٌ* is of the fem. gender. Other examples from poetry have been given by Jahn in his notes to Sibawēih i. 185. D. G.]
- C

3. The Numerals.

96. We have already mentioned, in Vol. i. §§ 319—321, that the cardinal numbers from 3 to 10, when placed in apposition to the things numbered, agree with them in case; but when placed in annexation before them, govern the genitive plural, as *سِتَّةُ رِجَالٍ* *six men*, *ثَلَاثُ جَوَارٍ* *three girls*, *ثَلَاثُنَا* *we three* (women), *أَرْبَعَتُهُمْ* *the four of them* (men). The genitive must, in every possible case, be that of the broken plural (Vol. i. § 300, b, and §§ 304, 305); and if the substantive has a *جَمْعُ الْقَلَّةِ* as well as a *جَمْعُ الْكَثَرَةِ* (Vol. i. § 307), the former ought to be used; e.g. *خَمْسَةُ أَثْوَابٍ* *five pieces of cloth*, *ثَمَانِيَةُ أَجْرِيَّةٍ* *eight sacks*, *عَشْرَةُ غِلْمَةٍ* *ten slaves*, *ثَلَاثَةُ أَفْلَسٍ* *three fals* (a copper coin), not *ثَلَاثَةُ فَلُوسٍ*, *عَشْرَةُ غِلْمَانٍ*, *ثَمَانِيَةُ جُرُبٍ*, *خَمْسَةُ ثِيَابٍ*.—They are
- D

very rarely construed with the accusative لِلتَّمْيِيزِ (§ 44, e); as خَمْسَةٌ A
أَثْوَابًا, instead of خَمْسَةُ أَثْوَابٍ*.

REM. a. The word مِائَةٌ forms an important exception to the above rule, being always placed after the governing unit in the genitive singular, as ثَلَاثُمِائَةٍ *three hundred*. Only a poet can venture to say ثَلَاثُ مِائِينَ. [On the use of the plural forms of أَلْفٌ see Vol. i. § 326, rem.]

REM. b. Should a جَمْعُ أَثْقَالٍ be little or not at all in use, the B
جَمْعُ أَثْقَالٍ must of course be employed; as ثَلَاثَةُ شُيُوعٍ *three shoe-strings*, because أَشْشَاعُ and أَشْشَعُ are rare or doubtful. Even in the Kor'an, however, we find ثَلَاثَةُ قُرُوءٍ *three menstruations*, instead of أَقْرَاءُ or أَقْرُو.

[REM. c. It is perhaps superfluous to remark that the pluralis
sanus is used in cases where no broken plural exists, as أَيُّهَا سَبْعُ آيَاتٍ
the verses of this sūra are seven in number (pl. of آيَةٌ; آيٌ is a C
quasi-plural); عَشْرُ سِنِينَ *seven cows* (pl. of بَقْرَةٌ); عَشْرُ سِنِينَ
ten years; سِتُّ بَنَاتٍ *six daughters*; ثَلَاثَةُ حَدَادِينَ *three smiths*.
If, however, the word is properly an adjective or participle (صِفَةٌ),
we ought to employ the preposition مِنْ, or to put the noun in
apposition to the numeral, or vice versa, as ثَلَاثَةٌ مِنَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ
or سَبْعٌ عَجَافٌ; ثَلَاثَةُ مُؤْمِنِينَ (مُؤْمِنُونَ ثَلَاثَةٌ), not ثَلَاثَةُ مُؤْمِنُونَ
seven lean (cows) not سَبْعٌ عَجَافٍ.] D

* [In Arabic, as in some other languages, a cardinal number may be followed immediately by the next one, in order to rectify it (لِلْإِسْتِدْرَاكِ; comp. § 184, b, rem.), as سِتَّةٌ سَبْعَةٌ مِنَ الْفُرْسَانِ *six seven* (i.e. six, or it may be seven) *horsemen*; مِقْدَارُ أَرْبَعِينَ خَمْسِينَ يَوْمًا *a sum of forty fifty* (i.e. from forty to fifty) *days*. D. G.]

- A 97. Of the two words **وَاحِدٌ** and **أَحَدٌ** the former is more commonly used as an adjective, the latter as a substantive; e.g. **رَجُلٌ وَاحِدٌ** *a single man, one man*, **بِلِلَّهِ الْوَاحِدِ** *to the one God*; **أَحَدُ النَّاسِ** *one of the people*, **إِحْدَى الثَّلَاثِ** *one (fem.) of the three*, **أَحَدُهُمْ** *one of them*. **أَحَدٌ** is used absolutely in negative and interrogative phrases in the sense of *any one*; as **لَا أَحَدٌ فِي الْبَيْتِ** *there is no one in the house*; **مَا جَاءَنِي أَحَدٌ** *no one came to me*; **هَلْ أَحَدٌ رَأَى** *has any one seen the like of this?* As applied to God, the two words are interchangeable, **هُوَ الْوَاحِدُ** or **هُوَ الْأَحَدُ**; and also in the compound numbers 21, 31, etc., **وَاحِدٌ وَعِشْرُونَ** or **أَحَدٌ وَعِشْرُونَ**, etc.—**اِثْنَانِ**, fem. **اِثْنَتَانِ** or **ثِنْتَانِ**, is not unfrequently placed, as an adjective, after a noun in the dual, to express the idea of duality more strongly; as **لَا تَتَّخِذُوا إِلَهَيْنِ اثْنَيْنِ** *do not take unto yourselves two gods*; **وَأَلْدَى جَعَلَ لَهُ صَلَاحُ الدِّينِ بَدَلًا مِنْ مَكْسِ الْحَاجِّ أَلْفًا دِينَارٍ اِثْنَانِ** *what Salāḥo'd-dīn (Saladin) has assigned him in lieu of the tax levied on the pilgrims is 2000 dīnārs*; **نَازِلِينَ مِنْذُ شَهْرَيْنِ اِثْنَيْنِ** *dwelling (in it) for the last two months*; **عَلَى مِيلَيْنِ اِثْنَيْنِ مِنْهَا** *at a distance of two miles from it*; **مِائَتَا يَوْمٍ اِثْنَتَانِ وَخَمْسَةٌ وَأَرْبَعُونَ يَوْمًا** *two hundred five and forty days*. It is very rarely prefixed to the things
- D numbered, and then requires the genitive singular; as **ثِنْتَا حَنْظَلٍ** *two colocynth gourds*, = **حَبَّتَا حَنْظَلٍ** (**حَبَّةٌ** *grain, berry*, being used, like the Persian **دانه**, *dāna*, in counting fruit). See Vol. i. § 321, rem. c.

98. When the numeral is followed, not by the noun expressing the things numbered, but by a collective designating the whole species or genus, the relation between it and the collective is indicated, not by

the simple genitive, but by the preposition *مِنْ*; as *فَخَذَ أَرْبَعَةً مِنْ* ^A *أَلطَّيْرِ* take then four birds, = *أَرْبَعَةُ طُيُورٍ مِنْ أَلطَّيْرِ*; *تِسْعَةٌ مِنَ الرِّهْطِ*; *تِسْعَةُ أَشْخَصٍ مِنَ الرِّهْطِ* nine of the people, = *تِسْعَةُ أَشْخَصٍ مِنَ الرِّهْطِ*. Sometimes, however, the collective itself is put in the simple indefinite genitive; as *وَكَانَ فِي الْمَدِينَةِ تِسْعَةُ رَهْطٍ* there were in the city nine persons; *وَهُمْ أَرْبَعَةٌ نَفَرَ* and they were four in number*.

[REM. The construction with *مِنْ* is also employed when the noun expressing the things numbered is properly an adjective or B participle; see § 96, rem. c.]

99. The cardinal numbers from 11 to 99 take, as already mentioned (§ 44, e, rem. b, and Vol. i. § 323, rem. b), the objects numbered in the accusative singular; as *ثَلَاثَةَ عَشَرَ رَجُلًا* thirteen men; *تِسْعَ عَشْرَةَ امْرَأَةً* nineteen women; *ثَلَاثَةً وَسَبْعُونَ رَجُلًا* seventy-three men; *تِسْعَ وَتِسْعُونَ نَعْجَةً* ninety-nine sheep. They are very rarely followed by the accusative plural; as *وَقَطَعْنَاهُمْ اثْنَتَيْ عَشْرَةَ أَسْبَاطًا أُمَمًا* ^C and we divided them into twelve tribes (or) nations.—As to gender, the *tens* (*عِشْرُونَ*, etc.) are both masculine and feminine, but the *units* conform to the gender of the noun denoting the things numbered; as *أَحَدَ عَشَرَ كَوْكَبًا* eleven stars; *خَمْسَ وَأَرْبَعُونَ نَاقَةً* forty-five she-camels.**

REM. *بِضْعٌ* (also *بِضْعٌ*) is construed like the numerals which it represents (Vol. i. § 319, rem. b, etc.), but does not vary in gender, according to the best authorities, when unaccompanied by another D number and signifying from 3 to 10; as *بِضْعُ رَجَالٍ*, *بِضْعُ نِسْوَةٍ*, *بِضْعَةٌ وَثَلَاثُونَ*, *بِضْعُ عَشْرَةِ امْرَأَةٍ*, *بِضْعَةُ عَشَرَ رَجُلًا*, *بِضْعُ بَنِينَ* some thirty, or thirty and odd, of the Muslims, *بِضْعٌ وَأَرْبَعُونَ سَنَةً* some forty years or forty and odd years.

* [This is not allowed with *بَشَرٌ* and *قَوْمٌ*, according to *Fāḥ* ii. 384. D. G.]

** Also the ordinal numbers, e.g. *إِنِّي لَحَادِي عَشَرَ رَجُلًا* (Tab. i. 3307, l. 1).

- A **100.** If an adjective be appended to the noun denoting the things numbered, after any numeral between 11 and 99, the adjective may agree either grammatically with the noun, or logically with the cardinal number; as **عِشْرُونَ دِينَارًا نَاصِرِيًّا** *twenty dīnārs of ḏl-Malik ḏn-Nāṣir* (where **نَاصِرِيًّا** agrees grammatically with **دِينَارًا**, accus. sing. masc.), or **عِشْرُونَ دِينَارًا نَاصِرِيَّةٌ** (where **نَاصِرِيَّةٌ** agrees logically with **عِشْرُونَ**, as representing the broken plural **دَنَانِيرُ**, which requires an adjective in the sing. fem.).
- B

101. When the object numbered has been already spoken of, the cardinal numbers from 20 to 90 (the tens) may be construed, like substantives, with the genitive; as **عِشْرُو زَيْدٍ** *Zaid's twenty* (camels); **ثَلَاثُونَ** *your thirty* (servants). Compare § 108.

- 102.** The cardinal numbers from 11 to 19 may also be construed in the same way with the genitive of the possessor (except **اِثْنَا عَشَرَ** and its fem.). In this case they remain, according to most grammarians, indeclinable, as **خَمْسَةَ عَشْرِكَ**, fem. **خَمْسَ عَشْرَتِكَ**, *thy fifteen* (nom., gen., acc.). According to others, the **عَجزُ** or latter part of the compound is declined; as **خَمْسَةَ عَشْرِكَ**, gen. **خَمْسَةِ عَشْرِكَ**, acc. **خَمْسَةَ عَشْرِكَ**; [or both parts are declined; as **خَمْسَةَ عَشْرِكَ**, gen. **خَمْسَةِ عَشْرِكَ**, acc. **خَمْسَةَ عَشْرِكَ**]. Others still admit the declinability of the **صَدْرُ** or former part of the compound, and put the **عَجزُ** or latter part in the genitive; as **خَمْسَةَ عَشْرِكَ**, gen. **خَمْسَةِ عَشْرِكَ**, acc. **خَمْسَةَ عَشْرِكَ**.
- D

103. The cardinal numbers **مِائَةٌ** *a hundred*, and **أَلْفٌ** *a thousand*, and their compounds, are construed with the genitive singular of the noun denoting the objects numbered; as **مِائَةُ رَجُلٍ** *100 men*; **مِائَتَا حِمَارٍ** *200 asses*; **ثَلَاثِائَةِ كَلْبٍ** *300 dogs*; **أَلْفُ مَدِينَةٍ** *1000 cities*; **أَلْفَا كِتَابٍ** *2000 books*; **أَرْبَعَةُ آلَافٍ رَجُلٍ** *4000 men*; **عِشْرَةُ أَلْفٍ دِينَارٍ** *11,000 dīnārs*; **ثَلَاثِائَةُ أَلْفٍ رَجُلٍ** *300,000 men*.

REM. The accus. sing. or genit. plur. after مِائَةٌ [and أَلْفٌ] is A
 very rare; as إِذَا عَاشَ أَلْفَتَى مِائَتَيْنِ عَامًا when a man has lived
 two hundred years; وَلَبِثُوا فِي كَهْفِهِمْ ثَلَاثَ مِائَةٍ سِنِينَ and they
 tarried in their cave three hundred years (where others read مِائَةً,
 and regard سِنِينَ as a بَدَلُ or permutative apposition to ثَلَاثَ مِائَةٍ).

104. If a sum be composed of several numerals of different
 kinds, the noun denoting the things numbered falls under the govern-
 ment of the last numeral; as بَيْنَ الْهِجْرَةِ وَبَيْنَ آدَمَ عَلَى مُقْتَضَى B
 التَّوْرَةِ الْعِبْرَانِيَّةِ أَرْبَعَةُ آلَافٍ وَسَبْعُ مِائَةٍ وَإِخْدَى وَأَرْبَعُونَ سَنَةً
 between the Hīgra and Adam, according to the Hebrew Pentateuch, there are
 4741 years; بَيْنَ تَبَلُّلِ الْأَلْسُنِ وَبَيْنَ الْهِجْرَةِ عَلَى اخْتِيَارِ الْمُؤَرِّخِينَ
 ثَلَاثَةُ آلَافٍ وَثَلَاثُمِائَةٍ وَأَرْبَعُ سِنِينَ between the confusion of tongues and
 the Hīgra, there are, according to the assumption of the chronologists,
 3304 years. The substantive may, however, be repeated after each
 numeral; as أَلْفَا أَلْفٍ دِينَارٍ وَمِائَةُ أَلْفٍ دِينَارٍ وَأَرْبَعَةُ C
 أَلْفٍ دِينَارٍ وَأَرْبَعُونَ أَلْفٍ دِينَارٍ وَثَمَانُونَ دِينَارًا جَيْشِيَّةً
 the revenue of (the province of)
 el-Garbiya (in Lower Egypt) is 2,144,080 military dīnārs. In large
 amounts, consisting of millions, hundreds of thousands and thousands,
 the word أَلْفٌ must be repeated after each numeral; as ثَمَانُونَ أَلْفًا وَمِائَتَانِ وَأَرْبَعَةُ
 جُمْلَةً ذَلِكَ تِسْعَةُ آلَافٍ أَلْفٍ وَخَمْسُمِائَةٍ أَلْفٍ وَأَرْبَعَةُ وَثَمَانُونَ أَلْفًا وَثَمَانُونَ دِينَارًا
 the total of this amounts to 9,584,264 dīnārs.

105. The higher cardinal numbers, as well as those from 3 to D
 10 (Vol. i. § 321), may be placed in apposition to the substantive
 denoting the objects numbered; as جَذَبَ الشَّبَكَةَ إِلَى الْأَرْضِ مُمْتَلِئَةً
 سَمَكًا كَثِيرًا مِائَةً وَثَلَاثَةً وَخَمْسِينَ he drew the net to land, full of large
 fishes, a hundred and fifty-three; كَانَتْ شُعُوبُ أَوْلَادِ نُوحٍ ثَلَاثَةً عِنْدَ
 تَبَلُّلِ الْأَلْسُنِ اثْنَيْنِ وَسَبْعِينَ شَعْبًا the nations sprung from the three

A *sons of Noah were, at the time of the confusion of tongues, seventy-two in number* (the substantive denoting the things numbered, **شُعْبُ**, is repeated here, because the last numeral requires it in a form different in number and case from **شُعُوبُ**).

106. As regards the agreement in gender between the cardinal numbers and the nouns denoting the objects numbered (see Vol. i. § 319), the following rules hold.

- (a) If the plural of the substantive denoting the things numbered differs in gender from the singular, the numeral agrees with the *singular*; as **سَبْعُ سِنِينَ** *seven years* (sing. **سَنَةٌ**, fem.), but **سَبْعَةُ أَعْوَامٍ** *id.* (sing. **عَامٌ**, masc.); **ثَلَاثَةُ حَمَامَاتٍ** *three baths* (sing. **حَمَامٌ**, masc.); **سِتَّةُ مُجَلَّدَاتٍ** *six volumes* (sing. **مُجَلَّدٌ**, masc.). This rule holds even when the substantive itself is suppressed; as **صُمْتُ خَمْسَةَ** *I fasted five days* (i.e. **خَمْسَةَ أَيَّامٍ**, from **يَوْمٌ**, masc., *a day*); **سَرْتُ خَمْسًا** *I travelled five nights* (i.e. **خَمْسَ لَيَالٍ**, from **لَيْلَةٌ**, fem., *a night*); **مِنْهُمْ مَنْ يَمْشِي عَلَى أَرْبَعٍ** *among them are creatures which walk on four feet* (i.e. **عَلَى أَرْبَعِ أَرْجُلٍ**, from **رَجُلٌ**, fem., *a foot*); **يَا عَيْنَ بَيْتِي عِنْدَ كُلِّ صَبَاحٍ جُودِي بِأَرْبَعَةٍ عَلَى الْجَرَّاحِ** *O eye of mine, weep every morning* (**صَبَاحٍ** in rhyme for **صَبَاحٍ**); **شَدَّ بَارْبَعَةَ الشُّوُونِ** *shed copious tears over el-Garrāh* (lit. *weep with the four channels for tears*, **بَارْبَعَةَ الشُّوُونِ**, from the sing. **شَأْنٌ**, masc., or *with the four corners of the eyes*, **بَارْبَعَةَ جَوَانِبِ الْعَيْنِ**, from the sing. **جَانِبٌ**, masc., *a side*).

REM. This rule is often disregarded by modern incorrect writers and copyists.

(b) The numeral follows the grammatical gender of the substantive, when the objects numbered are designated merely by a noun of a vague, general signification; e.g. **ثَلَاثَةُ أَشْخَاصٍ** *three persons*,

from شَخْصٌ, masc.; ثَلَاثُ أَعْيُنٍ *three human beings*, from عَيْنٌ, fem. ^A

But if another noun be annexed to this, which determines the real gender of the objects more precisely, the numeral agrees with the second noun; as كُنْتُ أَتَقَى ثَلَاثَ شُخُوصٍ *فَكَانَ مِجَنِّي دُونَ مَنْ كُنْتُ أَتَقَى ثَلَاثَ شُخُوصٍ* and so my shield against those whom I feared was three persons, two girls and a young woman (كَاعِبٌ and مُعْصِرٌ are used only of women, Vol. i. § 297, c, rem. b; شُخُوصٌ is here employed by the poet, through the exigency of the metre, instead of ^B فَيَنْ كِلَابًا, § 96; مُعْصِرٌ stands in rhyme for مُعْصِرٌ). Again: فَإِنْ كِلَابًا

هَذِهِ عَشْرُ أَبْطُنٍ وَأَنْتَ بَرِيءٌ مِنْ قَبَائِلِهَا أَلْعَشْرُ *this (tribe of) Kilāb has ten branches, but thou hast nought to do with its ten branches* (أَبْطُنٌ is a plural of بَطْنٌ, Vol. i. § 304, rem. c, which is masc., but the numeral takes the gender of the feminine substantive قَبِيلَةٌ, which immediately follows in its plural form قَبَائِلٌ); and in the Kor'an, ch. vii. 160, وَقَطَعْنَاهُمْ اثْنَتَيْ عَشْرَةَ أَسْبَاطًا أُمَمًا *and we divided ^C them into twelve tribes (or) nations* (أَسْبَاطٌ is the plural of سَبْطٌ, masc., Heb. שִׁבְטִים, but the numeral agrees with أُمَّة, which follows in the plural form أُمَمٌ). Sometimes, however, the numeral agrees with the real gender of the objects numbered, even when the grammatical gender of the noun used is different; as ثَلَاثَةُ أَنْفُسٍ *three persons (of the male sex)*, where ثَلَاثَةُ is masc., although نَفْسٌ is fem., because نَفْسٌ is here equivalent to ^D إِنْسَانٌ or رَجُلٌ.

(c) If the substantive be suppressed, and its place be taken by an adjective or other word expressive of its quality, the numeral agrees in gender with the understood substantive; e.g. مَنْ جَاءَ *مَنْ جَاءَ بِأَلْحَسَنَةٍ فَلَهُ عَشْرُ أَمْثَالِهَا* *he who does a good thing, shall receive a tenfold recompense for it, lit. shall receive ten (good things) like it* (عَشْرٌ is fem., because أَمْثَالٌ, plur. of أَمْتَالٌ, though masc., is here only an epithet of حَسَنَاتٍ understood, the plur. of حَسَنَةٌ, which is fem.).

- A (d) When the numeral is connected with the substantive by the preposition **مِنْ** (§ 98), it agrees in gender with the substantive; as **أَرْبَعٌ مِنَ الْغَنَمِ** *four sheep* (غَنَمٌ being fem., Vol. i. § 290, a, e); **ثَلَاثَةٌ مِنَ الْبَطِّ** *three ducks* (بَطٌّ being masc. [by form], Vol. i. § 292, a)*. This is the case even when an epithet follows which fixes the real gender of the objects numbered; as **أَرْبَعٌ مِنَ الْغَنَمِ ذُكُورٌ** *four sheep, males*; **ثَلَاثَةٌ مِنَ الْبَطِّ إِنَاثٌ** *three ducks, females*. If, however, the epithet be placed between the numeral and the substantive, the numeral must agree in gender with the epithet; as **أَرْبَعَةٌ ذُكُورٌ مِنْ** *four sheep, males*; **ثَلَاثٌ إِنَاثٌ مِنْ** *three ducks, females*. [comp. § 96, rem. c].

(e) The numerals as abstract numbers (Vol. i. § 309, b, e) are of the masculine gender; as **ثَلَاثَةٌ نِصْفُ سِتَّةٍ**, or **اَلثَّلَاثَةُ نِصْفُ اَلسِّتَةِ**, *three is the half of six*.

- (f) In the enumeration of several groups of objects of different genders, the following rules hold.—(a) The numerals from 3 to 5, inclusive, must be repeated before each substantive, and vary in gender accordingly; as **إِلَى خَمْسَةٍ أَعْبُدُ وَخَمْسُ إِمَاءَ (أَمْرٍ)** *I have five male and five female slaves*. (β) From 6 to 10, inclusive, they are not repeated, and conform in gender to the nearest substantive; as **إِلَى ثَمَانِيَةٍ أَعْبُدُ وَإِمَاءَ (أَمْرٍ)** *I have eight male and (eight) female slaves*, or, transposing the words, **إِلَى ثَمَانِي إِمَاءَ (أَمْرٍ) وَأَعْبُدُ**. (γ) The compound numerals, from 11 upwards, are not repeated, and take the masculine form, when the following substantives designate rational beings; as **عِنْدِي خَمْسَةُ عَشَرَ عَبْدًا وَجَارِيَةً** *I have fifteen male and (fifteen) female slaves*, or, transposing the words, **عِنْدِي خَمْسَةُ عَشَرَ جَارِيَةً وَعَبْدًا**. But when the substantives designate irrational objects,

* [We may of course say also **أَرْبَعُ نَعَجَاتٍ (شِيَاهٍ) مِنَ الْغَنَمِ** and **ثَلَاثَةُ بَطَّاتٍ مِنَ الْبَطِّ**.]

the numerals take the gender of the nearest substantive; as **عِنْدِي** A
خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ جَمَلًا وَنَاقَةً *I have fifteen male and (fifteen) female camels,*
 or, transposing the words, **عِنْدِي خَمْسَ عَشْرَةَ نَاقَةً وَجَمَلًا**. If, however,
 in the case of irrational objects, a vague, general expression, such as
مَا بَيْنَ (§ 67), be interposed between the numeral and the things
 numbered, the numeral is always of the *feminine* gender; as **عِنْدِي**
خَمْسَ عَشْرَةَ مَا بَيْنَ جَمَلٍ وَنَاقَةٍ *I possess fifteen camels, male and*
female, or, transposing the words, **عِنْدِي خَمْسَ عَشْرَةَ مَا بَيْنَ نَاقَةٍ** B
وَجَمَلٍ.

107. The cardinal numbers become determined or definite in the same cases as substantives; viz.

(a) When the numeral is used to express an abstract number, and hence contains the idea of genus; e.g. **الثَّلَاثَةُ نِصْفُ السَّيِّئَةِ** *three* (every three) *is the half of six* (every six). The article is here C employed **لِلْجِنْسِ**, to indicate the genus [Vol. i. § 345, rem. a]. It is not, however, essential, for, regarding the numeral as a **عَلَمٌ جِنْسِيٌّ** (Vol. i. § 191, rem. b, 5 a), we may say with equal correctness **ثَلَاثَةُ نِصْفِ سَيِّئَةٍ**.

(b) When the objects numbered have already been mentioned, or are supposed to be well known; as **فَرَجَعَ السَّبْعُونَ بِفَرَحٍ** *and the* *seventy (disciples) returned with joy*; **وَقَدْ جَاوَزْتُ حَدَّ الْأَرْبَعِينَ** *since* D *I am already past forty*, scil. **سَنَةٍ** *years* (observe **الْأَرْبَعِينَ** by poetic license for **أَرْبَعِينَ**). The article is here used **لِلْعَهْدِ**, to indicate *previous knowledge*.

(c) When the numeral is in apposition, as an adjective, to a definite noun; as **الْخَمْسَةُ الرِّجَالُ** *the five men* (*oi άνδρες οι πέντε*, see Vol. i. § 321).

- A (d) When the numerals, from 3 to 10, precede a definite noun in the construct state (see § 92); as ثَلَاثَةُ الرِّجَالِ *the three men* (lit. *the triad of the men*); عَشْرَةُ الْعِلَمَةِ *the ten slaves*; عَشْرُ الْجَوَارِي *the ten female slaves*; أَرْبَعُ الْبُيُوتِ *the four houses*; خَمْسَةُ الْأَشْبَارِ *the five spans*; ثَلَاثُ الْأَثَانِي *the three stones (on which the cooking-pot rests)*. Sometimes, however, the numeral too has the article; as اَلثَّلَاثَةُ الْاَصْوَاتِ الْمُخْتَارَةِ *the three selected airs or tunes*; هَذِهِ اَلْسِتُّ الْمَدِينُ *these six cities**.—According to the later and now (but without case-endings) usual construction, the article is dropped before the substantive and appears only prefixed to the numeral; as اَلْاَرْبَعَةُ اَخْمَاسِ *the four-fifths*; اَلْخَمْسُ قَرْيَ *the five villages*; اَلثَّلَاثَةُ رِجَالٍ *the three men* (vulg. اَلثَّلَاثَةُ رِجَالٍ)†.—The same remarks apply to مِائَةٌ and أَلْفٌ, with their derivatives and compounds; e.g. ثَلَاثَةُ آلَافِ الدِّينَارِ *the 300 dinārs*, اَلثَّلَاثَةُ اَلدِّرْهَمِ *the 3000 dirhams*; but also اَلثَّلَاثَةُ اَلدِّينَارِ *the 3000 dirhams*; and in more modern Arabic اَلثَّلَاثَةُ اَلْاَلْفِ دِرْهَمٍ *the 3000 dirhams* (vulg. اَلثَّلَاثَةُ اَلْاَلْفِ دِرْهَمٍ).—Those numerals which take the objects numbered in the accusative singular, must have the article
- B
- C
- D

* [The grammarians of the school of Basra disapprove of this construction. Nevertheless Zamahšarī gives, in his *Fāik*, three instances from the Traditions, as i. 61 seq. اَلْمِائَةُ الْبَقَرَةُ وَالْمِائَةُ الْغَنَمُ *the hundred cows and the hundred sheep*; i. 313 اَلْسَبْعَةُ الدَّنَانِيرِ *the seven dinārs* (with a var. اَلدَّنَانِيرُ اَلْسَبْعَةُ); ii. 384 اَلثَّلَاثَةُ اَلنَّفَرِ *the three persons*. Comp. Fleischer, *Kl. Schr.* ii. 52 seq. D. G.]

† [Relatively old instances of this construction are Ibn Hišām 331, l. 14 فَاتَّخَذَ اَلْمِائَةَ نَاقَةً *that I may get the hundred camels*; *Agānī* xv. 147, l. paenult. أَجَارَ اَلنِّصْفَ بَيْتٍ *he completed the halfverse*. Comp. Fleischer, l. c. 49. D. G.]

prefixed to them to render them definite, as *رَجُلًا أَلْتَسْعُونَ* *the 90 men*; A and in the case of a compound of tens and units, the article must be^d prefixed to both, as *جَمَلًا وَالسَّبْعَةُ* *the 77 camels*. The compound numbers from 11 to 19, however, according to the best grammarians, prefix the article to the unit alone, without making any change in the termination, except in the case of 12; as *الثَّلَاثَةُ* *عَشَرَ* *the thirteen camels*. But others allow the repetition of the article, as *قَبْرُ يَأْقَبَ الْحَوَارِيِّ أَحَدِ الْإِثْنَيْ عَشَرَ*; *الثَّلَاثَةُ الْعَشَرَ* *جَمَلًا* *the grave of James the apostle, one of the twelve*. B

REM. The peculiar construction of the numerals in modern Arabic, is analogous to that employed by the same dialect in such nominal compounds as *الْمَآوِزُ* (vulg. *الْمَآوِزُ*) *rose-water*, for the classical *مَاءُ الْوَرْدِ*; *الْحَصَالِبَانُ* *frankincense in grains*, for *حَصَا* *اللَّبَانِ*; *الرَّسْمَالُ* *the capital or principal* (in speaking of money), for *رَأْسُ أَلْمَالِ*; *التَّمْرَهِنْدِيُّ* *the tamarind* (lit. *the Indian date*), for *التَّمْرُ الْهِنْدِيُّ*. C

108. The ordinal numbers are often construed with the genitive, especially of the month (on the omission of the word for *day*, compare § 101 and § 106, a); as *خَامِسَ عَشْرَهُمْ* *the fifteenth of them*; *ثُمَّ سَارَ* *السُّلْطَانُ إِلَى عَزَازَ وَنَازَلَهَا ثَالِثَ دِي الْقَعْدَةِ وَتَسَلَّمَهَا حَادِيَ عَشَرَ دِي* *next the sultān proceeded to 'Azāz, and laid siege to it on the third of Du'l-Ka'du, and took possession of it by capitulation on the D eleventh of Du'l-Hijju*; *وَكَانَ ثَامِنَ عَشْرَى تَمُوزَ* *and it was the twenty-eighth of Temūz* (in this example *ثَامِنَ* is in the construct state before *عَشْرَى*, lit. *the eighth of the twenties**, and so also in

* [This construction has supplanted the coordinating of the units with the ordinals from *twentieth* to *ninetieth* by means of *و*, according

- A the following ones, in which, however, the modern form عَشْرِينَ, gen. عَشْرِينَ, acc. عَشْرِينَ, is used instead of the classical عَشْرُو, gen. and acc. عَشْرِي; just as in the noun we find سِنِينَ instead of سِنُو and سِنِي, from سِنُونَ, plur. of سَنَةٌ a year, Vol. i. § 302, rem. d);
 فِي ثَالِثِ هُوَ حَادِي عَشْرِينَ تَشْرِى it is the twenty-first of Tisrī; عَشْرِينَ نُوْدَى بِالْقَاهِرَةِ on the twenty-third of this (month) there was
 B a proclamation made in el-Kāhira.

109. An ordinal number is not unfrequently connected with the genitive either (a) of its own cardinal, or (b) of the cardinal which is one less than its own.

- (a) In the former case, the ordinal expresses indefinitely one of the individuals designated by the cardinal; as لَقَدْ كَفَرَ الَّذِينَ قَالُوا إِنَّ اللَّهَ ثَالِثُ ثَلَاثَةٍ إِذْ أَخْرَجَهُ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا ثَانِيًا ثَلَاثِينَ verily, they are unbelievers who say, God is a third of three (is one of three);
 C when those, who were unbelievers, drove him forth a second of two (one of two, with a single companion); خَرَجَ زَيْدٌ سَابِعَ سَبْعَةٍ Zaid went out a seventh of seven (with six companions). With the numerals from 11 to 19, we may either use the whole ordinal number, or (which is better) suppress the second part of it, in which case the first part becomes declinable; as ثَانِيًا عَشَرَ, or ثَانِي عَشَرَ, a twelfth of twelve, fem. ثَانِيَةً عَشْرَةً or ثَانِيَةً عَشْرَةً;
 D ثَالِثًا عَشَرَ, or ثَالِثَ عَشَرَ, a thirteenth of thirteen, fem. ثَالِثَةً عَشْرَةً or ثَالِثَةً عَشْرَةً; etc.

to which ثَانِيًا in ثَانِيًا وَعَشْرِي تَمُوزَ would be in the status constructus before تَمُوزَ, as in the cases mentioned § 78, rem. b. Comp. Fleischer, *Kl. Schr.* i. 697. Hence also the use of ثَانِيًا السَّابِعَ وَالْعِشْرُونَ, الثَّانِي وَالْعِشْرُونَ, السَّابِعَ عَشْرِينَ, عَشْرِينَ (Vol. i. § 330, rem.) D. G.]

REM. Compare in Old German *selbe vierde*, i.e. *mit drei andern*; A
zuo riten adhen einen ritter selben dritten, i.e. *mit zwei andern*; *der¹*
grave selbe zwelfte in eine barken spranc, i.e. *mit elf andern*.

(b) In the latter case, the ordinals from third to ninth are in reality nomina agentis (compare § 86, rem. a) from the verbs *ثَلَّثَ* to make (two) into three, *رَبَعَ* to make (three) into four, etc.; as *هُوَ ثَالِثٌ اَثْنَيْنِ* he makes a third, lit. he makes three of two. Hence they may also be construed with the accusative; as *هُوَ رَابِعٌ ثَلَاثَةً* B
he makes a fourth, fem. *هِيَ رَابِعَةٌ ثَلَاثًا*.—With the numerals from 11 to 19, we may in like manner say *هُوَ ثَالِثٌ عَشَرَ اَثْنَى عَشَرَ* he makes a thirteenth; *هِيَ رَابِعَةٌ عَشَرَ ثَلَاثَ عَشَرَ* she makes a fourteenth (where the cardinal number is in the accusative); though many grammarians wholly disapprove of this construction [allowing only *هُوَ ثَالِثٌ اَثْنَى عَشَرَ* and *هِيَ رَابِعَةٌ ثَلَاثَ عَشَرَ*, with suppression of the ten].—With the C
numerals compounded of units and tens, only the unit is put in the construct state, and the ten is suppressed; as *هُوَ رَابِعٌ ثَلَاثَةٌ وَعِشْرِينَ* he makes a twenty-fourth: or, with the accusative, *هِيَ رَابِعَةٌ ثَلَاثًا وَعِشْرِينَ* she makes a twenty-fourth.

REM. a. Examples of the ordinals used as nomina agentis, with pronominal suffixes, are: *مَا يَكُونُ مِنْ نَجْوَى ثَلَاثَةٍ إِلَّا هُوَ رَابِعُهُمْ* there is no private converse of three, but He makes the fourth; D
سَيَقُولُونَ ثَلَاثَةً رَابِعُهُمْ كَلْبُهُمْ وَيَقُولُونَ خَمْسَةً سَادِسُهُمْ كَلْبُهُمْ رَجْمًا they will say, 'Three, their dog making the fourth'; and they will say, 'Five, their dog making the sixth,' guessing at the secret; and they will say, 'Seven, and their dog making the eighth.'

REM. b. From *عِشْرُونَ* twenty is formed a [post-classical] quadriliteral verb, the nomen agentis of which may be used in the same way as the ordinal number; e.g. *هُوَ مُعَشِّرٌ تِسْعَةَ عَشَرَ* he makes a

- A *twentieth* (lit., if we may be allowed to coin a word, *he twenties nineteen*), from *عُشْرَنَ* to make (nineteen) into twenty. [Similarly *سَبْعَنَ* to make into seventy is formed from *سَبْعُونَ* seventy.]

110. In stating dates, particularly when reckoning according to the Muhammadan era, the cardinal numbers are employed instead of the ordinal. They are put in the genitive after the word denoting year, but agree with it in gender; as *فِي سَنَةِ ثَمَانٍ وَثَمَانِينَ* in the year 888 of the Alexandrine era;

- B *ثُمَّ دَخَلَتْ سَنَةٌ سِتٌّ وَتِسْعِينَ وَثَلَاثِيَاءَ* then commenced the year 396 (of the *Higra*); *تَوَفَّى صَلَاحُ ضُحَا يَوْمَ الْاِثْنَيْنِ اِثْنَتَى عَشْرَةَ لَيْلَةً خَلَتْ* he (the Prophet) died early in the forenoon, on Monday the twelfth (lit. twelve nights being passed) of the month of the first *Rabī'*, in the eleventh year of the *Higra*. But if the years of a life or a reign are meant, the ordinal must be employed; as *فِي السَّنَةِ السَّادِسَةِ مِنْ مُلْكِ الْاَشْرَفِ شَعْبَانَ* in the sixth year of the reign of *el-Asraf Sa'bān*;
- C *فِي السَّنَةِ الثَّانِيَةِ وَالْاَرْبَعِينَ مِنْ مُلْكِهِ* in the forty-second year of his reign.

111. The Arabs have two ways of stating the day of the month. They count either from the first day to the last, as we do, e.g. *الْيَوْمَ الرَّابِعَ عَشَرَ مِنْ شَهْرِ رَجَبٍ* the first of *Sa'bān*; *يَوْمَ الْخَمِيسِ الثَّانِي* the fourteenth day of the month of *Rag̃eb*;

- D *وَالْعِشْرِينَ لِمُحَرَّمٍ* on Thursday the twenty-second of *Muharram*; or they reckon by the *nights* of the month, the civil day being held by them, as well as by the Jews, to commence at sunset. To illustrate this, let us take the month of *Rag̃eb*, which has thirty days.

1st of *Rag̃eb*, *لَيْلَةً خَلَتْ مِنْ رَجَبٍ*, *لِلْأَوَّلِ لَيْلَةً مِنْ رَجَبٍ*, or *لِلْأَوَّلِ لَيْلَةً مِنْ رَجَبٍ*, one night of *Rag̃eb* being past*.

* We may also say *لَيْلَةً مِنْ رَجَبٍ* or *لَيْلَةً مِنْ رَجَبٍ* (from *غُرَّة* the blaze,

2nd, لَيْلَتَيْنِ خَلَّتَا مِنْ رَجَبٍ.

A

3d, ثَلَاثَ (ثَلَاثَ لَيَالٍ) خَلَوْنَ مِنْ رَجَبٍ; and so on up to the

10th, عَشْرَ خَلَوْنَ مِنْ رَجَبٍ.

11th, إِحْدَى عَشْرَةَ (لَيْلَةً) خَلَّتْ مِنْ رَجَبٍ; and so on up to the

14th, أَرْبَعَ عَشْرَةَ خَلَّتْ مِنْ رَجَبٍ.

15th, فِي مُتْتَصِفٍ رَجَبٍ, or فِي أُنْتِصَافِ رَجَبٍ, or فِي أَلْتِصَافِ مِنْ رَجَبٍ,

in the middle of Rəğəb.

B

16th, أَرْبَعَ عَشْرَةَ (لَيْلَةً) بَقِيَتْ مِنْ رَجَبٍ fourteen nights remaining of Rəğəb; and so on up to the

20th, عَشْرَ (عَشْرَ لَيَالٍ) بَقِيَتْ (بَقِيْنَ) مِنْ رَجَبٍ; and so on up to the

27th, ثَلَاثَ بَقِيْنَ مِنْ رَجَبٍ.

28th, لَيْلَتَيْنِ بَقِيَّتَا مِنْ رَجَبٍ.

C

29th, لَيْلَةً بَقِيَتْ مِنْ رَجَبٍ.

30th, لِأَخِرِ لَيْلَةٍ مِنْ رَجَبٍ on the last night of Rəğəb*.

Germ. *Bläse*, on a horse's forehead, the new moon). The word مُسْتَهْلٌ (from هَلَالٌ the new moon) is likewise frequently used to denote the first of the month, and more rarely اِسْتِهْلَالٌ, اِهْلَالٌ, هِهْلٌ, and هَلَّةٌ, هِهْلٌ, and هَلَّةٌ; e.g. كَانَ أَتَبَدَأَ الْوَجْعَ فِي مُسْتَهْلِ رَبِيعِ الْأَوَّلِ وَتَوَقَّى صَلْعَمَ فِي هِهْلٍ; the disease began on the first of the first Rabi', and he (the Prophet) died on the twelfth of that month.

* Or لَيْسَلَخِ رَجَبٍ, or لَيْسَلَاخِ رَجَبٍ, or لَيْسَلَخِ رَجَبٍ. The words سَرَارٌ and سَرَرٌ, more rarely سِرَارٌ and سِرَرٌ, are also employed to denote the last day of the month.

A

II. THE SENTENCE AND ITS PARTS.

A. THE SENTENCE IN GENERAL.

1. *The Parts of the Sentence: the Subject, the Predicate, and their Complements.*

B **112.** Every proposition or sentence (جُمْلَةٌ, plur. جُمَلٌ, a sum or total of words) necessarily consists of two parts, a *subject* and a *predicate*. The latter is called by the native grammarians الْمُسْنَدُ *that which leans upon or is supported by (the subject), the attribute*; the former, اِلَيْهِ الْمُسْنَدُ *that upon which (the attribute) leans, or by which it is supported, that to which something is attributed*. The relation between them is termed اِلْتِسَادٌ, properly *the act of leaning (one thing against another)*, then, as a concrete, *the relation of attribution*.

REM. a. Some grammarians [e.g. Sibawèih], however, call the *subject* اَلْمُسْنَدُ or اَلْمُسْنَدُ, and the *predicate* اِلَيْهِ الْمُسْنَدُ.

[REM. b. An indispensable member of a proposition is called عُمْدَةٌ (lit. a support), whereas a dispensable member, as, for instance, the objective complement of a verb, when the suppression thereof is not detrimental to the meaning, is called فَضْلَةٌ (lit. a redundancy).

D Comp. § 44, c, rem. a.]

113. The subject is either a *noun* (substantive or expressed pronoun*), or a *pronoun implied in the verb*; the predicate is a *noun* (substantive or adjective), a *verb* [or a preposition with its genitive = an adverb]; e.g. زَيْدٌ عَالِمٌ *Zèid is learned*; أَنْتَ شَرِيفٌ *thou art noble*; اَللَّهُ هُوَ اَلْحَقُّ *God is the truth*; مَاتَ زَيْدٌ *Zèid is dead*; مَاتَ *he is*

* [See, however, § 48, f, rem. a.]

dead (in which last example the pronoun *هو* is implied in the verb); A
 [هَـٰذَا رَجُلٌ *here is a man*].—Every sentence which begins with the
 subject (substantive or pronoun) is called by the Arab grammarians
 جُمْلَةٌ اِسْمِيَّةٌ *a nominal sentence*. Whether the following predicate
 be a noun, or a preposition and the word it governs (جَارٌ وَمَجْرُورٌ
attracting and attracted, § 115, and Vol. i. § 355), or a verb, is a
 matter of indifference; زَيْدٌ مَاتَ *Zaid is dead*, is in their eyes a
 nominal sentence just as much as زَيْدٌ عَالِمٌ *Zaid is learned*, or زَيْدٌ فِي
 الْمَسْجِدِ *Zaid is in the mosque*. What characterises a nominal
 sentence, according to them, is the absence of a logical copula
 expressed by or contained in a finite verb. On the contrary, a
 sentence of which the predicate is a verb preceding the subject
 (as مَاتَ زَيْدٌ *Zaid is dead*), or a sentence consisting of a verb which
 includes both subject and predicate (as مَاتَ *he is dead*), is called by
 them جُمْلَةٌ فِعْلِيَّةٌ *a verbal sentence*. The subject of a nominal sentence
 is called اَلْمُبْتَدَأُ *that with which a beginning is made, the inchoative*, C
 and its predicate اَلْخَبَرُ *the enunciative or announcement*. The subject
 of a verbal sentence is called اَلْفَاعِلُ *the agent*, and its predicate اَلْفِعْلُ
the action or verb.

REM. a. اَلْمُبْتَدَأُ is, according to the above translation, an
 elliptical form of expression, for اَلْمُبْتَدَأُ بِهِ. Compare Vol. i. § 190,
 rem. b; [where a similar elliptical expression occurs, viz. اَلضَّمِيرُ
 and اَلْمُضَرَّعُ بِهِ and اَلضَّمِيرُ بِهِ. Likewise اَلْمَنْطُوقُ بِهِ D
 ᾠρόν is used for اَلْمَنْطُوقُ بِهِ, اَلْمُعْتَمَدُ عَلَيْهِ for اَلْمُعْتَمَدُ
 upon, اَلْمُشْتَرَكُ فِيهِ for اَلْمُشْتَرَكُ shared in, and (in later times) اَلْمَغْشَى
 for اَلْمَغْشَى عَلَيْهِ (§ 133)].

[REM. b. The difference between verbal and nominal sentences,
 to which the native grammarians attach no small importance, is
 properly this, that the former relates an act or event, the latter

- A gives a description of a person or thing, either absolutely, or in the form of a clause descriptive of state (§ 183, a). This is the constant rule in good old Arabic, unless the desire to emphasize a part of the sentence be the cause of a change in its position.]

114. The place of the subject both of a nominal and of a verbal sentence may sometimes be supplied by an entire sentence compounded of a verb and one of the particles **أَنْ** or **مَا** (called **الْمُصَدَّرِيَّةُ**

- B the particles which supply the place of the *maṣdar* or *nomen verbi*, § 88); as **أَنْ تَصُومُوا خَيْرٌ لَّكُمْ** it is good for you that ye should fast or to fast (**صَوْمُكُمْ = أَنْ تَصُومُوا**); **أَعْجَبَنِي أَنْ خَرَجْتَ** it pleased me that thou wentest out, or thy going out pleased me (**أَنْ خَرَجْتَ = أَنْ خَرُوجُكَ**); **طَالَ مَا عَادَيْتَ الْإِسْلَامَ** thou hast long been hostile to *al-'Islām* (**مُعَادَاةُكَ = مَا عَادَيْتَ**).

- [REM. Instead of a sentence compounded with **أَنْ**, sometimes an *oratio directa* is used, as **تَسْمَعُ بِالْمَعْدِيِّ خَيْرٌ مِنْ أَنْ تَرَاهُ** thy hearing of the little *Ma'addi* is better than thy seeing him; **فَيَأْتِي أَكُونُ وَزِيرًا خَيْرٌ مِنْ أَنْ أَكُونَ أَمِيرًا** for my being *wazīr* is better than my being *emīr*; **فَيَأْتِي الْخُلَفَ مِنْهُمْ أَحَبُّ إِلَيَّ مِنْ** and that the breach of faith proceeds from them pleases me better than that it should proceed from us; **فَقَالَ أَسِيرُ إِلَيْهِ** and, said he, rather will I march towards him than that he should march towards me; and in the predicate **قَلِيلٌ غِرَارٍ أَلْتَوَمُّ أَكْبَرَ هِمَّةٍ دَمُ آثَارٍ أَوْ يَلْقَى كَيْبًا مُسْقَعًا** sleeping hardly at all, his principal object being to obtain his blood-revenge, or to meet an ironclad warrior (*Ḥamāsa*, p. 245). D. G.]

115. The predicate may be, as mentioned in § 113, a preposition with its genitive; as **زَيْدٌ فِي الْمَسْجِدِ** *Zaid* is in the mosque; **زَيْدٌ عِنْدَكَ** *Zaid* is with thee or in thy house; **أَنَا مِنْ اللَّهِ** we are God's; **عَلَى دِينٍ** I am one of those who speak the truth; **عَلَى دِينٍ** I owe

some money (lit. *upon me there is a debt*, see § 59, o); **لَكَ أَنْ تَفْعَلَهُ** A
thou mayest do it (lit. *it is to thee that thou do it*). When the subject
is placed first, these are nominal sentences (§ 113); but when the
predicate precedes it, their nature is doubtful, most grammarians
holding them to be transposed nominal sentences (in which case
عَلَى دَيْنٍ in **عَلَى** is a **خَبَرٌ مُقَدَّمٌ** or *predicate placed in front*, and
دَيْنٍ or **مُبْتَدَأٌ مُؤَخَّرٌ** or *subject placed behind*), whilst others regard them
as being in reality verbal sentences, with the verb suppressed (so that
عَلَى is equivalent to **يَسْتَقِرُّ عَلَى** *there rests upon me*, and **دَيْنٍ** is the B
فَاعِلٌ or subject of this suppressed verb). A sentence, of which the
predicate is a preposition with a genitive indicating a *place*, is called
by the Arabs **جُمْلَةٌ ظَرْفِيَّةٌ** a *local sentence* (see Vol. i. § 221, rem. a);
and if the genitive indicates any other relation but that of place, it is
said to be **جُمْلَةٌ جَارِيَّةٌ مَجْرَى الظَّرْفِيَّةِ** a *sentence which runs the course*,
or *follows the analogy, of a local sentence*. As, however, the expression
ظَرْفٌ is often used in the general sense of **جَارٌ وَمَجْرُورٌ** (§ 113), any C
sentence commencing with a preposition and its genitive as the
predicate may be called **جُمْلَةٌ ظَرْفِيَّةٌ** (see § 127, a).

[REM. The difference in signification between those sentences
in which the predicate and those in which the subject precedes lies
in the fact, that the logical emphasis always falls on that part of
the sentence that is put in the second place (comp. § 36, rem. b);

زَيْدٌ فِي الْمَسْجِدِ *Zèid is in the mosque (not elsewhere)*, but **فِي**
الْمَسْجِدِ زَيْدٌ *in the mosque is Zèid (not any one else)*.] D

116. When the predicate is a preposition with its genitive [or an
adverb], and the subject is an indefinite substantive, or a sentence
compounded of **أَنْ** and a finite verb (§ 114), the predicate must
necessarily be put first; as **عِنْدَكَ رَجُلٌ** *a man is with thee or in thy*
house; **فِي الدَّارِ أَمْرَأَةٌ** *a woman is in the house*; **أَنْ تَفْعَلَهُ** *thou*
mayest do it; and not **رَجُلٌ عِنْدَكَ**, **أَمْرَأَةٌ فِي الدَّارِ**.
Unless the indefinite substantive be accompanied by an adjective,

- A expressed or implied, when either order is admissible; as **عِنْدِي رَجُلٌ** *عِنْدِي* **رَجُلٌ**, or **رَجُلٌ كَرِيمٌ عِنْدِي**, *a noble man is with me or in my house*; **رَجُلٌ رَجِيلٌ**, or **رَجِيلٌ عِنْدَنَا**, *there is a little man, or a mean-looking fellow* (**رَجُلٌ رَجِيلٌ** = **رَجُلٌ صَغِيرٌ** or **رَجُلٌ حَقِيرٌ**) *with us or at our house*—[or unless the sentence expresses a wish, when the indefinite subject comes first; as **وَيْلٌ لِّزَيْدٍ**, **سَلَامٌ عَلَيْكَ** (§ 127, e). In case of inversion, the subject must be defined by the article, as **لِزَيْدٍ أَلْوَيْلٌ**, **عَلَيْكَ أَسَلَامٌ**].
- B 117. This inversion of subject and predicate also necessarily takes place in a nominal sentence: (α) when the **مُبْتَدَأٌ** comprises a pronoun which refers to a word in the **خَبَرٌ**, as **مَلَأُوْ عَيْنٍ حَبِيْبًا** *what an eye loves fills (or satisfies) it*, **فِي أَلْدَارِ صَاحِبَهَا** *its master (or owner) is in the house*, not **صَاحِبَهَا فِي أَلْدَارِ حَبِيْبَهَا** **مَلَأُوْ عَيْنٍ**; (β) when the **مُبْتَدَأٌ** is restricted by **إِنَّمَا** or **إِلَّا**, as **إِنَّمَا فِي أَلْدَارِ زَيْدٌ** *only Zèid is in the house*, **مَا فِي أَلْدَارِ إِلَّا زَيْدٌ** *there is no one but Zèid in the house*,
- C **إِلَّا أَتَّبَاعُ أَحْمَدَا** *we have nothing (to do) but to follow 'Aḥmed (Muḥammad)*, not **إِنَّمَا زَيْدٌ فِي أَلْدَارِ**, which would mean *Zèid is only in the house* [comp. §§ 115, rem., 185]; (γ) when the **خَبَرٌ** is an interrogative, as **أَيْنَ زَيْدٌ** *where is Zèid?* **مَا هَذَا** *what is this?* **مَنْ أَنْتَ** *who art thou?* **كَيْفَ عَمْرُو** *how is 'Amr?*

REM. a. With the particle **إِلَّا** under β we find occasional exceptions; as **فَيَا رَبِّ هَلْ إِلَّا بِكَ أَلْتَّصِرُ بِرَجْعِي عَلَيْهِمْ وَهَلْ إِلَّا عَلَيْكَ**

- D **أَلْمَعُولُ** *O my Lord, can victory over them be hoped for save through Thee? and (on whom) can one rely save on Thee?*

REM. b. The inversion likewise takes place when a nominal proposition is preceded by an interrogative or negative particle, the transposed predicate agreeing with the subject in number*; as

* [In the words **أُمَيَّةٌ أُمَيَّةٌ أُمَيَّةٌ** (Tab. ii. 1973, l. 7) **أُمَيَّةٌ** has the sense of a collective: *are the house of Omèiya waking or sleeping?* D. G.]

هَلْ قَائِمُونَ الرَّجَالُ *the two men are not standing*; أَمَّا قَائِمُونَ الرَّجَالُ *are the men standing?* See § 121. A

118. In verbal sentences the subject or agent must always follow the predicate or verb; as مَاتَ عُمَرُ *'Omar is dead*; عُمَرُ مَاتَ أَبُوهُ *'Omar's father (lit. 'Omar, his father) is dead* (see § 120).

119. When the noun (substantive or pronoun) stands first, and the verb second, the former is not a فَاعِلٌ or agent, but a B مُبْتَدَأٌ or inchoative, of which the latter is the خَبَرٌ or enuntiative, the whole being not a verbal but a nominal sentence (see § 113). A sentence of this kind, consisting of an inchoative and a complete verbal sentence, the agent of which is contained in the verb itself (§ 113), may be called *compound*; e.g. زَيْدٌ مَاتَ *Zaid is dead*, = قُلْتُ *I have said*, where the agent is تُو in قُلْتُ. In such sentences, the pronoun which is contained in the verb takes the place of, and falls back upon, the noun which stands before the compound verbal sentence and constitutes its inchoative.—The dif- C
ference between a compound nominal sentence, such as زَيْدٌ مَاتَ, and a verbal one, such as مَاتَ زَيْدٌ, is this. In the former, the inchoative is always (tacitly or expressly) contrasted with another inchoative, having not the same predicate but a different or even an opposite one; e.g. زَيْدٌ مَاتَ وَعُمَرُ حَيٌّ *Zaid is dead and 'Omar is alive*, = أَمَّا زَيْدٌ فَمَاتَ وَأَمَّا عُمَرُ فَحَيٌّ; whereas in the latter, in which the logical emphasis rests almost solely upon the verb, such a D contrast of two inchoatives is not admissible. Even when the verb is put into the background by the emphasis falling with specialising or contrasting force upon some one of its complements, the very fact of the emphasis so falling at once sets aside all question of a contrast of the inchoatives; for example: إِيَّاكَ نَعْبُدُ وَإِيَّاكَ نَسْتَعِينُ *THEE we worship and to THEE we cry for help*; ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ رَجُلًا وَاحِدًا وَضَرَبَ عُمَرُ رَجُلَيْنِ *Zaid struck ONE man, and 'Omar struck TWO men.*

120. Those sentences are also compound, which are composed of a noun and a nominal sentence or a verbal sentence, consisting of a verb and a following noun. For example: **زَيْدٌ أَبْنُهُ حَسَنٌ** *Zèid's son* (lit. *Zèid, his son*) *is handsome*; **زَيْدٌ مَاتَ أَبُوهُ** *Zèid's father is dead*; **زَيْدٌ قُتِلَ أَخُوهُ** *Zèid's brother has been killed*; **زَيْدٌ جَاءَ إِلَيْهِ بِكِتَابٍ** *a letter has been brought to Zèid* (lit. *Zèid, there has been a coming to him with a letter*). In compound sentences of this sort, there is appended to the subject of the nominal or verbal sentence, which occupies the place of the **خَبَرٌ**, a pronominal suffix, called **الرَّابِطُ**, *the binder or connector*, which represents, and falls back upon, the noun forming the **مُبْتَدَأٌ**. Such a sentence is said by the grammarians to be **جُمْلَةٌ ذَاتُ وَجْهَيْنِ**, *a sentence with two faces or aspects*, because, as a whole, it partakes both of the nominal and the verbal nature.

REM. a. The pronominal suffix is sometimes omitted in cases in which the sense is perfectly clear without it; as **السَّمْنُ مَنَوَانٍ بِدِرْهَمٍ** *the ghee is (at the rate of) two manās for a dirham*; **الْبُرُّ الْكُرُّ بِسِتِّينَ** *the wheat is (at the rate of) sixty dirhams per kurr*; i.e. **مَنَوَانٍ** *two manās of it*, **الْكُرُّ مِنْهُ** *the kurr of it*.

REM. b. A pronominal **رَابِطٌ** is not required when the **خَبَرٌ** is wider or more general in its signification than the **مُبْتَدَأٌ**; as **زَيْدٌ نَعَمَ الرَّجُلُ** *What an excellent man Zèid is!* Nor when the **مُبْتَدَأٌ** and **خَبَرٌ** are perfectly identical in meaning; as **نُطْقِي اللَّهَ** *my utterance (is), God is my sufficiency*; **قَوْلِي لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ** *what I say (is), There is no god but God*.

121. (a) If a sentence consists of a verbal adjective occupying the first place, and a noun occupying the second, it may be regarded as a verbal sentence, the verbal adjective being looked upon as a verb

and the noun as its agent. E.g. *حَبِيرٌ بَنُو لِهَبٍ* the *Banū Lihb* are *A*
skilled (in augury); *فَخَيْرٌ نَحْنُ عِنْدَ النَّاسِ مِنْكُمْ* and so we are better
than you in the opinion of men (where, according to the analysis of
the grammarians, *حَبِيرٌ* and *خَيْرٌ* are the *مُبْتَدَأُ*, and *بَنُو* and *نَحْنُ* are
each a *فَاعِلٍ سَادُّ مَسَدِ الْخَبَرِ* or *agent supplying the place of the habar*);
زَيْدٌ ضَارِبٌ غُلَامَهُ عَمْرٌ *Zèid's slave is beating 'Omar* (where *غُلَامٌ* is
the *فَاعِلٍ* of *ضَارِبٌ*); *زَيْدٌ جَاءَنِي زَيْدٌ الْحَسَنُ غُلَامُهُ* *B*
there came to me Zèid, whose slave is handsome.—(b) The same is necessarily the case, when
the verbal adjective is preceded by an interrogative or negative
particle, and put in the singular, without regard to the number of
the following noun. E.g. *مَا ذَاهِبَةٌ هِنْدٌ أَقَائِمٌ زَيْدٌ* is *Zèid standing?*
Hind is not going away (where *قَائِمٌ* and *ذَاهِبَةٌ* are the *مُبْتَدَأُ*, and *زَيْدٌ*
and *هِنْدٌ* are each a *فَاعِلٍ سَادُّ مَسَدِ الْخَبَرِ*); *أَقَائِمٌ الرِّجَالُ* *C*
are the men standing? *مَا قَائِمٌ الرَّجُلَانِ* *the two men are not standing*; *أَقَائِمٌ*
أَبَوَاهُ زَيْدٌ *are Zèid's parents standing?* (where *قَائِمٌ* is a transposed
فَاعِلٍ, and *زَيْدٌ* a transposed *مُبْتَدَأُ*); *هَلْ مَضْرُوبٌ بَنُوكَ* *are thy sons beaten?*
(where *مَضْرُوبٌ* is the *مُبْتَدَأُ*, and *بَنُو* a *نَائِبٌ* or *deputy-agent supplying the place of the خبر*).
Similarly: *أَرَاغِبُ أَنْتَ عَنْ آلِهَتِي يَا إِبْرَاهِيمُ* *D*
art thou going to forsake my gods, O Abraham? *أَنْتُمَا خَلِيلَيَّ مَا وَافٍ بَعْدِي أَنْتُمَا*
my two friends, ye do not keep your compact with me; *أَمِنْجَزْ أَنْتُمْ وَعْدًا وَثَّقْتُ بِهِ*
will ye fulfil a promise on which I relied? *غَيْرُ لَاهٍ عِدَاكَ فَاطْرَحَ*
thy enemies are not in play, so do thou leave off play (where
غَيْرُ لَاهٍ = *مَا لَاهٍ*, i.e. *مَا تَارَكَ أَمْرَكَ*). But if the verbal adjective agrees
with the following noun in number, the sentence is regarded as
nominal; e.g. *مَا قَائِمَانِ الرَّجُلَانِ* *the two men are not standing* (where

- A قَائِمَانِ is a حَبْرٌ مُقَدَّمٌ and الرَّجُلَانِ a مُبْتَدَأٌ مُؤَخَّرٌ. See § 117, rem. *b*.

REM. In the case of a singular noun, as أَقَائِمُ زَيْدٌ, a double analysis is possible; قَائِمٌ may be regarded as a مُبْتَدَأٌ, of which زَيْدٌ is the فَاعِلٌ سَادٌّ مَسَدٌ الْخَبَرِ, and this is the preferable view; or قَائِمٌ may be regarded as a transposed حَبْرٌ, of which زَيْدٌ is the

- B transposed مُبْتَدَأٌ.

122. The Arabic language, like the Hebrew and Syriac, has no *abstract* or *substantive verb* to unite the predicate with the subject of a nominal sentence, for كَانَ is not an abstract verb, but, like all other verbs, an attributive, ascribing to the subject the attribute of existence. Consequently its predicate is put, not in the nominative, but in the adverbial accusative (§ 41). The same remark naturally applies to the أَحَوَاتُ كَانَ (§ 42).

123. If a definite noun (substantive or pronoun) and an indefinite adjective are placed in juxtaposition, the very fact of the former being defined (no matter in what way) and the latter undefined, shows that the latter is the predicate of the former, and that the two together form a complete nominal sentence; for an adjective which is appended to a noun as a mere descriptive epithet, and forms along with it only one part (either subject or predicate) of a sentence, must be defined according to the nature of the noun. E.g. يُوسُفُ مَرِيضٌ *Joseph (is) sick*, السُّلْطَانُ مَرِيضٌ *the sultān (is) sick*, أَبُو يُوسُفٍ مَرِيضٌ *Joseph's father (is) sick*, أَبِي مَرِيضٌ *my father (is) sick*, هُوَ مَرِيضٌ *he (is) sick*, هَذَا مَرِيضٌ *this man (is) sick*; whereas هَذَا الْمَرِيضُ would mean either *this (is) the sick (man)* or *this sick (man)*, and السُّلْطَانُ الْمَرِيضُ *the sick sultān*.

124. When both subject and predicate are defined, the pronoun of the third person is frequently inserted between them (see § 129),

to prevent any possibility of the predicate being taken for a mere A
 apposition. This is done even when the subject is a pronoun of the
 first or second person. For example: *اللَّهُ هُوَ الْحَيُّ الْقَيُّومُ* God is
the living, the self-subsisting, *اللَّهُ هُوَ الْحَيُّوَةُ وَالْحَقُّ* God is the life
and the truth, *الْغِنَى هُوَ الْقَنُوعُ* the (only true) wealth is contentment,
ذَلِكَ الرَّجُلُ هُوَ أَنَا these are fuel for the fire, *أُولَئِكَ هُمُ وَقُودُ النَّارِ*
man is I, *أَنَا هُوَ الرَّبُّ إِلَهُكَ* I am the Lord thy God, *أَنَا هُوَ الطَّرِيقُ* B
مَنْ هُوَ أَنَا I am the way and the truth and the life, *وَالْحَقُّ وَالْحَيُّوَةُ*
who am I?* [The insertion of this pronoun takes place also fre-
 quently, when the predicate is a comparative, as *زَيْدٌ هُوَ أَفْضَلُ مِنْ*
Zdid is more excellent than Amr.] This interposed pronoun,
 which is equally common in the other Semitic languages, is called by
 the grammarians ضَمِيرُ الْفَصْلِ [or simply الْفَصْلُ] the pronoun of
 separation (between the مُبْتَدَأُ and the خَبَرُ), ضَمِيرُ الْعِمَادِ [or simply C
 الْعِمَادُ] the pronoun which serves as a prop or support (to the sentence),
 or simply الدَّرْعَامَةُ the prop or support.

125. In the case of a definite subject in the accusative after
 إِنَّ, etc. (§ 36), the ضَمِيرُ الْفَصْلِ is not required, because the
 predicate is sufficiently marked as such by its remaining in the
 nominative, as *إِنَّ اللَّهَ ثَابِتٌ ثَلَاثَةٌ* verily God is one of three; whereas D
 a mere apposition would be in the same case as the subject, viz. the
 accusative. A pronoun may, however, be inserted, provided it be of
 the same person as the substantive or pronoun after إِنَّ, etc.; as
إِنَّ الْآخِرَةَ هِيَ دَارُ الْقَرَارِ verily the world to come is the everlasting

* [This insertion of the pronoun of the 3d person after the
 pronouns of the 1st and 2d person, is post-classical; comp. Fleischer,
Kl. Schr. i. 588 seq.]

A *abode*, **إِنِّي أَنَا رَبُّكَ** *Thou art the bounteous giver*, **إِنَّكَ أَنتَ الْوَهَّابُ** *I am thy Lord*. Very often the predicate after **إِنَّ**, etc., is introduced, for the sake of greater distinctness, by the particle **لَ** (§ 36), as **إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَذُو فَضْلٍ عَلَى النَّاسِ** *verily God is good towards men*; and even here the pronoun may be introduced after **لَ**, as **إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَهُوَ** *verily God is the mighty, the wise*; **إِنَّ هَذَا لَهُوَ الْقَصَصُ** *verily this is the true narrative*.

B **REM.** The noun governed by **إِنَّ**, etc., is not regarded by the Arab grammarians as a **مُبْتَدَأٌ**, but as the **إِسْمُ إِنَّ**, *the noun of 'inna*, etc. See § 36, rem. a.

126. When both the subject and the predicate of a nominal sentence are indefinite, but the former consists of several words, no doubt can arise as to whether they form a complete sentence or only a part of one, because the subject, being cut off by the words annexed to it, cannot possibly form any one portion of the sentence (subject or predicate) in connexion with the noun which is separated from it by these words. For example: **قَوْلُ مَعْرُوفٍ وَمَغْفِرَةٌ خَيْرٌ مِنْ صَدَقَةٍ يَتْبَعُهَا أذى** *kind words and forgiveness are better than alms followed by injury*; **وَلَأَمَةٌ مُؤْمِنَةٌ خَيْرٌ مِنْ مُشْرِكَةٍ وَلَوْ أَعْجَبَتْكُمْ** *and verily a female slave who believes is better than an idolatress, even when she (the latter) pleases you (more)*.

D **127.** The inchoative or subject of a nominal sentence cannot, according to the Arab grammarians, consist of an indefinite noun*,

* *Indefinite* (نَكْرَةٌ) is here to be taken in the sense [not only of not being defined by the article or the genitive of a defined word, but even] of *not having a genitive after it*, for such phrases as **عَمَلٌ بَرٌّ** *a pious action or good work adorns (a man)*, **عَدْلٌ سَاعَةٍ خَيْرٌ** *an hour's justice is better than a thousand months'*

or one which is not qualified by an adjective, or an expression equivalent to an adjective (as *رَجُلٌ مِنَ الْكِرَامِ عِنْدَنَا* *there is a man of the noble with us*, = *رَجُلٌ كَرِيمٌ* *a noble man*); except in certain cases, of which the following are the most important.

(a) When the sentence is of the class called *الْجُمْلَةُ الظَّرْفِيَّةُ* (taking this term in its widest sense, § 115 at the end), and (a) the predicate is placed first, as *رَجُلٌ فِي الدَّارِ* *there is a man in the house*, *تَحْتَ رَأْسِي سَرْجٌ* *under my head there is a saddle*, *عِنْدَ زَيْدٍ نَمْرَةٌ* *there is a leopard in Zaid's possession*; or (β) the subject is preceded by an interrogative or negative particle, as *أَرَجُلٌ فِي الدَّارِ أَمْ امْرَأَةٌ* *is there a man in the house, or a woman?* *هَلْ إِنْسَانٌ فِي الدَّارِ* *is there any person in the house?* *هَلْ فَتًى فِيكُمْ* *is there a young man among you?* *مَا أَحَدٌ فِي الدَّارِ* *there is no one in the house*, *مَا خَلٌّ لَنَا* *we have no friend*, *مَا أَحَدٌ خَيْرٌ مِنْكَ* *there is no one better than thou art.* C

(b) When the subject is preceded by the affirmative *لَ*; as *لَرَجُلٌ قَائِمٌ* *certainly there is a man standing.*

(c) When the subject is a diminutive, because the substantive then includes the idea of the adjective *صَغِيرٌ* *small*, or *خَفِيرٌ* *con-*

worship, *لَا يَبْخُلُ مِثْلُكَ* *one like thee cannot be mean*, are quite D admissible, and yet the governing noun is indefinite, according to § 92. The inchoative may, however, be an indefinite verbal noun, provided that it retains the government of the verb from which it is derived; e.g. *أَمْرٌ بِمَعْرُوفٍ صَدَقَةٌ* *a desire to do good is good*, *وَنَهْيٌ عَنِ مُنْكَرٍ صَدَقَةٌ* *to order what is right is an alms and to prohibit what is wrong is an alms.* In both these cases, however, there is evidently a sort of partial determination [*تَخْصِصٌ*; comp. § 75, footnote].

A *temptible*; as *عِنْدَنَا رَجُلٌ* *there is a mannikin (or a mean fellow) at our house* (see § 116).

(d) When the subject is a noun of a general signification, such as *كُلُّ* *all*; as *كُلُّ فَانٍ* *all perish*; *كُلُّ يَمُوتُ* *all die*; because *كُلُّ* is here equivalent to *كُلُّ آتَاسٍ* *all mankind*, or *كُلُّ أَحَدٍ* *every one*, and is therefore virtually definite (see § 82, a).

B (e) When the sentence expresses a wish or prayer; as *سَلَامٌ عَلَيْكُمْ* *peace be upon you*! *وَيْلٌ لِّزَيْدٍ* *woe to Zdid*!

(f) When the subject is a word which contains the conditional meaning of the particle *إِنْ* *if*, such as *مَنْ* (§ 6); e.g. *مَنْ يَقُمْ أَقْمِرْ مَعَهُ* *if any one gets up, I will get up with him*.

(g) When the subject is preceded by the *وَإِذَا* *or wāw* which introduces a circumstantial clause (§ 183), or by the conjunction *لَوْ لَا* *if not*, or by the *فَاءُ الْجَزَاءِ* [§ 187]; as *فَاءُ الْجَزَاءِ* [§ 187]; as *سَرِينَا وَنَجْمٌ قَدْ أَضَاءَ فَمُذْ* [§ 187]; as *سَرِينَا وَنَجْمٌ قَدْ أَضَاءَ فَمُذْ* *we travelled by night, after a star had already shone out, but from the moment thy face appeared, its light obscured every shining star* (*شَارِقٍ* in rhyme for *شَارِقٍ*); *لَوْ لَا* *were it not for patience, every lover would die*; *إِنْ ذَهَبَ عَيْرٌ فَعَيْرٌ فِي الرَّهْطِ* *if a wild ass departs (i.e. if a chieftain dies), there is a wild ass (another chieftain) in the tribe*.

D (h) When the subject is the answer to a question, its predicate being suppressed; as when one asks *مَنْ عِنْدَكَ* *who is in thy house?* and receives the reply, *رَجُلٌ* *a man*, scil. *عِنْدِي*.

(i) When the subject is an adjective, agreeing with and taking the place of a suppressed substantive; as *مُؤْمِنٌ خَيْرٌ مِنْ كَافِرٍ* *a believer is better than an unbeliever*, i.e. *رَجُلٌ مُؤْمِنٌ* *a believing man*.

(j) When the subject is connected with another subject, which is

definite or accompanied by an adjective; as زَيْدٌ وَرَجُلٌ قَائِمَانِ *Zaid A and a man are standing*; تَمِيمِيٌّ وَرَجُلٌ فِي الدَّارِ *a Tamimite and (another) man are in the house*, where تَمِيمِيٌّ = أَخُو تَمِيمٍ (p. 260, note) or رَجُلٌ تَمِيمِيٌّ (above, i); رَجُلٌ وَامْرَأَةٌ طَوِيلَةٌ فِي الدَّارِ *a man and a tall woman are in the house*.

[(k) When two or more indefinite subjects are put together antithetically or synthetically, as يَوْمٌ لَنَا وَيَوْمٌ عَلَيْنَا *one day is for us, B another against us*; وَقَوْمٌ قَالَ—وَقَوْمٌ قَالَ *some say—others say*.

(l) When the subject is in the accusative after إِنَّ, أَنَّ, etc. (§ 36), as إِنَّ أَسَدًا كَانَ يُلَازِمُهُ ذِئْبٌ وَفُتْلَبٌ *a lion had a wolf and a fox for companions.*]

In all these different sorts of sentences, there can be no doubt that the words form a complete sentence, and not merely a part of one.

REM. a. The subject may also be indefinite in some cases in C which a strong emphasis rests upon it; as شَيْءٌ جَاءَ بِكَ *SOMETHING has brought thee*, meaning عَظِيمٌ جَاءَ بِكَ *something great or important*, or equivalent to مَا جَاءَ بِكَ إِلَّا شَيْءٌ *nothing has brought thee but a thing (of importance)*; بَقَرَةٌ تَكَلَّمَتْ *an ox has spoken*!

REM. b. European grammarians have often erred in their analysis of the phrase فَصَبْرٌ جَمِيلٌ in the Kor'an, xii. 18, بَلْ سَوَّلَتْ D لَكُمْ أَنْفُسُكُمْ أَمْرًا فَصَبْرٌ جَمِيلٌ. This they have translated either *nay, your minds have made a thing seem pleasant unto you (and ye have done it), but patience is becoming*; or *mais la patience vaut mieux*; or *ergo pati (patientem esse) pulchrum est*; according to which translations صَبْرٌ would be an indefinite مُبْتَدَأٌ and جَمِيلٌ its خَبَرٌ. Still worse is it to regard the words as an exhortation, *therefore—becoming patience!* (also—*geziemende Geduld!*), which would necessarily be فَصَبْرًا جَمِيلًا (§ 35). The Arab commentators are right in regarding the words either as a compound خَبَرٌ صَبْرٍ, i.e. قَائِمِي صَبْرٍ

- A **جَمِيلٌ** and therefore my business (or duty) is (to show) becoming patience, or as a compound **مُبْتَدَأٌ**, i.e. (أَمْثَلُ) **جَمِيلٌ أَجْمَلُ** and therefore (to show) becoming patience is more seemly. The former of these two views seems to be the preferable one. [Comp. Sibaw. i. ۱۳۴.]

- [REM. c. In such sentences as **إِنَّ لِي أَلْحَنَ قَبْلَ الْيَوْمِ مَا** **إِنَّمَا تَقْرَعُ أَلْعَصَا** verily, before to-day the staff was struck for an intelligent man (i.e. he, being heedless, has been called to attention); **وَمِنْ قَبْلُ** B **وَمِنْ قَبْلُ** and before now ye have been remiss with regard to Joseph; **وَعَدَا مَا تَرِيَانِي** and to-morrow ye will see me, **مَا** is not pleonastic, as it has been called by some scholars, but forms with the following verbal clause the subject of a nominal sentence of the class mentioned under a. Comp. Fleischer, *Kl. Schr.* i. 479, ii. 390 seq., where many examples are given. D. G.]

- C **128.** When both subject and predicate are definite, but the former consists of several words, it is also clear, without the insertion of the **ضَمِيرُ الْقَصَلِ**, that the words form a complete sentence; as **الْأَسْلَامُ** **عِنْدَ اللَّهِ** **الْأَسْلَامُ** the (only true) religion in God's sight is **الْأَسْلَامُ**; **مَثَلُ الَّذِينَ يُنْفِقُونَ أَمْوَالَهُمْ فِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ كَمَثَلِ حَبَّةٍ أَنْبَتَتْ** **مَثَلُ الَّذِينَ يُنْفِقُونَ أَمْوَالَهُمْ فِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ** the likeness of those who expend their wealth in the path (or cause) of God, (is) the likeness of a grain of corn which produces **سَبْعَ سَنَابِلَ** seven ears.

129. The **ضَمِيرُ الْقَصَلِ** is also not rarely omitted in sentences in which both subject and predicate are definite, but the former consists of only one word; as **مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ** Muhammad is the apostle of God; **أَلِيٌّ وَلِيُّ اللَّهِ** Ali is the friend of God; **ذَلِكَ الْفَوْزُ الْعَظِيمُ** this is the great felicity (*al-Kor'an*, ch. ix. 90, but in verse 73 we read **ذَلِكَ هُوَ الْفَوْزُ الْعَظِيمُ**). Here a doubt might at first arise, as to whether these words form a complete sentence, or merely the compound

subject of one; in which case we must only examine whether the words that follow can be taken as their predicate, without doing violence to sense and grammar, or not. A

130. From the *ضَمِيرُ الْفَصْلِ*, or *pronoun of separation*, must be carefully distinguished the pronoun which is appended to the subject to give it emphasis and contrast it with another subject (*مَسِيرُ التَّأْكِيدِ* *مَسِيرُ التَّأْكِيدِ*); as *كَانَ هَذَا هُوَ السَّبَبُ* (أَوْ التَّوَكُّيدِ) *THIS was the reason*; *إِنْ كَانَ هَذَا هُوَ الْحَقُّ مِنْ عِنْدِكَ* *if THIS be the truth from Thee*; *كَانَ الْمُسْلِمُونَ* *the Muslims* (and not slaves or mercenaries) *formed the army*; *وَلَكِنْ كَانُوا هُمُ الظَّالِمِينَ* *but THEY were the doers of wrong*.—This pronoun is also frequently appended (as in the other Semitic languages) to a pronominal suffix in any case, to give it emphasis [comp. § 139, rem. a]; e.g. *كُنْتَ أَنْتَ الرَّقِيبَ عَلَيْهِمْ* *THOU art the watcher over them*; *كَانَ رَأْيُهُ هُوَ أَلَّا يَتَنَاوَلَ أَحَدٌ شَيْئًا* *HIS opinion was that no one should take anything*; *فَأَيْنَ نَصِيبِي أَنَا مِنْ هَذَا النَّفْلِ* *where then is MY share of this booty?* *لِمَنْ هَذَا الْكِتَابُ لَنَا نَحْنُ* *whose is this book? OURS*; *مَا مَنَعَكُمَا أَنْتُمَا مِنْ ذَلِكَ* *what prevented YOU two from doing that?* *إِنْ تَرَى أَنَا أَقَلَّ مِنْكَ مَالًا وَوَلَدًا* *if thou thinkest that I have less wealth and (fewer) children than thou*; and more rarely to a noun in the accusative, as *وَجَعَلْنَا ذُرِّيَّتَهُ هُمُ الْبَاقِينَ* *and we made his offspring the survivors*. The emphatic *لَ* is sometimes prefixed to it, as *إِنْ كُنَّا لَنَحْنُ الصَّالِحِينَ* *if WE be the righteous*. B C D

[REM. In the preceding quotations from the *Kor'an* some read *أَنَا أَقَلَّ مِنْكَ مَالًا وَوَلَدًا*, *هُمُ الظَّالِمُونَ*, *هُوَ الْحَقُّ*, taking these words as nominal sentences, which form in the first and second case the predicate of *كَانَ*, in the third the second object of *رَأَى*, just as in *أَظُنُّ زَيْدًا هُوَ خَيْرٌ مِنْكَ*, *I think Zeid is better than thou art*, the words *هُوَ خَيْرٌ مِنْكَ* are the second object of *ظَنَّ*.]

- A **131.** If, however, in a nominal sentence, a more precise indication of time and mood be necessary, the Arabs use for this purpose **كَانَ** or one of its "sisters" (§§ 41, 42). The imperfect **يَكُونُ** has in this case the usual meanings of the imperfect (§ 8): whilst the perfect **كَانَ** admits of four significations; viz. (a) of the *historical tense* or Greek aorist (§ 1, a), in which case it has, according to the Arab grammarians, the sense of **صَارَ** *to become*; (b) of the actual *perfect* (§ 1, b); (c) of the actual *imperfect*, as it were a shortening of **كَانَ يَكُونُ**, which also occasionally occurs (§ 9); and (d) sometimes, especially in the *Kor'an*, of the *present*, but only by giving a peculiar turn to its use as a perfect (*has become by nature*, *πέφυκα*), as **إِنَّ اللَّهَ كَانَ رَقِيبًا عَلَيْكُمْ** *verily God is a watcher over you* (Sūra iv. 1). The perfect **كَانَ** expresses the *present* in particular after the negative particle **مَا**, and the interrogative particles, such as **أ**; e.g. **مَا كَانَ حَدِيثًا يُفْتَرَى** *it (the Kor'an) is not a story invented* (by Muhammad), but a confirmation of what (i.e. of the sacred writings which) preceded it; **مَا كَانَ لَهُمْ أَنْ يَدْخُلُوهَا إِلَّا خَائِفِينَ** *they cannot enter them* (lit. *it is not to them that they should enter them*) but with fear; **مَا كَانَ لِنَفْسٍ أَنْ تُؤْمِنَ إِلَّا بِإِذْنِ اللَّهِ** *no soul can believe except by the permission of God*; **مَا كَانَ هُوَ لِيُضْرَرَنَا** *he is not (the man) to do us any harm*; **مَا كَانَ اللَّهُ لِيُضِيعَ إِيمَانَكُمْ** *God is incapable of letting—lit. is not (the one) to let—your belief perish* (i.e. go unrewarded); **أَكَانَ لِلنَّاسِ عَجَبًا أَنْ أَوْحَيْنَا إِلَى رَجُلٍ مِنْهُمْ** *is it a wonder to men that We have made a revelation to one of them?*

132. The subject of a sentence is frequently not specified, either because we do not know it, or do not choose to mention it. We have, however, the option of expressing ourselves either *personally*, by such forms as *one says, they say, people say*, Germ. *man sagt*, Fr. *on dit*; or *impersonally*, either by means of the passive voice, as *it is said*, Germ. *es wird gesagt*, or of the active voice, as *it rains*, Germ. *es regnet*, Fr.

il pleut. The Arabs too express themselves in both ways (with the ^A restriction stated in § 133, rem. b). If they wish to use the *personal* form, they employ (a) the third person sing. masc. of the verb with its own nomen agentis, defined or undefined by the article; as *قَالَ قَائِلٌ* *one said*, *قَالَ الْقَائِلُ* *id.* (lit. *he who*, or *every one who*, *was in a position to say*, *said*); *يَقُولُ الْقَائِلُ* *one says*, *is wont to say* (lit. *every one who is in*, or *gets into*, *a position to say*, *says*). The determination of the singular subject by the article expresses in such cases a distributive totality. (b) If the undefined subject is one of a number of persons who are known to us, the suffix pronoun of the ^B third person plural is annexed to the nomen agentis to indicate these persons; as *قَالَ قَائِلُهُمْ* *one of them said*. (c) If there be several indefinite subjects, the third pers. plur. masc. of the verb may be used, as *قَالُوا* *they say*, *زَعَمُوا* *they think*; but it is more usual to employ the verb in the singular and its nomen agentis, defined or undefined by the article, in the plural, as *قَالَ قَائِلُونَ* *some said*; *مَا سَمِعَ السَّامِعُونَ قَطُّ شَيْئًا أَحْسَنَ مِنْ ذَلِكَ* *no one has ever heard anything more beautiful than this* (lit. *those who can hear have never* ^C *heard etc.*).

REM. a. Instead of the nomen agentis, defined or undefined, such words as *رَجُلٌ* *a man*, *إِمْرَأَةٌ* *a woman*, and the like, are occasionally used, with or without the article (compare 1 Sam. ix. 9); as *قَالَ رَجُلٌ* = *قَالَ قَائِلٌ*, *يَقُولُ الرَّجُلُ* = *يَقُولُ الْقَائِلُ*, etc. For the nomen agentis with the plural suffix, the word *بَعْضُ* *a part*, *some one*, is often employed, as *قَالَ قَائِلُهُمْ* = *قَالَ بَعْضُهُمْ*. ^D

[REM. b. A peculiar manner of expressing the general terms *somebody*, *something*, *certain ones*, etc. is to use the relative pronouns *مَنْ* and *مَا* with repetition of the verb, as *وَنَزَلَ مِنْ أَهْلِهَا مَنْ نَزَلَ* *there came down from its inhabitants who came down*, i.e. *some of them*; *أَعْطَانِي مَا أَعْطَانِي* *he gave me what he gave me*, i.e. *much*, or *little*, or *something between the two*, according to circumstances. It

- A is specially employed لِلتَّعْظِيمِ وَالتَّكْثِيرِ to magnify and multiply, if an impression of something important or mysterious is to be conveyed, e.g. Kōr'ān liii. 16 إِذْ يَغْشَى السِّدْرَةَ مَا يَغْشَى when that covered the sidra-tree which covered it, i.e. hosts of adoring angels.]

133. If the impersonal form of expression is to be employed, the Arabs use the third person sing. masc. of the passive voice, whether of a transitive or of an intransitive verb, [which, however, may never be used absolutely like the Latin *itur, fletur*]; as كُتِبَ بِالْقَلَمِ it has been written, it is written with the writing reed; سِيرَ إِلَى الْعِرَاقِ there was a travelling, they travelled towards 'Irāk; اُخْتَلِفَ فِيهِ it has been disputed, there has been a dispute about it; يَظْمَأُ ظَمَاءً شَدِيدًا there is vehement thirst felt, they thirst vehemently; مَرَّ بِزَيْدٍ there was a passing by Z'id; اُنْزِلَ عَلَيْهِمْ a revelation was made to them;
- C غُشِيَ عَلَيْهِ he fainted (lit. there was a covering thrown over him, comp. (הַחֲסִי), whence اَلْمَغْشِيُّ عَلَيْهِ the person in a faint, fem. اَلْمَغْشِيَّةُ عَلَيْهِ (in later times incorrectly اَلْمَغْشِيَّةُ عَلَيْهِ, and, without the preposition [§ 113, rem.], اَلْمَغْشِيَّةُ, fem. اَلْمَغْشِيَّةُ). [Similarly سَقَطَ فِي يَدِهِ he repented (lit. there was a falling upon his hand), and hence هُوَ مَسْقُوطٌ فِي يَدِهِ he is repenting; اَلشَّجَرَةُ الْمَنْهِيَّةُ عَنْهَا the forbidden tree; اَلْمَنْعَمُ عَلَيْهِمْ the benefited ones; مَيَّتَ عَنْهَا she was left an orphan, or a widow.] Verbs thus used are always of the masculine gender, which the Arabs frequently employ where we should use the neuter. The neuter plural of adjectives and nomina agentis and patientis is, however, always expressed by the feminine plur. san. or the plur. fract.; as اَلْحَسَنَاتُ beautiful things (not اَلْحَسَانُ, which means handsome persons), اَلطَّيِّبَاتُ good (things not اَلطَّيِّبُونَ, which means good men), اَلْمَوْجُودَاتُ existing things, اَلْوَاجِبَاتُ necessary things, اَلْمُمْكِنَاتُ possible things, اَلشَّدَائِدُ afflictions, calamities, اَلْبَوَاعِثُ exciting

causes (from بَاعَثَ), *hindrances* (from مَانَعَ). [The sing. fem., A must be used for the neuter of the numerals, as ثَلَاثُ *three things* or *qualities*, and may be used for that of the pronouns, as هَذِهِ *these things*.]

REM. a. The passive of directly transitive verbs may be used either personally or impersonally; as كُتِبَ *it (a book or letter) was written*, and *the act of writing was performed*. In the former case, B the direct object or accusative of the active voice [or the sentence that supplies its place, § 23, rem. c] becomes the subject of the passive (قَائِمُ مَقَامِ الْفَاعِلِ); in the latter, according to the Arab grammarians, the subject is the nomen actionis of the verb itself, which, however, can only be used if qualified, as will be seen hereafter; so that, according to their view, the impersonal passive becomes really personal. If a passive, which is, according to our ideas, impersonal, governs an object by means of a preposition (as غُشِيَ عَلَيْهِ), this object becomes virtually the subject of the passive C voice, just as it was virtually the object of the active, and consequently if the nomen actionis be expressed along with it, it must be put in the accusative; as سِيرَ إِلَيْهِ سَيْرًا (not سِيرَ), from the active سَارَ إِلَيْهِ سَيْرًا *he journeyed to him (a journeying)*. In either case,—whether the passive be personal or impersonal,—it is مَا لَمْ يُسَمَّ فَاعِلُهُ, *an act of which the agent, i.e. the acting person, is not named* (Vol. i. § 74, rem.), not even by means of a preposition, as with us (for the subject of the passive voice is, as we have said above, merely the مَفْعُولُ بِهِ or object of the active voice*, converted into D the subject, and so قَائِمُ مَقَامِ الْفَاعِلِ, or نَائِبُ مَنَابِ الْفَاعِلِ, عَنِ الْفَاعِلِ, *supplying the place of the agent*). If the agent is to be

* The مَفْعُولُ بِهِ, or *object*, may be either صَرِيحٌ *pure*, i.e. the accusative, or غَيْرُ صَرِيحٍ *impure*, i.e. a preposition with the genitive (جَارٌ وَمَجْرُورٌ).

- A named, the active voice must be used*.—As stated in § 26, *b*, rem. *b*, the accusative of the nomen verbi (المفعول المطلق) can be changed into the subject of the passive voice only when it is qualified or specialised by an adjective or a substantive in the genitive. We cannot say سِيرَ سَيْرٌ, ضَرَبَ ضَرْبٌ, because such an undefined maṣdar adds nothing to the meaning of the verb (لَا فَائِدَةٌ فِيهِ); but we may say ضَرَبَ ضَرْبَةً شَدِيدًا, سِيرَ سَيْرًا أَكْبَرًا, [and even ضَرَبَ ضَرْبَةً].
- B In expressions such as قَدْ خِيفَ خَوْفٌ and قَدْ قِيلَ فِي ذَلِكَ قَوْلٌ the words خَوْفٌ and قَوْلٌ are not to be considered as maṣdars, but as substantives, the meaning being *something was feared* and *something was said about it*. The ظَرْفٌ can be put in the nominative also, but only when it is capable of inflection and adds something to the meaning of the verb. We cannot say رَكِبَ سَحَرٌ from رَكِبَ سَحَرٌ he rode early this morning, nor جَلَسَ عِنْدَكَ from جَلَسَ عِنْدَكَ he sat beside thee, nor سِيرَ وَقْتُ; but we may say سِيرَ يَوْمَ الْجُمُعَةِ Friday was travelled, صَامَ رَمَضَانَ Ramaḍān was fasted. When a passive verb is connected with a مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ, and a مَفْعُولٌ مُطْلَقٌ or مَصْدَرٌ, a ظَرْفٌ, or a جَارٌّ وَمَجْرُورٌ, the مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ alone can, as a general rule, become the نَائِبٌ عَنِ الْفَاعِلِ; e.g. ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ ضَرْبًا شَدِيدًا يَوْمَ الْجُمُعَةِ أَمَامَ الْأَمِيرِ فِي دَارِهِ.—Since the Arab uses many verbs as directly transitive, which in our idiom are only indirectly so [§ 23, rem. *b*], their passives may of course be employed in both of the above ways; e.g. not only جِيءَ (impers.) means *ventum est ad eum*, but also simply جِيءَ (pers.). In the former case, only the third person sing. masc. is used, جِيءَ بِشَيْءٍ a thing was brought, imperf. يُجَاءُ بِشَيْءٍ; in the

* [In modern Arabic the agent may be named with the passive by means of the preposition مِنْ by: see § 48, *h*, rem. *b* and comp. Fleischer, *Kl. Schr.* i. 91, 599, iii. 68, Spitta § 173, *c*, Nöldeke, *Zur Grammatik*, p. 54.]

latter, all the numbers and persons are employed, sing. 3 p. m. A
جِيءَ، f. جِيئَتْ، 2 p. m. جِئْتُمْ، etc., as جِيءَ بِشَيْءٍ something was
brought to him (act. جَاءَهُ بِشَيْءٍ he brought him something).

REM. b. Our impersonal actives indicating natural phenomena,
such as *it snows*, *it rains*, etc., are always expressed by the Arabs
personally. They say either تَلَجَّ التَّلَجُّ the snow snows, مَطَرَ الْمَطَرُ
the rain rains, or تَلَجَّتِ السَّمَاءُ the sky snows, مَطَرَتِ السَّمَاءُ the sky
rains. In the latter of these two forms of expression the substantive B
السَّمَاءُ is sometimes suppressed, leaving only the verb in the 3d pers.
sing. fem., مَطَرَتْ، تَلَجَّتْ—[In like manner they say أُصْبَحْتُ
I was in the morning, where we should say *it was in the morning* ;
أُمْسِي *I am in the evening* for *it is evening* ; لَمْ يَلْبَثْ أَنْ مَاتَ he
tarried not long that he died for *it was not long before he died*,
etc. D. G.]

REM. c. In the case of words like يَجُوزُ *it is allowed*, يَجِبُ C
it is necessary, يَنْبَغِي *it behoves*, etc., followed by أَنْ with the
subjunctive, the subject naturally is the following clause, and
therefore the verb does not come under the head of impersonal*.

134. The complements of the subject and predicate are annexed
to them either by *subordination* (the accusative or a preposition with
the genitive) or *coordination* (apposition).

135. When the pronominal suffixes are attached to a substantive
in the accusative, governed by a verb, or to one in the genitive, D
governed by a preposition annexed to a verb, they may refer to the
agent of the verb, and consequently have a *reflexive* meaning, for

* [On the impersonal use of كُنِيَ see § 56, c, footnote. Comp.
also Nöldeke, *Zur Grammatik*, p. 76 seq. who adds بَدَّلَهُ فِي الْأَمْرِ
his opinion changed as to the matter, فِي الْقَابِلِ كَانَ فَلَمَّا when it was
next year, etc.]

which is followed (by some word in apposition). They are generally A connected with a noun, more rarely with a verb.

(a) With the noun is thus united the *adjective*, which, like all other words in apposition, follows the noun, and agrees with it in respect of determination or indetermination, as well as of gender*, number, and case; e.g. رَجُلٌ كَرِيمٌ *a noble man*, الرَّجُلُ الْكَرِيمُ *of the noble man*, زَيْدًا الْكَرِيمَ *the noble Zèid* (acc.), كِتَابُهُ الْعَزِيزُ *His glorious book*; قَاعِدَةٌ مُرَبَّعَةٌ *a square pedestal*; امْرَأَتَانِ حَسَنَتَانِ *two handsome women*; كُنُوزًا كَثِيرَةً *great treasures* (acc.); رَاسِيَّاتٌ, or جِبَالُ رَاسِيَّةٍ, B or رَوَاسٍ, *firm mountains*; قَوْمٌ كَرِيمٌ, or قَوْمٌ كَرَمَاءُ, *a noble tribe or family*, قَوْمٌ فَاسِقُونَ, *wicked people*. As the preceding examples prove, the adjective following a collective noun denoting rational beings (Vol. i. § 292, b) may be put in the singular and agree with the grammatical gender of the collective, or in the plural *sanus* or *fractus* according to the natural gender of the persons indicated. The *pluralia fractu*, even when derived from a masc. sing. are construed with adjectives in the fem. sing. or plural (*sanus* or *fractus*). They C can have an adjective in the masc. plur. only by a *constructio ad sensum*, as has been remarked Vol. i. § 306, for instance رِجَالٌ مُؤْمِنُونَ *believing men*. This is also applicable to the names of Arab tribes, as قُرَيْشٌ الْكَرِيمُونَ *the noble Korèis* (comp. § 147). The collectives mentioned Vol. i. § 291, a, ε may be joined to an adjective in the fem. sing. or in the plur. fem. (*sanus* or *fractus*) as غَنَمٌ رَاعِيَةٌ or غَنَمٌ رَاعِيَاتٌ D *pasturing sheep or goats*; those mentioned Vol. i. § 292, a] to an adjective either in the sing. masc. (as جَمْعٌ), e.g. الْحَمَامُ الْتَطَوَّقُ *the ring-necked doves*; or in the sing. fem. (as جَمَاعَةٌ), e.g. أُعْجَازُ نَخْلٍ *trunks of palm-trees worm-eaten and empty*; or in the plur.

* [Exceptions are اُنْثَى مَاءٌ feminine, i.e. *soft water*; رَجُلٌ خُنْثَى *a hermaphrodite*. For an exception to the agreement in number see § 100. D. G.]

- A *sanus fem.*, as نَخْلٌ بَاسِقَاتٌ *very tall palm-trees*; or in the broken plural, as السَّحَابُ الثَّقَالُ *the heavy clouds*; الْحَمَامُ الْوُرُقُ *the dusky white doves*. A noun may have two or more adjectives connected with it; as الْكَوْكَبُ الْبَيَاضُ الْأَحْمَرُ *the bright red star*; بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ *in the name of God, the compassionate, the merciful*.—Sometimes a substantive is used adjectively; as جَارِيَةٌ بَكْرٌ *a young woman (who is) a virgin* (جَارِيَةٌ بَتُولَةٌ); مَسَاجِدُ عِدَّةٌ *a number of mosques*; تَشْتَمِلُ عَلَى خَيْلٍ وَرِجَالٍ عِدَّةٍ *it contains a number of horses and men*; سِنِينَ عِدَّةٌ *a number of years*; وَذَاكَ مِنْهُ خُلُقٌ عَادَةٌ *and this is a usual custom of his*. This is especially the case with nomina verbi ([الْصِّفَةُ]); see Vol. i. § 230, rem. c); as مَعِيَ رِجَالٌ فِرَّةٌ *there are plenty of men with me*; وَيُحِبُّونَ الْهَالَ حُبًّا جَمًّا *and they love wealth with a great love*; وَأَنْتُمْ مَعْشَرٌ زَيْدٌ عَلَى مِائَةٍ *and ye are a band of more than a hundred*; رَجُلٌ صَوْمٌ *a fasting man*, امْرَأَةٌ عَدْلٌ *a just woman*, ضَرْبٌ هَبْرٌ وَطَعْنٌ *people with whom one is pleased*, نَتْرٌ وَرَمْيٌ سَعَرٌ *a cleaving blow and a violent thrust and a burning shot**. Compare, in Hebrew, יָמִים מְסֻפָּרִים Num. ix. 20, אֲנָשִׁים בָּעֵלָם Nehem. ii. 12; and in Syriac, ܡܢܝܬܐ ܗܬܝܬܐ *many gardens*, ܕܘܬܢܐ ܗܬܝܬܐ *many sons and daughters*.

- D * [It is sometimes a matter of taste or use, whether the qualification by a genitive (§ 80), or by apposition is to be employed; for instance some tribes of Kèis say رَجُلٌ سَوَاءٌ, رَجُلَانِ سَوَاءٌ, instead of the usual رَجُلٌ سَوَاءٌ, رَجُلَانِ سَوَاءٌ, and a tradition has مَثَلُ الْجَلِيسِ الْأَسْوِءِ مَثَلُ الْكَبِيرِ *a bad companion is to be compared to a blacksmith's bellows* (Zamahšarî, *Faîk* i. 372 seq.; comp. the Gloss. to Ibn al-Faḫḫ s. v. سَوَاءٌ). D. G.]

REM. a. A noun in the dual or plural may, of course, be A followed by two or more adjectives in the singular, if a contrast^d between the objects mentioned be intended; as رَأَيْتُ الزَّيْدَيْنِ وَالْكَرِيمَ وَالْبَخِيلَ *I saw the two Zèids, the liberal and the stingy*; مَرَرْتُ بِرَجَالٍ طَوِيلٍ وَقَصِيرٍ وَرُبْعَةٍ *I passed by (three) men, (one) tall, (one) short, and (one) of middle size.*

REM. b. If an adjective in the dual be connected with two singular nouns, whose regents (عَامِلٌ) are identical in meaning and B government, it agrees with them in case; as ذَهَبَ زَيْدٌ وَأَنْطَلَقَ مَرَرْتُ بِزَيْدٍ وَجَزْتُ عَلَى عَمْرٍو الْكَرِيمَيْنِ, or عَمْرٍو الْكَرِيمَانِ. But if the two regents be discordant in meaning or government, the adjective is put either in the accusative (supplying أَغْنَى *I mean*) or in the nominative (as the خَبَرُ of a suppressed مُبْتَدَأُ, viz. هُمَا); as مَرَرْتُ بِزَيْدٍ وَجَاوَزْتُ الْكَرِيمَانِ; جَاءَ زَيْدٌ وَذَهَبَ عَمْرٍو الْكَرِيمَيْنِ or مَرَرْتُ بِزَيْدٍ وَجَاوَزْتُ الْكَرِيمَيْنِ. —If the two singular nouns be connected C with only one regent, as subjects or objects, the same constructions of the adjective are admissible; e.g. قَامَ زَيْدٌ وَعَمْرٍو الْعَاقِلَانِ or or رَأَيْتُ زَيْدًا وَعَمْرًا الْكَرِيمَيْنِ; الْعَاقِلَيْنِ. But if the one be the subject and the other the object, the construction varies according to the relation of the regent to each in respect of its meaning; you say ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ عَمْرًا الْعَاقِلَانِ, where the relation is different in respect of meaning (for Zèid alone is ضَارِبٌ, and 'Amr alone is مَضْرُوبٌ), but خَاصَمَ زَيْدٌ عَمْرًا الْعَاقِلَيْنِ, where the relation D is the same (for both Zèid and 'Amr are at once مُخَاصِمٌ and مُخَاصَمٌ).

REM. c. In later times a noun in the dual, whether masculine or feminine, is sometimes construed with an adjective in the singular feminine; as مِيلَانِ إِفْرَنْجِيَّةٌ *two European miles* (مِيلُ masc.); دَارَاهُمَا مُتَلَصِّقَةٌ *their two houses are*

- A *contiguous, the walls touching each other* (دَارٌ usually fem.). [For a third example see § 94.] This construction has become the rule in modern Arabic.

REM. d. It is always possible to break the natural connection between a substantive and its adjective (الْقَطْعُ), when the latter is employed مَرَرْتُ بِزَيْدٍ الْكَرِيمِ; as لِمَدَجٍ وَالذِّمِّ وَالشَّيْرِ وَالتَّارِخِ, or هُوَ, or أَلْمَسِكِينَ, supplying, in the case of the nominative, هُوَ,

- B and of the accusative, أُعْنِي (see § 35, b, δ, rem. a).

REM. e. The pronoun مَا is often used in apposition to an indefinite noun, with a vague intensifying force (مَا الْإِبْهَامِيَّةُ); as مَا قَلِيلٌ some (small) number or quantity; مَا أُعْطِنَا كِتَابًا مَا book (or other); مَا جِئْتَ لِأَمْرٍ مَا thou art come because of some matter (of importance); إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يَسْتَحْيِي أَنْ يَضْرِبَ مَثَلًا مَا بَعُوضَةً فَمَا

- C *verily God is not ashamed to invent* (lit. strike, coin) *some similitude* (or other), *a gnat and what is above it* (in the scale of creation); مَا أَيُّ فَتًى, nearly equivalent to أَيُّ فَتًى, *what a man!* *what a man to have been slain was he whom the Bēnū Kōrēim have slain!* [Another mode of expressing the same idea is the use of (هُوَ هِيَ) مَا هُوَ (هِيَ) after a verbal noun, of (هُوَ هِيَ) مَا after an adjective or an equivalent expression such

- D as مَا نِئْلٌ إِلَى أَلْفَلَّةٍ = إِلَى أَلْفَلَّةٍ (§ 51, a), in the sense that a person or a thing possesses a quality in a certain degree, either between the two extremes, مُعْطَوْنٌ تِلْكَ (تَقْلِيلُ أَلْفَلَّةٍ), or in an indefinitely high degree. Instances of the former are أَزْهَرُ اللَّوْنِ إِلَى أَلْبَيَاضٍ مَا هُوَ *bright of colour, verging on white*; إِلَى أَلْفَلَّةٍ مَا هُوَ *rather few than many*; أَسْوَدُ مَا هُوَ *blackish, etc.*; of the latter مَا هِيَ حَاجَةٌ *a very great need*; مَا هِيَ حَيَّةٌ خَبِيثَةٌ *a very dangerous snake*; إِلَى الشَّمَالِ أَقْرَبُ مَا هِيَ *much more to the north.* (This use of

مَا هُوَ is not to be confounded with its use in such phrases as A
 لَأَمْرٌ مَا هُوَ he is in the way which ought to be pursued, sc. مَأْمُورٌ;
 or هُوَ أَلْحَمْدُ مَا هُوَ everybody knows what is the
 meaning of ḥamd "praise"). D. G.]

(b) As regards the demonstrative pronouns, which are looked upon by the Arabs as substantives (Vol. i. §§ 190, d, and 338), either they may be placed in apposition to the substantive, or the substantive to them; as هَذَا أَمْلِكُ this king, lit. this (person), the king; Z̤id, B
 زَيْدٌ هَذَا Z̤id, this (person), i.e. this Z̤id or Z̤id here. In both cases the apposition is a qualificative one, whence the first word in each is called by the Arabs اَلْمَوْصُوفُ that which is described, and the second اَلصِّفَةُ the description or descriptive epithet. [The pluralia fracta are construed with a pronoun in the fem. sing., unless they designate rational beings, in which case the pronoun may be in the plural, as هَؤُلَاءِ اَلرِّجَالُ. This last is also applicable to the collectives, as C
 هَؤُلَاءِ اَلْقَوْمُ, and the names of Arab tribes, as قُرَيْشٌ هَؤُلَاءِ.] As the demonstrative pronoun is by its nature definite, the noun in apposition to it must of course be definite likewise. If it be defined by the article, the demonstrative usually precedes, as مَتَّبِعٌ, very rarely follows, as تَابِعٌ; e.g. هَذَا اَلرَّجُلُ this man, seldom اَلرَّجُلُ هَذَا. But if the substantive be definite by its own nature (as a proper name or a mere word, § 78, and Vol. i. § 292, c), or defined by having a genitive after it, the demonstrative always follows; as زَيْدٌ هَذَا this Z̤id (see D
 above)*; اِنَّ هَذِهِ اَلْمَشْهُورُ بِى اَنَّ اِلَى هَذِهِ اِذْنٌ هَذِهِ this (word) 'idān; اِنَّ هَذِهِ اَلْمَشْهُورُ بِى اَنَّ اِلَى هَذِهِ اِذْنٌ هَذِهِ it is well known in grammar that this 'ilā has the meaning of ma'a; هَؤُلَاءِ عِبَادِى these my servants or these servants of mine;

* If the proper name has the article, هَذَا may possibly precede, because it is to a certain extent a common noun defined by the article (see above); as هَذَا اَلْحَرْتُ, or اَلْحَرْتُ هَذَا, this ḥl-Hārīt.

- A **كِتَابُهُ هَذَا الْجَلِيلُ إِلَى وَقْتِنَا هَذَا** *this famous book of his*. On the other hand, in such a phrase as **هَذِهِ نَاقَةٌ** *these* the words **هَذِهِ** are the predicate (**خَبَرٌ**) of **نَاقَةٌ**, and **لَكَمُ آيَةٌ** is a circumstantial accusative, *this is the she-camel of God, (as) a sign unto you*. [Likewise, in the saying **هَذَا زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ بِالْبَابِ** the words **زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ بِالْبَابِ** must be considered as the predicate of **هَذَا**, *see this is (=see there is) Zèid standing at the door*, in **هَذَا عُمَرُ بْنُ**
- B **مُتَوَشِّحًا بِالسَّيْفِ** *here is 'Omar the son of 'el-Hattâb girded with the sword*, **عُمَرُ بْنُ** is the predicate, **مُتَوَشِّحًا بِالسَّيْفِ** a circumstantial accusative. D. G.]

137. **كُلُّ**, **جَمِيعٌ**, and less frequently **عَامَّةٌ**, *totality*, are often placed after the definite noun which they might govern in the genitive (§ 82, a, b), in which case a pronominal suffix is appended to them, referring to that noun; as **النَّاسُ كُلُّهُمْ**, or **النَّاسُ جَمِيعُهُمْ**, *all men* (also **النَّاسُ جَمِيعًا**, § 82, b); **الْقَبِيلَةُ كُلُّهَا**, or **الْقَبِيلَةُ جَمِيعُهَا**, *the whole tribe*; **الْجَيْشُ عَامَّتُهُ** *the whole army*; **الْهِنْدَاتُ جَمِيعُهُنَّ** *all the Hinds*; **الْقَوْمُ عَامَّتُهُمْ** *the whole tribe or family*. If the noun be indefinite, this construction is inadmissible, for the pronominal suffix, being by nature definite, cannot refer to any other than a definite noun. There is, however, one exception, namely, when the indefinite noun indicates a *precise period of time*; e.g. **شَهْرٌ كُلُّهُ** *a whole month*; **سَنَةٌ كُلُّهَا** *a whole year*; **يَا لَيْتَ عِدَّةَ حَوْلٍ كُلِّهِ رَجَبُ** *O would that the number (of months) of a whole year were (all) Rêgèb!* Words of a vague signification, such as **وَقْتُ**, **زَمَنٌ**, **حِينٌ**, **مُدَّةٌ**, *time, a space of time*, etc., cannot be thus construed.—After **كُلُّ** and its suffix we often find a second apposition, agreeing with the preceding substantive in gender, number and case, namely, the adjective **أَجْمَعُ**, fem. **جَمَعَاءُ**, plur. masc. **أَجْمَعُونَ**, fem. (see Vol. i. § 309, a, δ) **جَمْعُ** (the dual masc. **أَجْمَعَانِ**,

and fem. جَمْعَاوَانِ, are not admitted by the great majority of gram- A
marians); as فَسَجَدَ أَمَلَيْتُكَ كُلَّهُمْ أَجْمَعُونَ and the angels all (without
exception) prostrated themselves. Sometimes this word is used without
كُلُّ; as لَاغْوِيَنَّهُمْ أَجْمَعِينَ verily I will lead them all astray;
إِذَنْ ظَلِلْتُ أَلْذَمْرَ أَبْنَى أَجْمَعَا in that case I would pass all my time in
weeping (أَجْمَعَا in rhyme for أَجْمَعَ); قَدْ صَرَّتْ أَلْبَكْرَةُ يَوْمًا أَجْمَعَا the
pulley creaked a whole day.

REM. a. Instead of using the pronominal suffix, the noun itself B
is occasionally repeated after كُلُّ; as in the verse of Kutèiyir,
يَا أَشْبَهَ النَّاسِ كُلِّ النَّاسِ بِالْقَمَرِ O thou most like of all men to the
moon (in beauty), instead of كَلِمَةٍ.

REM. b. A peculiar use of كُلُّ as an appositive is exemplified
by the phrases هُوَ الشَّجَاعُ كُلُّ الشَّجَاعِ he is a true hero, هُوَ الْعَالِمُ
كُلُّ الْعَالِمِ he is a thorough scholar; أَنْتَ أَلْفَتَى كُلُّ أَلْفَتَى thou
art a real man. Similarly, according to ʿIz-Zamahšarī, هَذَا الْعَالِمُ C
or حَقُّ الْعَالِمِ, this is a thorough scholar (جَدُّ toil, effort,
pains; حَقُّ truth, reality, fact). [Comp. § 82, b, rem. footnote.]

REM. c. To أَجْمَعَ are sometimes appended other synonymous
words, which form their fem. sing. and masc. and fem. plur. in the
same way; viz. أَكْتَعُ, أَبْصَعُ, and أَتْبَعُ. The usual sequence of
these synonyms is exemplified in the phrase جَاءَ الْجَيْشُ كُلُّهُ أَجْمَعُ
أَكْتَعُ أَبْصَعُ أَتْبَعُ the entire army came; but the order of the last D
two may be inverted, أَتْبَعُ أَبْصَعُ. They are scarcely ever used
singly and without كُلُّ; as جَاءَنِي الْقَوْمُ أَكْتَعُونَ the whole tribe,
or people, came to me; يَا نَيْتَنِي كُنْتُ صَبِيًّا مَرْصَعًا تَحْمِلْنِي الذَّلْفَاءُ
O would that I were a sucking child, whom ʿEd-Delfā
(or she with the slender nose) would carry for a whole year; فَوَتُونَا

- A **الدَّوَابُّ وَاتَّقُونَا بِنِعْمَانِ بْنِ زُرْعَةَ أَكْتَعَيْنَا** *they turned their backs upon us and protected themselves one and all by (seeking refuge from us behind) ʿIn-Noʿmān ibn Zurʿa.*

- [REM. d. **أَجْمَعُ** is also often connected with the noun to which it refers by means of the preposition **بِ**, as **جَاءُوا بِأَجْمَعِهِمْ** *they came all of them, all together*. Likewise **عَيْنُ** (§ 139) and the words **أَسْرٌ** (properly *a thong of untanned hide*) and **رَمَّةٌ** (*a worn-out rope*), as **خُذْهُ بِأَسْرِهِ** *take thou it all*; **جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ بِأَسْرِهِمْ** *the people came altogether*; **دَفَعَ إِلَيْهِ الشَّيْءَ بِرُمَّتِهِ** *he gave him the thing altogether*; **أَتَيْتَكَ بِالشَّيْءِ بِرُمَّتِهِ** *I have brought thee the thing altogether*. Similar corroboratives (§ 139, rem. a) are given by Hamadānī in his *Kitāb ul-ʿElfāz*, Beyrout ed. p. 214. D. G.]
- B

- 138.** Like **كُلٌّ** and its synonyms are used **كِلَانٍ**, fem. **كِلْتَانٍ**, both (§ 83), [**بَعْضٌ** *a part*] and **نِصْفٌ** *a half*. They follow the noun to which they refer, and take the appropriate pronominal suffix; as **إِنَّ الْمُعَلِّمَ وَالطَّبِيبَ كِلَيْهِمَا** *the teacher and the physician, both of them*; **آمَنْتُ بِطَبِيعَتَي الْمَسِيحِ وَمَشِئَتَيْهِ كِلْتَيْهِمَا** *I believe in the two natures of the Messiah and His two wills, both of them*; **جَاءَنِي الْقَوْمُ** [**جَاءَنِي الْقَوْمُ** *a part of the people came to me*]; **الْجَيْشُ نِصْفُهُ** *half the army*.

- REM. **كِلَانٍ** is very rarely used in apposition to a feminine substantive, as **تَمُنْ بِقُرْبَى الزَّيْنَبَيْنِ كِلَيْهِمَا** *thou favourest (me) with the proximity of the two Zeinèbs, both of them*.
- D

139. **نَفْسٌ**, *soul*, and **عَيْنٌ**, *eye, essence (of a thing)*, are often employed in the sense of *ipse, self* (compare § 135). They are then not seldom prefixed to a noun, which they govern in the genitive; as **عَيْنُ الْهَوَانِ** *degradation itself, utter degradation*; **عَيْنُ الْكَوْكَبِ** *the star itself*; **هُوَ عِبَارَةٌ عَمَّا آتَانِي فِيهِ عَيْنُ الْأَوَّلِ** *this is an expression*

for that wherein the second (term) is identical with the first; *رَأَيْتُ نَفْسَهُ* A

I have seen himself; *إِزَالَةُ الْجَهْلِ عَنْ نَفْسِهِ* the removing of ignorance from himself. But more generally they are used, like *كُلٌّ*, as

appositives to a definite noun, and are followed by the appropriate pronominal suffix; as *جَاءَ زَيْدٌ نَفْسَهُ* *Zaid himself came*; *جَاءَتْ زَيْنَبُ*

Zaidinèb herself came; *رَأَيْتُ عَمْرًا نَفْسَهُ* *I saw Amr himself*.

If the noun be in the dual or plural, the plural forms *أَنْفُسٌ* and

أَعْيَانٌ should be employed, as *رَأَيْتُ الْأُمَيْرَيْنِ أَنْفُسَهُمَا* I saw the B

two 'amirs themselves; *مَرَرْتُ بِالْهِنْدَيْنِ أَنْفُسَهُمَا* I passed by the two

Hinds themselves; *قَتَلَهُ الْوُزَرَاءُ أَنْفُسَهُمْ* the vizirs themselves killed him;

[*هَذِهِ أَعْيَانُ دَرَاهِمِكَ* these are thy dirhems themselves]. Some authorities

admit in this case the use of the singular or the dual, as

جَاءَ الزَّيْدَانِ نَفْسُهُمَا, or *نَفْسَاهُمَا*, the two Zàids themselves came;

[comp. Vol. i. § 317, rem. d]. These words are also often connected with the nouns to which they refer by means of the preposition C

بِ; as *جَاءَ الْأَمِيرُ بِنَفْسِهِ* the 'amir came in person; *الْهَوَانُ بِعَيْنِهِ*

degradation itself; *وَالآنَ يَخْتَارُونَ بِأَنْفُسِهِمْ* and now they are choosing

in person; *الْعَوَالِي الرِّمَاحُ بِأَعْيَانِهَا* the 'awālī (spear-shafts) are the

spears themselves; *يُقْسِمُ لَنْ هُوَ لَمْ يَرِدْ هَؤُلَاءِ النِّسْوَةَ بِأَعْيَانِهِنَّ لِيَغْزُوهُ*

he swears that unless he restores the women themselves, he will assuredly

attack him; [*بِعَيْنِهِ*, etc. after an indefinite noun means a certain, as D

El-Awāsim 'وَأَمَّا الْعَوَاصِرُ فَاسْمُ التَّاجِيَةِ وَلَيْسَ مَوْضِعٌ بِعَيْنِهِ يُسَمَّى الْعَوَاصِرَ'. *El-Awāsim is the name of a district, there is no place of this name*].

Occasionally, too, *عَيْنٌ* is appended in the form of an adverbial accusative, or by means of the preposition *بِ*, but without any suffix;

as *هَذَا هُوَ عَيْنًا (بِعَيْنٍ)*, this is the very person (or thing).—*نَفْسٌ* and

عَيْنٌ may be put in direct apposition to a pronominal suffix in the accusative or genitive; as *مَرَرْتُ بِهِ نَفْسِهِ*, *مَرَرْتُ بِكَ نَفْسِكَ*

- A **رَأَيْتَهُ نَفْسَهُ، نَفْسَكَ.** But if the pronominal suffix represent the agent, as in the verb, the insertion of a separate pronoun is a matter of necessity; as **ذَهَبَ هُوَ نَفْسَهُ** *he went away himself*, **حَضَرُوا هُمُ** *the people were present themselves*; **قُمْتَ أَنْتَ نَفْسَكَ** *thou thyself stoodest up*; **قُومُوا أَنْتُمْ أَنْفُسُكُمْ** *stand ye up yourselves* (whereas we can say **قُومُوا كُلُّكُمْ** *stand up all of you*).

- REM. a. The words **كُلٌّ**, **جَمِيعٌ**, **عَامَّةٌ**, **أَجْمَعٌ** etc., **كِلَانٍ** and
- B **كِلْتَانِ**, **نَفْسٍ**, **نِصْفٍ**, and **عَيْنٍ**, form one division of that class of appositives, **التَّوَابِيعُ**, which the grammarians name **التَّأْكِيدُ** (or **التَّوَكُّيدُ**), *the strengthening or corroboration*, and **المُؤَكِّدُ** *the corroborative*, because they strengthen the idea of totality or of self, already contained in the **مَتَّبِعُ**, by the addition of their own. This class of appositives is designated by the special name of **التَّوَكُّيدُ**, *the corroboration in meaning*, to distinguish it from
- C **التَّوَكُّيدُ اللَّفْظِيُّ**, *the verbal corroboration*, which consists in the emphatic repetition (**التَّكْرَارُ** or **التَّكْرِيرُ**) of the word itself; as in the verse **فَأَيْنَ إِلَى أَيْنَ النَّجَاةُ بِبَغْلَتِي أَتَاكَ أَتَاكَ أَلَّا حِقُونِ أَحْبِسِ أَحْبِسِ** *whither, whither can I escape with my mule? The pursuers are come up to thee, come up to thee; halt! halt!* (**أَحْبِسِ** in rhyme for **أَحْبِسِ**). So also in answers, **نَعَمْ نَعَمْ** *yes, yes*; **لَا لَا** *no, no*. If a word is governed by a preposition or other particle, both must
- D be repeated; as **مَرَرْتُ بِكَ بِكَ** *I passed by thee, by thee*; **فِي الدَّارِ** *in the house*; **زَيْدٌ زَيْدٌ** *Zeid is standing up*. A suffix pronoun may, however, be strengthened in this case, as well as in others, by the corresponding separate pronoun [§ 130]; as **مَرَرْتُ بِكَ أَنْتَ** *I passed by THEE*, or **بِهِ هُوَ** *by HIM*; **أَكْرَمْتَنِي أَنَا** *thou didst show kindness to ME*; **رَأَيْتَنَا نَحْنُ** *thou sawest US*; **قُمْتَ أَنْتَ** *THOU stoodest up*; [or by a

construction with *إِنَّا*, as *رَأَيْتَكَ إِنَّا* *I saw THEE* (Vol. i. § 189)]. A
Only a poet could venture to say *إِنَّ أَكْرِمَ يَحْلُمُ* indeed,¹
indeed the noble man is grave or sedate.

REM. b. Besides the *تَوْكِيدٌ*, the Arab grammarians acknowledge three other classes of *تَوَابِعُ*; viz. *الْتَعْتُ* or *الصِّفَةُ*, the description or descriptive word, qualificative, adjective; *الْبَدَلُ*, the substitution or permutative; and *عَطْفُ الْبَيَانِ*, the explanatory apposition.

(1) The *نَعْتُ* or *صِفَةُ* may refer to the *مَتَّبِعُ* either directly B
(in which case it is a simple adjective), as *جَاءَنِي رَجُلٌ حَسَنٌ* *there came to me a handsome man*; or indirectly, in virtue of a following word which is connected with it, as *جَاءَنِي رَجُلٌ حَسَنٌ أَخُوهُ* *there came to me a man whose brother is handsome*. In this latter case the adjective [called *المُسَبَّبُ* the connected] belongs, as a prefixed predicate, to the following noun [called *السَّبَبُ* the connecting], which is its subject, and the two together form a *صِفَةُ*, or C
qualificative clause, of the preceding substantive, with which the adjective agrees in case only by attraction*; as *رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا حَسَنًا* *I saw a man whose brother is handsome*, *رَأَيْتُ امْرَأَةً حَسَنًا وَجْهَهَا* *I saw a woman whose face is handsome*, *مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ كَثِيرٌ عَدُوُّهُ* *I passed by a man whose enemies are many*, *مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ حَسَنَةٍ أُمُّهُ* *I passed by a man whose mother is handsome*. If the following noun be in the dual or plural, the adjective is still left in the D
singular; as *مَرَرْتُ بِامْرَأَتَيْنِ حَسَنِ آبَوَاهُمَا* *I passed by two women whose parents are handsome*; *مَرَرْتُ بِرِجَالٍ حَسَنَةٍ وَجُوهُهُمْ* *I passed by some men whose faces are handsome*, *رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا كَرِيمًا آبَاؤُهُمْ*

* [Also when the preceding substantive is only understood, as *وَمِنْ التَّجْدِي أَوْطَانَهَا* (sc. *الْقَبَائِلِ*) *and from the tribes that are domiciled in Negd* (Hamdānī, p. 118, l. 11). D. G.]

- A *I saw some men whose fathers are noble*; though, if the noun be plural, the broken plural of the adjective is admissible, as رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا كَرِيمًا آبَاؤُهُ, or كَرَامًا آبَاؤُهُ, *I saw a man whose forefathers are noble*. If the preceding noun be defined in any way, the adjective takes the article; as رَأَيْتُ زَيْدًا الْحَسَنَ وَجْهَهُ *I saw Zèid, whose face is handsome*; حَكَى أَبُو الْفُتُوحِ الْعِجْلِيُّ الْمُتَقَدِّمُ ذِكْرَهُ *Abu 'l-Futūḥ 'l-‘Iǧlī, who has been mentioned before, narrates*; جَاءَ الرَّجُلُ جَاءَ يَسُوعُ *the man came, whose parents are excellent*; جَاءَ يَسُوعُ الْكَامِلَةُ طَبِيعَتَاهُ *Jesus came, whose two natures are perfect*, قَوِيلُ الْمُتَقَدِّمِ ذِكْرَهُمُ *the kings who have been mentioned before*; فَوَيْلٌ لِلْقَاسِيَةِ قُلُوبُهُمُ *woe to those whose hearts are hard*! The Arab grammarians assume that every adjective contains a pronominal agent within itself, when no other agent is expressed, and they therefore call the adjective شَبَهُ الْفِعْلِ, *that which is like the verb*.
- C Consequently رَجُلٌ حَسَنٌ هُوَ = رَجُلٌ حَسَنٌ هُوَ, where another agent is expressed, رَجُلٌ حَسَنٌ أَخُوهُ (هُوَ); but رَجُلٌ حَسَنٌ أَخُوهُ = رَجُلٌ حَسَنٌ أَخُوهُ; and so with the rest: مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ حَسَنَةٍ أُمُّهُ = رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا كَرِيمًا آبَاؤُهُمُ, مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ حَسَنَتِ أُمُّهُ, رَأَيْتُ زَيْدًا الَّذِي حَسَنَ وَجْهَهُ = رَأَيْتُ زَيْدًا الْحَسَنَ وَجْهَهُ, كَرَّمَ آبَاؤُهُمُ, etc. In such cases the seemingly nominal sentence is in reality a verbal sentence, serving as صِفَةٌ to the preceding substantive. On the other hand, if the substantive precedes the adjective, as in رَجُلٌ أَبَوُهُ حَسَنٌ, the second substantive and the adjective which follows it form together a really nominal sentence, of which the substantive is the مُبْتَدَأٌ and the adjective the خَبَرٌ; and consequently both must remain, under all circumstances, in the nominative, and the adjective must agree regularly with the substantive, as رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا أَخُوهُ حَسَنٌ, etc.

(2) The بَدَلٌ, or *permutative*, is of four kinds. (a) اَتَكَلَّلَ

جَاءَنِي عُمَرُ ^A *the substitution of the whole for the whole; as* جَاءَنِي قَوْمُ الْمَدِينَةِ كِبَرًاوَهُمْ *Omar, thy brother, came to me; the people of the city came to me, great and small; وَضَعَاوَهُمُ إِلَى صِرَاطٍ مُسْتَقِيمٍ صِرَاطُ اللَّهِ to a straight path, the path of God; لَنَسْفَعًا بِالنَّاصِيَةِ نَاصِيَةٍ كَاذِبَةٍ خَاطِئَةٍ We will seize and drag (him) by the forelock, a lying, sinful forelock; رَأَيْتُ زَيْدًا إِيَّاهُ مَرَرْتُ, رَأَيْتُ زَيْدًا بِهِ *A noun may be substituted for the suffix pronouns of the 3d pers., as* رَأَيْتُهُ زَيْدًا, رَأَيْتُهُ زَيْدًا, *visit him, Hālid, B* عَلَى أَتْبَاقِ الْأَيَّامِ قَدْ صِرْنَ كُلُّهَا عَجَائِبَ *notwithstanding that they—the times—are all become marvellous; but not for the suffixes of the 1st and 2nd pers., unless a plurality of individuals is distinctly referred to, as* تَكُونُ لَنَا عِيدًا لِأَوَّلِنَا وَآخِرِنَا *(which) may be a festival for us, for the first of us and the last of us. We cannot say* [أَلَوْيَلَّ] لِي [أَنَا] أَلَيْسَ كَيْنَ مَرَرْتُ بِكَ زَيْدَ, رَأَيْتُكَ زَيْدًا *nor even* ^C *woe to me, the poor!* عَلَيْكَ الْكَرِيمِ *on thee, the noble*.* In such cases as رَأَيْتُكَ إِيَّاكَ, those are right who regard إِيَّاكَ not as a بَدَل but as a تَوْكِيد (see rem. a). [To this kind belong the permutatives that indicate the parts of the whole, the species of the genus, the definitions of measure, number, weight and colour (§ 95, footnote).]—(b) أَبَدَلُ الْبَعْضِ مِنَ الْكُلِّ *the substitution of the part for the whole; as* أَكَلْتُ الْرَغِيفَ ثُلُثَهُ *I ate the loaf, the third part of it, or I ate a third of the loaf; قَبَّلَهُ أَيْدًى kiss him, his hand; D* أَوْعَدَنِي بِالْأَسْجَنِ وَالْأَدَامِ رِجْلِي *he threatened me, my foot, with the prison and fetters. (c) أَبَدَلُ الْإِشْتِمَالِ the comprehensive substitution, i.e. the permutative which indicates a quality or circumstance**

* [In the former case we ought either to write أَلَيْسَ كَيْنَ as predicate of the emphatic أَنَا (§ 130), or to use the accusative of specification (§ 35, b, δ), which must be used in the latter case.]

- A possessed by or included in the preceding substantive; as *أَعْجَبَنِي زَيْدٌ* *Zèid's learning filled me with surprise*; *أَعْجَبَتْنِي كَلَامُكَ* *thy speech filled me with surprise*; *مَا أَلْفَيْتَنِي حِلْمِي مُضَاعَا* *thou hast not found my understanding lost (or thrown away)*; *وَذَكَرَتْ* *and she called to mind the coldness of the water of Taktud*; *يَسْأَلُونَكَ عَنِ الشَّهْرِ الْحَرَامِ قِتَالٍ فِيهِ* *they will question thee about fighting in the sacred month, lit. about the sacred month, (about) fighting in it.* (d) The fourth case is where the permutative (الْمُبْدَلُ) is wholly different from the *مُبْدَلٌ مِنْهُ* or word for which it is substituted (الْمُبْدَلُ لِمُبْدَلٍ مِنْهُ). It is of two sorts: (a) *بَدَلُ الْإِضْرَابِ* *the permutative of retraction* (from *أَضْرَبَ*, to turn away from), or *بَدَلُ الْإِبْدَاءِ* *the substitution of a new opinion, something one would like to substitute for the original statement*; as, for instance, when one says *أَكَلْتُ خُبْزًا* *I ate bread*, but then, preferring to state that he had eaten meat, adds the word *لَحْمًا* (*أَكَلْتُ خُبْزًا لَحْمًا*). Here, to use the words of the grammarians, *يُقْصَدُ الْمَتَّبِعُ كَمَا يُقْصَدُ التَّابِعُ* *the mètbû' is designed as well as the tâbi'*; and this is what distinguishes it from (β) *بَدَلُ الْغَلَطِ وَالنِّسْيَانِ* *the permutative of error and forgetfulness*, in which the *مَتَّبِعُ* is uttered merely by mistake, and the correct word immediately substituted for it; as when one says *مَرَرْتُ بِكَلْبٍ فَرَسٍ* *I passed by a dog, (I meant to say) a horse*. The *بَدَلُ الْإِضْرَابِ* is equivalent to the use of the particle *بَلْ* (*أَكَلْتُ خُبْزًا بَلْ لَحْمًا*).
- B
- C
- D

(3) The *عَطْفُ الْبَيَانِ* or *explicative apposition* is the asyndetic connection of a substantive with a preceding substantive, which it more nearly defines; as *جَاءَنِي أَخُوكَ زَيْدٌ* *thy brother Zèid came to me*; *أَقْسَمَ بِاللَّهِ أَبُو حَفْصٍ عُمَرُ* *Abū Ḥafṣ 'Omar swore by God* (*عُمَرُ* in rhyme for *عُمَرُ*); *يُسْقَى مِنْ مَاءٍ صَدِيدٍ* *he shall be given to drink water, watery humour (or matter)*; *يُوقَدُ مِنْ شَجَرَةٍ مُبَارَكَةٍ*

زَيْتُونَةٍ (which) is lighted with (the oil of) a blessed tree, an olive. A
This apposition is equivalent to the use of وَهُوَ, وَهِيَ, etc. (e.g. ¹
جَاءَنِي أَخُوكَ وَهُوَ زَيْدٌ), and, being asyndetic, is opposed to the
عَطْفُ النَّسَقِ, or connection of sequence, which takes place by means
of connective particles, such as وَ, ثُمَّ, فَ, أَوْ, and حَتَّى. [To
this kind belong the appositives to a vocative (§ 38, rem. f), those
that denote the material (§ 94), the nicknames (§ 95, a, rem.), etc.]

REM. c. One verb may be substituted for another by the بَدَلُ
مَنْ يَفْعَلُ ذَلِكَ يَلْقَ أَثَامًا يُضَاعَفُ لَهُ الْعَذَابُ أَلَّا تَكْلِفُ مَنْ أَكْثَلَ B
whosoever doeth this, shall find a recompense of sin—his chastisement
shall be doubled; مَتَى تَأْتِنَا تَلْمِزُ بِنَا فِى دِيَارِنَا تَجِدُ حَطَبًا جَزَلًا
when thou comest to us—visitest us in our country—thou shalt find
firewood in abundance; or by the بَدَلُ الْإِسْتِمَالِ, as مَنْ يَصِلُ إِلَيْنَا
مَنْ يَسْتَعِينُ بِنَا يُعْنُ whoever comes to us (and) asks help of us, is helped.

REM. d. The word to which a مُؤَكِّدٌ is annexed is called by the
grammarians الْمُوَكِّدُ that which is strengthened or corroborated; C
that which is followed by a صِفَةٌ or نَعْتٌ, الْمَوْصُوفُ, or الْمُنْعَوْتُ, the
qualified or described; that which has a بَدَلٌ after it, الْبَدَلُ مِنْهُ
that for which something is substituted; and that to which a
عَطْفُ الْبَيَانِ is appended, الْمَعْطُوفُ عَلَيْهِ the word to which (an
explanatory word) is attached (by means of a virtual conjunction).

REM. e. In phrases like تَقَاتَلُوا بَعْضُهُمْ لِبَعْضٍ, they fought with
one another, the words بَعْضُهُمْ لِبَعْضٍ are a permutative of the agent D
هُمْ, contained in the verb تَقَاتَلُوا, and serve to strengthen the idea
of reciprocity belonging to that verbal form. The لَامُ تَقْوِيَةِ الْعَامِلِ
in لِبَعْضٍ, which supplies the place of the accusative, is dependent
upon تَقَاتَلُوا, they fought with, contained in تَقَاتَلُوا.

140. One finite verb may also be put in apposition to another.
In this case either (a) the first is the preparative act, introductory

- A to the second, as *قَامَ سَجَدَ لَهُ* he arose (and) prostrated himself before him, *فَأَرْسَلَ أَعْلَمَ بِذَلِكَ أَبَاهُ* then he sent (and) informed his father of this, *وَعَادَتِ الْفِتْنُ وَقَعَتْ* and disturbances broke out again; or (b) the second modifies the first, as *سَجَدَ أَطَالَ* he continued long prostrate, *غَنَى أَحْسَنَ* he sang well. In both cases the older and more elegant form of expression is to insert the conjunction *فَ*: *قَامَ فَسَجَدَ لَهُ*, *فَأَرْسَلَ فَعَلِمَ* he asked again, *سَجَدَ فَأَطَالَ*. If the first of the two verbs
- B be a perfect, the second must be so likewise, for the imperfect would be a [*مُقَارِنٌ* or] *حَالٌ مُقَدَّرٌ* (see § 8, d, e), and, as such, would virtually stand in the accusative [comp. § 44, c, rem. a]; as *أَرْسَلَ يُعَلِّمُ* *misit nuntiaturus*, he sent to inform. If both verbs are in the imperfect, the second may either be an apposition [§ 139, rem. c] or a *حَالٌ مُقَدَّرٌ*; as *يُرْسِلُ يُعَلِّمُ* he sends (and) informs, or *mittit nuntiaturus*, he sends to inform*.
- C REM. The later Arabic construction, without the conjunction, is very common in Syriac, e.g. *فَمَذَّ أَسَمَسَ* he sent (and) seized him, *וּבְנוּהוּ חֲנֹה* they rebuilt; and also occurs in Hebrew, e.g. *וַיִּשְׁלַח וַיְבָרֵךְ*, Gen. xxx. 31.

2. Concord in Gender and Number between the Parts of a Sentence.

- D 141. In verbal sentences, in which (according to § 118) the predicate (verb) must always precede the subject (agent), the following rules hold regarding their agreement in gender and number.

142. (a) If the subject be a singular substantive, which is feminine by signification (Vol. i. § 290, a), two constructions are possible. (a) If it immediately follows the verb, the verb must be

* [In this case also the conjunction *فَ* may be inserted, as *أَغْدُو فَأَخْذُهُ* I will come to take it, Tab. i. 1526, l. 13. D. G.]

put in the fem. sing. ; as *جَاءَتْ هِنْدٌ* *Hind came*, *قَالَتْ أَمْرَأَةُ الْعَزِيزِ* *the A wife of el-'Aziz said*. But (β) if it be separated from the verb by one or more words, the verb may stand in the sing. masc., although the fem. is preferable ; as *حَضَرَ الْقَاضِيَ أَمْرَأَةٌ* *a woman came before the judge* ; *لَقَدْ وَلَدَ الْأُخَيْطَلُ أُمًّا سَوًّا* *a bad mother gave birth to that poor el-Ahtal* ; *إِنَّ أَمْرَأَةً غَرَّهَ مِنْكُمْ وَاحِدَةً* *a man, whom one of you (women) has deceived*. [As to the collectives mentioned Vol. i. § 290, a, ε, see § 145.]

REM. a. The form of expression *قَالَ فُلَانَةٌ*, *So-and-so said*, is B mentioned by the grammarians only to be condemned.

[REM. b. The concord remains if, in negative or interrogative sentences, the subject be preceded by *مِنْ*, as *مَا جَاءَتْ مِنْ أَمْرَأَةٍ* *no woman came*, *كَمْ قَدْ مَضَتْ مِنْ لَيْلَةٍ* *how many nights have gone by!* D. G.]

(b) If the subject be a singular substantive, which is feminine merely by form or usage (Vol. i. §§ 290, b, 291), the preceding verb may be put either in the masculine or feminine, whether the subject C immediately follows it or not, though in the former case the feminine is preferable, as *طَلَعَتِ الشَّمْسُ* *the sun rose*, *كُسِرَتِ اللَّيْنَةُ* *the brick was broken*, rather than *طَلَعَ الشَّمْسُ*, *كُسِرَ اللَّيْنَةُ*. In the following examples the verb is masculine : *فَيَنْظُرُوا كَيْفَ كَانَ عَاقِبَةُ الَّذِينَ* *and see what was the end of those who preceded them* ; *لِيَلَّا يَكُونَ لِلنَّاسِ عَلَيْكُمْ حُجَّةٌ* *that the people may not have any pretext against you* ; *فَمَنْ جَاءَهُ مَوْعِظَةٌ مِنْ رَبِّهِ* *and whosoever receives an D admonition from his Lord* ; *وَلَوْ كَانَ بِهِمْ خَصَاصَةٌ* *even if there be in them poverty or straitness*.

(c) If the feminine subject be separated from the verb by the particle *إِلَّا*, the verb is put in the masculine ; as *مَا زَكَ إِلَّا قَتَاةٌ* *no one was innocent except the maidservant of 'Ibnu 'l-'Alā*

- A (i.e. مَا زَكَ أَحَدٌ). The feminine is, however, admissible, especially in poetry, as in the above example, مَا زَكَتِ النِّخْ (i.e. فَتَاةٌ).

(d) The verbs نَعِمَ and بَشَّ (Vol. i. § 183) take the masculine form in preference to the feminine, even when the subject is feminine by signification; as نَعِمَ الْمَرْأَةُ زَيْنَبُ *Zèinèb is an excellent woman!* rather than نَعِمَتْ.

- B 143. If the subject be a plur. sanus masc., or a plur. fractus denoting persons of the male sex, the preceding verb is usually put in the sing. masc., particularly when one or more words are interposed between it and the subject; as قَالَ الْمُؤْمِنُونَ *the believers said*; ذَاتَ يَوْمٍ رَجُلٌ مِنْ مَكَّةَ *there came one day (some) men from Makkah*; أَتُؤْمِنُ كَمَا آمَنَ السُّفَهَاءُ *shall we believe as fools have believed?* But قَالَتِ الرُّوَاةُ *narrators say*; وَمَاذَا تَبْتَغِي الشُّعْرَاءُ مِنِّي *and what is it that the poets want of me?* فَقَدْ كَذَّبَتْ رُسُلٌ مِنْ قَبْلِكَ *apostles have been accused of falsehood before thee.*

REM. a. A similar construction may be found even in Old German; as *do wart genuoger ougen von heizen trāhenen rōt; uns hazzet liute unde lant.*

REM. b. بَنُونَ, sons (pl. of ابْنٌ), and other similar words (Vol. i. § 302, c, and rem. d), are exceptions, being treated as plurales fracti (see § 144), and therefore admitting the verb in the

- D fem. sing. This remark applies, however, to بَنُونَ only when it is used to denote a family or tribe (compare § 147); as قَالَتْ بَنُو إِسْرَائِيلَ *the Bènū 'Isrā'īl (Children of Israel) said.*

144. If the subject be a pluralis fractus, no matter whether derived from a masc. or a fem. sing., the preceding verb may be either masc. or fem.; as ثُمَّ قَسَتْ قُلُوبُكُمْ مِنْ بَعْدِ ذَلِكَ *then, after this, your hearts became hard* (from قَلْبٌ, masc.); مَتَى كَانَ الْخِيَامُ بِدَى طُلُوحٍ *when the tents are (set up) at Dū Tolūḥ* (from خَيْمَةٌ, fem.). See § 143.

REM. The remark made in § 142, c, regarding the particle **أَلَّا**, applies here too. An example of the fem. is **أَوَمَا بَقِيَتْ إِلَّا** *أَوَمَا بَقِيَتْ إِلَّا* and nothing remained but the low rugged ridges of hills (from **ضَلَعٌ**, fem.), where a prose writer would have said **وَمَا بَقِيَ شَيْءٌ**, scil. **شَيْءٌ**.

145. If the subject be a collective of the class mentioned in Vol. i. § 290, a, e, like **غَنَمٌ** *sheep or goats*, **طَيْرٌ** *birds*, or one of the collectives or other nouns mentioned in Vol. i. § 292, the preceding verb may be put either in the masculine or feminine, though the fem. is preferable, if the subject be feminine; as **قَالَتِ الْيَهُودُ لَيْسَتْ أَلْتَصَارَى عَلَى شَيْءٍ** *the Jews say, The Christians stand upon nothing* (have no foundation for their belief); **إِنِّي أَرَانِي أَحْمِلُ فَوْقَ رَأْسِي خُبْرًا تَأْكُلُ** *I saw myself (in a dream) carrying upon my head (some) bread, of which the birds were eating.*

146. If the subject be a feminine noun in the plural number, whether plur. sanus or plur. fractus, the preceding verb may be put either in the masc. or fem. sing.; unless the plur. sanus refers to persons of the female sex, in which case the fem. is decidedly to be preferred. Examples: **مِنْ بَعْدِ مَا جَاءَتْكُمْ الْبَيِّنَاتُ** *after the convincing proofs have reached you*; **مِمَّا كَتَبَتْ أَيْدِيهِمْ** *because of what their hands have written*; **فَأَصَابَهُمْ سَيِّئَاتُ مَا عَمِلُوا** *the evil consequences of what they did, came upon them*; **فَبَكَى بَنَاتِي شُجُوهُنَّ** *and my daughters lamented their misery*; **لِأَنَّهُ قَدْ ظَهَرَ أَمَارَاتُهَا** *because its signs have already appeared*; **قَالَ نِسْوَةٌ فِي الْمَدِينَةِ** *(some) women in the city said*; **لَوْلَا هَٰذَانِ لَسَبَىٰ نِسَاؤُهُمْ** *had it not been for these two, their women would have been taken prisoners*; but such instances as **إِذَا جَاءَكُمُ الْمُؤْمِنَاتُ** *when believing women come unto you*, are comparatively rare.

A **147.** The names of the Arab tribes, which are mostly of the feminine gender, take a preceding verb in the fem. sing. (see § 143, rem. *b*); but a following verb may be put in the plur. masc., because such names have the sense of collectives; e.g. **تَجَمَّعَتْ عُقَيْلٌ وَقُشَيْرٌ** (the tribes of) 'Oḡail and Koṣeir assembled and complained to one another of what was being done to them by Sḍifu 'd-daula.

B **148.** In general, when once the subject has been mentioned, any following verb must agree with it strictly in gender and number; as **خَرَجَ عَلَيْهِ الصَّيَادُونَ فَاتَّهَزَمَ مِنْهُمْ فَأَمَّا وَهُوَ فِي السَّهْلِ فَلَمْ يَدْرِكُوهُ** the hunters came out (sing.) against him and he fled from them, and, whilst he continued on level ground, they did not overtake him (plur.); **يَتَنَاجَوْنَ لِنُوحٍ الْأَحْمَامِ** those parting are moved (sing.) by it as they are moved (plur.) by the mournful cooing of

C doves; **كَانَ فِيهِ قُبَّةٌ تُعْرَفُ بِقُبَّةِ الْهَوَاءِ** there was (masc.) upon it a cupola, known (fem.) by (the name of) the cupola of the air; **وَبِمَغَارَةٍ الْخِضْرِ يَتْرُكُ الزُّوَارُ أَسْبَابَهُمْ وَيَصْعَدُونَ مِيلَيْنِ إِلَى أَعْلَى الْجَبَلِ** and the pilgrims leave (sing.) their baggage at the cave of *el-Hidr*, and ascend (plur., **الزُّوَارُ** being a plur. fract. denoting rational beings) two miles to the top of the mountain; **لِلَّهِ مَلَائِكَةٌ يَتَعَاقَبُونَ فِيكُمْ** God has angels who watch over you in turn (plur., for the same reason as in

D the last example); **فَجَالَ الصُّوَارُ وَاتَّقَيْنَ بِقَرْهَبٍ** and the herd wheeled (masc.) and guarded (their rear) with an old buck (**اتَّقَيْنَ** fem., because, with the exception of the single buck, the rest of the herd were does); **فَأُتْبِرَ مِنْهُ رِقَاعًا قَدْ كُتِبْنَ بِالْأَلْوَانِ الْأَصْبَاعِ** and he took out of it scraps of paper written with (ink of) various colours (where **كُتِبَتْ** might also be used).—If irrational or inanimate objects are spoken of (for example, in fables) as persons, the plur. fractus may be followed by the verb in the plur. masc.; as **كَلَابٌ مَرَّةً أَصَابُوا**

جَلَدَ سَبْعَ *once on a time (some) dogs found the skin of a beast of prey ;* A
وَقَالُوا بِجُلُودِهِمْ لِمَ شَهِدْتُمْ عَلَيْنَا قَالُوا أَنْطَقَنَا اللَّهُ *and they shall say to*
their skins (members), Why have ye borne witness against us? They
shall answer, God hath made us speak.

[REM. When the subject in the plural denotes irrational or inanimate objects, the plur. fem. of the verb is preferred in classic Arabic, if their number does not exceed ten, the sing. fem., if it be more, as لِحْدَيَّ عَشْرَةَ خَلْتُ and لَثَلَاثٍ خَلُونُ (§ 111). The same rule applies to the pronouns that refer to them, which in the B former case are هُنَّ, هُنَّ, in the latter هِيَ and هَا (as a suffix). Comp. Fleischer, *Kl. Schr.* i. 695.]

149. If the subject be a substantive in the dual number, the preceding verb must be put in the singular, but must agree with the subject in gender. Examples: وَدَخَلَ مَعَهُ السِّجْنَ فَتَيَانِ *and two young men went into the prison along with him ;*
لَمَّا تَنَازَعْنِي الرَّجُلَانِ *after the two men disputed with one another about me ;* C
بَعْدَ مَا كَانَ لَا يَفْعَلُ الْإِخْوَانِ *after something had taken place between us, which brother and sister do not do ;*
وَلَا يَلْبَثُ الْعَصْرَانِ *the two times, day and night, when they seek (to effect anything), are never long in attaining what they aim at ;*
وَسَمِرَتْ يَدَاهُ وَعُضْدَاهُ وَرِجْلَاهُ *and his hands and arms and feet were pierced with nails ;*
شَبَّهَ بِمَنْ قُطِعَتْ قَدَمَاهُ *like one whose feet are cut off ;*
لَوْ كَانَ بَدْرٌ حَاضِرًا وَأَبْنُ حَمَلٍ مَا نَقِشَتْ كَفَاكَ *had Bèdr been present and 'Ibn Hamèl, thy hands would not have been branded (حَمَلٍ in rhyme for حَمَلٍ) ;* D
لَا رَقَاتٍ عَيْنَاهُ مِنْ طَوْلِ الْبُكَاءِ *may his eyes never cease from constant weeping ;*
خُذْ مِنْ شَارِبِكَ حَتَّى تَبْدُو شَفَتَاكَ وَمِنْ ثَوْبِكَ حَتَّى تَبْدُو عَقْبَاكَ *cut your moustache till your lips can be seen, and your dress till your heels can be seen (compare, in*

- A Hebrew, Micah iv. 11, (וְהָיָה בְּלִיַּיִן עֵינֶיךָ); *وَكَذَلِكَ تَسْتَوِي هَتَانِ* and thus these two words (viz. *وَعَلَهُم* and *وَعَلَهُ*) are alike in their application to men also.—A following verb must, of course, agree strictly with the preceding subject in number as well as gender; as *إِذْ هَمَّتْ طَائِفَتَانِ مِنْكُمْ أَنْ تَفْشَلَا* when two troops among you were on the point (sing.) of behaving with cowardice (dual). But if it be a collective, designating rational beings, the masc. plur. is admissible; as *وَإِنْ طَائِفَتَانِ مِنَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ اقْتَتَلُوا فَأَصْلَحُوا بَيْنَهُمَا*
- B and if two parties of believers fight with one another, make peace between them.

REM. Sometimes, however, a preceding verb is found in actual agreement with a following subject in the dual or plural, or even in virtual agreement with a singular collective; as *وَقَدْ أَسْلَمَاهُ مَبْعَدًا* after both far and near (after every one) had abandoned him (*حَمِيمٌ* in rhyme for *حَمِيمٌ*); *إِخْمَرَتَا عَيْنَاهُ* his eyes were red;

- C *رَأَيْنَ الْغَوَانِيَ الشَّيْبَ لَاجِ بَعَارِضِي* his hands threw or shot; *رَأَيْنَ الْغَوَانِيَ الشَّيْبَ لَاجِ بَعَارِضِي* the women saw the white hairs which glittered in my whiskers; *يَلُومُونَنِي فِي اشْتِرَائِ النَّخِيلِ أَهْلِي* my family abuse me for the purchase of the palm-trees; *نَصْرُوكَ قَوْمِي فَأَعْتَزَزْتُ بِنَصْرِهِمْ* my people aided thee, and thou becamest powerful through their aid. The phrase *أَكَلُونِي الْبَرَاعِثُ* the fleas devoured me, is generally cited by the native grammarians to exemplify this construction,
- D [which, they say, is peculiar to the dialect of the tribe of Teiyi'].

150. If the preceding verb has several subjects, it may be put in the plural, as *وَأَنْتَ أَتَا جِئْنَا* thou and I are come; or it may agree in number and gender with the nearest subject, as *وَيُسْنِدُ هَرُونَ وَبَنُوهُ* and Aaron and his sons shall lay their hands upon his head; *تَكَلَّمَتْ مَرْيَمُ وَهَرُونَ فِي مُوسَى* Miriam and Aaron spoke about Moses.—If the subjects precede, and are either three or more

singulars, or a singular and a dual, the verb is put in the plural; if, A
they are merely two singulars, in the dual; as *الْبَطْنُ وَالرِّجْلَانِ تَخَاصَمَا*
the belly and the two feet disputed with one another; *الْبَرْدُ وَالْحَرُّ*
the cold and the heat disputed with one another; *وَالشَّجَرُ وَالنَّجْمُ*
and the plants and trees worship (not *يَسْجُدُونَ*, because
الشَّجَرُ and *النَّجْمُ* are not individuals but species); *وَحِيلَتِ الْأَرْضُ*
and (when) the earth and the mountains
shall be lifted up and dashed in pieces at one stroke (not *دُكَّتْ* or B
دُكِّنَ, *الْجِبَالُ* being a plur. fract.). If the subjects be of different
genders, the verb is usually put in the masculine, as in the first of the
above examples, or in *الْكُسْلُ وَكَثْرَةُ النَّوْمِ يُبْعِدَانِ مِنَ اللَّهِ وَيُورِثَانِ الْفَقْرَ*
indolence and excess of sleep remove us far from God and make us
heirs of (reduce us to) poverty.

151. The verb frequently agrees in respect of gender, not with C
the grammatical subject, but with its complement (the genitive
annexed to it), which is the logical subject; as *وَلَوْ جَاءَتْهُمْ كُلُّ آيَةٍ*
even though every sign should come (be shown) unto them; *يَوْمَ تَجِدُ*
on the day (when) every soul shall
find the good it has done present (along with itself before God);
قُطِعَتْ بَعْضُ أَغْضَائِي *all my limbs were relaxed*; *تَفْتَدِي مِنْهُ بَعْضُهُمْ*
some of his fingers were cut off; *بَعْضُهُمْ* *some of them ransom themselves from him with others (by giving up D*
others to him); *إِذَا بَعْضُ السِّنِينَ تَعَرَّقَتْ* *when some years shall have*
gnawed at us; *كُنْتُمْ خَيْرَ أُمَّةٍ أُخْرِجَتْ لِلنَّاسِ* *ye are the best people*
that has been brought forth (created) for mankind; *مَشِينَ كَمَا اهْتَزَّتْ*
they walked as spears wave, the
tops of which are bent by the passing of gentle breezes; *إِنَارَةُ الْعَقْلِ*

- A **مُسَوِّفٌ بِطَوَعِ هَوَى** *the brightness of the intellect is obscured (or eclipsed) by obeying lust.* As the above examples show, this agreement of the verb with the logical subject most frequently and naturally takes place when the grammatical subject expresses a subordinate idea, like **كُلٌّ**, **جَمِيعٌ**, **بَعْضٌ** and **غَيْرٌ** (see § 82).

[REM. The verb sometimes agrees with a subject that is to be supplied from the context, as **كَلِمَةً**, **فَعْلَةً**, etc. Examples: **فَبَلَّغَتْ**

- B **فَوَقَرْتُ فِي رَسُولِ اللَّهِ** *this (threatening) reached the Apostle of God*; **فَوَقَرْتُ فِي نَفْسِ الرَّشِيدِ وَحَفِظَهَا** *this (saying) remained in the mind of ʿr-Rašīd and he kept it in memory.* Comp. the phrase **مَا كَانَ لِيَحْتَمِلَهَا لَكَ** *he is not the man to forgive thee this (deed).* D. G.]

152. What has been said regarding the concord of gender and number in a verbal sentence, is nearly all applicable to a nominal sentence.

- (a) When the predicate [being a verb, or an adjective] follows the subject, they must agree strictly in gender and number (see § 148); unless the subject be a plur. fractus, in which case the predicate may also be put in the fem. sing., as **تَعْمَى الْقُلُوبُ وَالْعَيْنُونَ نَاطِرَةً** *the hearts are blind, whilst the eyes are seeing.* This latter remark applies also to the names of the Arab tribes (see § 147); as **وَبَنُو عَبْسٍ يَوْمَئِذٍ** *and the Bènū 'Abs were at that time dwelling among the Bènū 'Āmir 'ibn Ṣa'sa'a.*

(b) When the predicate precedes the subject, as happens in negative and interrogative sentences, then (a) if the sentence be nominal (see § 117), the predicate and subject must agree in number; but (β) if the sentence be verbal (see § 121), the predicate is put in the singular.

(c) If the subject be a collective, the predicate may be put in the plural; as **كُلُّ لَه قَاتِلُونَ** *all are obeying him.* Similarly, when a

verb is placed after a collective subject (see § 148); as وَلَكِنَّ أَكْثَرَ النَّاسِ لَا يَشْكُرُونَ A
 but the greatest part of mankind are thankless;
 أَتْرَكُوا قَرِيقٌ مِنْهُمْ يَخْشَوْنَ النَّاسَ a part of them are afraid of men;
 أَتْرَكُوا مَا تَرَكَ مَا تَرَكَوْكُمْ let the Turks alone as long as they let you alone;
 لِأَنَّ جَيْشَهُ هَلَكَوْا because his army had perished].

(d) The predicate frequently agrees in gender, not with the grammatical subject, but with its complement, which is the logical B
 subject (see § 151); as كُلُّ نَفْسٍ ذَائِقَةُ الْمَوْتِ every soul shall taste of
 death; أَتَى الْفَوَاحِشَ عِنْدَهُمْ مَعْرُوفَةٌ the committing of crimes is held
 laudable by them. [Less frequent are such expressions as كُلُّ أُذُنٍ
 سَامِعٌ every ear is hearing, and every eye seeing.]

[REM. In the words of the Prophet أَلَا إِنَّ كُلَّ دَمٍ وَمَالٍ verily, whatever
 claims of blood, money or privilege there existed in the time of C
 Ignorance, are under these my feet, i.e. are abolished by me, the
 fem. form of كَانَتْ and فَهِيَ (replaced in 'Ibn Hišām 821, l. 6 and
 Tab. i. 1642, l. 9 by يُدْعَى فَهَوُ), is to be explained by كُلُّ having
 the sense of جَمَاعَةٌ totality, just as in the verse of Ġamīl إِنَّ الزِّيَارَةَ
 لِلْحَبِيبِ يَسِيرُ verily the visiting is easy for the loving one, the
 predicate has been put in the masc. gender according to the sense
 فَإِنْ تَسْأَلْنِي عَنْ لَمْتَى, الْمَزَارُ=الزِّيَارَةُ, (على المعنى)
 and if thou ask me about my locks, lo! the D
 vicissitudes of time have taken them away, the verb agrees, not with
 الْأَحْوَادُ, but with its equivalent الْأَحْدَثَانُ. In the words of the
 tradition (Zamahsārī, Fāik, ii. 490) أَلْقَتُلْ فِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ مُضْمِصَةً
 death on the path of God is purifying (from the filth of sin), the
 predicate is according to some interpreters fem., because أَلْقَتُلْ has
 the meaning of الشَّهَادَةُ martyrdom. Others say that خُصْلَةٌ a
 practice is to be understood. Neither explication is necessary,

- A for the nomina actionis are of both genders (Vol. i. § 292, d). Other examples are Tab. i. 2185, l. 9 *seq.* وَالصَّوْمُ مِرْقَةً وَمُضْعِفَةً and fasting makes weak and feeble; Lebîd, *Mu'all.* 33 وَكَانَتْ عَادَةً إِذَا هِيَ عَرَدَتْ إِقْدَامَهَا and it was his wont, to let her precede, when she drew back, where also some interpreters say that the predicate agrees with إِنَّمَا هِيَ إِقْبَالٌ = التَّقْدِمَةُ; Fāṣḥ i. 246 إِنَّمَا هِيَ إِقْبَالٌ this is only an advancing and a retreating (comp. e). D. G.]
- B (e) If the subject of a nominal sentence be a personal or demonstrative pronoun, and the predicate a feminine substantive or a plur. fractus*, then the former is generally put in the fem. sing., even when the preceding substantive, to which it refers, is of the masc. gender; as إِنَّ هَذِهِ تَذْكِرَةٌ this is an admonition (Germ. dies ist eine Erinnerung, Fr. ceci est un avertissement); تِلْكَ حُدُودُ اللَّهِ such are God's ordinances (Germ. dies sind Gottes Regeln, Fr. ce sont-là les règles de Dieu); تِلْكَ آيَاتُ اللَّهِ تَتْلُوهَا عَلَيْكَ بِالنَّحْوِ such are God's signs, which we repeat to thee with truth. [In like manner, if كَانَ or one of its "sisters" be used (§ 131), this may agree in gender with the predicate, as وَإِنْ كَانَتْ الْأُخْرَى and if the contrary should happen; وَقَدْ صَارَتْ لِي سُنَّةٌ فِي الْعَرَبِ and it has become a custom of mine with the Arabs (*El-Mubarrad, 279, l. 4 with the variant سُنَّةٌ); إِنْ كَانَتْ إِلَّا غُبْرًا they were only passing clouds (Tab. ii. 1197, l. 3). ثُمَّ لَمْ يَكُنْ فِتْنَتُهُمْ إِلَّا أَنْ قَالُوا وَرَكِبُوهُمْ فَكَانَتْ and they bore down upon them and this was their defeat; see
- D other examples in my note on *El-Mubarrad ii. 108. This is also the case after the interrogative pronouns مَنْ and مَا (§ 170), as مَنْ كَانَتْ أُمُّكَ who was thy mother? مَا جَاءَتْ (- صَارَتْ) حَاجَتُكَ what became (or was) thy want?

* [The word هَذِهِ, in the expression هَذِهِ أَلْفٌ دِرْهَمٍ this is a thousand dirhems, is explained by the grammarians as standing for هَذِهِ أَلْفُ الدَّرَاهِمِ]

REM. In order to express the neuter *this, it*, etc. both the masc. and fem. sing. of the personal and demonstrative pronouns may be used. Examples of the latter: أَتَانِي أُبَيْتُ اللَّعْنَ أَنتَ أَتَانِي أُبَيْتُ اللَّعْنَ أَنتَ ^A I have heard, mayest thou avoid imprecation! that thou hast blamed me, and because of this I am anxious and distressed; وَكَانَتْ إِيَّاهَا and so indeed did it happen (Tab. i. 2951, l. 1); فَعَلْتُمُوهَا ye have done it, it is your fault (Tab. i. 2755, l. 12); قَدْ جَعَلُوهَا حُسَيْنِيَّةً they have made it to be treachery, such as was committed against *El-Hosèin. This is ^B applicable also to the الْقِصَّةِ or ضَمِيرُ الشَّانِ, which is masc. or fem. according to the gender of the subject in the following sentence. An example of the fem. is Kor'ân xxii. 45 فَإِنَّهَا لَا تَعْمَى الْأَبْصَارَ 45 for it is not the eyes that become blind. D. G.]

B. THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF SENTENCES.

1. Negative and Prohibitive Sentences.

C

153. The negative particles may, as in the Indo-European languages, deny any part of the sentence,—the predicate, the subject (e.g. لَا نَافِيَةَ الْجَنَسِ § 39), the object, the *hāl* or circumstantial expression, etc.

154. The negative particle sometimes immediately precedes that part of the sentence which it denies, at other times is separated from it by some other part; as لَا يُكْرِمُ السَّخِيُّ الْبَخِيلُ the liberal man does ^D not respect the niggardly; مَا هَذَا بَشَرًا this is not a human being (see § 42, rem. d); مَا قَالَ هَذَا he has not said this.

[REM. If only a part of an affirmative sentence is to be strongly denied, the negative particle must precede that part immediately, as جَاءَ زَيْدٌ لَا ضَاحِكًا وَلَا بَاكِيًا Zeid came neither laughing nor weeping. If to the affirmative part of a sentence, a

- A parallel negative is to be opposed, the latter must be preceded by the negative particle without a conjunction, as رَأَيْتُ زَيْدًا لَا عَمْرًا *I have seen Zèid, not 'Amr.*]

155. The predicate of a simple declarative verbal sentence, which is neither asseverative nor optative (§ 1, *e* and *f*), may, when denied by لَا, be put either in the imperfect or the perfect. (*a*) When put in the *imperfect*, it may be rendered into English by the present, the future, or, when connected with preceding past tenses, by the Latin imperfect (§§ 8, 9); as لَا يُكْرِمُ السَّخِيُّ الْبَخِيلَ *the liberal man does not respect* (or *will not respect*, or, under certain circumstances, *did not respect*, non honorabat) *the niggardly*. (*b*) The *perfect* can properly be used only (*a*) when لَا is repeated twice or oftener in clauses connected by وَ, in which case it may be translated by the perfect or the past (§ 1, *a* and *b*), as لَا صَدَّقَ وَلَا صَلَّى *he has neither believed nor prayed*, or *he neither believed nor prayed*; or (*β*) when لَا is connected by وَ with a preceding negative, such as لَمْ, or نَاف, and merely carries on the negation of something past (see § 1, *e*, rem. *a*, and § 160)*.
- C

156. The particle لَنْ (a contraction of لَا أَنْ), which is construed with the subjunctive of the imperfect (§§ 11 and 15, *a*, *a*), is a very strong negation of the future, *not at all, never*; as فَإِنْ لَمْ تَفْعَلُوا وَلَنْ تَفْعَلُوا *and if ye do not do it—and ye will never do it—then dread the fire (of hell)*.

- D REM. On لَمْ and نَاف see §§ 12 and 18.

157. The particle مَا, when joined to the perfect, denies the past; when joined to the imperfect, the present (see § 8, *e*, rem. *a*).

158. The particle إِنْ [Vol. i. § 362, *f*] is often found with negative force, in verbal as well as in nominal sentences (see § 42, rem. *e*), and that before both the perfect and the indicative of the

* [Comp. § 1, *e*, rem. *b*.]

imperfect. For example: **إِنِ الْحُكْمُ إِلَّا لِلَّهِ** *judgment belongs to God alone* (lit. *is not except to God*); **إِنِ الْكَافِرُونَ إِلَّا فِي غُرُورٍ** *the unbelievers are in utter deception* (lit. *are not except in deception*); **إِنِ أَجْرِيَ إِلَّا عَلَى الَّذِي فَطَرَنِي** *it is for Him alone to reward me, who has created me*; **ثُمَّ جَاءُوكَ يَحْلِفُونَ بِاللَّهِ إِنْ أَرَدْنَا إِلَّا إِحْسَانًا** *then they will come unto thee, swearing by God (and saying), We intended nothing but doing good*; **وَلَئِنْ زَالَتَا إِنْ أُمْسَكَهُمَا مِنْ أَحَدٍ مِنْ** *and if they (heaven and earth) should quit their place, no one could withhold them after Him (if He, i.e. God, should withdraw His support)*; **وَلَيَحْلِفْنَ إِنْ أَرَدْنَا إِلَّا الْحُسْنَى** *and verily they will swear, We meant only what is best*; **إِنْ يَتَّبِعُونَ إِلَّا الظَّنَّ** *they merely follow their own fancy*. In elevated prose style, as well as in poetry, the negative **مَا** is often prefixed to this **إِنْ**; e.g. **وَمَا إِنْ يَنْجَحُ لَهَا عَنَاءٌ** *but her pains were (all) of no avail*; **مَا إِنْ يَمْسُ الْأَرْضُ إِلَّا مِنْكَبٍ مِنْهُ** *only one shoulder of his touches the ground*; **مَا إِنْ رَأَيْتَ لَهُمْ فِي النَّاسِ** *thou hast never seen (any) like them among men* (**أَمْثَلًا** in rhyme for **أَمْثَلًا**); **مَا إِنْ أَتَيْتَ بِشَيْءٍ أَنْتَ تَكْرَهُهُ** *thou hast never done a thing which thou didst not like*.

REM. a. This **إِنْ** (called by the grammarians **إِنْ النَّافِيَةِ** *the negative 'in'*) is not to be confounded with the conditional particle of the same sound (**إِنْ الشَّرْطِيَّةِ** *the conditional 'in'*): for (a) it admits of a nominal sentence after it; (b) it does not govern the jussive; (c) it lets the perfect retain its past signification; (d) its predicate is sometimes put in the accusative, like that of **مَا** (§ 42, rem. e); and (e) it is joined, as a corroborative, to **مَا**. It seems rather to be connected with the Hebrew negative **לֹא**, **לֹא**, and occurs itself in that language in the form **לֹא**.

[REM. b. 'Abū Zēid, *Nawādir*, 60 seq. gives an instance of **لَئِنْ**

- A being prefixed to **إِنْ** instead of **مَا**, apparently because a relative **مَا** precedes. D. G.]

159. The verb **لَيْسَ** (Vol. i. § 182) is used (a) as the negative sometimes of **كَانَ التَّامَّةُ** (§ 41), e.g. **لَيْسَ لِصَاحِبِ الْعَقْلِ وَالْبَدَنِ عَذْرٌ** (Vol. i. § 182) is used (a) as the negative sometimes of **كَانَ التَّامَّةُ** (§ 41), e.g. **لَيْسَ لِصَاحِبِ الْعَقْلِ وَالْبَدَنِ عَذْرٌ** *for him who is healthy in mind and body, there is no excuse for neglecting the acquisition of knowledge*; at other times of **كَانَ التَّاقِصَةُ** (§ 41), e.g. **لَيْسَ بِعَالِمًا**, or **لَيْسَ بِعَالِمٍ**, *he is not learned*.

- B [It has always the meaning of the *imperfect*, mostly in its sense of the indefinite or definite present (§ 8, a, b).] But it is also employed (b) as an indeclinable negative particle, stronger than **لَا**, to deny some part of the sentence to which it is prefixed; e.g. **لَيْسَ بِهَذَا خُلِقْتُ وَلَا** *thou wast not created for this, nor bidden to do this*; **لَيْسَ كُلُّ مَا فَاتَ يَذْرُكُ** *nothing that has escaped us can be overtaken* (an opportunity once lost never recurs); **إِنَّمَا يَجْزِي الْفَتَى لَيْسَ الْجَمَلُ** *it is only the man that makes a return, not the camel* (**الْجَمَلُ** in rhyme for **الْجَمَلُ**); **أَلَيْسَ قَدْ نَوَيْتَ أَنْ تُعْتِقَنِي** *hast thou not formed the intention of setting me free?* In connection with an imperfect, it expresses a strongly denied present or future; as **لَسْتُ أَقْصِدُ الْحَرْبَ** *I do not intend to make war (upon you), but* **لَسْتُ تَنَالُ الْعِزَّ حَتَّى تُذِلَّهَا** *you will never attain greatness till you humble it (your spirit)*; **فَلَيْسَ تَدْخُلُ** *for the fire (of hell) is never entered after (one has been a dweller in) Paradise*; **لَيْسَ تُرَجَى لِفَائِدَةٍ** *no good is hoped of thee* (**لِفَائِدَةٍ** in rhyme for **لِفَائِدَةٍ**). It may even be governed by **كَانَ**, so as to express the negative imperfect of that verb; as **كَانَ النَّبِيُّ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ لَيْسَ بِالطَّوِيلِ وَلَا بِالْقَصِيرِ** *the Prophet was neither of high nor low stature*.

160. When to a clause containing one of the negative particles **A** مَا, لَمْ, or نَنْ, or the negative verb لَيْسَ, there is appended, by means of the conjunction وَ, another dependent clause, then, in place of repeating the particular negative of the former clause, the general negative لَا is used, because the special kind of negation has already been sufficiently made known. For example: لَنْ تُغْنِيَ عَنْهُمْ أَمْوَالُهُمْ: *neither their goods nor their children shall avail them aught against God*; رَأَى أَنَّ ذَلِكَ آتَبَدَنَ لَمْ يُخْلَقْ لَهُ عَبْدًا **B** *he saw that this body was not created for him in jest, nor connected with him for any vain purpose*; لَمْ يَبْقَ عَلَيْهِ مُشْكِلٌ *there remained for him no difficulty in the (divine) law which did not become clear, and nothing sealed up which was not opened, and nothing obscure which was not made plain*; لَسْتُ أَعْنِي بِالْقَلْبِ قَلْبَ الْجَسْمِ *I understand by the (term) heart neither **C** the corporeal heart nor the spirit which dwells in its cavity.* [Comp. § 180.] If, however, the second clause be conceived as independent of the first, and the connection be merely an external one, the particular negative is repeated; as هَلْ هُوَ أَمْرٌ لَمْ يَزَلْ مَوْجُودًا فِيهَا *is it a thing which has never ceased existing during the past, and which a period of non-existence has never in any way preceded?* [But if the connected words have not the character of a dependent negative clause, but that of a simple continuation of the preceding part of the sentence, only the conjunc- **D** tion وَ is used, as مَا جَزَعْنَا إِذْ وَلَّوْا وَإِذْ تَلَطَّى الصَّلَاةُ *we did not despair, when they fled and when the fire (of war) burned*; لَا تَخْبَانِ لَيْلٌ وَرَقًا *do not keep food for to-morrow and the day after to-morrow.*]

REM. a. When غَمْرٌ, دُونَ, هَلَا, etc. (see § 56, rem. c) require to be repeated, their place is supplied by لَا, which is followed by the

- A genitive governed by *غَيْرَ*, etc.; as *فَنَحَرَهَا غَيْرَ مُحْبَسَةٍ وَلَا مُعَقَّلَةٍ* and he slaughtered them without their being shut up or bound; *هُوَ غَيْرُ* *غَرِيبٍ وَلَا عَجِيبٍ* this is neither strange nor wonderful (see § 82, *d*, rem. *a*); *دُونَ جُبْنٍ وَلَا حَسَبٍ وَلَا حَيَاءٍ* without honour or shame; *وَلَا فَرَقٍ* without cowardice or fear.

- REM. *b*. *وَلَا* is sometimes repeated emphatically after a preceding negative, and requires to be rendered in English by *even*; as *وَلَا أَرَى أَنْ خَرَجَ مِنْهُمْ وَلَا وَاحِدٌ* but I do not see that there has come out even a single one of them.

161. In oaths and asseverations *لَا* is followed by the perfect with the signification of our future (see § 1, *e*); as *وَاللَّهِ لَا عَصَيْتُ رَبِّي* by God, I will not disobey my Lord; *وَاللَّهِ لَا فَتَحْتُ هَذَا أَلْبَابَ* by God, I will not open this door; *وَحَيَوَةُ فِرْعَوْنَ لَا خَرَجْتُمْ مِنْ هُنَا* by the life of Pharaoh, ye shall not quit this place; *لَا عَتَبْتُ عَلَيْهِ بَقِيَّةَ* *عُمُرِي* I will never reproach him (again) during the remainder of my life. In blessings and curses it is followed by the perfect as an optative (see § 1, *f*); as *لَا كَانَ لَا رَأَيْتَ شَرًّا* mayest thou never see (suffer) evil! *وَلَا أَسْتَكَانَ* may he not be (may he perish), and never come to life!*

162. When verbs signifying to forbid, fear, and the like, are followed by *أَنْ* with the subjunctive, the negative *لَا* is sometimes inserted after *أَنْ* (*لَا أَنْ* or *أَلَّا*) without affecting the meaning (see § 15, *a*, *a*); as *مَا مَنَعَكَ أَلَّا تَسْجُدَ* what prevented thee from worshipping (him)? *إِذْ رَأَيْتَهُمْ ضَلُّوا أَلَّا تَتَّبِعَنِ* what hindered thee, when

* *أَسْتَكَانَ* in this sense is of rare occurrence. The old expression was *لَا كَانَ وَلَا تَكُونُ*. In the *Chrestom.* of Kosegarten, p. 16, l. 12 seq. we must read with Dozy *لَا كُنْتُ وَلَا أَسْتَكُنْتُ* would that I had never come to life! D. G.]

thou sawest that they had gone astray, from following me? **وَإِنْ خِفْتُمْ** A
أَلَّا تَقْسِطُوا فِي الْيَتَامَى and if ye are afraid of being unjust towards ¹
the orphans (but if we read **تُقْسِطُوا**, **لَا** is no longer redundant: if ye
are afraid of not being just, etc.); **وَقَدْ نَهَى زَيْدٌ فِي ذَلِكَ أَلَّا يَفْعَلَهُ أَحَدٌ**
and Ziyād forbade concerning this matter, that anybody should do it.

REM. In accordance with a curious idiom of the language, whereby an oath or execration seems to be regarded as a virtual negation, the negative particle may be omitted in denial by oath, B and, on the contrary, be inserted in affirmation. For example, in poetry: **أُقْسِمْتُ بِاللَّهِ أَسْقِيَهَا وَأَشْرَبَهَا حَتَّى تَفْرَقَ تُرْبُ الْأَرْضِ أَوْصَالِي** by God I swear, I will NOT give it (to others) to drink, NOR drink it (myself), until the dust of the earth separates my joints; **فَأَلَيْتُ أَسَى** فَأَلَيْتُ أَسَى and so I swear, I will NEVER mourn for one dying, NOR ask a mourner what ails her; **فَقُلْتُ يَمِينَ اللَّهِ** فَقُلْتُ يَمِينَ اللَّهِ and I said, By God I swear, I will NOT cease sitting (see § 42, rem. b); and in the Kor'an, **تَاللَّهِ تَفْتَوُ تَذْكُرُ يَوْسُفَ** by C God, thou wilt NEVER cease thinking of, or speaking of, Joseph. Conversely, in the Kor'an: **فَلَا أُقْسِمُ بِمَوَاقِعِ النُّجُومِ وَإِنَّهُ لَقَسْرٌ لَوْ تَعْلَمُونَ عَظِيمٌ** and I SWEAR by the places where the stars set, and verily that is a great oath, if ye (only) knew (it); **لَا أُقْسِمُ بِيَوْمِ الْقِيَمَةِ** I SWEAR by the day of the Resurrection; **لَا أُقْسِمُ بِهَذَا الْبَلَدِ** I SWEAR by this town. [As to the latter case, many interpreters say that **لَا** is the denial of a preceding objection that is to be supplied, so that D we must translate: no! (it is not as ye say), I swear, etc. In the former case the omission of the negative particle is allowed, because no misunderstanding can arise. For, when affirming, we ought to say **وَاللَّهِ لَأَسْقِيَهَا وَلَا أَشْرَبُهَا** (see §§ 14, 19). Therefore the negative particle may be omitted even where no oath is expressed, as in the old verse (Nöldeke, *Delectus*, p. 65, l. 14) **فَإِنْ لَا أُمْتُ يَا عَمْرُو** and if my life be spared, O 'Amr! I will not cease to

- A *seek vengeance for thy blood, and in that of Abū Nowās (Tab. iii. 705, l. 1) نَزَالٌ بِخَيْرٍ مَا آتَاوَيْنَا عَلَى التَّقَى we shall never cease to be in good condition, as long as we keep the fear of God in our heart. See two other examples § 42, rem. b. D. G.]*

163. The prohibitive *لَا* governs either the jussive or the energetic. See §§ 17, *b* ; 19, *b* ; and 20.

B **2. Interrogative Sentences.**

164. The Arabic language ignores the difference between a direct and an indirect question, in so far as regards the arrangement of words and the mood of the verb. Every interrogative clause, even when dependent upon a preceding one, takes the direct form.

- 165.** A question is sometimes indicated merely by the tone of the voice, both when it stands alone, and when it is connected with another question by *أَمْ* or *أَوْ* ; as فَقَالُوا تَخْشَى عَلَيْنَا مِنْ نَفْسِكَ شَيْئًا *and they said, Dost thou fear any evil to us from thyself?* رَمَى الْجِمَارِ *رمى الجمار* *is it better to cast the stones* (one of the ceremonies of the pilgrimage to Mekka) *riding or on foot?* وَإِنْ نَعْمَرُكَ مَا أَدْرِي وَإِنْ كُنْتُ دَارِيًا بِسَبْعِ رَمِيمِنَ الْجَمْرِ أَمْ بِثَمَانٍ *by thy life, I know not, though I am knowing, (whether) they pelted the Gamarūt (see the last example) with seven (pebbles) or with eight ; لَا أَدْرِي هُوَ مِنْ رُحْتُ أَوْ مِنْ أَرَحْتُ I do not know whether it comes from roḥtu or from 'araḥtu.* In general, however, a question is introduced by one or other of the interrogative particles mentioned in Vol. i. §§ 361, 362.

166. The simplest interrogative particle is *أَ*, which may be prefixed to the word *إِنْ*, and to the conjunctions *وَ*, *فَ*, and *ثُمَّ* ; as *أَنْتُمْ مِنْ فِي السَّمَاءِ* *are ye safe from Him who is in heaven?* *أَنْتُمْ مِنْ فِي السَّمَاءِ* *shall we believe as fools have believed?*

تُرَابًا وَعِظَامًا أَتِنَّا لَمَدِينُونَ *when we are dead, and become dust and* A
bones, shall we indeed be recompensed (for our deeds)? أَتُنكَ لَأَنْتَ
 يُوسُفُ *art thou really Joseph?* أَلَا تَقَاتِلُونَ قَوْمًا نَكَثُوا أَيْمَانَهُمْ *will ye*
not fight a people who have broken their oaths? أَمَا تَسْتَحْيِي مِنَ اللَّهِ *art thou*
not ashamed of thyself before God? فَقَالَ أَبُو بَكْرٍ أَوَكُلُّكُمْ رَأَيْهُ *and* A
 أَفَسَمِعْتَنِي *and Abū Bèkr said, Are ye all of this opinion?* أَفَسَمِعْتَنِي *and* A
 أَقُولُ إِلَّا خَيْرًا *hast thou then heard me saying aught but good?* B
 أَوَلَا يَعْلَمُونَ أَنَّ اللَّهَ يَعْلَمُ مَا يُسْرُونَ *do they not know that God knows*
what they keep secret? أَفَمَا نَحْنُ بِمَيِّتِينَ إِلَّا مَوْتَتَنَا الْأُولَى *are we not*
then liable to die save our first death (in this world)? أَوَلَمْ يَرَوْا إِلَى *?*
 مَا خَلَقَ اللَّهُ مِنْ شَيْءٍ *have they not looked at what God has created?*
 أَتَمَّ إِذَا مَا وَقَعَ آمَنْتُمْ بِهِ *when it falls (upon you), will ye believe it then?*
 If another clause be connected by *أَمْ* with the one beginning with *أَ*
 (in this case called *هَمْزَةُ التَّسْوِيَةِ*, the *hèmza of equalisation*), there C
 arises a disjunctive or alternative question; as *أَزِيدُ عِنْدَكَ أَمْ عَمْرُو*
is Zèid in thy house, or 'Amr? أَلَيْسَ أَلْخَابِئَةُ دِبْسُكَ أَمْ فِي الْبِزْقِ *is thy*
date-honey in the jar or in the skin? أَمْ صَبَرْنَا *it is*
all the same to us, whether we bear (our torments) impatiently or with
patience; أَوْ عَلَيْنَا *it is all one to them,*
 أَمْ تَنْذَرْتَهُمْ أَمْ لَمْ تَنْذَرْتَهُمْ *whether thou hast warned them or not;*
 وَمِنْ الْعَجَائِبِ عَجَبٌ مَنْ *one of the strange* D
 أَمْ هُوَ جَاهِلٌ أَمْ هُوَ السَّعِيدُ أَمْ الشَّقِيُّ أَمْ كَيْفَ يُخْتَمُ عَمْرُو *things is the self-conceit of him who does not know whether he will be*
saved or damned, or how his life will end. Instead of أَمْ *we may use*
 أَوْ *as* أَزِيدُ عِنْدَكَ أَوْ عَمْرُو *is Zèid in thy house, or 'Amr?* اِخْتِلَافُهُمْ
 فِي نَعِيمِ الْجَنَّةِ أَمْ مِنْ جِنْسِ نَعِيمِ الدُّنْيَا أَوْ غَيْرِهِ *their difference of*
opinion in regard to the delights of Paradise, whether they are of the
same kind as the delights of this world, or of a different kind.

A REM. a. The interrogative particle is frequently omitted at the beginning of an alternative question; as **أَنَا أَلَمَلِكُ شِئْتُمْ أَوْ أُبَيْتُمْ** *I am king, whether ye like it or not* (for **أَشِئْتُمْ**). If both parts of the sentence be dependent upon the same verb, it is placed between them; as **غَنِيًّا كَانَ أَوْ فَقِيرًا** *whether he be rich or poor* (for **أَغْنِيَا**); **صَبَاحًا جَاءَ أَمْ مَسَاءً** *whether he comes in the morning or in the evening* (for **أَصْبَاحًا**). See § 6, a, and § 165.

B REM. b. It is said that there is a difference of meaning between **أَمْ** and **أَوْ**. The question **أَزِيدُ عِنْدَكَ أَوْ عَمْرُو** implies ignorance as to whether either of them is there, or not; but **أَزِيدُ عِنْدَكَ أَمْ عَمْرُو** implies the knowledge that one of them is there, and asks which it is.

[REM. c. **أَمْ** *الْمُنْقَطِعَةُ* (the unconnected 'am) signifies often or rather, *nay but*, serving like **بَلَّ** (§ 184, c) to denote digression or to rectify, as **إِنَّهَا لِإِبِلٍ أَمْ شَاءَ** *verily they (the animals seen moving at a distance) are camels; nay but are they not rather sheep?* This is also its meaning in alternative sentences after **هَلْ**; see § 167.]

167. The interrogative particle **هَلْ** introduces questions of a more lively sort; as **هَلْ أَتَاكَ حَدِيثُ الْجُنُودِ** *hast thou heard the tale of the armies?* **هَلْ أَدُلُّكُمْ عَلَى تِجَارَةٍ تُنْجِيكُمْ مِنْ عَذَابٍ أَلِيمٍ** *shall I direct you to a merchandise, which shall save you from sore torment?* **هَلْ أَنْتُمْ تَارِكُو** (§ 84, rem. a); **أَأُمِّمَ هَلْ تَدْرِينَ أَنْ رَبَّ صَاحِبِ الْخ** (§ 90). It may be preceded by **وَ**, **فَ**, and **ثُمَّ**; as **وَهَلْ أَتَاكَ حَدِيثُ مُوسَى** *and hath the story of Moses reached thee?* **إِنْ أَقَمْتُ إِلَى اللَّيْلِ فَهَلْ أَنْتَ رَائِحٌ مَعِيَ** *if I stay till the evening, wilt thou go with me?*—**هَلْ** cannot be prefixed to a negative clause (excepting **هَلَّا**, § 169); nor to a conditional clause; nor to **إِنْ**, **وَ**, **فَ**, and **ثُمَّ**; nor, in general, to a nominal clause of which the predicate is a

finite verb (§ 119); as *هَلْ زَيْدٌ مَاتَ* [except in poetry].—It may be A followed in an alternative clause by *أَمْ* or *أَوْ*, with the former of which particles *هَلْ* is [mostly] repeated; as *هَلْ غَادَرَ الشُّعْرَاءُ مِنْ مُتَرَدِّمٍ أَمْ هَلْ* is [mostly] repeated; as *هَلْ غَادَرَ الشُّعْرَاءُ مِنْ مُتَرَدِّمٍ أَمْ هَلْ عَرَفْتَ الدَّارَ بَعْدَ تَوَهُّمٍ* have the poets left any place to be patched or pieced (any decaying ruin to be sung of)? Nay but (I have something to say:) hast thou recognised the abode (of thy beloved) after doubting (regarding it)? *هَلْ يَسْتَوِي الْأَعْمَى وَالْبَصِيرُ أَمْ هَلْ تَسْتَوِي* *هَلْ يَسْتَوِي الْأَعْمَى وَالْبَصِيرُ أَمْ هَلْ تَسْتَوِي* are the blind and the seeing equal? Or rather are B darkness and light equal? *سَائِلُ أُسَيْدٍ هَلْ ثَارَتْ بِوَائِلٍ أَمْ هَلْ شَفِيتُ* ask 'Usèiyid whether I have taken my blood-revenge on Wā'il, or [rather] whether I have cured my soul of its grief; *هَلْ سَبَّ مِنْ أَحَدٍ أَوْ سَبَّ أَوْ بَخِلَا* did he revile any one, or was he reviled, or was he avaricious?

REM. a. Some grammarians say that *هَلْ* is originally equi- C valent in meaning to *قَدْ*, and that its interrogative force is really due to the particle *أَ* understood. The two are sometimes combined; as *هَلْ رَأَوْنَا بِسَفْحِ الْقَاعِ ذِي الْأُكْمِ* did they see us at the lower end of the plain with the hillocks? *فَقَالَ مُخَاطِبًا لِنَفْسِهِ أَهْلُ عَرَفْتَ دَارَ* فَقَالَ مُخَاطِبًا لِنَفْسِهِ أَهْلُ عَرَفْتَ دَارَ and he says, addressing himself, Hast thou recognised the abode of thy beloved, after thy doubting regarding it?

REM. b. On the elliptical expression *هَلْ لَكَ فِي كَذَا*, see D § 53, b, rem. c. When followed by a clause commencing with *أَنْ*, the preposition *فِي* may be omitted [comp. § 70, rem. g], as *هَلْ لَكَ فِي أَنْ تَنَامَ* dost thou wish to go to sleep?—Similarly, *هَلْ لَكَ إِلَى أَنْ تَزَكَّى* wouldst thou become pure? scil. *هَلْ لَكَ مَيْلٌ إِلَى أَنْ تَزَكَّى* hast thou an inclination to becoming pure?

168. The compound negative particle *أَلَا*, *nonne*, is often used to draw close attention to the certainty of the following assertion, and

- A hence admits of being rendered into English by *truly, verily, certainly* (compare in Hebrew הִנֵּה = הִלָּא), in which case it is frequently followed, as a farther asseverative, by *إِنَّ**; e.g. *أَلَا لَ تَنَالُ الْعِلْمَ إِنَّ* ; e.g. *إِنَّ لَا يَسْتَهْزِئُكَ إِلَّا بِشَيْءٍ* *certainly thou wilt never attain learning save through six things* (lit. *is it not so? thou wilt not, etc.*); *إِنَّ الْيُوتَمَ لَا تَدُومُ* ; *verily youth does not last for ever*; *أَلَا إِنَّهُمْ هُمُ السُّفَهَاءُ* *verily these are the fools*; *أَلَا أَيُّهَاذَا التَّابِعُ السَّيِّدِ إِنِّي عَلَى نَافِيهَا مُسْتَبْسِلٌ مِنْ وَرَائِهَا* ;
- B *O thou that burkest at (revilest) the Bēnū 's-Sīd, verily I am ready to fight to the death in their defence, though they are far away.* It is also used as a corroborative before the optative perfect (§ 1, f), the imperative, jussive, and energetic; as *أَلَا قَبْحَ اللَّهِ وَجْهَكَ* *may God disfigure thy face!* Here *يَا* is often inserted; see § 38, a, rem. h.—The synonymous particle *أَمَّا* [also, before an oath, written *أَمْر*] is used in the same way as *أَلَا*; e.g. *أَمَّا وَاللَّهِ تَو تَعَدَّيْتَهَا قَتَلْتُكَ* *verily, by God, hadst thou transgressed it, I would have put thee to death*;
- C *أَمَّا وَالرَّاقِصَاتِ بِذَاتِ عِرْقٍ وَمَنْ لَا خَيْرَ بِخَيْرٍ بَعْدَهُ النَّارُ* *verily there is no good in prosperity which is followed by the fire (of hell)*; *أَمَّا وَصَلَّى بِنَعْمَانَ الْأَرَاكِ لَقَدْ أَضْمَرْتُ حُبَّكَ فِي فُؤَادِي* *by the galloping camels at Dāt 'Irā, and by those who pray at Na'mān abounding in 'arāk-trees, (I swear that) I have treasured up love for thee in my heart.*

169. *لَوْ لَا*, *هَلَا*, *أَلَا*, and *لَوْ مَا* (called by the grammarians *حُرُوفُ التَّحْذِيرِ* the particles of requiring with urgency, or with gentleness), are used before the imperfect to incite one to perform an act, and before the perfect to rebuke the neglect of it; as *أَلَا تَصْنَفُ* *why dost thou not compose a book upon asceticism?* equivalent to *compose one, pray*; but *أَلَا صَنَفْتَ كِتَابًا فِي الزُّهْدِ* *why*

* [And also by *وَإِنَّ* and by *وَو*; see the Gloss. to Ṭabarī. D. G.]

hast thou not composed a book upon asceticism? *مَا أَغْلَمْتَنِي* why A
 didst thou not inform me (of it)? *يَقُولُ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا لَوْلَا أُنْزِلَ عَلَيْهِ*
آيَةٌ مِنْ رَبِّهِ those who do not believe, say, Why has no sign from his
 Lord been sent down to him? *لَوْلَا يُكَلِّمُنَا اللَّهُ أَوْ تَأْتِينَا آيَةٌ* why does not
 God speak to us or a sign come unto us? *كُنْتَ* نَوْمًا تَأْتِينَا بِآيَاتِكَ إِنَّ كُنْتَ
 مِنَ الصَّادِقِينَ why dost thou not bring the angels to us, if thou art (one)
 of those who speak the truth? In later times the simple *مَا* is so used;
 as *مَا تَقُومُ* dost thou not stand up? or thou dost not stand up! equi- B
 valent to pray, stand up.

REM. a. *أَلَا* is used in the same sense as *أَلَا*, but with less
 force; as *أَلَا تَقَاتِلُونَ قَوْمًا نَكَثُوا أَيْمَانَهُمْ* why will ye not fight a
 people who have broken their oaths? *أَلَا تُحِبُّونَ أَنْ يَغْفِرَ اللَّهُ لَكُمْ*
 why do ye not like that God should forgive you?

REM. b. Sometimes the verb is suppressed after these particles,
 and a substantive follows in the nom. or accus.; as *هَلَّا خَيْرًا مِنْ ذَلِكَ*
 why not better than this? scil. *تَفْعَلُ* dost thou do, or *هَلَّا خَيْرٌ* C
هَلَّا اتَّقَدَّمُوا وَالْقُلُوبُ صَحَاحٌ scil. *كَانَ مِنْكَ* was from thee; *مِنْ ذَلِكَ*
 why did ye not do so before, when our hearts were sound? scil.
تَعْدُونَ عَقْرَ النَّيْبِ; *هَلَّا كَانَ ذَلِكَ مِنْكُمْ سَابِقًا* = *هَلَّا وَجَدَ اتَّقَدَّمُ*
أَفْضَلَ مَجْدِكُمْ بَنِي ضَوْطَرَى لَوْلَا الْكِبَى الْمُقَنَّعَا ye reckon the
 slaughtering of she-camels your greatest glory; ye sons of a good-
 for-nothing, why not the helmed warrior? scil. *تَعْدُونَ*, i.e. *هَلَّا* D
تَعْدُونَ مِنْ الْفَخْرِ الْكِبَى الْمُقَنَّعِ why do ye not reckon the helmed
 warrior something glorious?

170. The interrogative pronouns *مَنْ* who? and *مَا* what? may
 stand in any one of the three cases, nominative, genitive, or ac-
 cusative; as *أَنْتَ مَنْ* who art thou? *بِنْتُ مَنْ أَنْتِ* whose daughter
 art thou? *مَا تِلْكَ بِيَمِينِكَ* whom hast thou slain? *مَا* what is

- A *that in thy right hand?* **مَا تَقُولُ** *what sayest thou?* **فِيمَا كُنْتُمْ** *in what (state) were ye?* Even when they ought, strictly speaking, to follow another word in the genitive, they may be put first in the nominative absolute, and their proper place supplied by a pronoun which falls back upon them (**عَائِدٌ** or **وَاجِعٌ**); as **قُلْ مَنْ بِيَدِهِ مَلَكُوتُ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ**; (instead of **بِيَدِ مَنْ**) *Say, In whose hand is the kingdom over everything?* But no such pronoun can be used, unless **مَنْ** and **مَا** precede in the nominative absolute.—To render the interrogation more lively,
- B the demonstrative pronoun **ذَا** is appended (like the Heb. **הַזֶּה**) to the interrogatives **مَنْ** and **مَا**, even when the subject of the interrogative clause is introduced by the relative pronoun **الَّذِي**; as **مَاذَا تَقُولُ**, or **مَاذَا الَّذِي تَقُولُ**, *what is it (that) thou sayest*?* **مَنْذَا الَّذِي أَمَرَ**, or **مَنْذَا الَّذِي أَمَرَ**, *who is it that has given orders?* **لِمَاذَا وَلَّيْتَ بَعْدَ مَجِيئِكَ إِلَيَّ هُنَا** (pron. *limá dā*), *why dost thou run away after thy coming hither?*—The pronouns **مَنْ** and **مَا** are always
- C used substantively, but can neither govern a genitive nor be followed by another substantive in apposition to them in any case (nom., gen., or acc.): **مَنْ فَرَسٌ**, **مَنْ فَرَسٌ**, do not mean *τίς ἀνὴρ*; *quisnam vir?* *quis eques (est ille quem vides)?* but *quis (est) vir?* *quis (est) eques?* **مَنْ** being the subject and the following word the predicate. For example: **إِذَا أَلْقَوْهُ قَالُوا مَنْ فَتَى جِلَّتْ أُنْتَى عَنِتْ** *when the tribe ask, Who is a man? I think that I ammeant*; **تَوَكَّانَ فِي الْأَلْفِ مِنَّا**
- D *if there were one of us among a thousand, and they cried out, Who is a horseman? he would think (that) they meant him* (**يَعْنُونَ** in rhyme for **يَعْنُونَ**); **مَنْ إِلَهٌ غَيْرُ اللَّهِ**; *lit. who (is) a god, beside the (true) God, (that) could give*

* [We find not unfrequently **مَاذَا تَقُولُ مَاذَا**, *what hast thou done?* **مَاذَا تَقْرِي مِنِّي** *and what do you wish from me?* D. G.]

you light? the words **يَا تَيْكُمُ بِيضَاءُ** forming a relative clause in con- A
 nection with the indefinite substantive **إِلَهُ** (see § 172). Even such a
 case as is represented by the words **مَنْ زَيْدٌ**, **مَنْ زَيْدًا**, in no way
 violates this rule. One person says **رَأَيْتُ زَيْدًا** *I have seen Zèid*;
 another, repeating the exact words of the former speaker (**الْحِكَايَةُ**),
 asks **مَنْ زَيْدًا** *who is* (the person meant, when you said “*ra’èitu*
Zèidan,” by the word) “*Zeidan*”? Similarly, in the genitive, **مَرَرْتُ**
بِزَيْدٍ *I passed by Zèid*, **مَنْ زَيْدٍ**. In general, however, the **حِكَايَةُ** B
(imitation, citation or quoting of the exact words of a speaker) is
 neglected, and the questioner asks **مَنْ زَيْدٌ** *who is Zèid?* in the nomi-
 native. The **حِكَايَةُ** is allowed only when the word quoted is a proper
 name, and **مَنْ** is not preceded by any connective particle, such as **وَ**.
 We can only say **وَمَنْ زَيْدٌ** *and who is Zèid?* **مَنْ غُلَامٌ زَيْدٍ** *who is*
the slave of Zèid? The word **مَنْ** may be used by itself alone, in
 reference to an undefined substantive, with the inflections mentioned C
 in Vol. i. § 352; e.g. **جَاءَنِي رَجُلٌ** *there came to me a man*, **مَنْوُ** *who?*
رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا *I saw a man*, **مَنْا** *whom?* **مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ** *I passed by a man*,
مَنْي *whom?*—As interrogatives, **مَنْ** and **مَا** are construed with the
 masculine singular of a verb, but occasionally admit of the feminine,
 when the predicate is of the feminine gender; as **مَنْ كَانَتْ أُمُّكَ** *who*
was thy mother? [see § 152, e].—If inquiry be made regarding the
 nature, qualities, social position, etc., of a person, **مَا** is used, and not D
مَنْ; e.g. **وَقُلْنَا لَهُ مَا أَنْتَ** *and we said to him, What art thou?*
أَخْبِرْنِي عَنْ قَوْلِكَ مَا رَبُّ الْعَالَمِينَ *what is the Lord of created things?*
وَلَمَّا رَأَتْ رَكَبَ الثَّمِيرِي أَعْرَضَتْ وَكُنَّ مِنْ أَنْ يَلْقَيْنَهُ حَذِرَاتٍ * مَا

* **مِنْ أَنْ** by poetic license for **مَنْ أَنْ**, and **حَذِرَاتٍ** in rhyme for **حَذِرَاتٍ**.

- A كُنْتُمْ قَالَ كُنْتُ عَلَى جِمَارٍ هَزِيلٍ وَمَعِيَ صَاحِبٌ لِي عَلَى أَتَانٍ مِثْلِهِ
tell me about thy verse: "And after she descried the cavalcade of the Numèirî, she turned aside, and they were on their guard against meeting him";—what were ye? He said, I was upon a lean he-ass, and with me was a friend of mine upon a she-ass like it.

- REM. a. The حِكَايَةُ of a proper name is inadmissible, if the name be qualified in any way, except by ابْنُ in a genealogical series. If one says رَأَيْتُ زَيْدَ بْنِ عَمْرٍو, you may ask مَنْ زَيْدَ بْنِ رَأَيْتُ زَيْدًا ابْنَ الْأَمِيرِ or رَأَيْتُ زَيْدًا الْعَاقِلَ; but if one says رَأَيْتُ زَيْدًا ابْنَ الْأَمِيرِ or رَأَيْتُ زَيْدًا الْعَاقِلَ, you cannot ask مَنْ زَيْدًا ابْنَ الْأَمِيرِ or مَنْ زَيْدًا الْعَاقِلَ. In these cases the nominative only is allowed.

- REM. b. From مَنْ is formed an adjective مَنِىٌّ [Vol. i. § 352, rem. c], which is used in asking questions regarding صِفَاتُ الْعَلَمِ or النَّسَبَاتُ (Vol. i. § 249). E.g. زَيْدٌ جَاءَنِي زَيْدُ الْقُرَشِيِّ of which tribe? to which the answer might be الْقُرَشِيُّ of Kordis, as distinguished from زَيْدُ التَّقْفِيِّ Zèid of the tribe of Takîf; مَنْ زَيْدٌ of which tribe art thou, is he? instead of the usual [مَنْ الرَّجُلُ].

- REM. c. The interrogative مَا is very rarely used of persons; as وَلَكِنِّي أَدُلُّكُمْ عَلَى رَجُلٍ مِمَّنَّا هُوَ أَقْوَمُ بِمَا دَعَوْتُمُونِي إِلَيْهِ فَقَالُوا مَا هُوَ but I will point out to you a man amongst us, who is better able to carry out what ye have asked me to do; and they said, Who is he?
- D مَا نَظَرْتُ إِلَى رَجُلٍ مُتَمَاوِتٍ فَقَالَتْ مَا هَذَا she saw a man pretending to be dead, and said, Who is this? The conjunctive (relative) مَنْ and مَا (§ 172 and foll.) are more frequently interchanged; e.g. مِنْهُمْ مَنْ أَسْرَبَ الْأَقْطَا هَلْ مِنْ يُعْبِرُ جَنَاحَهُ لِعَلِّي إِلَى مَنْ قَدْ هَوَيْتُ أُطِيرُ; among them are creatures which walk on four (feet) O covey of katas (a sort of bird) is there one (among you) who will lend (me) his wings? Perchance I might fly to the one whom I love;

فَانكِحُوا مَا طَابَ لَكُمْ مِنَ النِّسَاءِ *then marry what women seem good*; A
 to you ; وَلَدُوا مَا نَكَحُوا وَالْقَتْلَ مَا وَلَدُوا *those whom they married*
 (their wives) were (doomed) to captivity, and those whom they begat
 (their children) to slaughter ; فَهَذَا شَكُّنَا فِي أَحْتِلَامِهِ كَانَ الْقَوْلُ *and (as to) those about whose virility we are in doubt, the*
 decision shall be as you please ; ثُمَّ نَحَى عَنْهُ جَمِيعَ مَا كَانَ بِحَضْرَتِهِ *then he ordered all who were in his presence to retire and leave us ;*
 وَكُلَّ مَا يَخْتَصُّ بِهِ مِنْ أَقَارِبِهِ وَذَوِيهِ *and all whom he had about him* B
 of his friends and relatives*.

REM. d. On the shortening of مَا into مَر, see Vol. i. § 351, rem.

171. Regarding the interrogative pronoun أَيُّ, of which we have spoken before (§ 87), there are here two remarks to be made.
 (a) أَيُّ [when followed by a noun in the genitive] is used, not only instead of the fem. أَيَّة, but also instead of the plur. أَيُّونَ ; as مِنْ أَيِّ of
 وَمَا تَدْرِي نَفْسٌ بِأَيِّ أَرْضٍ تَمُوتُ *of what tribe art thou ?* and no soul knows in what land it shall die ; مِنْ أَيِّ النَّاسِ أَنْتَ *of what people art thou ?* [when prefixed to a fem. pronoun, it may be masc. or fem. ; though أَيَّتُهَا is the more common ; see Vol. i. § 353].
 (b) A nominal sentence with a nominal predicate, of which the subject (الْمُبْتَدَأُ) is أَيُّ with a pronominal suffix, may, as a whole, without any

* [In reality, the above examples form no exception to the rules. D In the two first the question relates to the quality or position of the man, not to his name. In the others مَا is used in a collective sense. But as in many cases the interrogative *what is he ?* and *who is he ?* the relative *what* and *whom* are equally admissible, we find مَا and مَنْ sometimes interchanged by different authors and in different manuscripts. Comp. Fleischer, *Kl. Schr.* iii. 14 seq. D. G.]

† [The reading بِأَيِّ أَرْضٍ is compared by Sibawèih to an equally rare form, viz. كَأَيَّتُهَا.]

- A change of case, supply the place of an accusative to a verb or of a genitive after a preposition; as *عَرَفْتُ أَيُّهُمْ فِي الدَّارِ* *I know which of them is in the house*; *لَنَنْزِعَنَّ مِنْ كُلِّ شِيعَةٍ أَيُّهُمْ أَشَدَّ عَلَى الرَّحْمَنِ* *then will we take forth from every band those who have been stoutest in proud rebellion against the Merciful*; *مَضَعَهَا لِيَنْظُرَ أَيُّهَا* *he bit them with his teeth in order to see which of them was the hardest*; *إِذَا مَا نَقِيتَ بَنِي مَالِكٍ فَسَلِّمْ عَلَى أَيُّهُمْ أَفْضَلُ* *when thou meetest the Bènū Mālik, salute him who is most excellent amongst them*. In such cases, however, *أَيُّ* may be put alone, without any suffix, in the accusative or genitive, the vacant place of the subject in the nominal clause being supplied by the pronoun of the third person; as *عَرَفْتُ أَيًّا هُوَ فِي الدَّارِ*. In the former case *أَيُّ* is treated as an interrogative, in the latter as a relative pronoun. We may also say *عَرَفْتُ أَيُّهُمْ هُوَ فِي الدَّارِ*, and even *عَرَفْتُ أَيًّا فِي الدَّارِ*.

- C REM. a. *أَيُّ* likewise serves to express astonishment, in which case it may always be put in the masc. sing., and the noun which it governs in the genitive is undefined. If the preceding noun, to which *أَيُّ* refers, be indefinite, then *أَيُّ* agrees with it in case; as *جِئْتَنِي بِرَجُلٍ أَيِّ رَجُلٍ* *thou hast brought me a man, (and) what a man!* = *what a man thou hast brought me!* [(or *أَيِّ*) *مَرَرْتُ بِأَمْرَأَةٍ أَيَّةٍ (أَيِّ)* *I passed by a woman, (and) what a woman!*] But if the preceding noun be definite, *أَيُّ* is always put in the circumstantial accusative or *ḥāl*; as *جَاءَنِي زَيْدٌ أَيُّ رَجُلٍ* *Zèid came to me, (and) what a man (he is)!* The reason of this is, that the interrogative and exclamatory *أَيُّ*, being by its very nature indefinite, can never be in concord with a definite substantive. Instead of *أَيُّ* we also find *جَاءَنِي زَيْدٌ أَيُّمَا رَجُلٍ*, *جِئْتَنِي بِرَجُلٍ أَيُّمَا رَجُلٍ*; as *[أَيُّمَا] أَيُّمَا*; *هَذِهِ أُمَةٌ آلَهِ أَيُّمَا جَارِيَةٍ*, *مَرَرْتُ بِأَمْرَأَتَيْنِ أَيُّمَا أَمْرَأَتَيْنِ* *this is the handmaid of God, (and) what a girl is she!* *فَأَوْمَاتُ إِبِمَاءٍ خَفِيًّا*
- D

لِحَبْتَرٍ فَلِلَّهِ عَيْنَا حَبْتَرٍ أَيَّامًا فَتَى and I gave a slight wink to Habtar,¹ A and how keen (see § 53, b, rem. e) were the eyes of Habtar, the noble youth!—The substantive which constitutes the object of wonder may be understood, when it is virtually contained in the verb, and أَي must then be put in whatever case that substantive would have stood, had it been expressed; as اِنْتَكُوا أَيَّ نِكَايَةٍ how they have been tormented! i.e. اِنْتَكُوا نِكَايَةً أَيَّ نِكَايَةٍ.

[REM. b. From أَي is formed the relative adjective أَيَّ; see B Vol. i, § 353, rem. c.]

3. Relative Sentences.

172. There are in Arabic, as well as in the other Semitic languages, two kinds of relative sentences; namely (a) *indefinite*, i.e. such as are annexed to an immediately preceding indefinite substantive, without the aid of a conjunctive noun (Vol. i. § 346); and (b) *definite*, i.e. such as are introduced by a conjunctive noun, C whether substantive or adjective, which is definite by its very nature. A sentence of the former kind is called صِفَةٌ, a *descriptive* or *qualificative sentence*; of the latter kind, صِلَةٌ, a *conjunctive sentence*; and the conjunctive noun itself is called الْإِسْمُ الْمَوْصُولُ, or simply الْمَوْصُولُ. Examples of the *first* kind: مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ يَنَامُ I passed by a man, who was sleeping; إِنَّ أَوَّلَ بَيْتٍ وُضِعَ لِلنَّاسِ لَلَّذِي بِبَكَّةَ the D first temple, which was founded for mankind, was that at Bèkka (Mèkka); أَيْاتٌ مُّحْكَمَاتٌ هُنَّ أُمُّ الْكِتَابِ firmly constructed (i.e. unambiguous) verses, which form the basis (lit. are the mother) of the Scriptures; يَوْمٌ لَا يَنْفَعُ فِيهِ وَلَا خُلَّةٌ وَلَا شَفَاعَةٌ a day in which there shall be no bartering, nor friendship, nor intercession; دِمْنَةٌ لَمْ تَكَلِّمْ traces of an abode, which speak not (تَكَلَّمُ in rhyme for تَكَلَّمُ); نَقَلْنَا إِلَى مَجْلِسٍ آخَرَ قَدْ رُشَّ بِمَاءِ الْوَرْدِ we were removed to another

A room, which had been sprinkled with rose-water. Examples of the second kind : دُعَانِي آتَى *the king who is just* ; كَانَتْ لِأَبِي أَوْ كَالِدِي *my shop, which had belonged to my father* ; مَرَّ عَلَى قَرْيَةٍ *or (hast thou seen) the like of him who passed by a town?* الَّذِينَ يُنْفِقُونَ أَمْوَالَهُمْ *those who spend their wealth (in almsgiving)* ; وَمَنْ أَظْلَمُ مِمَّنْ مَنَعَ مَسَاجِدَ اللَّهِ مِنْ أَنْ يُذْكَرَ فِيهَا اسْمُهُ *and who*

B does a greater wrong than he who hinders the temples of God from having His name mentioned in them? فَمَنْ عُفِيَ لَهُ مِنْ أَخِيهِ شَيْءٌ *but he to whom anything is forgiven on his brother's part* ; عَرَفْنِي *he let me know all that he was leaving.*—Sometimes, however, a noun defined by the article is followed by a qualificative sentence, when that noun indicates, not a particular individual (animate or inanimate), but any individual bearing the name* ; as مَا يَنْبَغِي لِلرَّجُلِ يُشَبِّهَكَ *that which befits the man who is like thee* ;

C كَالْجَمْرِ *like the ass which carries books* ; كَمَا لِي فِي الرَّمَادِ *like the coal which is put among the ashes.* In such phrases as نِعْمَ الرَّأْيُ رَأَيْتَ *what an excellent counsel thou hast adopted!* the substantive الرَّأْيُ is the first nominative after the verb of praise, and the clause رَأَيْتَ the second nominative, standing for مَا رَأَيْتَ ; so that the expression is equivalent to نِعْمَ الرَّأْيُ رَأَيْتَ [comp. Vol. i. § 183].

D REM. a. The Arabs, like the other Semites, have no relative pronoun which they can employ when the antecedent to the relative clause is indefinite. Further, it should be observed that أَيُّ and الَّذِي are always definite, whether the latter be used substantively

* [The article is then employed تَعْرِيفِ الْجِنْسِ to indicate the genus (Vol. i. § 345, rem. a).]

or adjectively; whilst *مَنْ* and *مَا*, which can only be used substantively, are either definite or indefinite, as *مَنْ جَاءَ* *he who comes* or *one who comes*, *مَا لِي* *that which I have* or *something which I have*. When employed indefinitely, *مَنْ* and *مَا* are not regarded by the Arabs as conjunctive nouns, but as indeclinable substantives (equivalent in meaning to *شَخْصٌ*, a person, and *شَيْءٌ*, a thing), to which the words that we regard as the complement of the relative pronoun, are annexed as a qualificative clause, virtually in the same case. We even find, though very rarely, a single adjective so annexed to *مَنْ* or *مَا*, and actually agreeing with them in case [e.g. *مَرَرْتُ بِمَنْ مُخْسِنٍ* *I passed by a generous person*; *مَرَرْتُ بِمَا مُعْجِبٌ لَكَ* *I passed by something pleasing to you*]. When thus used, *مَنْ* and *مَا* are said to be *مَوْصُوفَةٌ*. [Comp. Vol. i. § 353, 1.]

REM. b. The pronoun in the qualificative clause, which falls back upon the antecedent (*الرَّاجِعُ* or *الْعَائِدُ* [§ 173]), ought, strictly speaking, to be of the third person, even when the subject of the qualified substantive is a pronoun of the first or second person. In practice, however, the one is usually brought into agreement with the other; as *إِنَّكُمْ قَوْمٌ تَجْهَلُونَ* *verily ye are a people who are foolish*; *إِنَّا لَقَوْمٌ مَا نَرَى أَلْقَتْلَ سَبَّةً* *verily we are people who count it no disgrace to be slain*; *إِنِّي أَمْرٌ تَجِدُ الرِّجَالُ عِدَاوَتِي* *verily I am a man whose hostility (brave) men find (to be terrible)*. Compare § 175, rem.

[REM. c. Among qualificative sentences may be reckoned also the qualificative clauses mentioned § 139, rem. b, (1).]

173. The qualificative sentence necessarily contains a pronoun (*الرَّاجِعُ* or *الْعَائِدُ*), referring to the qualified noun and connecting it with the qualificative sentence. This pronoun is either contained in the verb of the qualificative sentence, as its nominative, e.g. *رَجُلٌ جَاءَ* *a man who came*; or, in case of its being a nominal sentence, is expressed by a separate pronoun, e.g. *رَجُلٌ هُوَ صَدِيقِي* *a man who is*

- A *my friend*; or, lastly, appears as a suffix in the genitive or accusative, e.g. مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ أَبُوهُ نَائِمٌ *I passed by a man whose father was asleep*; زَوَّجْتُ ابْنِي بِامْرَأَةٍ كَانَ عَمْرُو يَحِبُّهَا *I married my son to a woman, with whom 'Amr was in love*; [ضَرْبَةً ضَرْبَهَا *a striking wherewith he was struck*]. The suffix is, however, not unfrequently suppressed, when the sense clearly indicates the connection between the qualified noun and the qualificative clause; as وَمَا أُدْرِي أَغْيَرَهُمْ تَنَاءً وَطُولُ الْعَبْدِ *and I do not know whether distance and length of time have changed them, or wealth which they have won* (for أَصَابُوهُ); ضَرَبْتُهُ ضَرْبَةً خَرَّ كَأَنَّمَيْتُ *I struck him a blow at which he fell like one dead* (for خَرَّ بِهَا); وَاتَّقُوا يَوْمًا لَا تَجْزِي نَفْسٌ عَنْ نَفْسٍ شَيْئًا *and fear a day, in which a soul shall not make satisfaction for (another) soul at all* (for تَجْزِي فِيهِ).
- C 174. The conjunctive noun الَّذِي may be used either substantively or adjectively. In the former case, it includes the idea of a person or thing, that is to say, it is equivalent to the substantive مَنْ and مَا, when they are definite (مَوْضُوعَةٌ), *he who, that which*. In the latter case, it agrees, like any other adjective, with its antecedent, which is always a definite substantive, in gender, number and case, and thus markedly differs from the relative pronouns of the Indo-german languages; as أَرِنَا الَّذِينَ أَضَلَّانَا مِنَ الْجِنَّ وَالْإِنْسِ *show us (those two) of the ginn and of mankind, who led us astray*, scil. أَرِنَا الشَّيْطَانَيْنِ الَّذِينَ أَضَلَّانَا *show us the two devils who led us astray*, viz. 'Iblis and Kābil or Cain; يَا مَنْ أَحْسَ بُنَيَّيَّ الَّذِينَ هُمَا سَمْعِي وَطَرْفِي *O thou who sawest my two little sons, who were my hearing and my sight,—my hearing has to-day been snatched away*; إِنَّ أَحَدَ الرَّجُلَيْنِ الَّذِينَ لَقُوا مِنَ الْأَنْصَارِ حِينَ ذَهَبُوا إِلَى السَّقِيفَةِ عُوَيْمُ بْنُ سَاعِدَةَ *one of the two men of the 'Anṣār (or*

Helpers of the Prophet) whom they met, when they went to the porch, A
 was 'Owèim 'ibn Sā'ida ; ثُمَّ أُصِيبَ جَرْجَةً وَتَمَّ يُصَلِّ صَلَاةَ سَجْدَةٍ فِيهَا ثُمَّ أُلْزِمَ أَنْ يَكُونَ مُسْلِمًا إِلَّا أَنْ رَضِعَتْهُنَّ اللَّتَيْنِ أَسْلَمَ عَلَيْهِمَا
 then Gèrèga was slain, without having
 prayed a (single) prayer in which he prostrated himself, save those two
 rèk'as by praying which he became a Muslim ; فَإِنَّا نَذْكُرُ الصَّوْتَيْنِ
 and we shall (now) quote the two songs
 (or airs), which we have received from Gāhza ; فِي زَمَنِ الْمَلِكَيْنِ
 in the time of the two kings, who have been B
 already spoken of ; ثُمَّ إِنَّ وَدَيْهِ الْمَلِكَيْنِ قَتَلَاهُ فِي بَنِي هَرَبَا إِلَى
 then his two sons, who had murdered him in Nineveh,
 fled to the mountains of Moṣul.

REM. Somewhat similar to this is the attraction or assimilation of the relative in Greek and in the older forms of German, as *du sint punt des allir bestin goldis*, *DES die vrouwen tragen woldin*.

175. As the case in which the conjunctive nouns stand, is C independent of the conjunctive clause, they cannot express the syntactical relations of our relative pronouns. If they stand (as always happens with مَنْ, مَا, and أَيْ, and frequently with الَّذِي) as substantives at the beginning of an independent sentence, they form its subject or inchoative (مُبْتَدَأُ), and are consequently in the nominative ; and the same thing occurs with الَّذِي, when it is annexed as an adjective to any such subject in the nominative. In every other instance, they stand, it is true, at the commencement of the conjunctive sentence, but are in whatever case the preceding governing D word requires, be it noun, verb, or particle ; that is to say, they are in that case which, according to our idiom, pertains to the demonstrative pronoun implied in them, or to the substantive antecedent to which they refer. The syntactical place of our relative pronoun is supplied by a pronoun in the conjunctive sentence, which falls back upon the conjunctive noun and agrees with it in gender and number.

- A This pronoun is called by the grammarians **إِلَى** (الرَّاجِعُ) **إِلَى** **الضَّمِيرِ** **الْعَائِدِ** (الرَّاجِعُ) **إِلَى** **الضَّمِيرِ** **الْعَائِدِ**, the pronoun which returns to, or falls back upon, the conjunctive noun, or simply **الْعَائِدِ** or **الرَّاجِعِ**.

(a) If this pronoun stand, as the subject, in the nominative case, it is represented, in a verbal sentence, by the personal pronoun implied in the verb; e.g. **أُحِبُّ مَنْ يَعْدِلُ** *I love him who is just*;

- B **إِنَّكَ** **مِنْهُمْ** **مَنْ يَسْتَمِعُونَ** **إِلَيْكَ** *among them are some who hearken to thee*;
تَكُنْ **مِثْلَ** **مَنْ** **يَا** **ذُنُوبُ** **يَضْطَحِبَانِ** *(if so,) we shall be like those, O wolf, who are comrades*;
أَخَافُ **مَنْ** **الَّذِي** **يَظْلِمُ** **النَّاسَ** *I am afraid of the king who oppresses the people.* But in a nominal sentence, it is expressed by a separate pronoun; e.g. **هُوَ** **بِرٌّ** *he who is pious*;
عُدْتُ **الشَّيْخَ** **الَّذِي** **هُوَ** **مَرِيضٌ** *of that which is error*;
عُدْتُ **الشَّيْخَ** **الَّذِي** **هُوَ** **مَرِيضٌ** *I have visited the old man who is sick.* In nominal sentences of which

- C the predicate is an adverb, or a preposition with its genitive, depending upon the idea of *being* understood, the virtually existing subject of the substantive verb suffices to connect the clauses, without any separate pronoun being expressed; as **مَرَرْتُ** **بِمَنْ** **كُنْتُ** *I passed by him who is there or those who are there*; **لَهُ** **مَنْ** **فِي** **السَّمَوَاتِ** **وَالْأَرْضِ** **وَمَنْ** **عِنْدَهُ** **لَا** *to Him belong those who are in heaven and upon earth, and they who dwell with Him are not too proud to serve Him*;
D **إِنَّ** **أَوَّلَ** **بَيْتٍ** **وُضِعَ** **لِلنَّاسِ** **لِلَّذِي** **بَبَكَّةَ** *verily the first temple which was founded for mankind is that which is at Bakkā (Makkā).* The **عَائِدِ** may also be omitted in a nominal sentence of more than the usual limited length, as **هُوَ** **الَّذِي** **فِي** **السَّمَاءِ** **إِلَهُ** **وَفِي** **الْأَرْضِ** **إِلَهُ** *He it is who is a God in heaven and a God upon earth*, **قَائِلُ** **أَنَا** **بِالَّذِي** **قَائِلُ** *I am not he who says anything to thee*; but this omission is rare in short nominal sentences, as **مَنْ** **يُعْنِ** **بِالْحَمْدِ** **لَا** **يَنْطِقُ** **بِمَا** **سَفَهُ** *he who cares for praise, does not speak what is foolish.*

(b) If the **عَائِد** be an objective complement in the accusative, A it is appended as a suffix to the verb; e.g. **رَأَيْتُهُ مَنْ** *he whom I have seen*; **عَرَفْتُ مَنْ عَرَفْتَهُ** *I know him whom thou knowest*; **السَّارِقُ الَّذِي** *the thief whom my son killed*. The suffix is, however, not unfrequently omitted; as **وَلَكُمْ فِيهَا مَا تَشْتَوْنَ أَنْفُسُكُمْ** *and yours (shall be) in it (the future life) what your souls desire* (for **تَشْتَهُ**); **الْكِتَابُ الَّذِي أَنْزَلَ اللَّهُ** *the book which God has sent down or revealed* (for B **أَنْزَلَهُ**); **عَسَى الْيَوْمَ أَنْ يَرْجِعَ قَوْمًا كَالَّذِي كَانُوا** *it may be that time will restore some people to their former state* (for **كَانُوهُ** or **كَانُوا عَلَيْهِ**).

(c) A pronominal suffix also supplies the place of our relative, when it stands in the genitive, dative, etc., or is governed by a preposition; as **الطَّبِيبُ الَّذِي ابْنُهُ عِنْدِي** *the physician whose son is at my house*; **مَا تَدْعُوهُمْ مَنْ لَهُ مَالٌ كَثِيرٌ** *he who has great possessions*; **إِلَيْهِ** C *that to which thou callest them*. If the governing word be an active participle of the form **فَاعِلٌ**, referring to present or future time, the genitive suffix may be omitted; as **مَا أَنتَ قَاضٍ** *doom then what doom thou wilt* (for **قَاضِيهِ**). If the suffix be governed by the same preposition as the preceding conjunctive noun, the suffix and its preposition may be omitted; as **أَنَا عِنْدَ مَنْ أَنتَ** *I am at the house of the same person as thou* (for **عِنْدَهُ**); **مَرَرْتُ بِالَّذِي مَرَّ سُلَيْمَانُ** D *I passed by the same person as Sulaimān did* (for **مَرَّ بِهِ**); **وَيَشْرَبُ مِمَّا** *and he drinks of what ye drink* (for **مِنْهُ**); **وَقَدْ كُنْتُ** *thou didst conceal thy love of Sēmra for a time, but now disclose what thou wilt of it* (for **لَانْ** by poetic license for **الآن**, **منها** *of her* = **حُبِّهَا** *of love of her*, and **بِأَنْح** for **بِهِ**). But this is not allowed when the preposition

A is used before the suffix in a different meaning from that which it has before the conjunctive noun, nor when the preceding verb is a different one; as *مَرَرْتُ بِأَلْدَى مَرَرْتُ بِهِ عَلَى زَيْدٍ* *I passed by him on whose account thou didst pass by Zèid* (where *بِ* in *بِأَلْدَى* is *بِلِلْصَاقِ*, whilst in *بِهِ* it is *بِلِلْسَبَبِ*, § 56, rem. d); *زَهَدْتُ فِي أَلْدَى رَغِبْتُ فِيهِ* *I have had no longing after that which thou desiredst* (not *فِي أَلْدَى رَغِبْتُ فِيهِ*).

B REM. a. The *عَائِدٌ* after *أَلْدَى* originally was, and, strictly speaking, ought to be, a pronoun of the third person, even when the preceding subject is a pronoun of the first or second person; as *نَحْنُ أَلْدَيْنَ أَصْبَحُوا إِصْبَاحًا* *it is we who arose early*. More usually, however, the *عَائِدٌ* is brought into agreement with the word to which it refers (compare § 172, rem. b); as *أَنَا أَلْدَى سَتْنِ أُمِّي حَيْدَرَةٌ* *I am he whom his (lit. my) mother named Haidara (Lion)**; *أَنَا أَلْدَى يَجِدُونِي فِي صُدُورِهِمْ* *I am he whom they find (a choking morsel) in their chests or throats* (*يَجِدُونِي* for *يَجِدُونَنِي*); *أَلَسْتُ أَلْعَبْدَ الْأَسْوَدَ أَلَّذِي كُنْتُ تُرَاعِيَنَا بِمَوْضِعٍ كَذَا* *art thou not the negro slave, who used to attend upon us in such and such a place?*

[REM. b. Ibn Mālik alone permits the phrase *ضَرَبْتُ فِيْمَنْ* *ضَرَبْتُ مَنْ رَغِبْتُ فِيهِ* *I beat him whom thou desiredst* (see Lane s. v. *فِي*), while some other authorities sanction the following likewise *يَوْمًا عَلَى مَنْ يَتَّكِلُ* *يَوْمًا*, *some day*, *he fails to find one on whom he may rely*, for *عَلَيْهِ مَنْ يَتَّكِلُ عَلَيْهِ* (see Lane s. v. *عَلَى*). D. G.]

REM. c. On the occasional use of *أَل* in the sense of *أَلَّذِي* see Vol. i. § 345, rem. b.

* *سَتْنِ* by poetic license for *سَتْنِي*, and *حَيْدَرَةٌ* in rhyme for *حَيْدَرَةٌ*. Another reading is *سَتْنِي أُمِّي*.

4. Copulative Sentences.

A

176. We have already spoken of the difference between the copulative particles **وَ** and **فَ** in Vol. i. § 366, *a, b*. To what has been there said, the following remarks may be added.

177. If to the subject implied in any form of the finite verb, another subject be appended, the former must be repeated in the shape of a separate personal pronoun; as **حَضَرْتُ أَنَا وَيَعْقُوبُ** *I and Ya'kūb (Jacob) were present*; **أَتَى هُوَ وَأَصْحَابُهُ** *he and his companions came*; **اَسْكُنْ أَنْتَ وَرَبُّكَ** *go therefore, thou and thy Lord*; **اَسْكُنْ أَنْتَ لَقَدْ كُنْتُمْ وَزَوْجُكَ الْجَنَّةَ** *do thou and thy wife dwell in the garden*; **اَتْتُمْ وَآبَاؤُكُمْ فِي ضَلَالٍ مُبِينٍ** *verily ye and your fathers have been in clear error*. Exceptions are very rare; as, in a verse, **قُلْتُ إِذْ أَقْبَلْتُ** *I said, when she and (other) fair (women) advanced with elegant gait* (**تَهَادَى** for **تَهَادَى**); **فَقَالَ وَالَّذِينَ مَعَهُ** *he and those who were with him said* ('Tab. i. 2449, l. 2). If, however, the verb has a C pronominal suffix in the accusative, the repetition of the implied subject in a separate form is unnecessary; as **أَكْرَمْتَكَ وَزَيْدٌ** *I and Zaid have shown thee honour*; **جَنَّاتٍ عَدْنٍ يَدْخُلُونَهَا وَمَنْ صَلَحَ** *gardens of everlasting rest, into which they shall enter and those who are righteous*.—This form of expression may be varied by repeating the verb after **وَ**, but even then the separate pronoun is still usually employed; as **حَضَرْتُ أَنَا وَحَضَرَ يَعْقُوبُ** *.

D

* [Sometimes there is hardly any difference between this construction and that with **وَالْمَعْجَةِ** (§ 37), e.g. 'Ibn Hisām, 318, l. 11 **وَكُنَّا وَأَصْحَابًا لَنَا فَارْقُوا الْهَدَى... كَفَوَجَيْنِ** *we and some of our comrades who left the right path became like two parties, where كُنَّا نَحْنُ* would convey the same meaning. R. S. We may add here that it is usual to say **وَزَيْدًا سِرْتُ** rather than **وَزَيْدٌ**, but **وَعَمْرًا سَارَ زَيْدٌ وَعَمْرُو**]

- A **178.** If a substantive be connected by **وَ** with the objective pronominal suffix of a verb, the suffix may be repeated in the form of a separate pronoun, but not necessarily; as **وَأَجْنِبْنِي وَبَنِيَّ أَنْ نَعْبُدَ** *and keep away from me and my sons our worshipping idols*; **أَجْلَاهُ وَقَوْمَهُ** *he made him and his people emigrate*. But if a pronoun is connected with a substantive or a pronominal suffix in the accusative, it must be suffixed either to the word **إِيَّاهَا** (Vol. i. § 188) or to the repeated verb; as **قَتَلَهُ وَإِيَّاهَا**, or **قَتَلَهُ وَقَتَلَهَا**, *he killed him and her*. If a substantive object is annexed to a pronominal object, the verb may be repeated or not; as **رَأَيْتُكَ وَزَيْدًا** *I saw thee and Zèid*; **قَتَلَهُ وَمَنْ كَانَ مَعَهُ مِنْ أَهْلِهِ** *he killed him and those of his family who were with him*, or **قَتَلَهُ هُوَ وَمَنْ الْخ**, or **قَتَلَهُ وَقَتَلَ مَنْ الْخ**.

- 179.** If to a pronominal suffix in the genitive there be joined a substantive in the same case, the governing word is usually repeated; as **كِتَابُكَ رَبُّكُمْ وَرَبُّ آبَائِكُمْ** *your and your fathers' Lord*. The form **كِتَابُكَ وَزَيْدٌ**, *thy book and Zèid's*, is of rarer occurrence, except with the suffixes of the third person, as **إِتِفَاقُهُ هُوَ وَأَخِيهِ** *his and his brother's agreement*. If a substantive be connected by **وَ** with the pronominal suffix of a preposition, the preposition must be repeated; as **لِي وَلِأَخِيهِ** *to me and his brother*. 'This rule is occasionally violated in poetry, scarcely ever in prose; as **فَقَدْ خَابَ مَنْ يَصْلَى بِهَا وَسَعِيرَهَا** *and balked is he who is scorched by it (war) and its flame*; **فَإِذْهَبْ فَمَا بِكَ وَالْأَيَّامِ** *be off then, for there is nothing strange in thee or the times*.

REM. If a genitive belongs alike to two or more nouns, it is, in classical Arabic, attached to the first of them, and represented after the others by a pronominal suffix; as **بَنُو الْمَلِكِ وَبَنَاتُهُ** *the king's sons and daughters*. On an exception see § 78, rem. b; it is common in later prose writers, as **مُوسَى يَذْكُرُ أَوْلَادَ وَأَحْفَادَ آدَمَ**

Moses mentions (by name) the sons and grandsons of Adam, for A
 أَطْيَبُ وَأَحْلَى نَوْمَةٍ; أَوْلَادَ آدَمَ وَأَحْفَادَهُ a most pleasant and sweet
 slumber, for أَطْيَبُ نَوْمَةٍ وَأَحْلَاهَا.

180. The negative particle لَا, when it follows وَ, connecting two nouns, supplies the place of a preceding negative sentence (see § 160); as لَا يَبْقَى أَبِي وَلَا أُمِّي neither my father nor my mother remains alive, where وَلَا is equivalent to لَمْ تَعْلَمُوا أَنْتُمْ وَلَا آبَاؤُكُمْ; وَلَمْ يَبْقَ if God B
 of God had pleased, we would not have given Him companions, nor our fathers. If the two nouns be both separate words, لَا is sometimes prefixed to the first also, notwithstanding the negative which precedes the whole sentence; as مَا وَقَعَ بَيْنَنَا لَا قِتَالٌ وَلَا كَلَامٌ there has been neither combat nor dispute between us.—Similarly, if two verbs are dependent upon another verb, which is preceded by a negative particle, the second of the dependent verbs usually takes the negative لَا with the conjunction وَ; as مَا أُمَكِّنِي أَنْ أَعْمَلَ شَيْئًا وَلَا أَقْطَعَ أَمْرًا it was C
 impossible for me to do anything or to conclude anything, where وَلَا is equivalent to وَمَا أُمَكِّنِي أَنْ.

181. When two verbs, connected by وَ and referring to the same subject, precede that subject, one of them (in general the second) agrees with it in gender and number, whilst the other is put in the singular masculine; as بَغَى وَأَعْتَدَا عَبْدَاكَ, or بَغَى وَأَعْتَدَى عَبْدَاكَ, thy two servants acted insolently and with violence; يُحْسِنُ D
 or يُحْسِنَانِ وَيُسَيِّئُ أَبْنَاكَ, thy two sons do good and evil. This involved form of expression occurs, however, but rarely in classical Arabic, in which we usually find بَغَى عَبْدَاكَ وَأَعْتَدَاكَ. يُحْسِنُ أَبْنَاكَ وَيُسَيِّئُ. It is called by the grammarians التَّنَازُعُ فِي الْعَمَلِ, the conflict in regard to government. Some further illustrations of it are given in the remarks.

- A REM. a. Sometimes a noun belongs to two verbs as the subject of the one and the objective complement of the other. (1) When this is the case, if the verb to which it is the complement be placed first, the noun is expressed only as the subject of the second verb, and the first verb is left without any complement; as ضَرَبْتُ زَيْدًا وَضَرَبَنِي *I struck (Zèid) and Zèid struck me*. Some Arab grammarians, however, allow the first verb a pronominal complement; as إِذَا كُنْتَ تُرْضِيهِ وَيَرْضِيكَ صَاحِبٌ ضَرَبْتَهُ وَضَرَبَنِي زَيْدًا *when thou satisfiest a friend and he satisfies thee*. (2) If the verb, of which the noun is the subject, be placed first, the second verb takes a pronominal complement, and the first verb agrees with the noun according to the rules laid down in § 141, etc.; as ضَرَبْنِي وَضَرَبْتُهُمَا الرَّجُلَانِ ضَرَبَنِي وَضَرَبْتَهُ زَيْدًا *the two men struck me and I struck them*. The omission of the pronominal complement is rare; as ضَرَبَنِي وَضَرَبْتُ الرَّجُلَانِ ضَرَبَنِي وَضَرَبْتُ زَيْدًا [نَاسِنِي] بَعَكَاطُ يُعْشَى *the apes were akin to me and I to them*];
- C إِذَا هُمْ لَمَحُوا شِعَاعَهُ (السَّلَاحُ) at 'Okāz the sheen, or gleam, (of weapons, dazzles the eyes of the beholders when they look at it. The noun may also be made the complement of the second verb, and the first verb, which has now no subject expressed, must agree with the noun in gender and number; as ضَرَبْنِي وَضَرَبْتُ زَيْدًا *(Zèid) struck me and I struck Zèid*, ضَرَبَانِي وَضَرَبْتُ الرَّجُلَيْنِ *the two (men) struck me, and I struck the two men*; ضَرَبُونِي وَضَرَبْتُ *they (the evildoers) struck me, and I struck the evildoers*. All these involved forms of expression occur but seldom in classical Arabic, the usual and regular constructions being ضَرَبْتُ زَيْدًا ضَرَبَنِي الرَّجُلَانِ وَضَرَبْتُهُمَا, ضَرَبْتُ الرَّجُلَيْنِ وَضَرَبُونِي وَضَرَبْتُ الظَّالِمِينَ وَضَرَبْتَهُمَا
- D

REM. b. In the case of a verb which must be connected with both a subject and a predicate (such as كَانَ or صَارَ), if the predicate be common to two propositions, it is expressed only once,

being either entirely omitted the second time or having its place A supplied by **إِيَّاهُ** and a pronominal suffix. For example, we may¹ translate *I was sick and Zeid was sick* by **كُنْتُ وَكَانَ زَيْدٌ مَرِيضًا**, or **كُنْتُ إِيَّاهُ وَكَانَ زَيْدٌ مَرِيضًا**, or lastly **كُنْتُ مَرِيضًا وَكَانَ زَيْدٌ مَرِيضًا**, the first of the three forms being preferable. These involved forms of expression likewise occur but rarely in classical Arabic, the ordinary construction being **كُنْتُ مَرِيضًا وَكَانَ زَيْدٌ مَرِيضًا**, or **رَمَانِي بِأَمْرِ كُنْتُ وَكَانَ زَيْدٌ إِيَّاهُ**. [An example from poetry is **رَمَانِي بِأَمْرِ كُنْتُ وَكَانَ زَيْدٌ إِيَّاهُ** B *he accused me of a thing of which I and my father were innocent* (*Šawāhid el-Kaššaf* 311). D. G.]

REM. c. Almost the same thing takes place after the verbs **ظَنَنْتُ** to think, believe, **حَسِبْتُ** to think, reckon, suppose, etc., which take for their objective complement a clause consisting of a subject and a predicate (§ 24), as **ظَنَنْتُ زَيْدًا عَالِمًا** *I thought Zeid learned*. The predicate of the clause, which serves as complement to the C **فِعْلُ الْقَلْبِ**, may belong to two different propositions, and consequently refer to two different subjects; whilst the noun, which is the subject of the **فِعْلُ الْقَلْبِ** in the one proposition, may in the other be the subject of the clause which is dependent upon the **فِعْلُ الْقَلْبِ**. When this is the case, we may, in accordance with rem. b, translate such a phrase as *Zeid thought me learned and I thought him learned* by **ظَنَنْتُ وَظَنَنْتُ زَيْدًا عَالِمًا**, or **ظَنَنْتُ إِيَّاهُ وَظَنَنْتُ** D **ظَنَنْتُ زَيْدًا عَالِمًا**, or lastly **ظَنَنْتُ زَيْدًا عَالِمًا وَظَنَنْتُ إِيَّاهُ**. The first of these modes of expression is the most common, but all three are rare, the natural and usual construction being **ظَنَنْتُ زَيْدًا عَالِمًا وَظَنَنْتُهُ إِيَّاهُ**. If the subjects differ in gender or number, the predicate must be repeated; as **أَظُنُّ وَيَظُنَّانِي أَخَا زَيْدًا وَعَمْرًا أَخَوَيْنِ** *I think Zeid and Amr two brothers (of mine), and they think me a brother (of theirs)*.

- A **182.** The Arabs, as well as the other Semites, often connect single verbs and entire sentences with one another merely by means of the particles **وَ** and **فَ**, where we should employ particles of a more definite meaning to indicate the precise relation between them. They use **وَ**, for example, where we would prefer a disjunctive or adversative particle; as **اللَّهُ يَعْلَمُ وَأَنْتُمْ لَا تَعْلَمُونَ** *God knows, but ye do not know*. In such cases, however, **وَ** has in reality only a copulative force; the adversative relation lies in the nature of the
- B two clauses themselves.—The Arabs also use **وَ** and **فَ** with a separate verb in some cases in which we avail ourselves of a subordinate modifying expression; e.g. **سَجَدَ فَأُطَالَ** *he prostrated himself and made long (his prostration)*, equivalent to *he prostrated himself for a long time*, instead of **أُطَالَ السُّجُودَ**, as we may also say (see § 140).

- 183.** The particle **وَ** in Arabic, like its equivalents in the other Semitic languages, often serves to connect two clauses, the
- C second of which describes the state or condition either of the subject or one of the complements of the first clause, or else of a new subject. This takes place in such a way that—

- (a) The clause descriptive of the state is nominal; as **قَامَ زَيْدٌ وَهُوَ زَيْدٌ** *Zaid rose up weeping*; **عَادَ إِلَيَّ وَهُوَ مَضْجُوعٌ** *he returned to me beaten*; **جَاءَتْ مِنْ عِنْدِهِ وَهِيَ مُخَرَّقَةُ الثِّيَابِ بِأَكْبَةٍ** *she came from his house with her clothes in tatters, crying*; **انْقَرَضَ فِي وَقْتِهِ قَرْنَانِ مِنْ أَطْلَالِ السُّجُودِ وَهُوَ حَيٌّ** *two generations of men passed away in his time, whilst he still lived*; **كَالَّذِي مَرَّ عَلَى قَرْيَةٍ وَهِيَ خَاوِيَةٌ عَلَى عُرُوشِهَا** *like him who passed by a town, falling down upon its roofs (in ruins, its walls falling in upon its fallen roofs)*; **كَذَبْتُمْ وَأَنْتُمْ تَعْلَمُونَ** *ye lied, knowing (that ye did so), ye lied wittingly*, in which example the nominal circumstantial clause has a finite verb for its predicate;
- D **ذَهَبَ زَيْدٌ وَعَمَرُو بَاقٍ** *Zaid went away, whilst Amr remained*; **وَقَدْ أَغْتَدَى وَالطَّيْرُ فِي وَكُنَاتِهَا** *and sometimes I go forth early, whilst*

the birds are (still) in their nests, where the circumstantial clause has a distinct subject; *ذَهَبَ زَيْدٌ وَعَمْرُو يَشْتَغِلُ* *Zèid went away, whilst Amr was busy*, where the circumstantial clause has a distinct subject and a finite verb for its predicate.

REM. We sometimes find a nominal clause merely appended to the preceding proposition, without *وَ*, as *إِهْبِطُوا بَعْضُكُمْ لِبَعْضٍ عَدُوٌّ* *get ye down, the one of you an enemy to the other*; *جَاءَ زَيْدٌ يَدُهُ* *Zèid came with his hand on his head*; *لَقِيتُهُ عَلَيْهِ جُبَّةٌ وَشِي* *I met him wearing an embroidered coat*; *رَأَوْا عَبَقَ الْلِسْكِ بِهِمْ* *they returned, (whilst) the perfume of musk clung to them*; and even without a pronoun, as *مَرَرْتُ بِأَثْبَرٍ قَفِيزٍ بَدْرَهَمٍ* *I passed by the wheat, (whilst) a bushel (of it was selling) for a dirham (for قَفِيزٌ مِنْهُ* [§ 120, rem. a]).

(b) The clause descriptive of the state is verbal and affirmative, the verb being in the Imperfect Indicative, preceded by *وَقَدْ*; as *لِمَ تُوذُونَنِي وَقَدْ تَعْلَمُونَ أَنِّي رَسُولُ اللَّهِ إِلَيْكُمْ* *why do ye harm me, knowing (as ye do) that I am the apostle of God unto you?* If the particle *قَدْ* be not employed, *وَ* must also be dropped, so that the circumstantial Imperfect is outwardly unconnected with the previous proposition; as *جَاءَ زَيْدٌ يَضْحَكُ* *Zèid came laughing*; *جَاءَ الْأَمِيرُ تَقَادُ الْجَنَائِبُ بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ* *the emir came with led horses preceding him* (a very common construction, see § 8, e).

(c) The clause descriptive of the state is verbal and negative, the verb being in the Imperfect Jussive, preceded by *وَلَمْ*, or the Imperfect Indicative, preceded by *وَمَا*; as *أَوْ قَالَ أَوْحَى إِلَيَّ وَلَمْ يُوحَ وَمَا يَخْدَعُونَ إِلَّا أَنْفُسَهُمْ وَمَا يَشْعُرُونَ* *or has said, 'Something has been revealed to me,' whilst nothing has been revealed to him; but they deceive only themselves, without knowing it.* In this case *وَ* is often dropped; as *فَأَنْقَلَبُوا بِنِعْمَةٍ مِنَ اللَّهِ وَفَضْلٍ لَمْ يَمْسَسْهُمْ سُوءٌ*

- A *and so they returned, (laden) with favours and benefits from God, without any harm having touched them.* Where the negation is expressed by **لَا**, the particle **وَ** is rarely used; as **لَوْ أَنَّ قَوْمًا لَا يَرْتَفَعُونَ** if any persons entered heaven because of distinction of tribe, I would enter it without being hindered.

- (d) The clause descriptive of the state is verbal and affirmative, the verb being in the Perfect, preceded by **وَقَدْ**; as **هَذَا غَنَاوَهَا وَقَدْ** وَمَا لَنَا إِلَّا نُقَاتِلَ *such is her singing, now that she has grown old*; **وَمَا لَنَا إِلَّا نُقَاتِلَ فِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ وَقَدْ أَخْرَجَنَا مِنْ دِيَارِنَا وَأَهْلَانَا** *and why should we not fight in the path of God, since we have been driven out of our dwellings and (parted from) our children?* Sometimes **وَقَدْ** is omitted, and, less rarely, either **وَ** or **قَدْ** alone; as **أَوْ جَاءُوكُمْ حَصِرَتْ صُدُورُهُمْ أَنْ** **أَوْ جَاءُوكُمْ** *or they come unto you, their hearts being reluctant to fight against you*; **الَّذِينَ قَالُوا لِإِخْوَانِهِمْ وَقَعَدُوا لَوْ أَطَاعُونَا مَا قُتِلُوا** *who, having remained (at home), said of their brethren (who went out to battle), 'If they had taken our advice, they would not have been killed'*; **مَا كَانَ يَنْفَعُنِي مَقَالَ نِسَائِهِمْ وَقَتِلْتُ ذُنَّ رِجَالِهَا لَا تَبْعِدْ** *what can it boot me that their women say, 'O do not perish!'* when I have been slain fighting for their husbands? **وَمَا كَانَ قَدْ تَغَيَّرَ لِزَيْدٍ وَكَانَ** *we saw him enraged against Zèid, who was in command of his army.*

- D (e) The clause descriptive of the state is verbal and negative, the verb being in the Perfect, preceded by **وَمَا**, or more rarely by **مَا** alone; as **جَاءَ زَيْدٌ وَمَا رَكِبَ** *Zèid came without having ridden*; **جَاءَ زَيْدٌ وَمَا قَامَ أَبُوهُ** *or مَا قَامَ أَبُوهُ, Zèid came without his father having stood up.*

REM. The **وَ** which introduces such a circumstantial clause, is called by the Arab grammarians **وَإِوَاءُ الْحَالِ**, *the wave of the state*,

condition or circumstance, and *وَإِذَا*, the *wāw* of commencement. A
ment. The clause itself is called *جُمْلَةٌ حَالِيَّةٌ*.

5. Adversative, Restrictive, and Exceptive Sentences.

184. The principal adversative particles in Arabic are *لَكِنْ*, *لَا*, or *بَلْ*, and *لَكِنَّ*.

(a) *لَا* is opposed to a preceding affirmative proposition or a command; as *زَيْدٌ عَلِيمٌ لَا جَاهِلٌ* *Zèid is learned, not ignorant*; B
خُذْ زَيْدًا لَا عَمْرًا *Zèid came to me, not 'Amr*; *خُذْ زَيْدًا لَا عَمْرًا*
take Zèid, not 'Amr. [In comparisons *وَلَا* has the meaning of *but not*,
as *فَتَى وَلَا كَمَالِكٍ* *a man but not the like of Mālik ('ibn Nuwèira)*;
وَلَا كَالسَّغْدَانِ *water—but not so good as that*
of the well of Šoddā, pasture—but not like the sa'dān. In later times
وَلَا was very often used in the sense of *even more than*, as *غَدَوْتُ وَلَا*
وَلَقَدْ قُمْتُ *I rose early, even earlier than the crow does*; C
وَلِلَّهِ وَلَا عَمْرُو بْنُ عَبِيدٍ *and verily thou hast defended the cause of God*
better than even 'Amr 'ibn 'Obèid; *فَخَرَسُوا وَلَا خَرَسَ سُكَّانُ الْمَقَابِرِ*
they were silent, even more than the inhabitants of the sepulchres.
In reality, neither *لَا* nor *وَلَا* have an adversative force; the adver-
sative relation lies in the nature of the two clauses themselves, as has
been remarked in the case of *وَ* § 182. D. G.] D

(b) *لَكِنْ* or *لَكِنَّ* (also, especially in Magribī mss., *لَا كِنَّ*),
which is often preceded by *وَ*, is more particularly opposed to a
preceding negative proposition or a prohibition; as *جَاءَنِي زَيْدٌ لَكِنَّ*
لَا تَصْرِبْ *Zèid came to me, but 'Amr did not come*; *وَمَا ظَلَمُونَا وَلَكِنْ كَانُوا*
زَيْدًا لَكِنَّ عَمْرًا *do not beat Zèid, but 'Amr*;

- A *أَنْفُسَهُمْ يَظْلِمُونَ* and they did not injure us, but they injured themselves; *وَلَا صَلَّى وَلَكِنْ كَذَّبَ وَتَوَلَّى* for he neither believed nor prayed, but deemed (the truth) a lie and turned away; *يَلُومُونَنِي فِي* my reproachers blame me for loving *لَدِيلَةٍ*, but I am deeply smitten with love for her (*عَمِيدٌ* in rhyme for *عَمِيدٌ*); *إِنَّ أَهْنَ زَرْقَاءَ لَا تُخْشَى بَوَادِرُهُ لَكِنْ وَقَائِعُهُ فِي* ;
- B *لَكِنْ* no errors of sudden passion are feared in 'Ibn Zarkā, but his onslaughts in battle are looked for (with dread). When introducing a nominal clause, *لَكِنْ* requires the subject to be put in the accusative (see § 36), whereas *لَكِنْ* leaves it in the nominative; as *وَمَا كَفَرَ سُلَيْمَانُ وَلَكِنَّ الشَّيَاطِينَ كَفَرُوا* and Solomon was not unbelieving, but the devils were unbelieving; *لَكِنَّ الظَّالِمُونَ آَلْيَوْمَ فِي*
- C *بَل* but the evildoers are to-day in manifest error.

REM. *لَكِنْ* and *لَكِنْ* are said to be used *لِلْإِسْتِذْرَاكِ* to rectify or emend (the previous statement).

- (c) *بَل* is opposed either to a preceding affirmative or negative proposition, a command or a prohibition; as *قَامَ زَيْدٌ بَلْ عَمْرُو* Zèid stood up—not so, it was 'Amr; *مَا قَامَ زَيْدٌ بَلْ عَمْرُو* Zèid did not stand up, but 'Amr (stood up); *إِضْرِبْ زَيْدًا بَلْ عَمْرًا* beat Zèid—no, 'Amr; *لَا تَضْرِبْ زَيْدًا بَلْ عَمْرًا* do not beat Zèid, but (beat) 'Amr; *مَا نَرَى لَكُمْ عَلَيْنَا مِنْ فَضْلٍ بَلْ نَظُنُّكُمْ كَاذِبِينَ* we do not see that ye are in any way superior to us—nay, we think you liars; *قَالُوا قُلُوبُنَا غُلْفٌ بَلْ لَعَنَهُمُ اللَّهُ بِكُفْرِهِمْ* they say, 'Our hearts are uncircumcised'—not so! God hath cursed them for their unbelief; *خَلَعُوا عَنْهُ خِلْعَتَهُ* they stripped him of his dress, nay, also of the garment of life; *أَأَنْتَ رَجُلٌ أَمْ أَمْرَاءُ فَقَالَتْ بَلْ أَمْرَاءُ يَا مَوْلَايَ* art

thou a man or a woman? And she said, A woman (lit., not a man, A but a woman) O my master. Sometimes it is strengthened by the addition of لَا; as وَمَا هَجَرْتُكَ لَا بَلْ زَادَنِي شُغْفًا هَجْرًا وَبُعْدًا and I have not abandoned thee; no, on the contrary, separation and distance have increased my love. [In the answer to a disjunctive question لَا بَلْ and أَفِي زَمَانِي أَمْ بَعْدَهُ قَالَ لَا as أَفِي زَمَانِي أَمْ بَعْدَهُ بَلْ whether in my time or afterwards? He said: Nay, but afterwards ('Ibn Hišām 10, lines 5 and 3 from below, 11, l. 1, 'Tab. i. 912, ll. 3, 4, 9). R. S.] B

REM. After a negative proposition or a prohibition, بَلْ is said to be used لِلْإِسْتِدْرَاكِ (see above, b, rem.); after an affirmative proposition or a command, لِلْإِضْرَابِ to denote turning away, or digressing, from what preceded (عَنِ الْأَوَّلِ).

185. The particle إِنَّمَا is one of the most important in the language as a حَرْفُ حَصْرِ, particle of limitation or restriction. It stands at the beginning* of a proposition, and the word or portion of the proposition which is affected by it, is always placed, for emphasis' sake, at the end (compare § 36, rem. b, d); as إِنَّمَا نَحْنُ مُسْتَهْزِئُونَ we are only mocking (at them); إِنَّمَا الصَّدَقَاتُ لِلْفُقَرَاءِ the obligatory alms are only for the poor; إِنَّمَا تَلِدِينَ فِي كُلِّ عُمْرِكَ وَاحِدًا أَوْ اثْنَيْنِ thou givest birth in thy whole life to only one or two; إِنَّمَا أَخْشَى سَيْلَ إِنَّمَا الرِّبَا فِي تَلْعَتِي I fear the overflow only of my own streamlet; [إِنَّمَا الرِّبَا فِي تَلْعَتِي verily, usury is in the delay of payment]. D

186. (a) The most important of the exceptive particles is إِلَّا, compounded of إِنْ, if, and لَا, not (see Vol. i. § 367, e). The exception (الِإِسْتِثْنَاءُ) is considered to be of three kinds: الِإِسْتِثْنَاءُ الْمُتَمِّصُ, in

* [But not always; comp. Fleischer, *Kl. Schr.* i. 508.]

A which the thing excepted (الْمُسْتَثْنَى) is *joined to*, or of the same kind as, the general term (الْمُسْتَثْنَى مِنْهُ) *that from which the exception is made*; اِلَّا سِتْنَاءَ الْمَنْقَطِعِ, in which the exception is *severed from*, or wholly different in kind from, the general term; and اِلَّا سِتْنَاءَ الْمَفْرَغِ, or *the exception made void (of government)**, in which the general term is not expressed. The rules for the construction of the exception are as follows.

(a) When the thing excepted is placed after the general term, and B the proposition containing that term is affirmative, the exception is put in the accusative; as قَامَ الْقَوْمُ اِلَّا زَيْدًا *the people stood up, except Zèid*; مَرَرْتُ بِالْقَوْمِ اِلَّا زَيْدًا *I passed by the people, except Zèid*; فَشَرِبُوا مِنْهُ اِلَّا قَلِيلًا مِنْهُمْ *and they drank of it, save a few of them*.

(β) When the thing excepted is placed after the general term, and the proposition containing that term is negative, or interrogative implying a negation (اِسْتِفْهَامٌ اِنْكَارِيٌّ or اِسْتِفْهَامٌ بِمَعْنَى النِّقْيِ) †, the C exception may be put either in the accusative, or in the same case with the general term (as a بَدَلٌ or *permutative*, or more specifically as a بَدَلٌ بَعْضٍ مِنْ الْمُسْتَثْنَى مِنْهُ § 139, rem. b, 2, b), but the latter construction is preferred; as مَا جَاءَنِي أَحَدٌ اِلَّا زَيْدٌ (or اِلَّا زَيْدًا), لَا يَقُمْ أَحَدٌ اِلَّا زَيْدٌ, (or اِلَّا زَيْدًا), مَا مَرَرْتُ بِأَحَدٍ اِلَّا زَيْدٌ, هَلْ مَرَرْتُ بِأَحَدٍ اِلَّا زَيْدٍ, (or اِلَّا زَيْدًا), مَا فَعَلُوهُ اِلَّا قَلِيلٌ مِنْهُمْ? (or اِلَّا زَيْدًا) D *any one but Zèid*; وَمَنْ يَغْفِرُ الذُّنُوبَ اِلَّا اللَّهُ *and who forgives sins save God*? [لَا إِلَهَ اِلَّا اللَّهُ] *there is no deity other than God*. Sometimes the place of الْمُسْتَثْنَى مِنْهُ is occupied by a preposition and

* [Comp. Fleischer, *Kl. Schr.* ii. 96.]

† [Also in sentences like اِلَّا اللَّهُ لَفَسَدَتَا § 4, a, the proposition implying a negation. D. G.]

A *مَا بِي إِلَّا ضِعْفُ مَا بِي كَلَامُهَا* but conversing with her only doubled my pain (lit. what was in me); but *فَانْتَهَرُ بِرُجُونٍ مِنْهُ شَفَاعَةً إِذَا لَمْ يَكُنْ إِلَّا النَّبِيُّونَ شَافِعُ* and they expect from him (Muhammad) intercession, when there is no intercessor save the prophets; *مَا بِي إِلَّا النَّبِيُّونَ* and *أَخُوكَ نَاصِرٌ أَخَاكَ* I have no helper but thy brother; instead of *النَّبِيِّينَ* and *أَخَاكَ*.

- B REM. a. If several exceptions are specified, the following rules are observed. (1) If the general term, from which the exception is made, is not expressed, the regent (verb) affects one, usually the first, of the exceptions, and the others are put in the accusative; as *مَا مَرَرْتُ إِلَّا بِزَيْدٍ إِلَّا عَمْرًا إِلَّا بَكْرًا*, مَا قَامَ إِلَّا زَيْدٌ إِلَّا عَمْرًا (2) If the general term is expressed, and the exceptions precede it, they are all put in the accusative, whether the proposition containing the general term be positive or negative; as *قَامَ إِلَّا زَيْدًا إِلَّا عَمْرًا* قَامَ إِلَّا زَيْدًا إِلَّا عَمْرًا. If the exceptions follow the general term, and the proposition containing that term is affirmative, the exceptions are likewise all in the accusative, as *قَامَ الْقَوْمُ إِلَّا زَيْدًا إِلَّا عَمْرًا*; but if the proposition be negative, one of them (usually the first) is construed in the ordinary way as a permutative of *الْمُسْتَثْنَى مِنْهُ*, and the others are put in the accusative, as *مَا قَامَ أَحَدٌ إِلَّا زَيْدٌ إِلَّا عَمْرًا إِلَّا بَكْرًا* (but *إِلَّا زَيْدًا* in the accusative is rare). (3) If the exceptions be different in kind from the general term, the ordinary rule is followed for all; *مَا قَامَ أَحَدٌ إِلَّا حِمَارًا إِلَّا فَرَسًا إِلَّا جَمَلًا* in the accusative is preferable to the permutative in the nominative.
- C
- D

REM. b. If the repetition of *إِلَّا* be merely emphatic (لِلتَّوَكُّيدِ), it exercises no influence upon the word following it, which may be connected with the preceding exception, either as a permutative or by the conjunction *و*; e.g. *مَا مَرَرْتُ بِأَحَدٍ إِلَّا زَيْدٌ إِلَّا أَخِيكَ* I passed by no one but Zaid—but thy brother, meaning but Zaid thy brother, *قَامَ الْقَوْمُ إِلَّا زَيْدًا إِلَّا عَمْرًا*; *إِلَّا زَيْدٌ أَخِيكَ* the people stood up,

except Zèid and except 'Amr, only slightly more emphatic than A
 لَمْ يَلِدْ إِلَّا زَيْدًا وَلَا نَهَارًا إِلَّا *except Zèid and 'Amr ; إِلَّا*
 طُلُوعِ الشَّمْسِ ثُمَّ غِيَاظِهَا *is Time aught but night and its (following)*
day, and (aught but) the rising of the sun (and) then its setting?
 where the second إِلَّا is a نَفْوٌ or superfluous word, which does not
 count in the construction ; إِلَّا عَمَلَهُ إِلَّا رَسِيمُهُ
 مَا لَكَ مِنْ شَنْجِكَ إِلَّا *thou hast nothing from thy old camel but its toil, (nothing*
but) its jog and (nothing but) its trot, for رَمَلَهُ وَرَمَلَهُ B
 (شِنْجَكَ by license for شَنْجَكَ, but others read شَيْخَكَ).

REM. c. The exception after إِلَّا may also be expressed by a
 sentence, which may be introduced by وَ, وَقَدْ, أَنْ, etc. ; as مَا أَرْسَلْنَا
 فِي قَرْيَةٍ مِنْ نَبِيٍّ إِلَّا أَخَذْنَا أَهْلَهَا بِالْأَسَاءِ وَالضَّرَّاءِ We have never
 sent a prophet to any city without our afflicting its people with
 adversity and trouble ; مَا تَسْقُطُ مِنْ وَرَقَةٍ إِلَّا يَعْلَمُهَا no leaf falls
 but He knows it ; مَا رَأَيْتُ أَحَدًا إِلَّا زَيْدٌ خَيْرٌ مِنْهُ I have seen no C
 one than whom Zèid was not better ; فَلَا تَمُوتُنَّ إِلَّا وَأَنْتُمْ مُسْلِمُونَ
 do not die then unless ye be Muslims ; مَا فِي قَلْبِكَ شَيْءٌ إِلَّا وَفِي
 there is no emotion in thy heart but there is a stronger
 one in mine ; فَلَمْ أَلْبَثْ إِلَّا وَجَارِيَّتِي قَدْ أَقْبَلَتْ and I had not waited
 long but my girl came up ; وَقَدْ جَاءَتْ مِنْ عِنْدِهِ before I was aware (of it), she had come from his house ;
 فَمَا حَلَلْتُهَا and before I had unloosed it (my foot), the man D
 was gone ; هَلْ يَنْظُرُونَ إِلَّا أَنْ يَأْتِيَهُمُ اللَّهُ فِي ظُلَلٍ مِنَ الْغَمَامِ
 can they expect but that God should come to them overshadowed by
 clouds ? The phrase إِلَّا فَعَلْتَ (بِاللَّهِ) I beseech thee
 by God to do (it)*, is explained by مَا طَلَبْتُ مِنْكَ إِلَّا فِعْلَكَ I beg

* [Properly I remind thee of God, therefore نَسْتُذَكِّرُكَ اللَّهَ وَالرَّحْمَنَ
 I remind thee of God and the ties of relationship is often = I beseech

- A of thee nothing but thy doing (it), equivalent to **إِلَّا** أَقْسَمْتُ عَلَيْكَ **إِلَّا** (compare § 59, rem. a). [In this sense **إِلَّا** is often replaced by **لَمَّا**; see Vol. I § 367, l.]

REM. d. **إِلَّا** is sometimes strengthened by prefixing to it **اللَّهُمَّ** O God! as **اللَّهُمَّ إِلَّا أَنْ تَقْدَ نَارُ الْجُوعِ** unless indeed the fire of hunger be kindled. [Comp. the footnote to § 38, rem. d.]

- B REM. e. **إِلَّا** is very rarely used in poetry with pronominal suffixes; as **فَمَا لِيْ عَوْضُ إِلَّا نَاصِرُ** and I have never any helper but Him; **وَمَا عَلَيْنَا إِذَا مَا كُنْتَ جَارَتَنَا أَنْ لَا يَجَاوِرَنَا إِلَّا كِ دَبَّارُ** and it is nothing to us, when thou art our neighbour, that no one is near to us but thee.

- C REM. f. The exception is sometimes suppressed after **إِلَّا**, as in the phrase **لَيْسَ إِلَّا** (compare **لَيْسَ غَيْرُ** and **لَا غَيْرُ**, § 82, d); e.g. **فَأَمَّا مَا عَدَا وَمَا خَلَا فَلِلنَّصِبِ لَيْسَ إِلَّا** as regards mā 'adā and mā halā, they are used with the accusative, not otherwise; **وَالْفَاعِلُ وَاحِدٌ** the agent is one (in kind), no more.

[REM. g. **إِلَّا أَنْ** and **غَيْرُ أَنْ** are often used in the sense of *but*, even if the preceding proposition be affirmative.—On the phrase **مَا هُوَ إِلَّا أَنْ** viz, see the Gloss. to Ṭabari.]

- (b) **غَيْرُ** (see § 82, d) is often used in the sense of *besides, except, but*. It is construed with the genitive, and must itself be put in the same case as would be the thing excepted after **إِلَّا**; e.g. **قَامَ الْقَوْمُ** (**إِلَّا زَيْدٌ**), better than **قَامَ أَحَدٌ غَيْرَ زَيْدٍ** (**إِلَّا زَيْدًا**) = **غَيْرَ زَيْدٍ**

نَشْدُكَ وَالزِّيَادَةَ as *thee by God to think of the ties of relationship*, as *I beseech thee to give us the increase of pay* (Āgānī xiv. 120, l. 16 quoted by R. S.). The words **إِلَّا فَعَلْتُ** are properly an elliptical phrase (§ 6, rem. b), as **إِنْ فَعَلْتُ** not to do (it), e.g. **نَشْدُكَ اللَّهُ وَالْأَرْحَامَ إِنْ** *I beseech thee by God and the ties of relationship not to disgrace me.* D. G.]

أ مَا قَامَ أَحَدٌ غَيْرَ حِمَارٍ : (إِلَّا زَيْدٌ) = مَا قَامَ غَيْرُ زَيْدٍ ; (إِلَّا زَيْدًا) = غَيْرُ زَيْدٍ
 (= (إِلَّا حِمَارًا) = غَيْرُ حِمَارٍ), rather than

REM. a. *إِلَّا* is sometimes used as a *تَابِعٌ*, when we should rather have expected *غَيْرُ*, and is then followed by a substantive in the same case as that which precedes it; e.g. *لَوْ كَانَ فِيهِمَا آلِهَةٌ إِلَّا اللَّهُ لَفَسَدَتَا* if there had been in them (heaven and earth) gods besides God, they would certainly have gone to ruin; *أَنِيخَتْ فَأَلْقَتْ* B *بَلَدَةً فَوْقَ بَلَدَةٍ قَلِيلٍ بِهَا الْأَصْوَاتُ إِلَّا بُغَامَهَا* she was made lie down, and laid her breast upon a tract of ground in which there were (heard) few sounds except her own murmured cry; *وَكُلُّ أَخٍ مُفَارِقُهُ* and every brother is forsaken by his brother, by thy father's life, except the two (stars called the) *Pointers*. The noun which precedes *إِلَّا* is in this case usually an indefinite plural or its like (*شِبْهَةٌ*), such as a substantive defined by C the article used *لِلْجَنَسِ*.

REM. b. The construction of *سِوَى* (see § 82, e) in the sense of *besides, except*, is similar to that of *غَيْرُ*; as *قَامَ الْقَوْمُ سِوَى زَيْدٍ* and there was nothing left but violence (= *غَيْرُ الْعُدْوَانِ*).

(c) The verbal clauses *مَا خَلَا*, *what is free from*, and *مَا عَدَا*, *what goes beyond*, are often used in the sense of *except, but*, and D govern the accusative; as *فَأَنزَلُوهُمْ مَا خَلَا عَبَّاسًا* and they made them alight, except 'Abbās; *مَا خَلَا اللَّهَ بَاطِلٌ* verily everything, except God, is vanity (in rhyme for *بَاطِلٌ*); *جَمِيعُ مَا ذُكِرَ فِي خَبَرٍ* (=*بَاطِلٌ*) all that has been said regarding the *habar* of the *mubtada'*, as to its kinds and states and conditions, holds regarding it (the *habar* of 'inna),

- A *except the allowability of placing it first*; مَا عَدَا *except the habīs.*—
 When مَا is dropped, as is frequently the case, خَلَا and عَدَا may be construed with the accusative or the genitive, though the latter is disputed in regard to عَدَا; as وَمَذْهَبُ الْكُوفِيِّينَ خَلَا الْفِرَاءِ أَنَّهَا تَعْمَلُ and the opinion of the Kūfis, *except el-Farrā*, is that it governs in the same way as *Idisa*; وَمَا حَوْلَ خُمْسَةِ آلَافٍ مِنَ الْمُسْلِمِينَ and about 5000 Muslims and
 B خَلَا آلَهُ لَا *Metāwila and Jews, besides the women and children*; لَا بَسْتُ الْمَلَائِكَةِ *saving God, I have no hope but in thee*; الْأَخَاخِرَةَ خَلَا الْأَسْوَادِ *I have worn all sorts of splendid garments, except black*; أَبْحَنَّا حَيْبَهُمْ قَتْلًا وَأَسْرًا عَدَا الشُّمَطَاءِ وَالطِّفْلِ الصَّغِيرِ *we gave up their tribe to slaughter and bondage, except the grey-haired woman and the little child.*—These words may of course, like إِلَّا, غَيْرَ, and سِوَى, be followed by a clause commencing with أَنْ or أَنَّ; as خَلَا أَنْ إِنْ *except that (the conditional)* 'in turns the verb into a future, though it be (in form) a past'; خَلَا أَنَّهُ لَا يَحْسُنُ إِبْدَالُ النَّكْرَةِ مِنَ الْمَعْرِفَةِ إِلَّا مَوْصُوفَةً *except that it is not elegant to make an indefinite substantive the permutative of a definite one, unless an adjective be annexed to it.* This is also the ordinary construction of بَمَدٍّ (rarely مِمَدٍّ), used in an
 D زَيْدٌ كَثِيرُ الْمَالِ بَيْدٌ أَنَّهُ بَخِيلٌ *Zèid is wealthy, but he is stingy*; أَنَا أَفْصَحُ مَنْ نَطَقَ بِالضَّادِ بَيْدٌ أَنِّي مِنْ قُرَيْشٍ *I have the purest pronunciation of the letter dād, but I am of Korèis, and I was put out to nurse among the Bènū Sa'd 'ibn Bèkr (words of the Prophet).*

(d) حَاشَى (lit. *he excepted**) or حَاشَا, rarely حَاشَ and حَشَى, is

* [That حَاشَى is originally a nomen verbale, and not a verb, as

construed with the genitive [or with *لِ*] or the accusative; as *أَحْسَنْتُ* A
إِلَى الْأَكَابِرِ وَالْأَصَاغِرِ حَاشَى أَتْبَرَامَكْ *I have benefited the high and the*
low, except the family of Barmèk; *حَاشَا أَبِي ثَوْبَانَ إِنَّ بِهِ ضَنًّا عَنِ*
أَلْمَلْحَةِ وَالشُّتْرِ *except Abū Taubān,—verily he is sparing of abuse*
and foul words; *حَاشَى قُرَيْشًا فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ فَضَّلَهُمْ عَلَى أَتْبَرِيَّةٍ بِالْإِسْلَامِ*
except Korèis, for verily God hath given them the superiority
over all creation through òl-'Islām and the (true) religion; *اللَّهُمَّ اغْفِرْ* B
يَا وَيْلَ مَنْ يَسْمَعُ حَاشَى الشَّيْطَانَ وَأَبَا الْأَضْبَعِ *O God, pardon me and*
those who hear, except Satan and Abu 'l-ʿIṣḡaḡ. It is rarely preceded
by مَا; as *أَسَامَةُ أَحَبُّ النَّاسِ إِلَيَّ مَا حَاشَى (حَاشَى) فَاطِمَةُ* (or *حَاشَى*)
'Usāma is the dearest of mankind to me, except Fāṭima (words of the Prophet);
فَأَمَّا النَّاسُ مَا حَاشَا قُرَيْشًا فَإِنَّا نَحْنُ أَفْضَلُهُمْ فَعَالًا
and as regards mankind, except Korèis, we are the noblest of them in deeds.

[REM. *حَاشَى* *لِلَّهِ* in *Korʿān* xii. 31 and 51 is an expression of C
wonder at the power of God, like *سُبْحَانَ اللَّهِ*; used by later
writers in the sense of *مَعَاذَ اللَّهِ* *God forbid! God keep us!* *حَاشَاكَ*
or *حَاشَى لَكَ* means *saving you, you excepted.*]

(e) *لَيْسَ* and *لَا يَكُونُ* are also occasionally used, in these forms
only, as equivalents of *إِلَّا*, and are followed by the accusative;
as *قَامَ الْقَوْمُ لَيْسَ زَيْدًا*, or *لَا يَكُونُ زَيْدًا*. Here the grammarians
suppose an ellipse of the subject, *بَعْضُهُمْ*. With pronominal suffixes D
we may say *لَيْسَنِي* and *لَيْسِي* (as well as *لَيْسَ إِيَّايَ*), *لَيْسَكَ*, etc.
[comp. Vol. i. § 182, rem. a]; e.g. *إِذْ ذَهَبَ الْقَوْمُ الْكَرَامُ لَيْسِي* *since*
the noble have departed, except me; *لَيْتَ هَذَا اللَّيْلَ شَهْرٌ لَا نَرَى*
لَيْسَ إِيَّايَ وَإِيَّاكَ وَلَا نَخْشَى رَقِيبًا *would that this night*

A *were a (whole) month, during which we might see no stranger, but only me and thee, and might fear no spy ; مَا وَصَفَ لِي أَحَدٌ فِي الْجَاهِلِيَّةِ ; فَرَأَيْتُهُ فِي الْإِسْلَامِ إِلَّا رَأَيْتُهُ دُونَ الصِّفَةِ لَيْسَكَ in the (time of) ignorance, whom I saw (afterwards) in (the time of) Islām, but I found him inferior to the description, save thee (words of the Prophet to Zèidu 'l-Hail).*

- (ف) لَا سِيَّمَا especially, above all (see Vol. i. § 364, e), may be
 B construed either with the nominative or the genitive ; as وَهِيَ كَنِيسَةٌ and it is a church
 which the Christians hold in very great reverence, but especially the
 kings of the Europeans ; وَلَا سِيَّمَا يَوْمَ بَدَارَةِ جُلْجُلٍ but especially a
 day in the valley of Gulful. The word سِيٌّ is the accusative of the
 noun سِيٌّ an equal (see § 39), and, if the construction with the
 C genitive be adopted, مَا is regarded as redundant (compare § 70, rem. f). Often a preposition with its complement, an adverbial
 accusative, or a circumstantial clause introduced by وَ or وَقَدْ (compare
 a, rem. c), [or a conditional (temporal) sentence introduced by إِنْ or
 إِذَا], follows لَا سِيَّمَا ; لَا سِيَّمَا بِحَضْرَتِكَ especially in thy presence ;
 لَا سِيَّمَا وَعَلَيْكَ بِالتَّحَمُّلِ لَا سِيَّمَا مِنَ الشُّفَهَاءِ especially from fools ;
 لَا سِيَّمَا وَأَنْتَ فِي رِيِّ الْخَلِيفَةِ وَلِبَاسِهِ especially
 D since thou art in the garb of the caliph and his dress ; وَلَا سِيَّمَا وَقَدْ
 especially as the shadow of darkness has fallen ;
 [إِنِّ زَيْدًا لَّكَرِيمٌ وَلَا سِيَّمَا إِنْ (إِذَا) أَتَيْتَهُ مُصَلِّيًا] verily Zaid is generous,
 especially if thou come to him whilst he is engaged in prayers]. Later
 writers incorrectly use سِيَّمَا, without لَا ; as هَذَا مَعَ مَزِيدِ إِحْسَانِهِ ; لَا سِيَّمَا this, notwithstanding his excessive kindness to
 him, especially in time of dearth.

6. Conditional and Hypothetical Sentences.

A

187. To what we have said above (§§ 4—6, § 13, and § 17), regarding the use of certain moods and tenses in the protasis and apodosis of conditional and hypothetical clauses, we must here add a few words on the use of the particle **ف** at the commencement of a conditional apodosis.—This particle is used to separate the protasis and apodosis of a conditional sentence, [or of a clause introduced by **إِذَا**], when the conditional particle of the protasis either cannot B exercise any influence upon the apodosis, or is not required to do so*. This is the case—

(a) When the apodosis is a nominal sentence; as **إِنْ قُلْتَ هَذَا** *if thou sayest this, thou art one of the unbelievers*; **إِنْ تَفْعَلُوا فَإِنَّهُ** *if he be disobedient, woe to him!* **إِنْ عَصَى فَوَيْلٌ لَهُ** *if ye do, it will be a crime in you* (lit. attacking to you); **إِنْ كُنتُمْ فِي رَيْبٍ مِّنْ آلْبَعَثِ فَإِنَّا خَلَقْنَاكُمْ** C *if ye are in doubt about the resurrection, verily we have created you*; **أَيُّ مَا تَدْعُوا فَلَهُ الْأَسْمَاءُ** *by whatsoever (name) ye call (upon Him), His are the best names*. **إِذَا أَلْمَزَ لَمْ يَدْخَسْ مِنَ اللَّوْمِ عِرْضُهُ فِكُلِّ رِدَاءٍ يَرْتَدِيهِ جَمِيلٌ** *when a man's honour is not sullied by meanness, every coat he wears is becoming to him.* In this case, after a conditional **إِنْ** or **إِذَا**, we may substitute for **ف** the so-called **إِذَا الْفَجَائِيَّةُ** (see Vol. i. § 368, rem. e), as **وَإِنْ تُصِيبْهُمْ سَيِّئَةٌ بِمَا قَدَّمَتْ أَيْدِيهِمْ إِذَا هُمْ يَقْنَطُونَ** D *and if evil befall them for what their hands have previously wrought, lo they despair*; provided always that the nominal sentence does not partake of the nature of an imperative (as in the above **فَوَيْلٌ لَهُ**), and is not introduced by a negative or **لَنْ**.

* [When the protasis is deprived of its conversive influence on the verb of the apodosis this is called **إِلْفَاءٌ**. Comp. Fleischer, *Kl. Schr.* i. 545.]

A [REM. The **ف** is sometimes omitted in poetry, rarely in prose,
 as **فَمَنْ لَمْ يَمُتْ فِي الْيَوْمِ لَا يَدَّ أَنْهُ سَيُعْلَقُهُ حَبْلُ الْمَنِيَّةِ فِي الْغَدِ**
whoever did not die to-day, the snare of death will certainly lay
hold of him to-morrow; وَإِذَا مَا غَضِبُوا هُمْ يَغْفِرُونَ and *when they*
are angered, they forgive; وَإِنْ نَجَوْتْ كَفَافًا لَا وَزَرَ وَلَا أَجْرَ إِنِّي
وَأِنْ نَجَوْتْ كَفَافًا لَا وَزَرَ وَلَا أَجْرَ إِنِّي and *if I escape on equal terms, neither condemned nor*
rewarded, lo, I shall be fortunate.]

B (b) When the apodosis is a verbal sentence, but the verb is a
 مَاضٍ جامد or defective perfect (without imperfect or *maṣḍar*), such
 as **لَيْسَ** *he is not*, **عَسَى** *perhaps he is*, **نِعَمَ** *how good is*, and the like;
 e.g. **مَنْ لَمْ يَكُنْ تَعْظِيمُهُ بَعْدَ أَلْفِ مَرَّةٍ كَتَعْظِيمِهِ فِي أَوَّلِ مَرَّةٍ فَلَيْسَ**
he whose reverence (for his teacher) is not the same after
(seeing him) a thousand times as after (seeing him) for the first time,
is not worthy of science; إِنْ تَبَدُّوا الصَّدَقَاتِ فَنِعِمَّا هِيَ if *ye give alms*
 C *openly, it is well.*

(c) When the apodosis is a verbal sentence, expressing a desire,
 wish, command, or prohibition; as **إِنْ كُنْتُمْ تُحِبُّونَ اللَّهَ فَاتَّبِعُونِي**
if ye love God, follow me; مَنْ شَاءَ أَنْ يَحْتَوِيَ أَمَالَهُ جَمَلًا فَلْيَتَّخِذْ
whoever wishes to attain his desires as a whole,
let him make use of his night, as of a camel, to overtake them.
 [Comp. § 1, *f*, at the end.]

D (d) When the apodosis is a verbal sentence, preceded by one of
 the affirmative particles **سَوْفَ**, **قَدْ**, and **سَ**, or one of the negative
 particles **لَنْ**, **لَيْسَ**, and **مَا**; as **إِنْ يَسْرِقْ فَقَدْ سَرَقَ أَخٌ لَهُ مِنْ قَبْلُ**
if he steals, a brother of his has stolen before (him); إِنْ تَسْتَغْفِرَ لَهُمْ
if thou askest forgiveness for them, God will not
forgive them.

REM. a. If the perfect in the apodosis conveys a promise or threat (§ 1, e), the use of **ف** is optional, as the verb really refers to future time.

REM. b. With the negatives **لَمْ** and **لَا**, the use of **ف** is optional. If **ف** be inserted, **لَا** requires the imperfect indicative after it (§ 17, c, a).

(e) When the perfect tense in the apodosis is intended to retain the signification of the perfect (see § 6, c); as **إِنْ كَانَ قَبِيضُهُ قَدْ قُذِمِنْ** *if his shirt is (has been) torn in front, she has spoken the truth*. B

[REM. The apodosis of the temporal clause introduced by **لَمَّا**, is, sometimes in old poetry, frequently in later prose, preceded by **ف** (Vol. i. § 366, b, footnote; an example, Vol. ii. § 3, a), especially if the protasis consists of many words, or is separated from the apodosis by a circumstantial clause (comp. the Gloss. to Ṭabarī).]

188. The particle **لَوْ** (Heb. **לִּוּ**), which forms hypothetical clauses, and the particle **إِنْ** (Heb. **אִם**), differ from one another in this, that the latter simply indicates a condition, whilst the former implies that what is supposed either does not take place or is not likely to do so; as **إِنْ تَدْعُوهُمْ لَا يَسْمَعُوا دُعَاءَكُمْ وَلَوْ سَمِعُوا مَا اسْتَجَابُوا لَكُمْ** *if ye call them, they will not hear your call; and even if they heard (it), they would not answer you*. C

REM. a. **لَوْ** is sometimes used optatively (compare **لَوْ** *O si, utinam*), as **وَلَوْ تَرَىٰ إِذْ وَقَفُوا عَلَىٰ رَبِّهِمْ** *and if thou couldst see (= couldst thou but see) when they are set before their Lord!* D **لَوْ أَنَّ لَنَا كَرَّةً فَنَتَبَرَّأَ مِنْهُمْ** *had we but a return (to life), then would we keep ourselves clear from them!* **وَلَوْ يَعْلَمُ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا** *and if those who disbelieve knew (= did those who disbelieve but know) the time when they shall not (be able to) keep off the fire (of hell) from their faces!** Especially

* [According to ʿl-Béidāwī, as Trumpp p. 354 observes, **لَوْ** has

*my slaves, I would set them free**. The employment of this particle A is, however, unlike that of **ف**, quite arbitrary; and it is only in the case of a long protasis that it is never omitted, in order thereby to mark the apodosis more distinctly (compare the German *so*). The same remark applies to **ل** before a negative apodosis of this sort introduced by **مَا**, as **فَلَوْ قَسَمْتَ عَلَىٰ جَمِيعِ الْأَقَالِيمِ لَمْ تَجِدْ لَهَا شُكْلًا** and *if thou didst search all climes, thou wouldst never find any one like her*; but it is never prefixed to **لَمْ**, in order to avoid the B cacophony produced by the repetition of the letter *l*.

* [Sometimes **ل** is preceded by **إِذَا** then, in that case, e.g. Kor'an xvii. 102.]

PART FOURTH.

PROSODY*.

I. THE FORM OF ARABIC POETRY.

A. THE RHYME.

- A 191. Poetry (الشعر) always takes, during the classical period,—that is to say, from the earliest times down to the fall of the 'Umawi dynasty (A.H. 132, A.D. 749—750),—the form of short poems, rarely

* On this subject, more especially as regards the oriental doctrine of the metres, the student is advised to consult the following works: Samuelis Clerici علم العروض والقوافي scientia metrica et rhythmica, seu tractatus de prosodia Arabica ex auctoribus probatissimis eruta (Oxonii, 1661); Freytag, Darstellung der Arabischen Verskunst (Bonn, 1830); De Sacy, Grammaire Arabe, t. ii. pp. 615—661; and the more recent grammars, e.g., Lagus, Lärokurs i Arabiska Språket (Helsingfors, 1869), pp. 354—376; Palmer, A Grammar of the Arabic Language (London, 1874), pp. 291—376. Also: C. V. A. Van Dyck, كتاب محيط الدائرة في علمي العروض والقافية (Beirût, 1857); and N. V. A. Van Dyck, كتاب مصباح نقطة الدائرة, printed as an appendix to the كتاب محيط الدائرة في علمي العروض والقافية (Beirût, 1857); and to the كتاب مجموع of Buṭrus ʿl-Bistānī (Beirût, 1854), and to the كتاب فنون العرب of Nāṣif ʿl-Yazīgī (2nd edit., Beirût, 1869); and Ibn Kēisan's كتاب تلقيب القوافي, in my *Opuscula Arabica* (Leyden, 1859). [A very able treatise on Arabic prosody was published in the *Journal Asiatique* for 1877 by M. Stanislas Guyard,

exceeding the length of a hundred and twenty verses. Such poems A are called *kaṣīdas*, قَصِيدَة, collect. قَصِيدٌ, plur. قَصَائِدُ; whereas a mere fragment, consisting of only a few verses, is termed قِطْعَة, plur. قِطَعٌ, also مُقَطَّعَاتٌ. A poem, the special object of which is the eulogy of an individual or a tribe, is named مَدِيحٌ, plur. مَدَائِحُ; a satire, هِجَاءٌ or أُهْجِيَّةٌ, plur. أَهْجِيٌّ; an elegy, رِثَاءٌ, or مَرْثِيَّةٌ, plur. مَرَاثٍ; and a poem in the metre *ragèz* (see § 204), أَرْجُوزَةٌ, B plur. أَرْجُوزٌ. Verses set to music are termed أَغْنِيَّةٌ, plur. أَغَانِيٌّ.

REM. Rhyme without metre or measure (وَزْنٌ) does not constitute poetry, but merely *rhymed prose*, سَجْعٌ.

192. Each verse, بَيْتٌ (lit. *tent, house*), plur. أَبْيَاتٌ, consists of two hemistichs, termed مِصْرَاعٌ or مِصْرَعٌ (*one half of a folding-door*), plur. مِصَارِيعُ and مِصَارِعُ, or شَطْرٌ (*a half*), pl. شُطُورٌ and أَشْطُرٌ. The C first of these hemistichs is called الصَّدْرُ (*the breast*), and the second الْعَجْزُ (*the rump*).

193. The rhyme, الْقَافِيَّةُ, plur. الْقَوَافِي, labours under peculiar restrictions, for, according to ancient rule, the two hemistichs of the first verse of a *kaṣīda* must rhyme with one another, and the same rhyme must be repeated at the end of every verse throughout the

Théorie nouvelle de la métrique Arabe. Compare, however, Prof. D M. Hartmann's Essay, *Metrum und Rhythmus* (Giessen, 1896). In 1879 Dr A. Gies (Leipzig) published a dissertation on modern metres : الفنون السبعة. Ein Beitrag zur Kenntniss sieben neuerer arabischer Versarten; Prof. Hartmann, in the *Actes du dixième Congrès international des Orientalistes*, session de Genève, 1894, III. pp. 45—67 ("Ueber die Muwaššah genannte Art der Strophengedichte bei den Arabern"), made some excellent remarks about Arabic metres, and has just published "Das Arabische Strophengedicht, I. Das Muwaššah."

- A whole poem. The rhyme may be of two sorts, **مُطْلَقَةٌ** and **مُقَدَّدَةٌ**. It is called **مُقَدَّدَةٌ** or *fettered*, when the verse ends with a consonant, and **مُطْلَقَةٌ** or *loose*, when it ends with a vowel.

194. The essential part of the rhyme is the letter called **الرَّوِيّ**, which remains the same throughout the entire poem, and, as it were, binds the verses together, so as to form one whole (**رَوَى** to bind fast). Hence a *ḳaṣida*, of which the *rawī* is the letter *l* is called **قَصِيدَةٌ**.
B **لَامِيَّة**; *r*, **رَائِيَّة**; *t*, **تَائِيَّة**; and so on.

- REM. The letters **ل**, **و** and **ي** cannot be employed as *rawī*, when they are (a) long vowels, e.g. **غَزَا**, **كِتَابِي**; (b) inflexions of the feminine singular, the dual, and the plural of verbs, e.g. **تَقْتُلِي**, **أَقْتُلُوا**, **قَتَلُوا**, **يَقْتُلُوا** (unless they form a diphthong with a preceding *fetha*, e.g. **أَرْضِي**, **رَمَوْا**); (c) inflexions of the dual and plural of nouns; and (d) the final letters of the pronouns **هُوَ**, **هِيَ**, and **هَا**. The same remark applies to the *tənwin*, and to the letter **ن** of the second energetic form of verbs; as also to the letter **ه**, when it is not radical, as in **رَحْمَةٍ** for **رَحْمَةٌ**, **كِتَابُهُ** for **كِتَابُهُ** (pausal form for **كِتَابِي** or **كِتَابِي**). The **ه** of the pronouns **هُوَ** and **هَا** may, however, be used as *rawī*, if preceded by a long vowel; e.g. **عَصَاهُ**, **عَصَاهَا**.
- C

195. The loose *ḳāfiya* (see § 193) terminates in what is called **الْصَّلَةُ**, the *annex* or *appendix* to the *rawī*, which may be either a
D long vowel (i.e. **أَ**, **يَ**, or **وُ**), or the letter **ه**, preceded by one of the short vowels (**أَ**, **يَ**, **وُ**).

REM. a. We say "a long vowel," because the final vowel of a verse is regarded as being followed by the homogeneous letter of prolongation, whether this latter be written or not. The vowel-letter **ل** is invariably expressed, but **و** and **ي** are frequently omitted, even where they are always written in prose; e.g. **وَيْدِي** for **وَيْدِي**, and my hand; **صَنَعَ** for **صَنَعُوا** or **صَنَعُوا**, they made.

REM. b. If the letter *ه* has a long vowel after it, as in the A suffix pronouns *هَا*, *هَ* (= *هِيَ*), *هُ* (= *هُوَ*), the letter of prolongation, *ا*, *و* or *ي*, is called *الْخُرُوجُ*, *that which goes beyond (the sila)*; as in *مَوْجِبَهَا*, (*تَعْصِيهَا* = *تَعْصِي*), (*نُعَلِّلُهَا* = *نُعَلِّلُهَا*).

REM. c. Both *sila* and *horūf* must accompany the *rawī*, without the slightest change, throughout the whole poem.

196. The *rawī* may also be preceded by one or two letters, which form, to a greater or less extent, a necessary portion of the B *ḵafiya* (whether loose or fettered). These are named *الدَّخِيلُ*, *التَّاسِيسُ*, and *الرَّدْفُ*.

(a) *التَّاسِيسُ*, or *the foundation*, is the name given to an *ا* of prolongation, preceding the *rawī*, and separated from it by a consonant, which is called the *دَخِيلُ*, *stranger* or *guest*. The former is invariable, the latter variable; but the vowel which separates the *dahīl* from the *rawī* ought, strictly speaking, to remain unchanged. For example, C in a verse ending with the word *تَامِرٌ*, the *ر* is the *rawī*, the long vowel *ا* the *ta'sis*, and the *م* the *dahīl*, whilst the vowel which separates this last from the *rawī* is *i*; but the next verse may terminate with the word *الدَّوَائِرُ*, where the *dahīl* is *ي*, though the other parts of the *ḵafiya* remain unchanged. The same rule holds when the *ḵafiya* is loose, instead of fettered, as in *عَامِرٍ* and *أَوَاتِرٍ* (where the *dahīl* is in the one case *م*, and in the other *ت*), or *بَاطِلَةٌ* D and *رَوَاحِلَةٌ*.

(b) The *رَدْفُ*, or *what rides behind*, is the technical name given to one of the letters of prolongation *ا*, *ي* or *و*, when it immediately precedes the *rawī*; as in the words *رَجَامَهَا*, *الْسَّلَامُ*, *تَبَاهُ*, *جَنَاحَانُ*, *طُرُوبُ*, *قَرِيحُ*. The long vowel *ā* remains invariable, but the poet may use *ī* and *ū* indifferently; *قَرِيحُ* is regarded as rhyming with *جَمُوحُ*, *بَرِيقُهُ* with *سُوقُهُ*, *طُرُوبُ* with *مَشِيبُ*.

- A REM. *a*. Strictly speaking, the *rawī* and the *ta'sīs* should form parts of the same word, but exceptions are allowed in the cases of the separate pronoun هِـمَا, and of a pronominal suffix preceded by a preposition, as لِيَا, لَنَا (for لِي or لِي).

REM. *b*. When the *ḵāfiya* is unaccompanied by either a *ta'sīs* or a *ridf*, it is said to be مُجَرَّدَةٌ, *naked* or *bare*; otherwise, it is either مُؤَسَّسَةٌ or مُرَدَّفَةٌ.

- B 197. The vowels which accompany the *ḵāfiya* are also designated by peculiar names.

(*a*) The *məḡrā*, الْمَجْرَى, is the vowel which follows the *rawī* in the loose *ḵāfiya*; e.g. *ā* in سَارَا (for سَارَ), *i* in بَعْضَ, *ū* in سَلَكُوا or أَلْقَلَبَ. It is, strictly speaking, invariable.

(*b*) The *naḡāḍ*, النَّغَاضُ, is the vowel between the letter *e*, as *ṣila*, and the *horūḡ* (see § 195, rem. *b*); e.g. *fetha* in مَوْكِبَهَا, *kèsra* in

- C تَعْصِيهِ (= تَعْصِي), and *ḍamma* in نَعَلَهُ (= نَعَلَهُ). It is, of course, invariable.

(*c*) The *tauḡih*, التَّوْجِيهِ, is the vowel which immediately precedes the *rawī* in a مُجَرَّدَةٌ, e.g. *fetha* in فَجَبَر (for فَجَبَرَ), and *kèsra* in أَفْر (for أَفْر); or separates it from the *dahīl* in a مُؤَسَّسَةٌ (see § 196, rem. *b*), e.g. *kèsra* in تَامِر (for تَامِر) or وَالْوَاتِر. The latter is, however, more frequently distinguished by the special name of الْإِشْبَاعُ.

- D The 'isbā' ought, strictly speaking, to be invariable; whereas, in the *tauḡih*, the vowels *ḍamma* and *kèsra* may be interchanged, as in أَفْر, for أَفْر, and صَبْر, for صَبْر (compare the case of و and ي as *ridf*, § 196, *b*).

REM. The *tauḡih* is absolutely necessary in a fettered *ḵāfiya*, unless it be مُرَدَّفَةٌ (as الْقَلِيلُ, قَرِيعٌ, مَطَاعٌ); but it is not necessary in a loose *ḵāfiya*, as الْقَمَرُ, قَدْرٌ.

(d) The *rass*, الرَّسُّ, is the vowel which accompanies the letter, A preceding the *ta'sis* (see § 196, a). It can, of course, be none but fêṭḥa.

(e) The *ḥadw*, الْحَدْوُ, is the vowel which accompanies the letter preceding the *ridf* (see § 196, b). It is either fêṭḥa, kèsra or ḍamma, according as the *ridf* is ا, ي or و; but the vowel fêṭḥa before و or ي (وِى, يِى) is also included under this name.

198. The last two *quiescent* (سَاكِنٌ) letters of a verse form, B according to the preceding sections, the limits between which is comprised the rhyme. Hence the Arab grammarians divide the rhyme into five kinds, according to the number of *moving* (مُتَحَرِّكٌ) letters which come between these two*; viz. مُتَدَارِكٌ, مُتَوَاتِرٌ, مُتَرَادِفٌ, مُتَرَاكِبٌ, and مُتَكَوِّسٌ.

(a) The *مُتَرَادِفٌ* is where there is *no* moving letter between the two quiescents,—in other words, a fettered *kāfiya*, in which the *rawī* C is preceded by a *ridf*; as جَنَاحَانُ, يَحْوُلُ, قَرِيحٌ, اللَّيْلُ, لَوْنَيْنِ. It is of comparatively rare occurrence.

(b) The *مُتَوَاتِرٌ* is where *one* moving letter intervenes between the quiescents; as جَمِيلٌ, شَيْبَانَا, (سِحْرُو = سِحْرُ), (ظَلْمِي = ظَلِمِ), ظَنُونِي, (جَمِيلُو = جَمِيلُ).

(c) The *مُتَدَارِكٌ* is where there are *two* moving letters between D

* The reader should bear in mind that the grammarians designate the vowels by the term حَرَكَاتٌ, *motions* (sing. حَرَكَةٌ); whence a consonant, which is followed by a vowel, is said to be مُتَحَرِّكٌ or *in motion*, and one that has no following vowel, to be سَاكِنٌ, *at rest*, *inert* or *quiescent*. Hence too the *gèzm* is often called سُكُونٌ. See Vol. i. § 4, rem. b, and § 9, with rem. a.

A the two quiescents; as *هَيْكَلٍ, يَنْزُورَهَا, (الْمَبَاسِلُ =)* الْمَبَاسِلُ (= هَيْكَلِي),
الْمَلْتَهَبُ, قَدْ ظَلَمَ.

(d) 'The مُتَرَكَبٌ is where there are *three* moving letters between the quiescents; as *قَدْ حُسِدُو, (وَضَمِي =)* عَلَى وَضَمٍ, وَلَا فَرْقًا.

(e) The مُتَكَوِّسٌ is where there are no less than *four* moving letters between the two quiescents, as in the half-verse *قَدْ جَبَرَ الدِّينَ*
B *قَدْ جَبَرَ الدِّينَ* God has healed the (true) religion, and it has become whole.
This sort of rhyme is of rare occurrence.

199. A violation of any of the rules laid down in §§ 194—197 is regarded as a fault (عَيْبٌ). Of these faults the grammarians reckon five, viz. *السِّنَادُ*, *الْإِطَاءُ*, *الْإِكْفَاءُ*, *الْإِقْوَاءُ*, and *التَّضْمِينُ* or *التَّشْمِيرُ*.

C (a) The *sinād*, *السِّنَادُ*, consists in a certain change of the vowels called *التَّوْجِيهُ*, *الْإِشْبَاعُ*, and *الْحَذْوُ*. (α) In the *tauḡih*, *kèsra* and *ḍamma* may freely interchange, but the use of *fèṭḥa* to rhyme with either is a *sinād* (see § 197, c). 'Imru'u l'Kais, for example, commits this fault in rhyming *قُرْ* (for *قُرْ*) with *أَفِرْ* and *ضَبْرْ*. (β) In the '*isbā*', the same fault is exemplified by rhyming *جَانِبُ* with *يَتَجَانِبُ*, or *فَالْقَوَارِعُ* with *اتَّدَاعُ*. (γ) In the *ḥadw*, *ī* may be interchanged with *ū* (see D § 196, b), and *ai* with *au* (e.g. *تَوْبِي* may rhyme with *بَرِيْبُ*); but to rhyme *خُمُوشًا* with *عَيْشًا* or *قُرَيْشًا* is a *sinād*. In the case of the *tauḡih* and '*isbā*', this fault is but a trifling one, and not seldom committed even by the best poets.

REM. The name of *السِّنَادُ* is also applied to cases in which a word, having a *riḍf* or *ta'sīs* before the *rawī*, is rhymed with one which has not; e.g. *تَوَصِي* and *تَعَصِي*, *خَمْسِي* and *قَوْسِي*, *تَسْلَمِي* and *أَعَالِمِي*.

(b) The 'ikwā, الْإِقْوَا, is the name given to a change of the A vowel called الْمَجْرَى (see § 197, a); e.g. مُزَوِّد and أَلْأَسْوَد, or تَجْوَر and نَزْوَر. Though this fault is considered a serious one, the older poets not unfrequently allow themselves the interchange of kèsra and damma (compare § 196, b, and § 197, c)*. If, however, the rawī is followed by the letter * as šila (§ 195), any alteration of the mēgrā is exceedingly rare; to rhyme دُونَهَا with ظَنُونَهَا, or اِسْمَهُ with اِسْتِقَامَهُ, is condemned by all the native critics. B

(c) The 'ikfā, الْإِكْفَا, is the substitution of some cognate letter for the rawī; as when one rhymes اَللَّيْلُ with اَتَّقِيْن and عَيْنُ, or صَدُغُ with صُقْعُ, or وَسَطًا with اَلْعَنَدَا. This is a very grave fault, and carefully avoided by all good poets†.

REM. Many authorities call this change الْإِقْوَا, and apply the term الْإِكْفَا to the alteration of the mēgrā (see b).

(d) The 'itā, الْإِيطَا, is the repetition of the same word in rhyme C in the course of a ḡaṣida. However, not to impose too great a restriction on the poet, this repetition is held to be allowable, provided there be some slight shade of difference in meaning, even if it be only to the extent of the word having the article in the one place and not in the other. Many authorities, too, permit the repetition in the same sense, provided at least seven verses intervene.

(e) Each verse of a poem ought to be independent in construction and sense (مُفْرَد). That two or more verses should be so connected D

* [The reason is given in the *Āḡānī* ix. 164. The final vowel was indistinctly enunciated in simple recital, but prolonged in singing. When ʿn-Nābiḡa came to Yaṭrib and heard his own verses sung, he perceived his fault at once and corrected it in many places. D. G.]

† [The most common is the interchanging of *mīm* and *nūn*, as الْقَضِيرُ and مُبِينُ (Fāik i. 89), and يَسْتَدِيمَهَا and شُونَهَا (Lisān i. 137 seq.). D. G.]

- A with one another, is regarded as a fault, and technically named *tadmīn*, التَّضْمِينُ, or *tadmīm*, التَّضْمِيمُ. It is not, however, a serious defect, unless the one verse be wholly destitute of meaning, if separated from the other; as when ʿn-Nabīga says

هُمْ وَرَدُّوا آلِمْيَاهُ عَلَى تَمِيمٍ وَهُمْ أَصْحَابُ يَوْمِ عُكَاظٍ إِنِّي

They water their herds at the wells in spite of Tadmīm, and they are the victors on the day of 'Okāz; verily I—which is unintelligible,

- B because the *ḥabar* of *إِن* is unknown, till we hear or read the next verse:

شَهِدْتُ لَهُمْ مَوَاطِنَ صَالِحَاتٍ أَكْتَبْتُهُمْ بِوَدِّ الصَّدْرِ مِنِّي

have seen them fight many a good fight, (for which) I reward them with my heart's whole love.

B. THE METRES.

- C 200. Every verse in Arabic poetry consists of a certain number of *feet*, called individually *تَفْعِيل*, plur. *تَفَاعِيل*, but as constituent parts of a verse, *جُزْء* (*a part*), plur. *أَجْزَاء*. A certain collocation of feet constitutes a *metre*, *بَحْر* (*a sea*), plur. *أَبْحُر*. To *scan* a verse is expressed by the word *قَطَعَ* (*to cut into pieces*), infin. *تَقْطِيع*. [The last foot of the first hemistich is called *عَرُوض*, that of the second *ضَرْب*.]

- D [REM. The constituent parts of a foot are called *سَبَب* (*cord*) consisting of two letters, either *سَبَبٌ خَفِيفٌ* *a movent letter followed by a quiescent letter*, or *سَبَبٌ ثَقِيلٌ* *two movent letters*, and *وَتْدٌ* (*peg*) consisting of three letters, either *وَتْدٌ مَقْرُونٌ* *two movent letters followed by a quiescent letter*, or *وَتْدٌ مَفْرُوقٌ* *one movent, then one quiescent, then one movent letter*. Three successive short vowels followed by a quiescent letter, are called *سَبَبَانِ مَقْرُونَانِ* e.g. *مَتَفَا*

in مُتَفَاعِلُنْ, two parts each consisting of a movent letter and a quiescent letter سَبَّانِ مَفْرُوقَانِ e.g. مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ in مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ. The common name for سَبَبٌ and وَتَدٌ is مَقْطَعٌ (Gr. κόμμα).]

201. The metres are ordinarily reckoned to be *sixteen* in number, and are exemplified in the following composition, made up partly of verses, either taken from the poets or written for the occasion, and partly of sentences from the Kor'an.

أَبْحَرُ الشَّعْرِ وَهِيَ سِتَّةٌ عَشَرَ بَحْرًا ❖

B

أَلْبَحْرُ الْأَوَّلُ الطَّوِيلُ *

طَوِيلٌ مَدَى الْبَحْرَانِ مَنْ كُنْتُ أَهْوَاهُ أَذَابَ فُؤَادِي وَالتَّصَبُّرُ أَفْنَاهُ
فَعُولُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ فَعُولُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ وَلَا تَقْتُلُوا النَّفْسَ الَّتِي حَرَّمَ اللَّهُ ❖

أَلْبَحْرُ الثَّانِي الْأَمْدِيدُ *

فَاعِلَاتُنْ فَاعِلُنْ فَاعِلَاتُنْ يَا لَبْكَرٍ أَنْشِرُوا لِي كَلْبِيَا ❖

C

أَلْبَحْرُ الثَّلَاثُ الْبَسِيطُ *

بَسِيطٌ فِي أَمْدِي أَتَى أَذَاهُنْهُمْ خَوْفًا مِّنَ الْجَوْرِ لَهَا أَنْ أُعَايِنْهُمْ
مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ فَاعِلُنْ مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ فَعِلُنْ فَأَصْبَحُوا لَا يُرَى إِلَّا مَسَاكِينُهُمْ ❖

أَلْبَحْرُ الرَّابِعُ الْكَامِلُ *

يَا كَامِلَا سَلِّمْ وَقُلْ تَعْظِيمَا لِلْمُجْتَبَى خَيْرُ الْوَرَى تَسْلِيمَا
مُتَفَاعِلُنْ مُتَفَاعِلُنْ مُتَفَاعِلُنْ صَلُّوا عَلَيْهِ وَسَلِّمُوا تَسْلِيمَا ❖

D

أَلْبَحْرُ الْخَامِسُ الْوَافِرُ *

أَوَافِرُ كَيْدٍ شِعْرِي فِي مَزِيدٍ عَلَى رَغْمِ الْأَعَادِي وَالْحَسُودِ
مُفَاعِلَاتُنْ مُفَاعِلَاتُنْ فَعُولُنْ أَلَا بُعْدًا لِعَادِ قَوْمِ هُودٍ ❖

A

الْبَحْرُ السَّادِسُ الْهَرَجُ *

هَزِجْتُمْ يَا مَنَى النَّفْسِ عَنِ الْأَوْطَانِ بِالْأُنْسِ
مَفَاعِيلُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ كَأَنَّ لَمْ تَغْنِ بِالْأُمْسِ *

الْبَحْرُ السَّابِعُ الرَّجَزُ *

B

الرَّجَزُ الْمَوْزُونُ إِذْ تَجَزَّوْا أَجْزَاءَهُ بَيْنَ آلُورَى لَا تُنْكَرُ
مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا أَصْبِرُوا *

الْبَحْرُ الثَّامِنُ الرَّمَلُ *

رَمَلٌ أَكْرَمُ بِهِ مِنْ رَمَلٍ لَذَّةٌ لِلْمُخْتَفِي وَالْمُجْتَلِي
فَاعِلَاتُنْ فَاعِلَاتُنْ فَاعِلُنْ وَالَّذِي أَطْمَعُ أَنْ يَغْفِرَ لِي *

الْبَحْرُ التَّاسِعُ السَّرِيعُ *

C

سَرِيعُ بَحْرٍ قَدْ سَدَّاهُ الْحَكِيمُ كَرَّرَ عَلَى سَمْعِي بِهِ يَا نَدِيمُ
مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ فَاعِلُنْ ذَلِكَ تَقْدِيرُ الْعَزِيزِ الْعَلِيمِ *

الْبَحْرُ الْعَاشِرُ الْمُنْسَرِحُ *

مُنْسَرِحُ الشَّعْرِ صَاغَهُ الْأَوَّلُ مِمَّنْ تَرَاهُمْ عَنِ الْهَدَى نَكَلُوا
مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ فَاعِلَاتُ مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ بَدَا لَهُمْ سَيِّئَاتُ مَا عَمِلُوا *

D

الْبَحْرُ الْحَادِي عَشَرَ الْخَفِيفُ *

خَفَّ لَهَا أُرْدَتْ أَشَدُّ الْخَفِيفَا لَذَّ فِي مَسْمَعِي فَكَانَ طَرِيفَا
فَاعِلَاتُنْ مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ فَاعِلَاتُنْ إِنَّ كَيْدَ الشَّيْطَانِ كَانَ ضَعِيفَا *

الْبَحْرُ الثَّانِي عَشَرَ الْمُضَارِعُ *

مَفَاعِلُنْ فَاعِلَاتُنْ أَيَا مُحِجَّى الْبِلَادِ *

الْبَحْرُ الثَّالِثَ عَشَرَ الْمُقْتَضِبُ *
 اقْتَضِبُهُ حِينَ صَبَا
 فَنَ مَعْشَرَ الْأَدْبَا
 فَاعِلَاتٌ مُفْتَعِلُنَ
 مَالَهُ وَمَا كَسَبَا *

A

الْبَحْرُ الرَّابِعَ عَشَرَ الْمُجْتَثُ *
 مُجْتَثُ شِعْرِي أَلْقَى
 فِي الْقَلْبِ مِثْيَ عِشْقَا
 مُسْتَفْعِلُنَ فَاعِلَاتُنَ
 وَاللَّهُ خَيْرٌ وَأَبْقَى *

B

الْبَحْرُ الْخَامِسَ عَشَرَ الْمُتَدَارِكُ *
 فَاعِلُنَ فَاعِلُنَ فَاعِلُنَ
 جَاءَنَا عَامِرٌ سَالِمًا غَانِمًا *

الْبَحْرُ السَّادِسَ عَشَرَ الْمُتَقَارِبُ *
 تَقَارَبَ مَوْعِدُ جَمْعِ أَلْعَصَاءِ
 فَيَا أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ أَذُوا الصَّلَاةِ
 فَعُولُنَ فَعُولُنَ فَعُولُنَ فَعُولُ
 أَفِيمُوا الصَّلَاةَ وَأَتُوا الزَّكَاةَ *

202. Instead, however, of following the system and arrangement here laid down*, we prefer to adopt that of Ewald†, and to treat of the metres in the following order: 1. الرَّجَزُ, 2. السَّرِيعُ, 3. الْكَامِلُ, 4. الْوَالِيزُ, 5. الْهَرْجُ, 6. الْمُتَقَارِبُ, 7. الطَّوِيلُ, 8. الْمُضَارِعُ, 9. الْمُتَدَارِكُ, 10. الْبَسِيطُ, 11. الْمُنْسَرِجُ, 12. الْمُقْتَضِبُ, 13. الرَّمْلُ, 14. الْبَدِيدُ, 15. الْخَفِيفُ, and 16. الْمُجْتَثُ. Among these, if we leave the *ragʿez* out of account, the favourites with the old poets are the *ṭawīl*, *kāmil*, *wāfir*, *bāsīṭ*, *mutḍakarīb*, and *sarīʿ*.

D

203. The *iambic* metres are four in number, namely, the *ragʿez*, *sarīʿ*, *kāmil*, and *wāfir*.

* See the note on p. 350.

† See his work entitled *De Metris Carminum Arabicorum Libri Duo* (Braunschweig, 1825), and the second volume of his *Grammatica Critica Linguae Arabicæ*, pp. 323—343.

- A **204.** The most common varieties of the *ragʿz* (الرَّجَزُ *the trembling*) are the dimeter and the trimeter, both of which may be catalectic. The trimeter is the more usual. The basis is ◡-◡-◡- (diiamb), which may be varied in one or two places by the substitution of --◡- or -◡◡-, and more rarely ◡◡◡-. The older poets almost always use this metre as مَشْطُورٌ, that is to say, each hemistich (شَطْرٌ) forms, as it were, an independent verse and rhymes with the preceding one. The more modern, on the contrary, not unfrequently follow the rule of the other metres in rhyming only the second hemistich of each verse:

| | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| Trimeter acatalectic | ◡-◡-◡- ◡-◡-◡- ◡-◡-◡- |
| | ×◡◡- ×◡◡- ×◡◡- |
| „ catalectic | ◡-◡-◡- ◡-◡-◡- ◡-- |
| | ×◡◡- ×◡◡- ◡-- |
| Dimeter acatalectic | ◡-◡-◡- ◡-◡-◡- |
| | ×◡◡- ×◡◡- |
| „ catalectic | ◡-◡-◡- ◡-- |
| | ×◡◡- ◡-- |

C

205. The *sarī* (السَّريْعُ *the swift*) admits in its first and second feet the same variations as the *ragʿz*. Its normal form is

| | | |
|-----------------------|--|-----------------------|
| ◡-◡-◡- ◡-◡-◡- -◡- | | ◡-◡-◡- ◡-◡-◡- -◡- |
| ×◡◡- ×◡◡- | | ×◡◡- ×◡◡- |

but -- is frequently substituted for -◡- at the end of the second hemistich. The use of final ◡◡- in either hemistich, but more especially in the second, is very rare. A few later poets have taken the liberty of adding a syllable to the second hemistich, so that the last foot of the verse becomes -◡◡-.

206. The *kāmil* (الكَامِلُ *the perfect*) is either dimeter or trimeter. The normal form of the trimeter is

| | | |
|--------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| ×-◡-◡- ×-◡-◡- ×-◡-◡- | | ×-◡-◡- ×-◡-◡- ×-◡-◡- |
|--------------------------|--|--------------------------|

but we frequently find it catalectic

| | | |
|--------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| ×-◡-◡- ×-◡-◡- ×-◡-◡- | | ×-◡-◡- ×-◡-◡- ×-- |
|--------------------------|--|-----------------------|

The omission of another syllable, so as to convert the last foot of the

verse into --, is more rare, though sometimes even both hemistichs A are shortened in this way.

$\text{---} \text{---} \text{---} | \text{---} \text{---} \text{---} | \text{---} \text{---} \text{---} || \text{---} \text{---} \text{---} | \text{---} \text{---} \text{---} | \text{---}$
 $\text{,,} | \text{,,} | \text{---} || \text{,,} | \text{,,} | \text{---}$

The normal form of the dimeter is

$\text{---} \text{---} \text{---} | \text{---} \text{---} \text{---} || \text{---} \text{---} \text{---} | \text{---} \text{---} \text{---}$

It is sometimes used as catalectic ($\text{---} \text{---}$ for $\text{---} \text{---} \text{---}$ in the last foot of the second hemistich), but far more usually the verse is lengthened B by the addition of a syllable

$\text{---} \text{---} \text{---} | \text{---} \text{---} \text{---} || \text{---} \text{---} \text{---} | \text{---} \text{---} \text{---} | -$

in which case it is said to be *مُرْقَلٌ* having a train.

207. The basis of the *wāfir* (الْوَافِرُ the exuberant) is the same as that of the *kamil*, but with the order of the component parts reversed, $\text{---} \text{---} \text{---}$. It is either trimeter or dimeter, but the latter is comparatively rare. The trimeter is always shortened by one syllable in each hemistich, so as to become C

$\text{---} \text{---} \text{---} | \text{---} \text{---} \text{---} | \text{---} || \text{---} \text{---} \text{---} | \text{---} \text{---} \text{---} | \text{---}$

The dimeter has the form

$\text{---} \text{---} \text{---} | \text{---} \text{---} \text{---} || \text{---} \text{---} \text{---} | \text{---} \text{---} \text{---}$

for the last foot of which there may be substituted $\text{---} \text{---} \text{---}$; but these two forms are not used indiscriminately in the same poem.

208. Of *antispastic* metres there is only one, namely the *hazég* (الْهَزَجُ the trilling), which consists in a single repetition of $\text{---} \text{---} \text{---}$ (antispast), varied by $\text{---} \text{---} \text{---}$. It may be either catalectic or acata- D lectic.

Acatalectic $\text{---} \text{---} \text{---} | \text{---} \text{---} \text{---} || \text{---} \text{---} \text{---} | \text{---} \text{---} \text{---}$

Catalectic $\text{---} \text{---} \text{---} | \text{---} \text{---} \text{---} || \text{---} \text{---} \text{---} | \text{---} \text{---}$

209. The *amphibrachic* metres are three in number, *mutðkārīb*, *ṭawīl*, and *muðārī*.

210. The basis of the *mutðkārīb* (الْمُتَقَارِبُ the tripping, lit. taking short steps) is $\text{---} \text{---}$ (amphibrachys), for which may be substi-

- A tuted ∪-- . The latter is indeed almost invariably employed as the penultimate foot of the hemistich. One great peculiarity of this metre is, that the first hemistich may be either acatalectic or catalectic, independently of the second. If, however, the first be acatalectic and the second catalectic, then the last syllable of the first half-verse must be short, and must coincide with the end of a word. Of this metre no form but the tetrameter is in common use.

Acatalectic

- B ∪-∅ | ∪-∅ | ∪-× | ∪-∅ || ∪-∅ | ∪-∅ | ∪-× | ∪--

Catalectic

∪-∅ | ∪-∅ | ∪-× | ∪-∅ || ∪-∅ | ∪-∅ | ∪-× | ∪-

A rarer form reduces the last foot of the second hemistich to a single long syllable, in which case the preceding foot must be ∪-- .

∪-× | ∪-∅ | ∪-× | ∪-∅ || ∪-∅ | ∪-∅ | ∪-- | -

- C 211. The *ṭawil* (الطَّوِيلُ *the long*) is one of the finest, as well as the most common, of the Arabic metres. It is formed by the single repetition of ∪-∪ and ∪-∪-, for the first of which may be substituted ∪-- , and for the second ∪--- . The latter is restricted to the first place in each half-verse, where it is, however, far more usual than ∪-∪- . The verse may be either acatalectic or catalectic. If the latter, then the last syllable of the penultimate foot should be short, ∪-∪ .

Acatalectic

- D ∪-∅ | ∪-×- | ∪-∅ | ∪-∪- || ∪-∅ | ∪-×- | ∪-∅ | ∪-∪-

Catalectic

∪-∅ | ∪-×- | ∪-∅ | ∪-∪- || ∪-∅ | ∪-×- | ∪-∪ | ∪--

In the acatalectic verse, the last foot is also changed into ∪--- .

∪-∅ | ∪-×- | ∪-∅ | ∪-∪- || ∪-∅ | ∪-×- | ∪-∅ | ∪---

212. The *muḍāri'* (المُضَارِعُ *the similar**) is one of the rarest

* Namely, to the *muḡtett* (§ 222), as may be seen by adopting another mode of scansion, ∪-∅× | -∪-- || ∪-∅× | -∪-- .

metres, and not employed by any early poet. Each half-verse consists 'A of $\cup - \cup$ and $\cup - \cup -$, with a single syllable appended, and the two generally rhyme with each other, as in the *rag'ez*. For $\cup - \cup$ may be substituted $\cup - -$, and for $\cup - \cup -$, $- - \cup -$; but both changes must not take place together. Consequently the entire verse is

$\cup - \cup \mid \times - \cup - \mid - \parallel \cup - \cup \mid \times - \cup - \mid -$

213. The *anapaestic* metres are likewise four in number, namely, the *muteddārik*, *bēsīt*, *munsariḥ*, and *muḳtaḍab*.

214. The *muteddārik* (المتدّارك *the continuous*) is one of the rarer B and later metres*. The basis is $\cup \cup -$ (anapaest), which is convertible into $- \cup -$ or $- -$. It is generally either trimeter or tetrameter, the former having occasionally an extra syllable in the second hemistich, so as to make it *مُرْقَل* (see § 206).

Trimeter $\times \cup - \mid \times \cup - \mid \times \cup - \parallel \times \cup - \mid \times \cup - \mid \times \cup -$

Tetrameter $\times \cup - \mid \times \cup - \mid \times \cup - \mid \times \cup - \parallel \times \cup - \mid \times \cup - \mid \times \cup - \mid \times \cup -$

215. The *bēsīt* (البسيط *the outspread*) is a favourite metre with C the older poets. Its base consists of $\cup - \cup -$ and $\cup \cup -$, which may be repeated so as to yield either a trimeter or a tetrameter verse. In either case, $\cup - \cup -$ may be converted into $- - \cup -$, and occasionally into $- \cup \cup -$, or even $\cup \cup \cup -$, though these changes are very rare indeed in the second place. $\cup \cup -$ may be changed in the first place into $- \cup -$, but either remains unaltered in the second, or becomes $- -$. Hence arise the following forms of the tetrameter.

$\cup - \cup - \mid \times \cup - \mid \times - \cup - \mid \cup \cup - \mid \cup - \cup - \mid \times \cup - \mid \times - \cup - \mid \times -$
 $\times \cup \cup - \mid \times \cup - \mid \times - \cup - \mid \cup \cup - \mid \times \cup \cup - \mid \times \cup - \mid \times - \cup - \mid \times -$

The trimeter may be either *acatalectic* or *catalectic*, more usually the D latter. If the loss of a syllable be extended, as is commonly the case, to both hemistichs, the last foot in each is $\cup - -$.

Acatalectic $\cup - \cup - \mid \times \cup - \mid \cup - \cup - \parallel \cup - \cup - \mid \times \cup - \mid \cup - \cup -$
 $\times \cup \cup - \mid \times \cup - \mid \cup - \cup - \parallel \times \cup \cup - \mid \times \cup - \mid \cup - \cup -$

* [In the *Muḥīṭ* the name of this metre is pronounced *muteddārak* i.e. *the supplied*, so called because it was ignored by ʿAl-Ḥalīl and afterwards supplied by ʿAl-Aḥfaś.]

- A Catalectic $\begin{array}{c} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \\ \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \end{array} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \parallel \begin{array}{c} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \\ \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \end{array} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$
 or $\begin{array}{c} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \\ \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \end{array} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \parallel \begin{array}{c} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \\ \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \end{array} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$

216. The *munsariḥ* (الْمُنْسَرِجُ *the flowing*) has the same base as the *bəsiṭ*, but the first $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$ is reduced to a single long syllable. It scarcely occurs in any form but the tetrameter.

- B $\begin{array}{c} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \\ \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \end{array} \mid \text{—} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \parallel \begin{array}{c} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \\ \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \end{array} \mid \text{—} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$

REM. This verse may also be scanned as follows.

$\begin{array}{c} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \\ \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \end{array} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \parallel \begin{array}{c} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \\ \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \end{array} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$

217. The *muḫtaḍab* (الْمُخْتَضَبُ *the lopped or curtailed*) is an exceedingly rare metre, the normal form of which appears to be

$\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \parallel \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$

- C It is said that $\text{—} \text{—}$ may be transferred to the first place, thus giving the form

$\text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \parallel \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$

REM. This verse may also be scanned as follows.

$\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \parallel \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$

218. The *ionic* metres are also four in number, namely, the *ramel*, *məddid*, *ḥafīf*, and *muḡtatt*.

- D **219.** The *ramel* (الرَّمَلُ *the running*) has for its base $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$ (ionicus a minore). It may be either dimeter or trimeter. The trimeter is almost invariably catalectic in the first hemistich, and generally so in the second; the dimeter very commonly in the second. For $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$ may be substituted $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$, and, though very rarely, $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$, or $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$, in which case the next foot must begin with a long syllable.

Dimeter

$\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \parallel \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$

Trimeter acatalectic

◡ ◡ -- | ◡ ◡ -- | ◡ ◡ -- || ◡ ◡ -- | ◡ ◡ -- | ◡ ◡ --

A

Trimeter catalectic

◡ ◡ -- | ◡ ◡ -- | ◡ ◡ -- || ◡ ◡ -- | ◡ ◡ -- | ◡ ◡ --

REM. a. The tetrameter catalectic is a late innovation, in which -- ◡ -- has entirely usurped the place of ◡ ◡ --.

-- ◡ -- | -- ◡ -- | -- ◡ -- | -- ◡ -- || -- ◡ -- | -- ◡ -- | -- ◡ -- | -- ◡ --

REM. b. In this metre the later poets occasionally rhyme the single hemistichs, as in the *ragèz*.

B

220. The *mèdîd* (المَدِيدُ the extended) has for its base two ◡ ◡ --, separated by ◡ ◡ -. Either ◡ ◡ --, but more especially the second, may be converted into -- ◡ --; the ◡ ◡ - into -- ◡ -.

◡ ◡ -- | ◡ ◡ - | ◡ ◡ -- || ◡ ◡ -- | ◡ ◡ - | ◡ ◡ --

The second hemistich is sometimes catalectic, whilst the first remains complete; but usually both are catalectic, in which case the last foot is almost invariably ◡ ◡ -, passing at the end of the verse into --.

◡ ◡ -- | ◡ ◡ - | ◡ ◡ -- || ◡ ◡ -- | ◡ ◡ - | ◡ ◡ --

C

REM. a. A very rare variety shortens the first hemistich and leaves the second complete.

◡ ◡ -- | ◡ ◡ - | ◡ ◡ -- || ◡ ◡ -- | ◡ ◡ - | ◡ ◡ --

REM. b. A still rarer species consists in a repetition of the entire base, each hemistich rhyming, as in the *ragèz*. The last foot is usually ◡ ◡ -.

◡ ◡ -- | ◡ ◡ - | ◡ ◡ -- | ◡ ◡ - || ◡ ◡ -- | ◡ ◡ - | ◡ ◡ -- | ◡ ◡ -

D

221. The *kafîf* (الْكَافِيفُ the light or nimble) is one of the more usual metres. Its base is ◡ ◡ -- and ◡ - ◡ -. The former may be varied by -- ◡ --, and more rarely by -- ◡ ◡ or ◡ ◡ ◡; the latter by -- ◡ ◡, and occasionally by -- ◡ ◡ or ◡ - ◡ -. The second hemistich is sometimes catalectic, in which case the last foot is by preference ◡ ◡ -.

◡ ◡ -- | ◡ - ◡ - || ◡ ◡ -- | ◡ - ◡ -

- A A far more usual form, however, is the trimeter, which is generally acatalectic, though we now and then find it defective in both hemistichs, or in the second only. In the acatalectic verse, --- may be substituted for the last ∪∪--, and in the catalectic -- for ∪∪-.

Acatalectic ∪∪-- | ∪∪-- | ∪∪-- || ∪∪-- | ∪∪-- | ∪∪--

Catalectic ∪∪-- | ∪∪-- | ∪∪-- || ∪∪-- | ∪∪-- | ∪∪--

222. The *muğtett* (الْمُجْتَتِ) the *docked* or *amputated*) has the same base as the *hafif*, but with the order of the component parts reversed, namely ∪∪-- | ∪∪-- . The changes which the feet may respectively undergo, are also the same as in the *hafif*. It is used only as dimeter acatalectic.

∪∪-- | ∪∪-- || ∪∪-- | ∪∪--

- [REM. The three metres *mudāri'* (§ 212), *muḳṭaḍab* (§ 217) and *muğtett* (§ 222) are not employed by the ancient poets. It is not improbable that they were invented by ʿl-Halil (Guyard, pp. 168, 272 seq.)]

II. THE FORMS OF WORDS IN PAUSE AND IN RHYME.

223. We must next treat of the forms which the final syllables of words assume at the end of a verse ; and as these are often identical with those which they take at the end of a sentence in ordinary prose, or of a clause in rhymed prose (التَّسْجِيعُ or السَّجْعُ), we shall handle the whole subject briefly in the following sections.

224. As a general rule, all final short vowels, both of the noun and verb, are dropped in prose ; e.g. جَاءَ زَيْدٌ, instead of زَيْدٌ مَرَرْتُ ; رَأَيْتُهُ, instead of زَيْدٌ بَزَيْدٌ, instead of بَزَيْدٌ ضَرَبْتُ الرَّجُلَ, for الرَّجُلَ رَأَيْتُهُ, for رَأَيْتُهُ مَرَرْتُ بِهِ. But in poetry it constantly happens that the vowel is retained as long, the tènwin of the noun disappearing at the same time ; e.g. وَفِيهِمْ شَبَتِ النَّارُ whilst fire is kindled among them ; فَيُ

مَحَلٍّ in a time of sterility, for مَحَلٍّ. In this case, the final A vowel fetha is invariably accompanied by an êlif; e.g. قِرَاعَ قَوْمٍ أَلْضَرْبَ as a people strike, who can strike well, for أَلْضَرْبَ; يَغْنُونَا إِيَّاهُ him they mean, for يَغْنُونَا.

REM. It is even allowable to double the final consonant after the elision of the vowel, as أَلْجَمَلُّ, for أَلْجَمَلُّ (أَلْجَمَلُّ), for أُحْمَرُ (أَلْجَمَلُّ); provided always that the penult letter has a vowel, B and that the final letter is neither êlif with hêmza (as أَلْخَطَا) nor êlif makṣûra (أَلْعَصَا, أَلْفَتَى).

225. The accusative termination اً generally becomes اِ, both in prose and poetry, though it occasionally disappears, like the short اِ, as أَصْبَحَ كَثِيبًا he was deeply grieved, for كَثِيبًا (i.e. كَثِيبًا). The termination نْ or اِ in the Energetic of verbs, and in the particle إِذَا or إِذْ, is also changed into ā; but نْ in the plural of the C Energetic becomes نُونٌ.

REM. The Bēnū Tēmīm [and K̄ais] use نْ for اِ, as أَقْبَلِي عَادِلًا spare reproach and blame, O fault-finder (عَادِلًا) for عَادِلَةً, and وَالْعِتَابَيْنِ for وَالْعِتَابَا.

226. The feminine terminations ة, ة, and ة, become ة, more rarely ت. The same remark naturally applies to ة and ة, D whether masculine or feminine; e.g. حَمْرَةً, for حَمْرَةً (name of a man). In rhyme, the ة may also be changed into ت, and the final vowel retained as long; e.g. وَأَهْلَكَ بِأَلْوَى فَأَنْحَلَّتِ whilst thy family are at el-Liwā and el-Hilla, for فَأَنْحَلَّتِ; وَقَتَاكَ أَلْعَنَاتِ and a liberator of prisoners, for أَلْعَنَاتِ.

REM. α. In this pausal ة the ه is sounded, ah, wherein it

- REM. α. If a word ending in ـ has lost another radical besides the final **و** or **ی**, the only pausal form admissible in the nominative and genitive is that which ends in the long vowel; e.g. **مُرٍ**, participle active IV. of **رَأَى**, *to see*, can become only **مُرِی**, never **مُرْ**.

REM. b. Words of the form **فَعَلْ**, in which the third radical is ^Aا, as **أَكَلَا** *fodder, forage*, usually let the ا become quiescent in all three cases, **أَكَلَا**; but sometimes the final vowel acts upon the ا so as to change it in the nominative into **و**, **أَكَلُوا**, and in the genitive into **ي**, **أَكَلُوا**.

228. The long vowels **اَ**, **يَ**, **وَ**, and **وُ**, usually remain unchanged; as **يَغْزُو**, **يَرْمِي**, **حُبْلَى**, **غَزَا**, **قَتَلَا**. In nouns derived from radicals third **و** or **ي**, the omission of final **يَ** is allowable in the nominative and genitive, as **أَلْتَعَالُ**, **أَلْتَنَادُ**, **أَلْقَاضُ**, for **أَلْتَنَادِي**, **أَلْقَاضِي**, **أَلْمَتَعَالِي**; the accusative, however, admits only the form **أَلْقَاضِي**, etc., and the vocative is **يَا قَاضِي**. B

REM. a. The interrogative pronoun **مَا**, when governed in the genitive by another word, is frequently shortened into **مَ** (see Vol. i. § 351, rem.). In pause, if governed by a noun, it takes the **هَآ** C **هَآ** (see § 230), as **مِثْلُ مَهْ**, **إِقْتِضَاءُ مَهْ**; but if governed by a preposition, it may also drop its final vowel, as **بِمَ** or **بِمَهْ**, **عَمَ** or **عَمَهْ**, **حَتَّامَ** or **حَتَّامَهْ**.

REM. b. The genitive and accusative suffixes of the first personal pronoun, **يَ** and **نِي**, have several pausal forms, namely, in prose **يَ** or **يَهْ**, **نِي** or **نِيَهْ** (see § 230), and in poetry also **يَا**, **نِيَا**; besides which, the long vowel may be altogether omitted, as **أَهَانِي**, **أَكْرَمَنِي**, **فَاتَّقُونِي**, **بَالُ**, **أَنْكَرَنُ**, **أَهَانُنُ**, **أَكْرَمَنُ**, **فَاتَّقُونُ**, **بَالِي**, **أَنْكَرَنِي**. D

REM. c. In rhyme the long vowels **يَ** and **وُ** are often expressed merely by **kèsa** and **ḍamma**, as **يَدِ** for **يَدِي**, **صَنَعُ** for **صَنَعُو** or **صَنَعُوا**. This is done for the purpose of preserving the uniformity of the **حَاشِيَّة** or *fringe* (i.e. the succession of rhyming syllables) throughout a poem.

- A **229.** When the penult letter of a word has no vowel, the vowel of the final letter may be transferred to it in pause; as **بَكَرَ**, **أَنْتَقَرُ**, **الْتَقَرُ** (أَنْتَقَرُ), **بَكَرَ** (بَكَرَ), **أَضْرَبَهُ**, **ضَرَبَتْهُ**, **رَحِلَهُ**, for **بَكَرَ** (بَكَرَ), **أَضْرَبَهُ**, **ضَرَبَتْهُ**, **رَحِلَهُ**. With regard to the vowel fetha, however, the grammarians are not agreed, some allowing the transference in all cases, e.g. **الْبَكْرُ** for **الْبَكَرُ**; others limiting it to the case in which the final consonant is êlif with B hêmza, as **الْخَبَأُ** for **الْخَبَأُ** or **الْخَبْءُ**. This transference is technically called **النَّقْلُ**.

- REM. a. The **نَقْلُ** is forbidden when it would give rise to a form which has no example in the language. For instance, there is no substantive of the form **فَعْلُ**, and therefore we should not say in pause **أَلْعِلْمُ** (أَلْعِلْمُ). Some grammarians, nevertheless, allow this form when the third radical is êlif with hêmza, as **الْبَرْدُ** (الْبَرْدُ), whilst C others recommend the change of the damma into kèsra, pronouncing **الْبَرْدُ** or **الْبَرْدِي** instead of **الْبَرْدُ** or **الْبَرْدُو** or substitute **و** or **ي** for the hêmza and say **الْبَرْدُو** or **الْبَرْدِي**.

[REM. b. According to the analogy of **أَضْرَبَهُ** for **أَضْرَبَهُ**, **أَرْمَهُ** for **أَرْمَهُ**, we find also **لَمْ تَلْقَمَهَا** for **لَمْ تَلْقَمَهَا** and even **أَخَافُهُ** for **أَخَافُهُ** and **بِهَا** for **بِهَا** (Nöldeke, *Zur Grammatik*, p. 14).]

- D **230.** Indeclinable words, ending in a vowel, take in their pausal form a final **ه**, technically called the **هَاءُ التَّوْقِفِ**, or **هَاءُ السَّكْتِ**, *the hā of pause* or *of silence*; e.g. **كَيْفَ**, **كَيْفَهُ**, for **كَيْفَ**, **كَيْفَهُ**. The same letter is added to verbal forms in which both the first and third radicals have disappeared; as **قَهْ** for **قِ** (imperat. of **وَقَى**), **لَمْ يَفِ** for **لَمْ يَفِ** (jussive of **وَقَى**); also **رَهْ** for **رَ**, and **لَمْ يَرَهْ** for **لَمْ يَر**, imperat. and jussive of **رَأَى** [comp. Vol. i. § 175, rem. α]. It may also be appended to those in which only the third radical is dropped; as

أَرْمِهِ for اِرْمِ (imperat. of رَمَى), لَمْ يَغْزُ for لَمْ يَغْزُ (jussive of غَزَا), A
اِقْتَدِهِ for اِقْتَدِ (imperat. VIII. of قَدَا) [comp. Vol. i. § 167, b, a,
footnote]. We likewise find it added to مَر, the shorter form of the
interrogative pronoun مَا (see § 228, rem. a); and to نِي and نِي, the
older forms of the genitive and accusative suffixes يِ and نِي (see
§ 228, rem. b); more rarely to كَ, as أَكْرَمْتَكُ for أَكْرَمْتُكَ.

REM. a. The هَاءُ الْوَقْفِ is never added either to nouns*, or to B
the perfect of verbs, or to adverbs ending in u (see Vol. i. § 363),
with the single exception, it is said, of مِنْ عَلٍ for مِنْ عَلٍ. The
Arabs do not say يَا رَجُلٌ, يَا رَجُلُهُ, يَا رَجُلَهُ, يَا رَجُلَهُ, for قَتَلَ, قَتَلَ,
etc.

REM. b. The ordinary pausal forms of أَنَا and هُوَ are أَنَا and هُوَ,
but we also find أَنَا (see Vol. i. § 89, 1, rem. b) and هُوَ. — هُوَلَا and
هَهِنَا are likewise used instead of the common هُوَلَا and هَهِنَا. C

231. Double consonants, as a rule, are not sounded as such
in pause; أَفْرُ, قَرُ, and أَجْرُ (for أَفْرُ, قَرُ, and أَجْرُ), rhyme with يَأْتِيرُ
and صُبْرُ (for يَأْتِيرُ and صُبْرُ). See, however, § 224, rem.

III. POETIC LICENSES.

232. The Arab poets allow themselves a certain latitude, both as
to the forms of words and the construction of sentences. We shall D
here confine ourselves to the illustration of some of the principal
licenses which fall under the former of these two heads.—The poet

* [An exception is given in the *Lisān* xx. 379, l. 4 from below.
If somebody says جَاءَنِي الْحَسَنُ *El-Hasan came to me*, another, as-
tonished to hear it, will exclaim اَلْحَسَنُو really now, *El-Hasan*? or if
جَاءَنِي عَمْرُو *Amr came to me*, اَعْمَرُو really now, *Amr*? with
prolongation of the final vowel and with the pausal ه. D. G.]

A may find himself obliged, by the exigencies of metre or rhyme (*ضُرُورَةُ الشَّعْرِ poetical necessity*), to make some slight change either in the *consonants* of a word, or in its *vowels*.

233. Under the former of these divisions we include: (*a*) the various affections of the letter ا; (*b*) irregularities in the use of the *tèsdîl*; (*c*) the employment of ancient uncontracted forms instead of the more modern contracted ones; and (*d*) the suppression of the letter ن in certain nominal and verbal forms.

B (a) *Affections of the letter 'Elif.*

234. 'Elif with *hèmza* (أ) may be affected in several different ways.

(*a*) It may be totally absorbed by a preceding vowel, like the أَلِفُ التَّوَصُّلِ (Vol. i. § 19); e.g. أَلَا أَتَبْلُغُ convey the news, for أَتَبْلُغُ, imperat. IV. of بَلَغَ; وَأَبْشُرُ and rejoice, for أَبْشُرُ, imperat. IV. of بَشَرَ; مُجِيرُ أُمِّ عَامِرِ he who gave shelter to 'Umm 'Āmīr (a name for the C hyæna), for مُجِيرُ أُمِّ; هَلْ رَأَيْتَ hast thou seen? for رَأَيْتَ; ذُو الشَّنَانِ one who hates, for الشَّنَانِ (الشَّنَانِ); لِمَا بِي to my end or fate, for لِمَا بِي (لِمَا بِي); وَتَسْمَعُ مِنْ تَحْتِ الْعَجَاجِ لَهَا أَرْمَلًا and thou hearest beneath the dust a sound produced by them, for أَرْمَلًا; إِنْ تُنْصِفُونَا if ye do us justice, O family of Marwān, we will draw near (to you), for يَا آلَ (أَلْ) رُؤُوسِهَا on their heads, for رُؤُوسِهَا;
D مَسَاتِي my hurt, for مَسَاتِي, from سَاءَ.

REM. By a double license, the verb رَأَى becomes first رَأَى and then رَأَى, pass. رِئِيَ [Vol. i. § 176, rem. b]; as مَنْ رَأَى مِثْلَ مَعْدَانَ بْنِ لَا خَلْقَ أَشْمَحَ who has seen the like of Ma'dān 'ibn Yahyā? إِلَّا عَارِفُ بَيْتِكَ رَأَى نَفْسَكَ لَمْ يَقُلْ لَكَ هَاتِيهَا no human being is more generous than thou art, save one (who), knowing thee (well), has seen thy soul (and) has not said (to thee), Give it here; وَمَنْ رِئِيَ مِنْ

قَبْلِي غَرِيقٌ مَدَامَج and was there (ever) seen before me one drowned A
in tears?

(b) When preceded by a vowelless consonant, the vowel of the *î* may be transferred to that consonant, as in the case of *مِنْ*, when followed by the article (Vol. i. § 20, d), *يَرَى* for *يَرَأَى* (Vol. i. § 176), and the like. Examples: *لَوْ أَنَّ* if that, for *لَوْ أَنَّ* on thy account, for *مِنْ أَجْلِكَ*; *عَنْ أَجْلِهَا* from her hills, for *عَنْ أَجْلِهَا*; *مِنْ أَنْ يَلْقَيْنَهُ* from meeting him, for *مِنْ أَنْ* if I make B
a raid upon Zubèid; *نِزَارٌ أَوَّلُو السَّدَادِ* the upright Nizār (pron. Nizārū-nū-lus), for *أَوَّلُو*: *يَا دَارًا أَمْسَى دَارِيسًا رَسْمَهَا*: O house, whose site has become desolate! (pron. dā-rā-nam), for *أَمْسَى*; *مِنْ آلِ أَبِي مُوسَى* of the family of Abū Mūsā, for *مِنْ آلِ* (أَل); *فَقُلْ إِذَا تَلَمَّنَاوِي* (أَل) say then to the enemy who now aims at doing mischief (pron. nāwī kīna, see Vol. i. § 20, b), for *أَلآنَ* (أَلآن); C
بَيْنَ التَّوَجِّ وَالْهَرَبِ now the life of hope revives; *أَلآنَ يَعُودُ حَيَاةُ الْأَمَلِ* between husband and wife, for *الْمَرْأَةِ*.

REM. In this case, the *î* is sometimes assimilated to a preceding *ى* or *و*; e.g. *فَلَمْ يُغْنِ الْبُكَاءُ عَلَيْكَ شَيْئًا* but to weep over thee was of no avail, for *شَيْئًا*.

(c) *î*, preceded by a vowel, may also be converted into the letter of prolongation which is homogeneous with that vowel; e.g. *فَلَمْ يَجِدْ* D
عِنْدَهُ التَّنَصُّرَ الَّذِي سَأَلَ but he did not find with him the help which he demanded, for *سَأَلَ* (the tribe of) Hudail asked the Prophet of God (to do) something base, for *سَأَلْتُ*; *وَأَنَا عَلَى وَفَارٍ* I obeyed them, though I was in haste, for *وَأَنَا*. This is most frequent when *î* is the third radical of a word, in which

236. The *ḥ* in *l-waḥḥ* is often retained in poetry, where it would naturally be elided in prose (see Vol. i. § 19, rem. e); e.g. *وَأَصْبِرِي* and *be patient*, for *وَأَصْبِرِي* *كَمَنْ* *إِقْتَادَ* like *one who leads*, for *وَأَصْبِرِي* *كَمَنْ* *إِقْتَادَ* *فِي* *الْبَذْلِ* *وَالْإِمْتِنَاعِ* *كَمَنْ* *إِقْتَادَ* *وَأَنْتَ* *لِشَاتِنَا* *إِنْ* *رَبِيبٌ* *وَالْإِمْتِنَاعِ* and *thou wast a fosterchild of our sheep*, for *وَأَنْتَ* *لِشَاتِنَا* *إِنْ* *رَبِيبٌ* *وَالْإِمْتِنَاعِ* *إِذَا* *جَاوَزَ* *الْإِثْنَيْنِ* *سَرٌّ* *لِشَاتِنَا* *أَبْنٌ* *وَالْإِثْنَيْنِ* when *a secret goes beyond two*, for *الْإِثْنَيْنِ*.

[REM. The vowel *ā* before a double consonant (Vol. i. § 25, rem.) is sometimes resolved into two *a*'s by inserting a *hénza*, as الضَّالُّونَ for الضَّالُّونَ, اِحْمَارٌ for اِحْمَارٌ. Nöldeke, *Zur Grammatik*, p. 8, thinks that this is the origin of many اِفْعَالٌ forms, as اِشْمَارٌ, اِبْدَعَرٌ, and, with substitution of ع for ا, اِحْزَالٌ, اِطْمَانٌ, اِبْدَعَرٌ.]

(b) *Irregularities in the use of the Təsdīd.*

237. The necessary *tæsdid* is occasionally dropped; e.g. *أَيُّهَا*, for *أَيُّهَا*, *which of them*; *فَلَوْ أَنَّكَ* if *that thou*, for *أَنَّكَ*; *وَعَنِي* *O thou that askest after them and after me!* for *وَعَنِي*. Similarly in the rare verbal forms *يَتَّقِي*, for *يَتَّسِعُ*, as *فَأَخْلَصُوهَا خِفَافًا كُلُّهَا يَتَّقِي بَاطِرٍ* and *they cleaned them (and made them, the swords) light, all of them guarding themselves (against the evil eye) by (their) lustre*, where others, however, read *يَتَّقِي*.

238. Sometimes too the *tasdid* is introduced where it would be inadmissible in prose*, through a false application of the pausal form mentioned in § 224, rem.; e.g. **مَنْ أَنْعَلَكَ**, for **أَنْعَلَكَ**, *the breast*;

* [Excepting the *sayi*, for we find (Zamahsari, *Faḥ* i. 145 *seq.*) **سَيِّ** for **سَي**, in order to rhyme with **وَرَمَ** **ثَمَ**. D. G.]

- A **فِي مِرْوَدَهَا**, for **الْأَضْعَمَا**, acc. sing. of **أَضْعَمٌ**, *large, stout*; **فِي مِرْوَدَهَا** *on her bodkin* (for applying *kohl* to the eyes), for **مِرْوَدَهَا**; **فِي الطَّوْلِ** *in the tether*, for **فِي الطَّوْلِ** ذَا; **لَقَدْ خَشِيتُ أَنْ أَرَى جِدْبًا فِي عَامِنَا ذَا**; **فِي الْقَصَبِ** *verily I was afraid of seeing drought (spreading) in this our year, after it had been fertile in herbage, as a fire (spreads) which encounters (a bed of) reeds* (**جِدْبًا** = **الْقَصَبِ** and **أُخْصَبًا** for **أُخْصَبًا** and **الْقَصَبِ**).
- B **جِدْبًا** and **أُخْصَبًا** and **الْقَصَبِ** for **أُخْصَبًا** and **الْقَصَبِ**.

(c) *Uncontracted Forms for contracted ones.*

- 239.** These are most common in the case of radicals in which the second and third letters are identical (Vol. i. § 119), and occur in both the verb and the noun; e.g. **وَأِنْ ضَنُّوْا** *though they be stingy*, for **ضَنُّوْا**; **وَأِنْ تَمْ تَقْتُلِيهِ فَأَلْبِي** *and if thou dost not (actually) kill him, yet come near it*, for **فَأَلْبِي** and **وَيَذْمِرُ** *and he is blamed*, poetic form in rhyme for **وَيَذْمِرُ**, and that for **وَيَذْمِرُ**; **وَلَا يَبْرُمُ الْأَمْرُ الَّذِي** *what he loosens cannot be bound fast, and what he binds fast cannot be loosened*, for **حَالٌ** and **يُحَلُّ**; **لِلْحَمْدِ لِلَّهِ الْعَلِيِّ الْأَجَلِّ** *praise belongs to God, the exalted, the glorious*, for **الْأَجَلِّ**. Compare, in Hebrew, **כְּבֹדִי**, **כְּבֹדִי**, and **כְּבֹדִי**.
- D similar forms*.

240. The poets also use the uncontracted forms of nouns derived from radicals third **و** and **ي**, instead of the contracted (see Vol. i. § 167, b, β); e.g. **وَرَأْسُهُ حَزُونًا بِرَأْسِ** *not past*, for **مَاضٍ**; **غَيْرَ مَاضِي**.

* **لِمَا يَعْزُوكَ** for **يَعْزُوكَ** in a tradition (*Fāiḥ* ii. 130, *Lisān* vi. 232) is said to be unique in prose. Abū 'Obèida suspects that it is a clerical error (**تَحْرِيفُ النَّقْلَةِ**) for **يَعْزُوكَ**. D. G.]

النَّابِي بْنِ زِيَادٍ *and his head we cut off (in retaliation) for the head of* A
 ʾen-Nābī 'ibn Ziyād, for النَّابِي سَحَاحُ مَوَالِي كِكَبَاشِ الْعُوسِ
freedmen as (fat as) rams of the breed called 'ūs, for مَوَالٍ لَا بَارَكَ
 فِي الْغَوَانِي *may God not bless the women! for* فِي الْغَوَانِي
 كَجَوَارِي يَلْعَبْنَ فِي الصَّحَرَاءِ *like girls sporting in the mead.*

REM. It sometimes happens that the usual accusative form
 وَلَوْ كَانَ عَبْدُ فَعَالِي is incorrectly transferred to the genitive; e.g. B
 مَوْلَى اللَّهِ مَوْلَى هَجَوْتُهُ وَلَكِنَّ عَبْدَ اللَّهِ مَوْلَى مَوَالِيَا
were 'Abdu'llāh a freedman, I would lampoon him, but 'Abdu'llāh is merely a freed-
man's freedman, for مَوْلَى مَوَالٍ.

(d) *Suppression of the letter ن in certain Nominal and Verbal Forms.*

241. This is a license of which the poets rarely avail themselves, but it occasionally occurs in the dual and plural of nouns, and in the C
 jussive and energetic of verbs; e.g. هُمَا خُطَّتَا إِذَا إِسَارَ وَمِنَّةٌ وَإِذَا دَمَ
these are alternatives, either captivity and quarter, or bloodshed, for
 أَبَيْ كُليبٍ إِنَّ عَمِّي أَلَلَّذَا قَتَلَا أَلْمَلُوكَ وَتَكَّنَا الْأَغْلَالَا ; خُطَّتَانِ
 ye Bənū Kuləib, 't was my two uncles who slew kings and burst
 asunder the yokes (of captives), for أَلَلَّذَا نُو ; أَلَلَّذَا نِ
 هُمَا كَنَفَا الْأَرْضِ أَلَلَّذَا نُو ; أَلَلَّذَا نِ these are the two pillars of the earth, which, if they were shaken,
 for أَلَلَّذَا نِ those whose blood was D
 shed unavenged at Fəlg, for أَلَلَّذَا نِ ; أَلَلَّذَا نِ
 اضْرِبْ عَنْكَ الْهَمُومَ إِنَّ طَرَقَتْ ; أَلَلَّذَا نِ drive away sad thoughts from thee, if they come by night, for
 اضْرِبْ عَنْكَ الْهَمُومَ إِنَّ طَرَقَتْ ; أَلَلَّذَا نِ (compare Vol. i. § 20, rem. c); and more frequently نَكُ , يَكُ ,
 for نَكُنُ , يَكُنُ , jussive of كَانَ .

REM. a. The same elision of ن occurs in the particle لَكِنْ but ;
 as وَلَاكِ اسْقِنِي but give me to drink.

- A REM. b. On the contrary, some poets have even dared to add the energetic ن to the perfect and participle of the verb; as
 أَقَاتِلَنَّ أَحْضِرَ دَامَ سَعْدُكَ إِن رَحِمْتَ مُتَمِّمًا *may thy good fortune last, if thou hast compassion upon one enslaved (by love), for دَامَ*; أَقَاتِلَنَّ أَقَاتِلَ *will he say, Bring in the witnesses!* for أَقَاتِلَ.

242. Other letters, and even whole syllables, are sometimes dropped under the pressure of metrical necessity*. For example,

- B (a) at the *beginning* of a word: لَانَ for آلَانَ (compare § 234, b), as in the half-verse
 لَانَ مِنْهَا بِالَّذِي أَنْتَ بَآئِعُ *but now disclose what thou mayest disclose of it*; لَاهِ for لَهِ, as
 لَاهِ ابْنُ عَمِّكَ لَا أَفْضَلْتَ فِي *what a man thy cousin is! thou dost not surpass me in noble qualities* (compare § 53, b, rem. e); لَاهَمَّ for لَهِمَّ, as
 لَاهَمَّ إِن كُنْتَ قَبِلْتَ حَجَّتِجَ *O God! if Thou hast accepted my pilgrimage* (حَجَّتِجَ rare pausal form for حَجَّتِي);
 اتَّقُوا، اتَّقِ for اتَّقُوا، اتَّقِ; تَقَوْا أَيْهَا *fear God in our case*, as
 تَقَوْا أَيْهَا تَقِ آلَهُ فِينَا *fear Him, O young men!* (b) In the *middle* of a word:
 يَسْتَطِيعُ، اسْتَطَاعَ for يَسْتَطِيعُ، اسْتَطَاعَ (طوع of X.), imperf. اسْتَطَاعَ; as
 وَلَوْ أَنَّنِي اسْتَطِيعُ يَوْمَ حِمَامِهِ لَقَاتَلْتُ عَنْهُ *and had I been able, on the day of his death, I would have fought in his defence* [cf. Vol. i. § 118, rem. b]. (c) At the *end* of a word: عَدَ for عِدَّةَ, in the half-verse
 وَأَخْلَفُوكَ عَدَ الْأَمْرِ الَّذِي وَعَدُوا *and they have failed to perform for thee the thing which they promised*; مِلْمَالِ (also written مَالِ مِلْمَالِ)
 فَمَا أَبْقَتِ الْأَيَّامُ مِلْمَالِ (see Vol. i. § 358, rem. c), as

* [We find in a tradition (Fāṭik ii. 229) نَهَى عَنْ تُغْلُوطَاتٍ for نَهَى عَنْ تُغْلُوطَاتٍ, as لَحْمَرُ is said for الْأَحْمَرُ (comp. Vol. i. § 345, rem. a). D. G.]

عِنْدَنَا *Fate has left* (lit. *the days have left*) *no wealth in our possession*; A
 عَلَى النَّبِيِّ (or عَلَى الْمَاءِ), for عَلَى النَّبِيِّ; 'an-nabī, for عَلَى النَّبِيِّ;
 مِنْ الرِّزْقِ, *mir-rizki*, for مِنْ الرِّزْقِ; عَنْ فُلَانٍ for عَنْ فُلٍ (owing to
 the vocative form يَا فُل, § 38, a, rem. c, 3). Similarly, بَلْعَبْرٍ,
 بَنُو الْحَرْثِ, بَنُو الْعَجْلَانِ, بَنُو الْعَنْبَرِ, بَلْعَبْرٍ, بَلْعَجْلَانٍ, etc.*
 Likewise, in quadriliteral and quinqueliteral plurales fracti (Vol. i.
 § 305), as ضَفَادٍ, ثَعَالٍ, ثَلَامٍ, ثَعَالٍ, أُرَانِبُ, ضَفَادِعُ, for ثَلَامٍ, ثَعَالٍ, أُرَانِبُ, ضَفَادِعُ; B
 e.g. وَلِضَفَادِي جَمِهِ نَقَاتُ and *the frogs in its pond are (always)*
croaking; قَدْ أَحْرَزَ شَكْبًا صُنْعُ الثَّلَامِ *the seams of which skilful*
apprentices have joined firmly together (قَدْ أَحْرَزَ for قَدْ أَحْرَزَ, § 234, b).
 Further, ثَالٍ, سَادٍ, for ثَالِثٍ, سَادِسٍ; as فَرُوجِكَ خَامِسٍ وَأَبُوكِ سَادِي
then thy husband is fifth and thy father sixth; قَدْ مَرَّ يَوْمَانِ وَهَذَا
 اثْنَالِي *two days are already passed and this is the third*. Proper C
 names are also liable to be abbreviated, especially in the vocative
 (see § 38, a, rem. c), but also in other cases, as نَعْمَ الْفَتَى تَعَشُو إِلَى
 نَارِهِ طَرِيفُ بَنُ مَالٍ لَيْلَةُ الْجُوعِ وَالْخَصَرُ
excellent is the man, the
light of whose fire thou makest for (from a distance) on a night of
hunger and cold, (namely) Turīf 'ibn Mālik (مَالٍ, or مَالٍ, for مَالِكٍ)†.

REM. The following are specimens of even still more violent
 abbreviations: الثَّمَانُ for الثَّمَانِ, as in the half-verse of Labid, دَوَسَ D
 الثَّمَانُ بِمَتَالِجِ فَأَبَانَ *the dwellings are desolate at Mutālī' and 'Abān,*

* [In later times we find even بَلْمُظْفَرٍ for أَبُو (أَبُو) (Ibn abī
 'Oṣeibi'a, ii. 108). D. G.]

† [Very rare is an abbreviation like that in يَا أُمُّ فَارِعَ لَا تَكُومِي
 for يَا أُمُّ فَارِعَةَ ('Abū Zēid, *Nawādir*, 30, 58). D. G.]

- A and also for *الْمَنَابَا* (plur. of *الْمَنِيَّةُ*), as in *تُرِيكَ أَلْمَنَا بِرُؤُوسِ الْأَسَلِ* will let thee see death at the points of the spears; *السَّبَابُ* for *السَّبَابُ* (plur. of *سَبِيَّةٌ*), used by 'Alkama in the half-verse *مُقَدَّمٌ بِسَبَا* having its mouth covered and enwrapped with strips of linen; *الْحَبَا* for *الْحَبَابُ*, as in the words of 'Ibn Durëid, *أُورَى بِهَا نَارَ الْحَبَا* he strikes out of them small sparks of fire; *الْحَبَى*, used by *el-'Aggāg* for *الْحَمَامُ* in the half-verse *قَوَاطِنَا مَكَّةُ*
- B *الْحَبَى* *مِنْ وَرَقِ الْحَبَى* the slate-coloured doves which inhabit Mëkka; *الْعَنَا* for *الْعِنَانُ*, in the words *إِذَا أُعْيَيْتُ أَطْلَقْتُ الْعَنَا* till, when I was exhausted, I let go the reins; *حَجَا* for *حَجَاجٌ*, in the words *فِي حَجَا حَاجِبِ ضَمِرٍ* on the bone of a slender eyebrow; and even *رَاَ* for *رَحِمٌ* the womb (see *el-Makḳarī*, tom. i. p. ١٢٠, l. 11, and tom. ii. p. ٢٠٠, l. 8), and *مَرٌ* for *مَرْحَبًا*, according to one rendering of the line *فَلَمْ يَقُمْ إِلَّا بِمِقْدَارٍ أَنْ قُلْتُ لَهُ أَهْلًا وَسَهْلًا وَمَرٌ* but he stopped only for the space of time that I could say to him, Welcome (others think that *وَمَرٌ* is here nothing more than the usual pausal form of *وَمَرٌ* and passed on). Such abbreviations are not, however, more violent than the Homeric *γέλω, ἰδρῶ, ἰχῶ, δῶ*, for *γέλωτα, ἰδρῶτα, ἰχῶρα, δῶμα*, and the like.
- C

243. Under the second of the two heads mentioned in § 232, namely, poetic licenses in regard to the vowels of a word, we include (a) the lengthening of a short vowel in the middle of a word; (b) the shortening of a long vowel; (c) the suppression of a short vowel; (d) the addition of a final vowel to certain verbal and pronominal forms, and to some particles; and (e) the irregular use of the *tênwin* and other case-endings in the noun.

(a) *The lengthening of a short vowel in the middle of a word.*

244. This is technically called *الإشباع*, *filling full* or *saturation*, and is not uncommon with the vowels *a* and *i*, rarer in regard to *u*.

Examples: *يَنْبَاعُ*, for *يَنْبُعُ*, in the half-verse of 'Antara, *يَنْبَاعُ مِنْ* A
دِفْرَى غَضُوبٍ جَسْرَةٍ flows from behind the ears of a fierce, bulky
she-camel; *أَتَكَلَّمُ*, for *أَتَكَلَّلُ*, in the words *عَلَى* *فَلْتُ وَقَدْ حَرَّتْ عَلَى*
أَتَكَلَّمُ I said, after she had fallen upon her breast; *مُنْتَزِعُ*, for
مُنْتَزَحُ, in the hemistich *وَمِنْ ذَمِّ الرِّجَالِ بِمُنْتَزَحٍ* and (art thou) far
 removed (i.e. quite free) from the blame of men? *عَمُودُ*, for *عَمُودُ*, in
 the half-verse *فِيهِ مِنَ الذَّهَبِ الْبُرَيْرِ عَمُودُ* B
 purest gold; *الصَّيَارِفُ* and *الدَّرَاهِمُ*, for *الصَّيَارِفُ* and *الدَّرَاهِمُ*, in the
 hemistich *نَفَى الدَّرَاهِمِ تَنَقَّادُ الصَّيَارِفِ* as the money-changers scatter
 the dirhams, whilst selecting (those that are of full weight); *أَنْظُرُ*,
 for *أَنْظُرُ*, in the words *مِنْ حَيْثُمَا سَلَكُوا أَذْنُو فَاَنْظُرُوا* I draw near to
 whatever place they go and look (at them).

(b) The shortening of a long vowel.

245. This may take place either in the middle or at the end of a C
 word. (a) Examples in the middle of a word: *قَتَمَرُ*, for *قَتَامَرُ*, as in the
 words *فِي قَتَمِهِ* in its dust or its darkness; *عَوَاوِرُ*, plur. of *عَوَارُ* a mote
 in the eye, *مَقَاصِرُ*, plur. of *مَقْصُورَةٌ* a cell or chamber, for *عَوَاوِيرُ*,
مَقَاصِيرُ, and the like; *هَذَا* (ـ), instead of *هَذَا* (ــ), as in the
 half-verse *إِلَى كَمْ هَذَا الْهَجْرَانُ فِي كُلِّ لَيْلَةٍ* how long shall this
 estrangement last every night? *اللَّهُ* (ـ), for *اللَّهُ* (ــ), as in the D
 hemistich *أَلَا لَا بَارَكَ اللَّهُ فِي سُهَيْلٍ* may God not bless Suhail! and,
 with double license, *كَتَّانُ*, for *كَتَّانُ*, in the words *بَيْنَ الْحَرِيرِ وَبَيْنَ*
أَلْتَكُنَّ partly silk and partly linen. (b) Examples at the end of
 a word: *النَّوَاحِ*, for *النَّوَاحِي*, as in the hemistich *رِيَشِ*
الْأَيْدِ like the tips of the feathers of a dove of Nâgd;

- A for *الْأَيْدِي*, as in the words *دَوَامِي الْأَيْدِي* with their fore-feet bleeding ;
 النَّاسِ, for *النَّاسِي*, as in the words *وَأَنْوَابَا* from one
 who forgets robes and garments. [Examples in prose are *لَا يَأُلُّ* for
لَا يَأْثُرُ not falling short and *لَا أَدْرِي* for *لَا أَدْرِي* I know not. Comp.
 Vol. i. § 6, footnote. D. G.] The 1st pers. plur. of the Perfect,
قَتَلْنَا (— —), is also sometimes shortened into *قَتَلْنَا* (— —), but the
 élif may be retained in writing, in order to distinguish it from the
 B 3d pers. plur. fem.; e.g. *وَمُسْتَسْلِمٍ نَفْسَنَ عَنْهُ* and many a one on the
 point of surrender have we relieved; *وَلَوْ أَدْرَكْنَاهُ لَقَضَيْنَا نَحْبًا بِهِ* and
 if we had overtaken him, we would surely have slaughtered him.

(c) *The suppression of a short vowel.*

246. (a) In the middle of a word this license is of most frequent
 C occurrence in the case of the very few nouns of the form *فِعْلٌ*
 (becoming *فِعْلٌ*), and of verbs of the forms *فَعِلَ* and *فَعَلَ* (becoming
فَعِلَ, see Vol. i. § 183, rem. b), and *فَعِلَ* (becoming *فَعِلَ*); as *كَمَا*
وَأِنْ أَهْجَهُ يَضْجَرُ كَمَا ضَجَرَ بَارِلٌ مِنَ الْإِبِلِ دَبَرَتْ صَفْحَتَاهُ as horses scatter camels by their charge
 (for *الْإِبِلَا*); *وَكَا مَلَهُ* and if I lampoon him, he cries out, like a nine-year-old camel
 D whose sides and withers are galled (for *ضَجَرَ*, *الْإِبِلِ*, and *دَبَرَتْ*);
أَوْ مِثْلَ مَا جُزِيَ هَارُونَ وَدَاوُدُ or as Aaron and David were recompensed
 (for *جُزِيَ*); *إِذَا مُطِيَ حَنٌّ بِوَرْدٍ حُدَالٍ* when it is drawn, it twangs
 with the curved bow (makes the curved bow twang). Rarer instances
 are exemplified by *رَجُلٌ*, for *رَجُلٌ*, as in the half-verse *فَقَدْ كَانَ*
وَكُنْتُمْ رِجَالًا for he was a man, and ye are men; *الْكَبِيرُ*, for
هِيَ الْأَنْفُسُ الْكَبِيرُ الْآتِي (plur. of *الْكَبِيرُ*), in the words *هِيَ الْأَنْفُسُ الْكَبِيرُ الْآتِي* these are

A Imperative, and those persons of the Jussive which end in a consonant; as *أَنَاحُوا أَلْهَاطِيَا قَدْ أَمِلْتُ وَكَلَّتِ* *they made the camels lie down, which were tired and weary* (for *كَلَّتِ*); *يَقُولُونَ لَا تَهْلِكْ أَسَى* (for *كَلَّتِ*); *وَتَجَلَدِ* *they say, Do not die of grief, but bear it like a man* (for *تَجَلَدِ*); *وَأِنْ يَأْتِكَ الْآعْدَاءُ بِأَلْجَهْدِ أَجْهِدِ* (for *تَجَلَدِ*); *and if the foe come upon thee with all their might, I will do my very best* (for *أَجْهِدِ*).

B REM. The vowel preceding the final consonant may have been originally long, and only shortened because of its being in a shut syllable, but it is, nevertheless, not restored after the addition of this kèsra. For example: *غَزَتْ* (for *غَزَاتِ*, 3d pers. sing. fem. Perf. of *غَزَا*, Vol. i. § 166, a, rem.) becomes *غَزَتِ*, not *غَزَاتِ*; *طَرِ* (for *طِيرَ*, 2d pers. sing. masc. Imperat. of *طَارَ*, Vol. i. § 152) becomes *طَرِ*, not *طِيرِ*; *أَنْتُمْ* (for *أَنَامُ*, 1st pers. sing. Jussive of *نَامَ*, Vol. i. § 151) becomes *أَنْمِ*, not *أَنَامِ*.

C 248. The same license is allowable in the case of particles which end in a consonant, particularly such as are monosyllabic; e.g. *لَمَّا تَزَلْ بِرِحَالِنَا وَكَأَنَّ قَدْ* *they (the camels) have not yet moved off with our saddles, but it is as good as done* (namely, *وَكَأَنَّ قَدْ زَالَتْ* *but it is as if they had already moved off*); *أَحْبَابَ أَنْفُسِنَا كَمْ ذَا أَلْتَوَى وَكَمْ* *beloved of our souls, how long will this absence continue? how long?*

D REM. The reader may here be reminded that, instead of the ordinary pronominal forms *أَنْتُمْ*, *هُمُ*, and *كُمُ*, and the verbal form *فَعَلْتُمْ*, the poets constantly make use of the archaic *أَنْتُمْ*, *هُمُ*, *كُمُ*, and *فَعَلْتُمْ*. The final vowel is in these cases more usually long than short*. When *هُمُ* is changed into *هِمُ*, either *هِمُ* or *هِيَمُ* may be used.

* The quantity of the singular suffix *هُ* also varies.

- (e) *The irregular use of the tənwin and other case-endings in the noun.* A

249. The poets constantly use the triptote inflection of a noun, when the diptote inflection alone is admissible in prose. This remark applies equally to the singular and the broken plural. Examples of the singular: *تَضَوَّعَ مِسْكًا بَطْنُ نَعْمَانَ إِنْ مَشَتْ بِهِ زَيْنَبُ فِي نِسْوَةٍ* *the vale of Na'mān is scented with musk, if Zaidib walks in it amid (her) perfumed attendants* (for زَيْنَبُ); *قَالُوا يَزُورُكَ أَحْمَدُ وَتَزُورُهُ* *they say, 'Ahmed visits thee and thou visitest him* (for أَحْمَدُ); *يَسْقِيهِمْ* *they say, 'Ahmed visits thee and thou visitest him* (for أَحْمَدُ); *ذُو مِرَّةٍ أَحْوَرُ* *a smart black-eyed (page) hands them wine* (for أَحْوَرُ); *قَدْ قَالَ شَاعِرُ كِنْدَةَ فِيهَا مَضَى* *the poet of (the tribe of) Kinda has said in olden time* (for كِنْدَةَ); *تَقُولُ سَلِ الْغُرُوفَ يَحْيَى بْنُ أَكْثَمٍ* *thou sayest, Ask largesse of Yahyā 'ibn 'Ektām* (for أَكْثَمٍ); *وَنَبِّهْتُ* *and I warned 'Othmān to repel the dangers which threatened him* (for عُثْمَانَ); *وَنَسِيتُ أَنَّ اللَّهَ أَخْرَجَ آدَمَ* *and thou forgettest that God turned Adam out of it* (for آدَمَ); *فَلَا تُودِعَنَّ الدَّهْرَ سِرَّكَ أَحْمَقًا* *never then entrust thy secret to a fool* (for أَحْمَقًا). Examples of the broken plural: *إِلَّا وَهُمْ شُرَكَاءُ فِي دِمَائِهِمْ* *but they are companions in (shedding) their blood* (for شُرَكَاءُ); *شَعَثُ عَجَائِزٍ مِثْلُ مَسَاعِيرُ* *(horses) with shaggy manes, on which ride warriors who stir up the fire of their battle* (for مَسَاعِيرُ); *عَجَائِزُ مِثْلُ الْأَفَاعِي خَمْسًا* *old women, like vipers, five in number* (for عَجَائِزُ); *مَنَارِلُ* *I visited dwellings at 'Orðitināt* (for مَنَارِلُ).— Other instances of the irregular tənwin are: in the vocative, as *أَمَحْمَدُ وَلَا أَنْتَ ضَنْ، نَجِيَّةٍ مِنْ قَوْمِهَا وَالْفُحْلُ فُحْلُ* *the peace of God, O Maṭar, be upon her* (for يَا مَطَرُ عَلَيْهَا); *أَمَحْمَدُ وَلَا أَنْتَ ضَنْ، نَجِيَّةٍ مِنْ قَوْمِهَا وَالْفُحْلُ فُحْلُ* *O Muhammad, since thou art the offspring of a highborn* (for يَا مَطَرُ عَلَيْهَا).

- A lady in her tribe, and thy father was a noble (for أُمِّحَمَّدٍ);
 يَا عَدِيًّا لَقَدْ وَقَّتْكَ آلَاؤِي O Adī, every circumstance has com-
 bined to protect thee (where a writer in prose would have said
 لَا ; after لَا, used لِنَفْيِ الْجَنَسِ (§ 39), as جَزَاهُ اللَّهُ خَيْرًا ; (يَا عَدِيُّ
 is there no man (may God reward him with good) — ? (for رَجُلٌ ;
 in words of the form فَعَالٍ (Vol. i. § 98, rem. c ; § 309, c, θ), as
 B حَذَارِ حَذَارٍ حَذَارٍ مِنْ فَوَارِسِ دَارِمٍ beware, beware of the horsemen of Dārim
 (for حَذَارِ حَذَارٍ) ; أَبَا مَطَرٍ هَلُمَّ إِلَى صَلَاحٍ O Abū Maṭar, come hither
 to Ṣalāḥ (i.e. Mēkka, for صَلَاحٍ) ; and in proper names before بَنُ
 son of (Vol. i. § 21, b), as جَارِيَةٌ مِنْ قَيْسِ ابْنِ ثُعْلَبَةَ a young woman
 (of the tribe) of Kais 'ibn Tu'labu (pron. Kaisini 'bni, for قَيْسِ بْنِ).

250. On the contrary, the tēnwin is sometimes suppressed in
 C cases where it could not be dispensed with in prose ; as فَمَا كَانَ neither Hiṣn nor Hābis
 surpassed Mirdās in any assembly (for مِرْدَاسًا) ; عَمْرُو الْأَذَى هَشَمُ الثَّرِيدِ
 Amr, who broke up (bread to make) soup for his people (for
 عَمْرُو الْأَذَى, but there is another reading, عَمْرُو الْأَعْلَى هَشَمُ the noble
 Amr broke up) ; فَالْفَيْتُهُ غَيْرُ مُسْتَعْتَبٍ وَلَا ذَاكِرِ اللَّهِ إِلَّا قَلِيلًا and I
 found him not seeking (the Lord's) favour, and seldom thinking upon
 D God (for ذَاكِرٍ) ; وَحَىٰ مُحَارِبِ الْأَبْطَالِ قَدَمًا and the tribe of Moḥārib,
 heroes of old (for مُحَارِبٍ) ; كَسِتَوْرٍ مَغْلُوبٍ يَصُولُ عَلَى الْكَلْبِ like an
 overmatched cat, which springs at the dog (for كَسِتَوْرٍ) ; عَلَى جَسِيرٍ
 upon a yellow body, smoother than gold (for جَسِيرٍ, and أَمْلَسٍ
 in rhyme for أَمْلَسٍ, instead of أَمْلَسٍ, § 249).

251. The genitive plural in -ِينَ is sometimes changed in rhyme
 into -ِينَ (see Vol. i. p. 236, note) ; as وَقَدْ جَاوَزْتُ حَدَّ الْأَرْبَعِينَ

since I have already passed the limit of forty (for *الْأَرْبَعِينَ*) ; لَا بَارَكَ A
 may God not bless sixty and odd years! (for *وَسِتِينَ* فِي بَضْعِ
 وَأَنْكُرْنَا زَعَانِفَ آخَرِينَ ; (وَسِتِينَ) and we ignore the riffraff of other
 tribes (for *آخَرِينَ*).

252. In verbs and nouns derived from radicals of which the third consonant is *و* or *ي*, the poets not unfrequently use the Indicative form of the Imperfect instead of the Subjunctive or Jussive, and the nominative case instead of the accusative. Examples of B the verb: *أَبَى اللَّهُ أَنْ أَسُو بِأُمِّ وَلَا أَبٍ* God has not willed that I should be of noble descent either on the mother's or the father's side (for *أَسُو*) ; *فَأَلَيْتُ لَا أُرَى لَهَا مِنْ كَلَالَةٍ وَلَا مِنْ حَفَى حَتَّى تَلَاقِي* ; (أَسُو) and I swear, I will not show her pity for weariness or foot-soreness, until she encounters Muhammad (for *تَلَاقِي*) ; *مَتْنِكَ نَفْسُكَ* ; (تَلَاقِي) *إِذَا غَرَّ أَنْ يُمَسِّي أَلْفَتِي فِيهِ أَوْ يَضْحَا* C when to spend an evening or a forenoon in it, fills a man with vain delight (for *إِذَا غَرَّ*) *أَلَمْ يَأْتِكَ وَالْأَتْبَاءُ تَنْبِي بِمَا لَاقَتْ لَبُونُ بَنِي زِيَادٍ* ; (أَلْفَتِي أَنْ يُمَسِّي فِيهِ) did he not bring thee word—for news travels fast—of what has befallen the milch-camel of the Benu Ziyād? (for *يَأْتِكَ*) ; *هَجَوْتُ زَبَّانَ* ; (يَأْتِكَ) *ثُمَّ جِئْتُ مُعْتَذِرًا مِنْ هَجْوِ زَبَّانَ لَمْ تَهْجُو وَلَمْ تَدْعِ* D thou didst lampoon Zabbān, and then thou camest making excuses for having lampooned Zabbān,—(so that) thou didst neither lampoon him nor let it alone (for *تَهْجُ*) *عُوجِي عَلَيْنَا يُحَيِّيكِ ابْنُ عَنَابٍ* ; (تَهْجُ) turn aside to us, (and) 'Ibn 'Annāb will salute thee, i.e. receive thee with honour (for *يُحَيِّيكِ*) ; *وَمَنْ أَرَادَ مَا أَنْسَ لَا أَنْسَاهُ آخِرَ عَيْشَتِي* whatever I forget, I shall not forget him to the end of my life (for *أَنْسُهُ*). Examples of the noun: *وَمَنْ أَرَادَ أَلْتَأَسَى فِي مُصِيبَتِهِ* and whoever seeks for consolation in his misfortune (for *أَلْتَأَسَى*) *وَجَدْتُ مَعَالِيكَ أَصْلًا لِشِعْرِي* ; (أَلْتَأَسَى) I found thy noble qualities

- A *a subject for my poetry* (for مَعَالِيكَ); تَرَكْن رَاعِيَهُنَّ بِمِثْلِ الشَّنِّ; *they have left their shepherd like an old (useless) waterskin* (for رَاعِيَهُنَّ); كَأَنَّ أَيْدِيَهُنَّ فِي أَلْقَاعِ الْقَرِيقِ *as if their forefeet were on level ground* (for أَيْدِيَهُنَّ); وَلَوْ كَانَ طَاوِي أَحْشَا جَائِعًا; *and if he had been hungry and famished* (for طَاوِي).

253. The poets occasionally use pausal forms (see §§ 223—230)

- B out of pause. For example: رَضِيَ for رَضَى, in the verse بِسُرُورٍ سَيَدِي رَضِيَ *with joy, my lord, will I wait upon him, if he be contented with me, and with my hearing and sight* (i.e. most willingly and cheerfully); رَزَى for رَزَى = رَزَى, in the words مَا إِنْ رَزَى أَحَدٌ فِي النَّاسِ نَعْلَمُهُ كَمَا رَزَيْتَ *no one among men, whom we know, was afflicted as thou art afflicted*; هُوَ for هُوَ, in the half-verse فَلَا هُوَ مِنَ الدُّنْيَا مُضِيعٌ نَصِيْبُهُ *and so he does not lose his share of (the pleasures of) this world*.

[REM. At the end of a word the ténwin is sometimes used instead of the letter of prolongation (حَرْفُ الْإِطْلَاقِ), as some read in the Kor'an lxxxix. 3 يَسْرِ for يَسْرِي (see Bèidāwī ii. 401, l. 13).

This ن is called تَنْوِينُ التَّرْتِيلِ *the trilling or quavering prolongation and modulation of the voice* (لِلتَّطْوِيلِ), as in سَقِيَتِ الْغَيْثُ أَيْتَهَا (لِلتَّطْوِيلِ),

- D أَلْخِيَامُنْ (see Fleischer, *Kl. Schr.* i. 323 seq. and comp. supra § 225, rem.). In like manner the أَلْفُ التَّدْبَةِ (Vol. i. § 368, rem. b) is sometimes lengthened to أَنْ, as in a tradition given by Zamahsari (*Faḥḥ* ii. 95) Fátima is heard crying for her two sons يَا حَسَنَانُ يَا حُسَيْنَانُ. The addition of the ن to a fettered rhyme (§ 193), called التَّنْوِينُ الْغَالِي, is condemned by many grammarians. D. G.]

INDEXES.

I. TECHNICAL TERMS, MNEMONIC WORDS, PARADIGMS, ETC.

The Roman numerals indicate the volume, the Arabic numerals the page. The letters A B C D refer to divisions of the page.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p style="text-align: center;">ا</p> <p>أَبْجَد, i. 28 c.</p> <p>أَبْحَرُ الشَّعْرِ, ii. 359 B, 361 c.</p> <p>أَبْنِيَةُ الْمَبَالِغَةِ, i. 136 D.</p> <p>الْإِتْسَاعُ, ii. 191 B.</p> <p>اتِّفَاعَل, i. 40 c.</p> <p>اتَّفَعَلَ, i. 38 c.</p> <p>الْإِخْبَارُ, i. 274 B; ii. 73 c.</p> <p>أُحْتُتِ الْقُصَّةُ, i. 10 D.</p> <p>الْقُنْحَةُ</p> <p>الْكُسْرَةُ</p> <p>الْإِخْتِصَاصُ, ii. 76 D, 77 c, 93 A.</p> <p>أُخَوَاتُ إِنَّ, ii. 80 B.</p> <p>كَانَ ... , ii. 15 c, 16 A, 101 D, 103 D, 258 c.</p> <p>أَدَوَاتُ, i. 278 c.</p> | <p>أَدَاةُ التَّعْرِيفِ, i. 269 A.</p> <p>إِذَا الْمَفَاجَأَةُ أَوْ الْفَجَائِيَّةُ, i. 284 A; ii. 157 D, 345 c.</p> <p>أَرْجُوزَةٌ, ii. 351 B.</p> <p>الْإِرْدَوَاجُ, i. 220 D, 222 D.</p> <p>أَسْبَابُ الْإِمْتِنَاعِ مِنَ الصَّرْفِ, i. 245 B.</p> <p>الْإِسْتِثْنَاءُ, ii. 335 D.</p> <p>الْمُتَّصِلُ</p> <p>الْمُفَرَّقُ ... , ii. 336 A.</p> <p>الْمُنْقَطِعُ , 342 D.</p> <p>الْإِسْتِدْرَاكُ, ii. 235 D, 334 c, 335 B.</p> <p>اسْتِفْعَال, i. 116 B.</p> <p>اسْتَفْعَلَ, i. 44 A.</p> <p>اسْتِفْهَامُ إِنْكَارِيٍّ أَوْ بِمَعْنَى التَّنْفِي, ii. 336 B.</p> |
|---|--|

- الْإِسْتِقْبَالِ, ii. 21 B.
 الْإِسْمُ, i. 104 D.
 اِسْمُ الْإِشَارَةِ, i. 105 A, 264 D.
 آلَاةٌ ... , i. 109 C, 130 B.
 إِنَّ ... , ii. 80 B, 260 B.
 اَلتَّفْضِيلُ ... , i. 140 C, 141 B.
 اِسْمُ جَامِدٍ, i. 106 D.
 اِسْمُ الْجَمْعِ, i. 181 A, 224 D, 234 A.
 جَنْسٍ ... , i. 107 B, 180 D, 224 D, 234 A.
 اَلْحَدِثُ ... , Add. et Corrigenda (Vol. i. 110 A).
 اَلزَّمَانِ ... , i. 109 B, 124 D.
 اَلظَّرْفِ ... , i. 109 C, 125 B.
 اَلْعَدِدِ ... , i. 105 A.
 اِسْمُ عَلَمٍ, or اِسْمُ عَلَمٍ, i. 107 B.
 اِسْمُ عَيْنٍ, i. 107 B.
 اَلْقَاعِلِ ... , i. 109 A, 131 B.
 اَلْفِعْلِ ... , i. 109 A, 110 A, 296 B.
 كَانَ ... , ii. 100 A.
 اَلْكَثْرَةِ ... , i. 109 D, 148 B.
 اَلْكَيْفِيَّةِ ... , i. 110 A, 165 B.
 لَا ... , ii. 98 B.
 اَلْمَبَالِغَةِ ... , i. 137 B.
 اِسْمُ مُجَرَّدٍ, i. 107 A.
 اَلْإِسْمُ اَلْمَحْقَرُ, i. 166 B.
 اِسْمُ اَلْمَرَّةِ, i. 109 B, 123 B.
 اِسْمُ مَزِيدٍ فِيهِ, i. 107 A.
 مُشْتَقٌّ
 اِسْمُ مَصْدَرٍ, i. 117 D; ii. 59 D.
 اَلْإِسْمُ اَلْمَصْفَرُ, i. 110 A, 166 B.
 اِسْمُ مَعْنَى, i. 107 B.
 اَلْمَفْعُولِ ... , i. 109 A, 131 C.
 اَلْمَكَانِ ... , i. 109 B, 124 D.
 اَلْإِسْمُ اَلْمُكَبَّرُ, i. 166 B.
 اَلْمَنْسُوبُ ... , i. 109 D, 149 C.
 اَلْمَوْصُولُ ... , i. 105 B; ii. 317 C.
 اِسْمُ نَكْرَةٍ, ii. 98 C, 123 A.
 اِسْمُ اَلشَّوْعِ, i. 109 B, 123 D.
 اَلْوَحْدَةِ ... , i. 109 C, 147 B D.
 اَلْوَعَاءِ ... , i. 109 D, 149 A.
 اَلْإِسْنَادُ, ii. 250 B.
 اَلْإِشْبَاعُ, i. 249 D; ii. 354 C, 382 D.
 اَلْإِشْعَامُ, i. 71 A, 84 B, 89 B.
 اَلْأَصَوَاتُ, i. 294 B.
 اَلْإِضَافَةُ, ii. 125 B, 198 C.
 إِضَافَةُ اَلْبَيَانِ أَوْ اَلْإِضَافَةُ اَلْبَيَانِيَّةُ, ii. 199 B, 205 A, 234 A.
 اَلْإِضَافَةُ اَلتَّبَعِيَّةُ, ii. 199 C.
 إِضَافَةُ اَلتَّشْبِيهِ, ii. 234 A.
 إِضَافَةُ اَلتَّفْسِيرِ أَوْ اَلتَّفْسِيرِيَّةُ, ii. 205 A, 234 A.

الإِضَافَةُ الْحَقِيقِيَّةُ, ii. 64 D, 198 C,
233 A.

إِضَافَةُ الْعَيْنِ إِلَى الْمَعْنَى, i. 202 D.

الإِضَافَةُ غَيْرُ الْحَقِيقِيَّةِ, ii. 64 B, 198 C.

الإِضَافَةُ غَيْرُ الْمَحْضَةِ, ii. 198 C.

الإِضَافَةُ اللَّفْظِيَّةُ, ii. 198 C.

الْمَحْضَةُ ...

الْمَعْنَوِيَّةُ ...

إِضَافَةُ الْمَوْصُولِ إِلَى الصِّفَةِ, ii.
232 D.

الإِضْرَابُ, ii. 335 B.

الإِغْرَاءُ, ii. 74 D.

الْغَنِيَّةُ, ii. 351 B.

أَفْعَالُ, plur. fr., i. 226 C, 227 D;
secondary pl. fr., 231 D.

أَفْعَالِي, plur. fr., i. 228 A; second-
ary pl. fr., 231 D.

أَفْعَالُ, plur. fr., i. 169 A, 211 A.

أَفْعَالُ الْإِنْسَاءِ, ii. 108 D.

الْتَعَجُّبُ ... , i. 98 C.

الْحَسِ ... , ii. 50 B.

الْشُرُوعُ ... , ii. 108 D.

الْأَفْعَالُ غَيْرُ الْمُتَعَدِّيَةِ, i. 51 A.

أَفْعَالُ الْقَلْبِ, ii. 48 D, 50 C, 51 A B,
329 B.

الْأَفْعَالُ اللَّارِمَةُ, i. 51 A.

الْأَفْعَالُ الْمُتَعَدِّيَةُ, i. 51 A; ii. 46 A.

الْأَفْعَالُ الْمُتَعَدِّيَةُ بِأَنْفُسِهَا, ii. 46 B.

بِغَيْرِهَا ...

أَفْعَالُ الْمَدْحِ وَالذَّمِّ, i. 97 A.

أَفْعَالُ الْمُقَارَبَةِ, ii. 106 B.

أَفْعَالُ الْيَقِينِ وَالشَّكِّ أَوْ الرَّجْحَانِ,
ii. 48 D.

إِفْعَالُ, i. 116 A.

إِفْعَالُ, i. 43 A.

إِفْعَالَلُ, i. 43 C, 63 D.

إِفْتِعَالُ, i. 116 B.

إِفْتَعَلَ, i. 41 D.

أَفْعَلُ, i. 34 B.

أَفْعَلُ, adj., 133 D, 136 A, 200 A;
compar. and superl., i. 140 C;
derived from conjug. II., IV.,
VII., and VIII., i. 141 D, ii.
72 B; from verbs signifying
love or hatred, ii. 71 D, 145 D;
formed from the passive voice,
i. 142 D; from intransitive
verbs, ii. 72 A; from words
denoting colours or defects,
i. 143 A; compar. with مِنْ,
ii. 133 A—134 D; superl. with
the genitive, ii. 218 B, 226 C;
with the accus., ii. 71 B; with
إِلَى, ii. 71 B; with لِي, ii. 72 A,
145 D; substantive, i. 227 D;

- fem. **فَعَلَى**, i. 184 B, 240 D;
 fem. **فَعَلَاءَ**, i. 185 A, 240 D.
أَفْعَلُ **التَّفْضِيلِ**, i. 140 C.
أَفْعَلُ, i. 227 D, 240 D.
أَفْعَلُ بِهِ, i. 98 C.
أَفْعُلُ, plur. fr., i. 169 D, 209 D,
 Add. et Corrigenda (Vol. i.
 210 D).
أَفْعَلٌ, i. 43 A, 91 B.
أَفْعِلَاءَ, plur. fr., i. 219 C, 240 A.
أَفْعِلَاتُ, secondary pl. fr., i. 232 B.
أَفْعِلَالٌ, i. 116 B.
أَفْعِلَالٌ, i. 117 D.
أَفْعِلَةٌ, plur. fr., i. 170 A, 212 B,
 Add. et Corrigenda (Vol. i.
 210 D).
أَفْعَلَلُ, i. 43 C, 63 D.
أَفْعَلَلُ, i. 48 C.
أَفْعِلَاءَ, i. 116 C.
أَفْعِلَالٌ, i. 116 B, 117 D.
أَفْعَلَّلَ, i. 46 D, 48 C.
أَفْعَلَّلِي, i. 47 A.
أَفْعُولٌ, i. 116 B.
أَفْعُوْعَلُ, i. 46 C.
أَفْعُوْعَلُ, i. 46 D.
أَفْعِيْعَالُ, i. 116 B.
أَفْعِيْلَالٌ, i. 116 B.
أَلِفُ **الْإِنْحَاقِ**, i. 152 B, 157 A, 179 C.
أَلِفُ **الْفَاصِلَةِ**, i. 11 A.
أَلِفُ **الْقَطْعِ**, i. 21 A, 269 C.
أَلِفُ **الْمَقْصُورَةِ**, i. 11 B, 25 B.
أَلِفُ **الْمَمْدُودَةِ**
أَلِفُ **النِّدَاءِ**, i. 294 B.
أَلِفُ **النَّدْبَةِ**, i. 295 D; ii. 390 D.
أَلِفُ **الْوَصْلِ** ... , i. 21 A.
أَلِفُ **الْوَقَايَةِ** ... , i. 11 A.
أَلِفُ **وَاللَّامُ**, i. 269 A.
أَلِفُ **وَاللَّامُ لِلْجِنْسِ**, ii. 243 C.
أَلِفُ **لِلْعَبْدِ**, ii. 243 D.
إِلَى **لِلْإِتِّهَاءِ**, ii. 145 B, 147 B.
إِلَى **تَقْوِيَةِ الْعَامِلِ**, ii. 63 B.
إِلَى **لِلْمَصَاحِبَةِ أَوْ لِلْمَعِيَةِ**, ii. 145 B.
أَمِ **الْمَنْقَطَعَةِ**, ii. 308 B.
إِلِمَانَةٌ, i. 10 C.
إِلِمْتِنَاعٌ مِنْ الصَّرْفِ, i. 245 B.
إِلَامُرُ, i. 61 D.

أَمْرٌ مَحْضٌ, ii. 31 D.

أَنْ أَلْخَفَفْتُ (مِنْ الثَّقِيلَةِ), ii. 26 B,
81 C.

أَنْ أَلْصَدْرِيَّةُ, ii. 26 C, 221 A, 252 A.

أَنْ أَلْمَسَرَّةُ, i. 292 C.

أَنْ أَلْنَابَةِ, ii. 26 C.

إِنْ بِمَعْنَى الشَّرْطِ أَوْ الشَّرْطِيَّةِ, ii.
14 B, 301 D.

إِنْ أَلْخَفَفْتُ (مِنْ الثَّقِيلَةِ), i. 283 B,
284 D; ii. 81 C.

إِنْ أَلْنَابَةِ, ii. 105 A, 301 C.

إِنْ أَلْوَصِيَّةِ, i. 292 D.

إِنْ وَأَخَوْتَهَا, ii. 80 B.

إِلَى أَنْشَاءِ, ii. 73 C.

إِنْفِعَالٍ, i. 116 B.

إِنْفَعَلَ, i. 40 C.

أَنْتِ, i. 56 B.

أَهْجِيَّةُ, ii. 351 A.

أَيُّ لِّلْتَعْجَبِ, ii. 361 C.

إِلَى بَطَاءِ, ii. 357 C.

أَيُّهَا لِلْإِخْتِصَاصِ, ii. 93 A.

ب

أَلْبَاءُ لِلِاسْتِعَانَةِ, ii. 164 A.

لِلْإِنْصَاقِ ... , ii. 163 D, 324 A.

لِلتَّعْدِيَةِ ... , ii. 44 B, 164 A.

أَلْبَاءُ لِلتَّعْلِيلِ, ii. 164 A.

لِلتَّعْوِيضِ ... , ...

بَاءُ أَلتَّغْدِيَةِ, ii. 162 B.

أَلْتَّمَنِ ... , 164 A.

أَلْبَاءُ لِلتَّسْبِيَةِ, ii. 164 A, 324 A.

لِلتَّغْرِيفَةِ ... , ii. 163 D.

لِلتَّقْسِيرِ ... , ii. 164 A.

بَاءُ أَلْمَجَازِ, ii. 160 A.

أَلْبَاءُ لِلْمُصَاحَبَةِ, ii. 164 A.

لِلْمُقَابَلَةِ ... , ...

لِلْمِلَابَةِ ... , ...

أَلْمَوْحَدَةِ ... , i. 4 A.

لِلتَّنْقِيلِ ... , ii. 164 A.

بَابُ أَلْفَاعِلِ وَ أَلْمَفْعُولِ, i. 50 B.

بَحْرُ, ii. 358 C.

أَلْبَدَلُ, ii. 90 A, 230 C, 231 D, 283 A,
284 D.

بَدَلُ أَلِاسْتِمَالِ, ii. 285 D, 287 B.

أَلِإِضْرَابِ ... , ii. 286 B.

أَلْبَدَاءُ ... , ...

بَدَلُ أَلْبَعْضِ مِنْ أَلْكُلِّ, ii. 285 C.

بَدَلُ أَلْبَعْضِ مِنْ أَلْمُسْتَنْتَى مِنْهُ, ii.
336 C.

بَدَلُ أَلْغَلَطِ وَ أَلتَّسْيَانِ, ii. 286 C.

أَلْكُلِّ مِنْ أَلْكُلِّ ... , ii. 284 D,
287 A.

الْبَدَلُ الْمُبَايِنُ لِلْمُبْدَلِ مِنْهُ ii.

286 B.

بَدَلُ الْمَصْدَرِ مِنَ الْفِعْلِ ii. 74 A.

الْبَسِيطُ ii. 365 C.

بِنَاءُ ii. 78 B.

بِنَاءُ الْفَاعِلِ وَالْمَفْعُولِ i. 50 B.

بَيَانُ ii. 229 B, 230 C.

بَهْتُ ii. 351 B.

ت

التَّاءُ تَأْكِدُ الْمُبَالَغَةَ i. 139 A.

لِلتَّخْصِصِ ... i. 147 D.

... التَّمَثُّنَةُ مِنْ قَوْفِهَا i. 4 B.

تَابِعُ ii. 272 D.

تَأْسِيسُ ii. 353 B.

التَّأْكِيدُ أَوْ التَّوَكُّيدُ ii. 282 B.

... الَّلَفْظِيُّ ii. 282 C.

تَأْكِيدُ الْمُبَالَغَةِ i. 139 A.

التَّأْكِيدُ الْمَعْنَوِيُّ ii. 282 B.

تَأْكِيدُ التَّسْبَةِ i. 164 B.

التَّائِبُكَ الْلَّارِمُ i. 245 B.

التَّيْبِيْنُ ii. 123 A.

التَّتْمِيمُ ii. 358 A.

التَّثْنِيَّةُ i. 52 B.

التَّثْنِيَّةُ عَلَى التَّوَكُّيدِ i. 62 D.

التَّجَدُّدُ ii. 195 D.

التَّحْدِيدُ ii. 74 D.

تَحْرِيفُ التَّنْقَلَةِ ii. 378 D.

التَّخْفِيفُ i. 166 B.

التَّحْقِيقُ ii. 4 B.

التَّخْصِصُ ii. 198 D, 199 A, 261 D.

تَخْفِيفُ الْهَمْزَةِ i. 18 D, 73 B.

التَّرْخِيمُ i. 174 D; ii. 88 A.

التَّرْكِيبُ i. 245 B.

تَرْكِيبُ إِسْنَادِي i. 160 B.

التَّسْجِيعُ ii. 368 D.

التَّصْغِيرُ i. 110 A, 166 B.

تَصْغِيرُ التَّرْخِيمِ i. 174 D.

التَّشْدِيدُ i. 14 A.

التَّضْمِينُ ii. 358 A.

التَّعْدِيَّةُ i. 34 B.

التَّعْرِيفُ i. 247 C; ii. 198 D, 199 A.

التَّعْظِيمُ i. 166 D; ii. 54 C, 268 A.

التَّغْلِيبُ i. 190 A.

تَفَاعُلُ i. 38 D.

تَفَاعُلُ i. 116 B.

تَفَاعُلُ plur. fr., i. 226 C.

تَفَاعُلُ i. 116 B.

تَفَاعُلُ plur. fr., i. 228 A.

التَّفْسِيرُ ii. 123 A.

تَفْعَالٌ, i. 115 B, 116 D, 117 B.

... , intens. adj., i. 138 D.

تِفْعَالٌ, i. 115 C, 116 D, 117 B.

... , intens. adj., i. 138 D.

تِفْعَالٌ, i. 116 A, 117 A.

... , intens. adj., i. 138 D.

تِفْعَالَةٌ, ... , i. 139 D.

تِفْعَالَةٌ, ... , i. 140 A.

تَفْعَلٌ, i. 116 D.

تَفْعَلٌ, i. 36 C.

تَفْعُلٌ, i. 116 A.

تَفْعِلَةٌ, i. 115 B, 116 C D, 122 C.

تَفْعِلَةٌ, i. 115 B, 116 D.

تَفْعِلَةٌ, intens. adj., i. 138 D.

تَفْعُلَلٌ, i. 48 C.

تَفْعُلَلٌ, i. 117 C.

تَفْعُلَنَ, for يَفْعُلَنَ, i. 56 B.

تَفْعُولٌ, i. 115 D, 116 D.

تَفْعِيلٌ, i. 115 B, 116 C D.

... , pl. تَفَاعِيلٌ, ii. 358 C.

تَفْعِيلَةٌ, i. 123 A.

تَفْعِيلَةٌ, intens. adj., i. 139 D.

تَقْدِيرِيٌّ, i. 246 B.

تَقْطِيعٌ, ii. 358 C.

التَّقْلِيلُ, i. 286 C; ii. 216 C.

تَقْلِيلٌ أَلْفَلَةٌ, ii. 276 D.

التَّكْبِيرُ, i. 166 B.

التَّكْبِيرُ, i. 31 A; ii. 74 B, 216 C, 268 A.

التَّكْبِيرُ أَوْ التَّكْرَارُ, ii. 74 B, 282 C.

التَّكْمِيرُ, ii. 122 D.

تَكْمِيرُ الْعَدَدِ, ii. 124 B.

التَّكْيِيلُ, ... , ii. 124 C, 125 A.

الْمَسَاحَةُ, ...

الْمِقْيَاسُ, ...

الْوِزْنُ, ... , 125 A.

التَّنَازُعُ فِي الْعَمَلِ, ii. 327 D.

التَّنْكِيرُ, i. 247 C.

التَّنْوِينُ, i. 12 A.

تَنْوِينُ التَّرْتِيبِ, ii. 390 C.

التَّنْوِينُ لِلتَّطْرِيبِ, ii. 390 C.

تَنْوِينُ التَّكْمِيلِ, i. 235 B.

تَنْوِينُ التَّنْكِيرِ, i. 235 C.

التَّنْوِينُ الدَّالُّ عَلَى الْمَكَانَةِ, i. 235 B.

تَنْوِينُ الْعَوْضِ, i. 235 C.

التَّنْوِينُ الْغَالِي, ii. 390 D.

تَنْوِينُ الْمَقَابَلَةِ, i. 235 B.

التَّوَابِعُ, ii. 272 D, 282 B, 283 A.

التَّوْجِهُ, ii. 354 C.

التَّوْشُعُ, ii. 191 B.

التَّوْكِيدُ. See التَّأْكِيدُ.

ث

اَثْنَاءُ اَلْمَثَلَةِ, i. 4 B.

اَلثَّبَاتُ اَوْ اَلثَّبُوتُ, ii. 195 D.

ثَلَاثِي, i. 29 A.

ج

اَلْجَارُ, i. 235 B.

جَارٌ وَمَجْرُورٌ, ii. 251 A, 253 C, 269 D, 337 A.

اَلْجَرُّ, i. 235 B.

جَرَّ اَلْجَوَارِ اَوْ اَلْمَجَاوِرَ, ii. 234 B.

جُزْءٌ, ii. 358 C.

جَزَاءُ الشَّرْطِ, ii. 15 A.

جَزْمٌ, i. 13 A.

اَلْجَمَاعُ, i. 52 B.

اَلْجَمَاعَةُ, i. 180 D.

اَلْجَمْعُ, i. 52 B.

جَمْعُ اَلتَّكْسِيرِ, i. 192 A.

اَلْجَمْعُ ... , i. 231 C.

اَلْجَمْعُ اَلْسَالِمُ, i. 191 D.

جَمْعُ اَلْسَلَامَةِ ...

اَلْخَمْعُ اَلصَّحِيحُ, i. 191 D.

جَمْعُ اَلْقَلَّةِ, i. 169 D, 234 B; ii. 234 D, 235 B.

جَمْعُ اَلْكَثَرَةِ, i. 170 A, 234 B; ii. 234 D, 235 B.

جَمْعٌ لَيْسَ عَلَى رِئْتِهِ وَاحِدٌ, i. 245 C.

اَلْجَمْعُ اَلْمُصَحَّحُ, i. 191 D.

اَلْمَكْسَرُ

جُمْلَةٌ, ii. 115 C, 250 B.

جُمْلَةٌ اَسْمِيَّةٌ, ii. 251 A.

جُمْلَةٌ اَسْمِيَّةٌ مُثَبَّتَةٌ, ii. 175 D.

جُمْلَةٌ جَارِيَةٌ مَجْرَى الظَّرْفِيَّةِ, ii. 253 B.

جُمْلَةٌ حَالِيَّةٌ, ii. 68 D, 333 A.

جُمْلَةٌ ذَاتٌ وَجْهَيْنِ, ii. 256 B.

جُمْلَةٌ ظَرْفِيَّةٌ, ii. 253 B, 261 A.

فِعْلِيَّةٌ ... , ii. 251 B.

جَمْعُ اَلْقَلَّةِ. See جُمُوعُ اَلْقَلَّةِ.

جَمْعُ اَلْكَثَرَةِ. See اَلْكَثَرَةُ ...

اَلْجَمِيعُ, i. 52 C.

اِنْ جَوَابُ, omitted, ii. 17 A.

رَبٌّ ... , ii. 216 C.

اَلشَّرْطُ ... , ii. 15 A.

اَلْقَسْمُ ... , ii. 175 D.

تَوْ ... , omitted, ii. 8 C.

اَلْجَوَارُ, i. 278 D.

ح

اَلْحَاشِيَّةُ, ii. 371 D.

اَلْحَاضِرُ, i. 51 D.

- الْحَال i. 51 D; ii. 5 B C, 19 D, 20 B,
21 B, 38 C, 50 C, 104 A, 112 C—
120 A, 196 C.
- حَالٌ غَيْرُ مُوَكَّدَةٍ ii. 115 D.
- مُنْتَقِلَةٌ ii. 114 C.
- حَالٌ مُوَكَّدَةٌ ii. 115 D, 120 A.
- مُقَارِنٌ ... , ii. 20 B, 113 D, 197 B,
288 B.
- مُقَدَّرٌ ... , ii. 19 D, 113 D, 197 B,
288 B.
- مُنْتَقِلَةٌ ... , ii. 114 C.
- حَتَّى أَلْعَاطِفَةُ أَوْ لِعَاطِفٍ ii. 147 B.
- ... حَتَّى لِبَغَايَةِ أَوْ لِاتِّبَاءِ أَلْبَايَةِ ...
- أَلْحُدُوثُ ii. 195 D.
- أَلْحُدُوثُ ii. 355 A.
- حَرْفٌ i. 278 C.
- حَرْفٌ أَلِاسْتِثْنَاءِ i. 292 D.
- أَلِاسْتِثْنَاءِ ... , i. 282 B.
- أَلِإِطْلَاقِ ... , ii. 390 C.
- تَرْتِيبٌ ... , i. 290 D, 293 B.
- تَعْجِبٌ ... , ii. 122 D.
- أَلتَّعْرِيفِ ... , i. 269 A.
- تَعْلِيلٌ ... , i. 293 D.
- أَلتَّنْبِيهِ ... , i. 268 A; ii. 92 C.
- أَلتَّنْفِيسِ ... , i. 282 D.
- أَلتَّوَقُّعِ ... , ii. 4 B.
- حَرْفٌ جَرٌّ ii. 46 B.
- أَلْحَضَرِ ... , ii. 335 B.
- أَلرَّدْعِ ... , i. 287 A.
- حَرْفٌ سَاكِنٌ i. 13 B.
- حَرْفٌ شَرْطٌ i. 292 D.
- عَطْفٌ ... , i. 290 D; ii. 147 B.
- حَرْفٌ مُتَحَرِّكٌ i. 13 B; ii. 355 B.
- مُخَفَّفٌ ... , i. 14 C.
- مُشَدَّدٌ
- حَرْفٌ أَلتَّنْدَبَةِ ii. 93 C.
- أَلْحَرْفَانِ أَللَّهُوَيَّتَانِ i. 5 B.
- حَرْكَةٌ i. 8 A; ii. 355 D.
- حَرْكَةٌ بَيْنَ أَلضَّمِّ وَأَلكُسْرِ i. 84 B.
- أَلْحُرُوفُ أَلْأَسْلِيَّةِ i. 4 D.
- أَلْحُرُوفُ أَلْإِضَافَةِ i. 278 D.
- أَلْحُرُوفُ أَلتَّحْضِيزِ وَأَلْعَرْضِ ii.
310 C.
- أَلْحُرُوفُ أَلتَّهْجَى i. 1 A.
- أَلْجَرِّ ... , i. 278 D.
- أَلْحَلْقِ ... , i. 5 B.
- أَلْحُرُوفُ أَلْحَلْقِيَّةِ ...
- أَلْحُرُوفُ أَلْخَفِضِ i. 278 D.
- أَلْحُرُوفُ أَلذَّلِقِيَّةِ أَوْ أَلذَّوْلِقِيَّةِ i. 5 A.
- أَلْحُرُوفُ أَلشَّجَرِيَّةِ i. 5 A.

حُرُوفُ الشَّرْطِ i. 290 c.
 الحُرُوفُ الشَّفِيفَةُ أَوْ الشَّفَوِيَّةُ i. 4 c.
 الحُرُوفُ الشَّمْسِيَّةُ i. 15 c.
 حُرُوفُ الْعَطْفِ i. 290 c.
 الْعِلَّةُ ... , i. 5 B.
 الحُرُوفُ الْقَمَرِيَّةُ i. 15 c.
 اللَّتَوِيَّةُ ... , i. 4 c.
 حُرُوفُ اللَّيْنِ i. 5 B.
 الحُرُوفُ اللَّيْنَةُ i. 5 B.
 حُرُوفُ اللَّيْدِ i. 9 c.
 الحُرُوفُ الْمُشَبَّهَةُ بِالْفِعْلِ ii. 80 B.
 الحُرُوفُ الْمُصَدِّرَةُ ii. 252 A.
 حُرُوفُ الْمُضَارَعَةِ i. 56 B.
 الْمُعْجَمُ ... , i. 1 A.
 الحُرُوفُ الْمُعْجَمَةُ i. 4 A.
 حُرُوفُ الْمُنَادَاةِ ii. 85 A.
 الحُرُوفُ الْمُهِمَلَةُ i. 4 A.
 حُرُوفُ النِّدَاءِ ii. 85 A.
 الحُرُوفُ النَّطِيعَةُ أَوْ النَّطِيعِيَّةُ i. 5 A.
 حُرُوفُ الْهَجَاءِ i. 1 A.
 الحُرُوفُ الْهَجَائِيَّةُ i. 1 A.
 الْحِكَايَةُ ii. 313 A B, 314 A.
 حِكَايَةُ حَالٍ مَاضِيَةٍ ii. 30 c.

خ

الخَبَرُ ii. 251 c, 255 B.
 خَبَرٌ مُقَدَّمٌ ii. 253 A, 257 c.
 خَبَرٌ إِنَّ ii. 80 B.
 كَانَ ... , ii. 100 B.
 لَا ... , ii. 98 B.
 الخُرُوجُ ii. 353 A.
 حِطَابٌ ii. 86 c.
 الخَفْضُ i. 235 A, 279 A.
 الخَفِيفُ ii. 367 D.

د

الدَّخِيلُ ii. 353 B.
 الدِّعَامَةُ ii. 259 c.

ذ

ذُو الْحَالِ ii. 117 B.

ر

الرَّابِطُ ii. 256 B.
 الرَّاجِعُ ii. 312 A, 319 B D, 322 A.
 رَبَاعِيٌّ i. 29 A, 47 B.
 رِثَاءٌ ii. 351 A.
 الرَّجَزُ ii. 362 A.
 الرِّدْفُ ii. 353 D.
 الرِّسُّ ii. 355 A.
 الرِّفْعُ i. 8 A, 235 A.
 الرَّقْمُ الْهِنْدِيُّ i. 28 D.

الرَّمْلُ, ii. 366 D.

الرَّوْمُ, i. 276 C.

الرَّوْيُ, ii. 352 A.

ر

الرَّيْمَانُ الْحَاضِرُ, ii. 21 B.

س

سَاكِنُ, i. 13 B; ii. 355 B D.

السَّبَبُ, ii. 283 B.

سَبَبُ, ii. 358 D.

سَبَبُ ثَقِيلُ, ii. 358 D.

خَفِيفُ

السَّجْعُ, ii. 351 B, 368 D.

السَّرِيعُ, ii. 362 C.

سَفَعَلَ, i. 46 A.

السُّكُونُ, i. 13 A; ii. 355 D.

السَّلْبُ, i. 36 A.

السَّلِيقِيَّةُ, ii. 233 D.

السِّنَادُ, ii. 356 C.

السَّنَدُ, ii. 250 C.

ش

شِبْهُ الْجَمْعِ, i. 179 A, 181 A, 190 D,

224 D, 234 A.

شِبْهُ الْفِعْلِ, ii. 284 B.

شَدَّةُ, i. 14 C.

الشَّرْطُ, ii. 15 A.

W. II.

شَطْرُ, ii. 351 C.

الشَّعْرُ, ii. 350 A.

شَكْلُ, i. 8 B.

ص

صَاحِبُ الْحَالِ, ii. 117 B, 119 A.

الصَّدْرُ, ii. 238 C, 351 C.

صِفَةٌ, indef. relat. cl., ii. 38 C,
216 B, 317 C.

الصِّفَةُ, i. 105 A; ii. 114 C, 277 B,
283 A B.

صِفَةُ ثَابِتَةٍ, i. 187 A.

حَادِثَةٌ ... , i. 187 C.

الصِّفَةُ لِلشَّيْءِ وَالتَّوْحِيدِ, ii. 276 A.

لِلْمَدْحِ وَالدَّمْرِ

الصِّفَةُ بِالتَّصْدِيرِ, ii. 274 B.

الصِّفَاتُ الْمُشَبَّهَةُ بِأَسْمَاءِ الْفَاعِلِ وَ

الْمَفْعُولِ, i. 133 C.

الصِّلَةُ, i. 19 A.

... , def. relat. cl., i. 105 B; ii.
317 C.

الصِّلَةُ, in metre, ii. 352 C.

صِيغَةُ الْفَاعِلِ وَ الْمَفْعُولِ, i. 50 B.

ض

الضَّادُ الْمَبْطُوحَةُ, Add. et Corri-
genda (Vol. i. 6 C).

الضَّرْبُ, ii. 358 C.

ضُرُورَةُ الشَّعْرِ, i. 236 D; ii. 374 A.

ضَمٌّ, ضَمَّةٌ, i. 7 D.

الضَّمِيرُ, i. 53 B, 105 B D; ii. 251 C.

See الرَّابِطُ, الرَّاجِعُ, and الْعَائِدُ.

ضَمِيرُ التَّكِيدِ, ii. 265 A.

الضَّانُّ ... , i. 285 A, 293 B;
ii. 81 C D, 299 B.

الْعِمَادُ ... , ii. 259 C.

الْفَصْلُ ... , ii. 259 B, 264 C D.

الْفِصَّةُ ... , i. 285 A, 293 B;
ii. 81 C, 299 B.

الضَّمِيرُ الْمَجْهُولُ, ii. 214 D.

ط

الطَّوِيلُ, ii. 364 C.

ظ

الظَّاهِرُ الْمَسَائِلَةُ, i. 6 C.

ظَاهِرٌ, i. 246 B.

الظَّاهِرُ, i. 105 B.

الظَّرْفُ, ii. 112 C, 253 C, 270 B.

ع

الْعَائِدُ, ii. 312 A, 319 B D, 322 A.

عَامِلٌ, ii. 275 B.

عَامِلُ الْحَالِ, ii. 113 D; suppressed,
ii. 120 A.

عَامِلٌ مَعْنَوِيٌّ, ii. 118 C.

الْعَجْزُ, ii. 238 C, 351 C.

الْعُجْمَةُ, i. 245 B.

الْعَدْلُ, i. 245 C.

الْعَرُوضُ, ii. 358 C.

عَطْفُ الْبَيَانِ, ii. 91 A, 283 A,
286 D.

التَّوَكُّيدُ ... , ii. 91 A, 282 B.

النَّسَقُ ... , ii. 90 B, 287 A.

عَلَمُ الْإِضَافَةِ, i. 235 B.

الْفَاعِلِيَّةُ ... , i. 235 A.

الْمَفْعُولِيَّةُ ... , i. 235 B.

عَلَمُ جِنْسِيٍّ, i. 107 C; ii. 243 C.

شَخْصِيٍّ ... , i. 107 D.

الْعَلَمِيَّةُ, i. 245 B.

عَلَى لِلِاسْتِعْلَاءِ, ii. 166 C.

عَلَى التَّقْدِيرِ, ii. 51 D.

الْمَعْنَى ... , ii. 297 C.

الْعِمَادُ, ii. 259 C.

عُمْدَةٌ, ii. 250 C.

عَنْ لِبُعْدٍ وَالتَّجَاوُزِ, ii. 144 A.

الْعَوَاطِفُ, i. 290 C.

عَيْنُ الْفِعْلِ, i. 30 A.

عُيُوبُ الشَّعْرِ, ii. 356 B.

غ

الْغَائِبُ, i. 52 C.

غَيْرُ جَمْلَةٍ, i. 108 B.

I. *Technical Terms, Mnemonic Words, Paradigms, etc.* 403

غَيْرُ مُتَعَدٍّ, i. 30 A.

مُتَمَكِّن ... , i. 234 D.

مُنْصَرَف

ف

فَاءُ الْجَزَاءِ, ii. 262 C.

الْجَوِبِ ... , ii. 30 C.

فَاءُ السَّبَبِ أَوْ السَّبَبِيَّةِ, ii. 30 C.

فَاءُ الْفِعْلِ, i. 30 A.

فَاعِلٌ, i. 32 C.

فَاعِلٌ, participle, i. 131 C, 133 B;

ii. 323 C; = فَعْلٌ, i. 132 B;

verbal adj., i. 136 B; fem.,
i. 187 A.

الْفَاعِلِ, ii. 123 A, 251 C.

فَاعِلٌ سَادٌ مَسَدُ الْخَبَرِ, ii. 257 A.

فَاعِلَةٌ, intens. adj., i. 139 A, 177 B;
collective, i. 233 A.

فَاعُولٌ, intens. adj., i. 137 D.

فَاعُولَةٌ, i. 139 D.

فَتَحٌ, فَتْحَةٌ, i. 7 C.

الْفَرْدُ, i. 52 B.

الْفَصْلُ, ii. 259 B.

فَضْلَةٌ, ii. 113 C, 123 A, 250 C.

فَعَائِلٌ, plur. fr., i. 215 A, 222 D,
223 A, 239 D; secondary plur.
fr., i. 231 D.

فَعَائِلَاتٌ, secondary plur., i. 232 B.

فَعَالٌ, inf., i. 111 C, 122 B; adj.,
i. 133 C, 136 A.

فَعَّالٌ, intens. adj., i. 137 A; with
the accus. or لِ, ii. 70 B.

فَعَالٌ, proper names, i. 243 D.

فَعَالٍ, plur. fr., i. 220 C, 240 A.

فَعَالٍ, imper., i. 62 B; proper
names, i. 244 A; as vocative,
i. 244 B.

فَعَالٌ, inf. I., i. 111 D, 113 B, 122 B;
inf. III., i. 116 A, 117 A D;
subst., i. 175 D; plur. fr., i.
202 D.

فَعَّالٌ, inf. II., i. 115 C; inf. III.,
i. 116 A; inf. VIII., i. 116 B.

فَعَالٌ, inf. I., i. 111 D, 113 C D,
122 B; adj., i. 133 C, 136 A;
subst., i. 175 D, 176 C D; plur.
fr., i. 204 D.

فَعَّالٌ, intens. adj., i. 137 D; plur.
fr., i. 207 B.

فَعَالٌ, numerals, i. 241 D, 262 D.

فَعَائِلَاتٌ, secondary plur., i. 232 B.

فَعَالَةٌ, inf., i. 111 D, 112 D, 113 A;
subst., i. 159 A.

فَعَّالَةٌ, intens. adj., i. 139 C; subst.,
i. 176 C; collective, i. 233 A.

فَعَالَةٌ, inf., i. 111 D, 114 A; subst.,
i. 159 A, 176 A; plur. fr., i.
224 A.

فَعَّالَةٌ, inf., i. 111 D; subst., i. 159 A,
176 B D.

فَعَالَةٌ, intens. adj., i. 139 c.

فَعَالٍ, plur. fr., i. 226 c, 239 D.

فَعَالَةٌ, plur. fr., i. 230 A.

فَعَالٍ, plur. fr., i. 221 B, 240 A.

فَعَالٍ, plur. fr., i. 222 B.

فَعَالٍ, intens. adj., i. 165 B; numeral adj., i. 263 c.

فَعَالَةٌ, inf., i. 111 D.

فَعَالٍ, plur. fr., i. 228 A, 239 D.

فَعَالِينَ, secondary plur. fr., i. 231 D.

فَعَلَ, i. 30 A, 49 D.

فَعَلَ الدَّالُّ عَلَى الْغَلَبَةِ, ³²i. 43 D, 58 B.

فَعَلَ, i. 31 A.

فَعَلَ, for فَعِلَ, i. 97 c; ii. 384 c.

فَعَلَ, inf., i. 110 c, 112 D; adj., i. 133 c, 136 A; subst., i. 158 c, 192 c; plur. fr., i. 224 c; used instead of فَاعِلَ, i. 132 D; superl. with genitive, ii. 218 B, 226 c.

فَعَلَ, inf., i. 110 c, 112 D, 113 A, 121 B; adj., i. 133 c; plur. fr., i. 224 B.

فَعَلَ, proper names, i. 243 A.

فَعَلَ, i. 30 B, 49 c D.

فَعَلَ, inf., i. 110 c; adj., i. 133 c, 136 A; subst., i. 159 c; with accus. or لِ, ii. 70 B.

فَعَلَ, adj., i. 133 D, 136 A.

فَعَلَ, inf., i. 110; adj., i. 133 D; subst., i. 158 c; numerals, i. 264 B; for فَعِلَ, ii. 384 c.

أَلْفَعَلَ, i. 29 A; ii. 251 c.

أَلْفَعَلَ الْأَجُوفَ, i. 81 c.

الْأَصْرُ ... , i. 68 B.

فَعَلَ تَعَجَّبَ, ii. 124 A.

فَعَلَ جَامِدٌ, ii. 15 D.

سَالِمٌ ... , i. 53 A.

صَحِيحٌ ...

فَعَلَ غَيْرُ مُتَصَرِّفٍ, ii. 124 A.

مُتَعَدٍّ ... , i. 30 A.

فَعَلَ أَلْفَاعِلٍ, i. 50 B.

فَعَلَ مَا لَمْ يُسَرِّ فَاعِلُهُ, i. 50 B.

أَلْفَعَلَ التَّمْيِيزُ أَوْ أَلْفَعَلَ لِلْفَاعِلِ

أَوْ عَلَى أَلْفَاعِلٍ, i. 50 B.

أَلْفَعَلَ التَّمْيِيزُ أَوْ أَلْفَعَلَ لِلْمَفْعُولِ

أَوْ عَلَى أَلْفَعُولٍ, i. 50 B.

فَعَلَ مُتَصَرِّفٍ, ii. 124 A.

أَلْفَعَلَ أَلْفَضَاعِفَ, i. 68 B.

فَعَلَ مُعْتَلٌّ, i. 53 A.

أَلْفَعَلَ أَلْفَقِصَ, i. 88 A.

فَعَلَ, inf., i. 110 D, 121 B; plur. fr., i. 202 B.

- فَعِلٌ, plur. fr., i. 207 B.
- فَعِلٌ, subst., i. 159 C; for فَعِلٌ, ii. 385 B.
- فَعِلٌ, for فَعِلٌ, i. 97 C; ii. 384 C.
- فَعِلٌ, inf., i. 110 D; adj., i. 133 D; subst., i. 158 C; plur. fr., i. 200 A; numeral, i. 263 D.
- فَعِلٌ, inf., i. 110 D, 121 B; adj., i. 133 D; plur. fr., i. 199 B.
- فَعِلٌ, proper names, i. 243 D; as vocative, i. 244 B.
- فَعِلٌ, intens. adj., i. 137 D; plur. fr., i. 206 D.
- فَعِلٌ, i. 159 C.
- فَعِلٌ, proper names, i. 243 A.
- فَعِلٌ, adj., i. 133 D; plur. fr., i. 200 D; numeral, i. 263 D.
- فَعِلَةٌ, inf., i. 110 D; subst., i. 123 A, 158 C.
- فَعِلَةٌ, names of men, i. 193 A.
- فَعِلَةٌ, inf., i. 110 D, 121 C; plur. fr., i. 207 C.
- فَعِلَةٌ, inf., i. 111 A; subst., i. 159 C.
- فَعِلَةٌ, inf., ...; subst., i. 123 D, 158 C, 175 C, 192 C; plur. fr., i. 169 D, 209 B.
- فَعِلَةٌ, plur. fr., i. 208 D.
- فَعِلَةٌ, inf., i. 111 A.
- فَعِلَةٌ, inf., ...; subst., i. 158 C, 175 C, 192 C.
- فَعِلَةٌ, intens. adj., i. 139 B; plur. fr., i. 208 B.
- فَعِلَةٌ, inf., i. 111 A.
- فَعِلَةٌ, inf., i. 111 B; fem. adj., i. 185 A B, 240 D.
- فَعِلَةٌ, inf., i. 111 B.
- فَعِلَةٌ, plur. fr., i. 218 D, 225 B, 240 A.
- فَعِلَاتٌ, for فَعِلَاتٌ, i. 192 C, sqq.
- فَعِلَاتٌ, i. 117 C D, 118 A.
- فَعِلَاتَةٌ, i. 123 A.
- فَعِلَاتٌ, inf., i. 111 B; adj., fem. فَعِلَاتَةٌ, i. 133 D, 184 C, 241 B.
- فَعِلَاتٌ, adj., fem. فَعِلَاتِي, i. 133 D, 136 A, 184 B, 241 B; fem. فَعِلَاتَةٌ, i. 185 B.
- فَعِلَاتٌ, inf., i. 111 B, 113 C; adj., i. 241 C.
- فَعِلَاتٌ, inf., i. 111 C; plur. fr., i. 216 A; proper names, i. 242 D.
- فَعِلَاتٌ, inf., i. 111 C; adj., fem. فَعِلَاتَةٌ, i. 133 D, 184 C, 241 B; plur. fr., i. 217 C.
- فَعِلَلٌ, i. 47 B, 48 C, 120 D.
- فَعِلَلَةٌ, i. 117 C D.
- فَعِلَنَ = فَعِلْنَا, ii. 384 A.
- فَعِلَوْتُ, inf., i. 111 C.
- فَعِلَوْتِي, inf., ...

فَعْلُولَةٌ, i. 120 A.

فَعْلَى, inf., i. 111 A; fem. adj., i. 184 B, 241 B; plur. fr., i. 220 A, 240 A.

فَعْلَى, inf., i. 111 A.

فَعْلَى, inf., i. 111 B; plur. fr., i. 220 C.

فَعْلَى, inf., i. 111 B; fem. adj., i. 184 C D, 240 D.

فَعْلَى, inf., i. 111 B.

فُعْلَى, i. 154 B.

فُعُول, inf., i. 112 A; adj., i. 133 D, 136 C, 146 D, 185 B; with accus. or ل, ii. 70 B.

فُعُول, intens. adj., i. 137 D.

فُعُول, inf., i. 112 A D, 113 A, 121 D; plur. fr., i. 205 B.

فُعُول, intens. adj., i. 137 D.

فُعُولَات, secondary pl., i. 232 B.

فُعُولَةٌ, inf., i. 112 A; intens. adj., i. 139 B; fem. of فُعُول, i. 185 C; subst., i. 155 D.

فُعُولَةٌ, intens. adj., i. 139 C.

فُعُولَةٌ, inf., i. 112 A D, 113 A, 121 D; plur. fr., i. 223 D.

فُعُولِيَّة, inf., i. 112 A.

فُعُولِيَّة, inf., ...

فُعِيل, i. 166 B, 167 D, 174 C.

فُعِيل, i. 166 C, 170 C.

فُعِيل, inf., i. 112 A, 113 C D, 122 A; adj., i. 133 C, 136 A-D, 146 A D, 186 A; with accus. or ل, ii. 70 B; with passive sense, ii. 196 B; subst., i. 154 C, 159 B, 176 D; plur. fr., i. 223 C; numeral, i. 263 D.

فُعِيل = فَعِيل, i. 167 A.

فُعِيل = فَعِيل, i. 136 D.

فُعِيل, intens. adj., i. 137 D.

فُعِيل, ..., i. 138 A.

فُعِيل, i. 154 C, 159 B, 166 B, 174 C.

فُعِيلَةٌ, inf., i. 112 B; intens. adj., i. 139 B; subst., i. 154 B, 159 B.

فُعِيلَةٌ, intens. adj., i. 139 C.

فُعِيلَةٌ, i. 154 B, 159 B.

فُعِيلَاء, i. 115 D, 116 C.

فُعِيلَى, i. 115 C, 116 C, 117 B.

فُوعِل, plur. fr., i. 213 C, 239 D.

فُوعِل, plur. fr., i. 228 A.

فِي لِلطَّرْفَةِ, ii. 156 C.

فِهَال, i. 116 A, 117 A.

فِيل, فِيل, adj. (for فَعِيل), i. 146 A, 155 B.

ق

قَافِيَةٌ, ii. 351 C.

قَافِيَةٌ مُؤَسَّسَةٌ, ii. 354 A.

مُجَرَّدَةٌ

مُرَدَّفَةٌ

مُطْلَقَةٌ ... , ii. 352 A.

مُقَيَّدَةٌ

قَائِمٌ مَقَامَ الْفَاعِلِ, ii. 269 B D.

قَبْوٌ, i. 8 A.

قَدْ لِلتَّحْقِيقِ, ii. 4 B.

قَدْ لِتَقْرِيبِ الْماضِي مِنَ الْحَالِ,
ii. 4 B.

قَدْ لِلتَّقْلِيلِ, i. 286 C.

الْقَسْمُ, ii. 175 D.

قَصْرٌ, i. 24 D.

قَصِيدَةٌ, ii. 351 A.

الْقَطْعُ, ii. 276 A.

قِطْعَةٌ, ii. 351 A.

ك

الْكَاثُ لِلتَّشْبِيهِ (كَ), ii. 178 A.

الْكَامِلُ, ii. 362 D.

كَانَ الْمَخْفُفَةُ, ii. 81 C.

كَانَ التَّامَّةُ, ii. 100 A, 104 A, 302 A.

التَّنَاقُصُ, 302 A.

وَأَحْوَاتُهَا ... , ii. 15 C, 16 A, 101 D,
103 D, 258 C, 328 D.

كَسْرٌ, كَسْرٌ, i. 7 C.

كَمِ الْإِسْتِفْهَامِيَّةُ, ii. 125 C.

كَمِ الْخَبَرِيَّةُ, ii. 125 C.

الْكِنَايَةُ, i. 105 C; ii. 125 C.

كُنْيَةٌ, i. 107 D.

ل

لَا يَمْنَعُنِي تَمَسُّ أَوْ مُشَبَّهَةٌ بِأَيْسَ,
ii. 104 A.

لَا التَّبَرُّؤُةُ, ii. 98 B.

لَا الْحِجَازِيَّةُ, ii. 105 A.

لَا يَنْفِي الْجِنْسِ أَوْ نَائِيَةِ الْجِنْسِ,
ii. 98 A.

لَا النَّسَبُ, ii. 36 B.

لَا زِمٌ, i. 30 A.

الْلَّامُ (the article), i. 269 A.

... (the ل in فَعَلَ), i. 30 A.

لَامُ الْإِبْتِدَاءِ (لِ), i. 283 B.

الْلَّامُ لِلِاخْتِصَاصِ (لِ), ii. 149 C.

لِلِاسْتِحْقَاقِ ... (لِ), ...

لِلِاسْتِغَاثَةِ ... (لِ), ii. 152 B.

لَامُ الْأَمْرِ (لِ), i. 291 B; ii. 35 B.

الْلَّامُ لِلِانْتِهَاءِ (لِ), ii. 148 A.

لِلتَّارِيخِ ... (لِ), ii. 151 D.

لِلتَّعْجُبِ ... (لِ), ii. 152 D.

لِلتَّعْذِيَةِ ... (لِ), ii. 148 C.

لَامُ التَّعْرِيفِ (the article), i. 269 A.

الَّلَامُ لِتَعْرِيفِ الْجَنَسِ (the article),
i. 269 B; ii. 318 D.

الَّلَامُ لِتَعْرِيفِ الْعَهْدِ (the article),
i. 269 C.

الَّلَامُ لِلتَّعْلِيلِ (لِ), i. 291 C; ii.
151 A.

الَّلَامُ لِتَقْوِيَةِ الْعَامِلِ (لِ), ii. 61 D,
287 D.

الَّلَامُ لِلتَّمْلِيكِ (لِ), ii. 148 C.

لَامُ التَّوَكُّدِ أَوْ التَّأَكُّدِ (لِ), i.
283 B.

لَامُ الْجُحُودِ (لِ), ii. 29 A.

الْجَرِ ... (لِ), ii. 148 C.

لَامُ الْجَنَسِ (the article), i. 269 B.

لَامُ جَوَابِ الْقَسَمِ (لِ), i. 282 D.

لَامُ جَوَابِ تَوْ وَ تَوَلَا (لِ), i. 283 A.

الَّلَامُ لِشِبْهِ التَّمْلِيكِ (لِ), ii. 148 C.

الَّلَامُ لِلْعِلَّةِ (لِ), ii. 151 A.

لَامُ الْعَهْدِ (the article), i. 269 C.

الَّلَامُ الْفَارِقَةُ أَوْ الْفَاصِلَةُ (لِ), i.
283 B.

لَامُ الْفِعْلِ (لِ), i. 30 A.

لَامُ كَيْ (لِ), ii. 28 A.

الَّلَامُ التَّوَطُّعُ لِلْقَسَمِ (لِ), i. 283 A.

الَّلَامُ التَّمْرُخَلَّةُ (لِ), i. 285 B.

الَّلَامُ الْمُفَحِّمَةُ تَوْكِيْدًا (لِ)
بِإِلَاضَةِ, ii. 95 C.

الَّلَامُ لِلْمِلْكِ (لِ), ii. 149 C.

النَّاصِبَةُ ... (لِ), i. 291 C.

لَقَوُ, ii. 339 A.

لَقَطَى, i. 246 B.

لَقَبُ, i. 108 A.

لَكِنَّ الْمُخَفَّفَةُ, ii. 81 D.

م

مَا إِلَهِيَّةً, i. 277 D; ii. 43 C,
276 B.

مَا بِمَعْنَى نَيْسٍ أَوْ مُشَبَّهَةٍ بِنَيْسٍ,
ii. 104 A.

مَا التَّعْجِيبَةُ, i. 98 C.

الْحِجَارِيَّةُ ..., ii. 105 A.

مَا الدَّيْمُومَةُ أَوْ الزَّمَانِيَّةُ, i. 277 C,
294 A; ii. 17 C, 41 B, 102 A.

مَا الزَّائِدَةُ أَوْ الْمَزِيدَةُ, i. 278 A;
ii. 193 A, 215 B, 224 C.

مَا الشَّرْطِيَّةُ, i. 277 B; ii. 18 A.

مَا التَّكَاثُفَةُ, ii. 81 A, 215 B C.

مَا تَتَأَكَّدُ بِمَعْنَى الشَّرْطِ, ii. 43 D.

مَا مَزِيدَةُ التَّأَكُّدِ, ii. 81 D.

بِالْفَضْلِ, ii. 82 A.

مَا الْمَصْدَرِيَّةُ, i. 277 B; ii. 29 A,
215 C, 219 A, 221 A, 252 A.

مَا مَصْدَرِيَّةُ زَمَانِيَّةُ, ii. 18 A.

طَرَفِيَّةُ, ii. 17 D.

مَا الْمَوْصُوفَةُ, i. 273 c, 277 A; ii. 319 B.

مَا الْمَوْصُولَةُ, i. 273 c; ii. 320 c.

مَا أَفْعَلَهُ, i. 98 c.

مَا تَمَّ يُسَمَّرُ فَعَلَهُ, i. 50 c; ii. 269 c.

مَا ضِ جَامِدٌ, ii. 346 B.

الْمَاضِي, i. 51 c; ii. 1 A.

الْمَوْكِدُ, ii. 282 B.

الْمَوْكِدُ, ii. 287 c.

الْمَوْنُثُ, i. 52 c, 177 c.

الْمَوْنُثُ الْحَقِيقِيُّ, i. 177 c.

الْمَوْنُثُ غَيْرُ الْحَقِيقِيِّ, i. 177 c.

الْمَوْنُثُ اللَّفْظِيُّ, i. 179 A.

الْمَجَازِيُّ ... , i. 177 D.

الْمَعْنَوِيُّ ...

الْمَبَالِغَةُ, i. 31 A, 43 B, 116 c, 139 A, 150 c.

الْمُبْتَدَأُ, ii. 123 B, 251 c, 255 B.

مُبْتَدَأٌ مُوَحَّخٌ, ii. 253 A, 257 c, 258 A.

الْمُبْدَلُ, ii. 286 B.

الْمُبْدَلُ مِنْهُ, ii. 286 B, 287 c.

مَبْنِيٌّ, i. 234 D.

مَبْنِيٌّ, ii. 54 c.

الْمُبَيِّنُ, ii. 123 A.

الْمَتَّبِعُ, ii. 272 D.

مُتَحَرِّكٌ, ii. 355 B.

مُتَدَارِكٌ, ii. 355 B D.

الْمُتَدَارِكُ, ii. 365 B.

مُتَرَادِفٌ, ii. 355 B.

مُتَرَاكِبٌ, ii. 355 B, 356 A.

مُتَصَرِّفٌ, ii. 118 B, 123 D.

مُتَّصِلٌ, i. 53 c.

الْمُتَعَجَّبُ مِنْهُ, ii. 152 D.

مُتَعَدِّ, i. 30 A.

الْمُتَقَارِبُ, ii. 363 D.

مُتَكَوِّسٌ, ii. 355 B, 356 A.

الْمُتَكَلِّمُ, i. 52 c.

مُتَمَكِّنٌ (فِي الْأِسْمِيَّةِ), i. 234 D.

مُتَمَكِّنٌ أَمَكْنُ, i. 235 A.

مُتَمَكِّنٌ غَيْرُ أَمَكْنٍ, i. 235 A.

مُتَوَاتِرٌ, ii. 355 B C.

الْمُتَشَّى, i. 52 B.

الْمُتَشَّى لِلتَّكْرِيرِ وَالتَّكْثِيرِ, ii. 74 B.

الْمُجْتَثُ, ii. 368 A.

الْمَجْرَى, ii. 354 B.

الْمَجْزُومُ, i. 60 D.

الْمَجْمُوعُ, i. 52 c.

الْمَجْهُولُ, i. 50 c.

الْمَخَاطَبُ, i. 52 c.

مُخَقِّفٌ, i. 14 c; ii. 81 c.

مَدَّةٌ, مَدٌّ, i. 24 c.

مَدِيحٌ, ii. 351 A.

اَلْمَدِيدُ, ii. 367 B.
 اَلْمَذْكُرُ, i. 52 c, 177 c.
 مَرَّةً, i. 122 D.
 مُرْتَجَلٌ, i. 108 c.
 مَرْتَبَةٌ, ii. 351 A.
 مُرْقَلٌ, ii. 363 B, 365 B.
 اَلْمَرْفُوعُ, i. 60 D.
 مُرْكَبٌ, i. 108 B.
 مُرْكَبٌ اِسْنَادِيٌّ, i. 108 B, 160 B.
 مُرْجِيٌّ, 160 c,
 161 c, 191 B, 196 B, 244 B,
 245 B; ii. 89 A.
 اَلْمُسَبَّبُ, ii. 283 B.
 اَلْمُسْتَشْنَى, ii. 336 A.
 اَلْمُسْتَشْنَى مِنْهُ, ii. 336 A.
 اَلْمُسْتَفَاثُ, ii. 152 B.
 اَلْمُسْتَفَاثُ بِهِ, ii. 152 B.
 اَلْمُسْتَفَاثُ لَهُ اَوْ مِنْ اَجْلِهِ, ii. 152 c.
 اَلْمُسْتَقْبَلُ, i. 51 D; ii. 21 B.
 اَلْمُسْنَدُ, ii. 250 B.
 اَلْمُسْنَدُ اِلَيْهِ, ii. 250 B.
 اَلْمُشَارَكَةُ, i. 32 D, 39 A.
 مُشَدَّدٌ, i. 13 D.
 مَشْطُورٌ, ii. 362 A.
 اَلْمُضَدَّرُ, i. 110 B; ii. 54 c.
 اَلْمُضَدَّرُ لِلتَّأْكِيدِ اَوْ لِلتَّعْظِيمِ, ii.
 54 c.

اَلْمُضَدَّرُ اَلْقَلْبِيُّ, ii. 122 A.
 اَلْمُؤَكَّدُ, ii. 74 A.
 اَلْمُبْجِيُّ, i. 119 c, 126 c,
 127 A c, 128 B D, 129 D.
 مُضَرَّعٌ, ii. 351 B.
 اَلْمُضَارِعُ, i. 60 c; ii. 64 B, 199 A,
 364 D.
 اَلْمُضَارِعُ اَلْمَجْزُومُ, ii. 22 D.
 اَلْمَرْفُوعُ, ii. 18 B.
 اَلْمَنْصُوبُ, ii. 22 c, 26 c.
 اَلْمُضَافُ, i. 108 c; ii. 66 B, 119 c,
 198 B, 200 A, 201 B.
 اَلْمُضَافُ اِلَيْهِ, i. 108 c, etc. (see
 اَلْمُضَافُ).
 اَلْمُضَرَّرُ, i. 53 B, 105 B D; ii. 251 D.
 مُطَاوِعٌ, i. 35 D, 36 D, 38 D, 40 D,
 41 c.
 مَطَّةٌ, i. 24 c.
 اَلْمُظْهِرُ, i. 105 B.
 مَعَ لِمَكَانٍ اِلَّا صِطْحَابٍ اَوْ وَفْتِهِ,
 ii. 164 B.
 مُعْرَبٌ, i. 234 D.
 اَلْمُعَرَّبُ, i. 247 c.
 اَلْمُعْرِفَةُ, i. 235 c, 247 c; ii. 117 B.
 اَلْمَعْرُوفُ, i. 50 c.
 اَلْمَعْطُوفُ عَلَيْهِ, ii. 287 c.
 اَلْمَعْلُومُ, i. 50 c.
 مَعْنَى اِنْ, ii. 14 B.

مَعْنَى الشَّرْطِ, ii. 14 B, 116 D.
 فِعْلٍ ... , ii. 114 A.
 مَفَاعِلُ, plur. fr., i. 226 C, 227 B.
 مَفَاعِلَةٌ, i. 116 A, 117 A.
 مَفَاعِلٍ, plur. fr., i. 228 A.
 الْمَفْرَدُ, i. 52 B.
 مَفْرَدٌ, i. 108 B; ii. 357 D.
 الْمَفْسَرُ, ii. 123 A.
 مِفْعَالٌ, subst., i. 129 A, 130 B;
 numeral, i. 263 D; intens.
 adj., i. 138 B; com. gen., i.
 186 C; with acc. or لِ, ii.
 70 B.
 مِفْعَالَةٌ, intens. adj., i. 139 D.
 مَفْعَلٌ, inf., i. 112 B; subst., i. 124 D.
 مَفْعَلٌ, i. 241 D, 262 D.
 مَفْعَلٌ, inf., i. 112 B; subst., i. 124 D.
 مَفْعَلٌ, i. 112 B.
 مَفْعَلٌ, subst., i. 130 B, 149 B;
 intens. adj., i. 138 B; com.
 gen., i. 186 C.
 مَفْعَلٌ, i. 131 A.
 مَفْعَلٌ ... , 149 B.
 مَفْعَلَةٌ, inf., i. 112 B; subst., i. 128 C,
 148 B; plur. fr., i. 225 A.
 مَفْعَلَةٌ, inf., i. 112 B; subst., i.
 128 C; plur. fr., i. 225 A.
 مَفْعَلَةٌ, inf., i. 112 B; subst., i.
 128 C; plur. fr., i. 225 A.

مِفْعَلَةٌ, i. 130 B, 149 B.
 مِفْعَلَةٌ, i. 148 C.
 مِفْعَلَةٌ, i. 149 B.
 مِفْعَلَةٌ, i. 148 D.
 مَفْعُولٌ, particip., i. 131 C.
 ... = فَعْلٌ, etc., i. 132 C.
 الْمَفْعُولُ (the object), ii. 123 A.
 الْمَفْعُولُ الْأَوَّلُ, ii. 50 B.
 الثَّانِي ... , 104 A.
 بِهِ ... , ii. 269 D.
 الْمَفْعُولُ بِهِ الصَّرِيحُ, ii. 269 D.
 الْمَفْعُولُ بِهِ غَيْرُ الصَّرِيحِ, ii. 269 D.
 الْمَفْعُولُ فِيهِ, ii. 112 C.
 الْمَفْعُولُ لِأَجْلِهِ أَوْ مِنْ أَجْلِهِ, ii.
 122 A.
 الْمَفْعُولُ لَهُ, ii. 122 A.
 الْمَفْعُولُ الْمَطْلُوقُ, ii. 54 C, 72 D,
 193 D, 270 A.
 الْمَفْعُولُ الْمَطْلُوقُ لِلتَّأْكِيدِ أَوْ
 التَّعْظِيمِ, ii. 54 C.
 الْمَفْعُولُ الْمَطْلُوقُ لِلتَّبْيِينِ أَوْ التَّجْيِيزِ,
 ii. 56 B.
 الْمَفْعُولُ الْمَطْلُوقُ لِلتَّعْدَادِ, ii. 56 A.
 الْمَفْعُولُ الْمَطْلُوقُ لِلنَّوْعِ, ii. 56 A.
 الْمَفْعُولُ مَعَهُ, ii. 84 C.
 مَفْعُولًا, فَعْلٌ, etc., i. 132 D; plur.
 fr., i. 225 A.

مَفْعُولَةٌ = فَعْلٌ, etc., i. 132 D.

مُفْعِلٌ, intens. adj., i. 138 B; com.
gen., i. 186 C.

الْمُقْتَضِبُ, ii. 366 B.

مُقَحَّمٌ, ii. 90 D.

مُقَطَّعٌ, ii. 359 A.

مُقَطَّعَاتٌ, ii. 351 A.

الْمُكْتَرٌ, i. 52 C.

الْمُمَيَّزُ, ii. 122 D.

مِنْ الْمُوصُوفَةِ, i. 273 C, 277 A;
ii. 319 B.

مِنْ الْمُوصُولَةِ, i. 273 C; ii. 320 C.

مِنْ لِلْإِبْتِدَاءِ, ii. 131 A.

مِنْ لِلْإِبْتِدَاءِ الْغَايَةِ فِي الْكُنْ وَ
الزَّمَانِ, ii. 131 A.

مِنْ لِلْهَيَاكِ, ii. 138 A.

مِنْ لِهَيَاكِ الْجَنَسِ, ii. 138 A.

مِنْ لِلتَّبْعِيضِ, ii. 137 A.

لِلتَّبْيِينِ ... , ii. 138 A.

لِلتَّجْرِيدِ ... , ii. 138 B.

لِلتَّرْكِيبِ ... , ii. 137 A.

لِلتَّعْلِيلِ ... , ii. 131 D.

لِلتَّمْيِيزِ ... , ii. 138 B.

مِنْ بِمَعْنَى فِي, ii. 136 D.

الْمَنَادَى, ii. 85 A, 92 C.

مُنْذُ لِلْإِبْتِدَاءِ الْغَايَةِ فِي الزَّمَانِ,
ii. 174 C.

مُنْذُ لِلْأَمَدِ, ii. 174 C.

مُنْذُ لِأَوَّلِ الْأَمَّةِ أَوْ لِجَمِيعِ الْأَمَّةِ,
ii. 174 C D.

الْمُنْسَرِّحُ, ii. 366 A.

الْمُنْسَوِّقُ, ii. 90 B.

مُنْصَرَفٌ, i. 234 D.

الْمُنْصُوبُ, i. 60 D.

الْمُنْعَوْتُ, i. 104 D; ii. 287 C.

مُنْفَصِلٌ, i. 53 C.

مُنْقُولٌ, i. 108 C.

مَنْقُولٌ مِنَ الْفَاعِلِ أَوْ الْمَفْعُولِ,
ii. 123 B C.

مُنْتَكِرٌ, i. 247 C.

الْمَوْصُوفُ, i. 104 D; ii. 277 B, 287 C.

الْمَوْصُولُ, ii. 317 C.

الْمَوْصُولُ الْإِسْمِيُّ, i. 105 B.

ن

نَائِبٌ عَنِ الْفَاعِلِ, ii. 269 D.

نَائِبُ فَاعِلٍ سَادٌ مَسَدٌ الْخَبَرِ,
257 C.

نَائِبُ مَنَابِ الْفَاعِلِ, ii. 269 D.

نَائِبُ مَنَابِ الْفِعْلِ, ii. 74 A.

نَائِي, i. 56 B.

نُبْرَةٌ, i. 16 D.

نَبْرٌ, i. 108 A.

الْتِدَاءِ, ii. 86 c.

الْتَسْبَةِ, i. 109 D, 149 c.

الْتَصُّبِ, i. 8 A, 235 B.

الْتَصُّبِ عَلَى الْمَدْحِ وَ الَذَمِّ وَ

الْتَشْمِيرِ وَ الْتَرْحِيمِ, ii. 77 c, 276 A.

الْتَغُتِ, i. 105 A; ii. 283 A.

الْتَفَازِ, ii. 354 B.

نُقْطَةِ, i. 4 A.

الْتَقْلِ, ii. 372 B.

نَكْرَةِ, i. 235 c, 247 c; ii. 116 c, 117 B, 260 D.

نُونُ الْعِمَادِ, i. 101 c.

النُّونُ الْمُوَكَّدَةُ, i. 61 A.

نُونُ الْوَقَايَةِ, i. 101 B.

هَاءُ التَّانِيثِ, i. 7 A.

السَّكْتِ ... , ii. 372 D.

الْوَقْفِ ... , ii. 371 c, 372 D.

هَجَاءِ, ii. 351 A.

الْهَزَجِ, ii. 363 c.

هَمْزَةُ, i. 16 D.

هَمْزَةُ الْإِلْحَاقِ, i. 152 B, 157 A, 189 A.

هَمْزَةُ التَّسْوِيَةِ, ii. 307 c.

هَمْزَةُ الْقَطْعِ, i. 21 A, 74 B.

الْوَصْلِ ... , 269 B.

و
الْوَاحِدِ, i. 52 B.

الْوَافِرِ, ii. 363 B.

وَأَوَّالِ الْبِتْدَاءِ, ii. 333 A.

الْجَمْعِ ... , ii. 33 A; with acc.,

ii. 84 B.

الْحَالِ ... , ii. 262 B, 332 D.

رَبِّ ... , ii. 216 D.

الْقَسْرِ ... , ii. 175 B.

الْلُزُومِ ... , ii. 84 B.

الْمُصَاحِبَةِ ... , ii. 33 A; with acc.,

ii. 84 B.

الْمَعِيَةِ ... , ii. 33 A; with acc.,

ii. 84 B, 325 D.

وَتَدِ, ii. 358 D.

وَتَدِ مَفْرُوقِ, ii. 358 D.

مَقْرُونِ ...

وَزْنِ, ii. 351 B.

وَزْنِ الْفِعْلِ, i. 245 c.

الْوَصْفِ, i. 105 A.

الْوَصْفِيَّةِ, i. 245 B.

وَصْلَةٍ, i. 19 A.

ي

يَأْيَاءُ الَّتْمِنَاءِ مِنْ تَحْتِهَا, i. 4 B.

يَا لِلتَّنْدِبَةِ, ii. 94 A.

يَزْمَلُونَ, i. 16 A.

يَفَاعِيلُ, i. 228 A.

يَفْعَلُ, from فَعَلَ, i. 59 D.

II. ARABIC WORDS, TERMINATIONS, ETC.

ا

ـَ for ـِ or ـِي, in the vocative,
ii. 87 c.

ـَ for ـِ, i. 9 D.

ـَ, ـِ, i. 295 D; ii. 93 c.

ـَ for ـِ, in pause, ii. 369 B, 370 c.

ـَ for ـِ,

ـَ for ـِي, in the vocative, ii.
87 c.

ـَ for ـِ, i. 61 D.

ـَ for ـِ, ـِ, ـِ, i. 17 c.

ـِ, elided, i. 19 c.

ـِ, omitted in writing, i. 23 A.

ـِ for ـِ, i. 18 D.

ـِ for initial ـِ, i. 214 D.

ـِ, interj., i. 294 B; ii. 85 A.

ـِ, interrog., i. 24 A, 282 B; ii. 96 A,
306 D.

ـِ—ا, i. 284 c; ii. 307 B.

ـِ for initial ـِ, i. 119 A.

ـِ = ـِ, interj., i. 285 c.

ـِ for initial ـِ, i. 80 A, 119 A, 172 B.

ـِ = ـِ, interrog., ii. 376 D.

ـِ for ـِ, ii. 96 A.

ـِ, interj., i. 294 B; ii. 85 A.

ـِ, i. 157 A, 185 A, 240 B.

ـِ, ـِ, ii. 53 A.

ـِ, i. 240 A.

ـِ, ii. 227 D.

ـِ, ii. 102 A.

ـِ, i. 181 A.

ـِ, i. 259 c.

ـِ, interj., ii. 85 A.

ـِ, i. 249 A, 251 D; ii. 203 A; ـِ

for ـِ, ii. 95 D; ـِ = ـِ, i.

249 c; ـِ, i. 196 A; ـِ,

ـِ, ii. 87 D, 88 A.

ـِ, i. 240 B; ii. 279 c.

ـِ, i. 190 c.

ـِ, i. 240 B; ii. 279 c.

ـِ for ـِ, ii. 385 c.

ـِ, i. 20 A, 23 B, 249 B; ii. 91 c,
93 D, 203 B, 204 A, 314 A.

ـِ, i. 163 A.

ـِ, i. 20 A, 250 A; ii. 91 D, 203 B.

ـِ, i. 20 A, 239 B.

ـِ, i. 93 B.

ـِ, i. 190 c.

ـِ, i. 76 D.

ـِ ...

ـِ ...

اَتَمَنَ, i. 77 A.

اَتَهَلَّ ...

اَتُتُونُ, i. 229 D.

اَتَى, i. 74 C, 93 A; ii. 46 D, 53 A.
103 B.

اِئْتَنَانِ, اِئْتَنَانِ, i. 20 A, 255 C D;
ii. 236 B.

اِئْتَنِيْ, i. 153 B.

اَلْاَجْدَانِ, i. 190 C.

اَجَلَ, i. 283 C.

اَجَمَعَ, i. 195 A, 240 B; ii. 278 D,
282 A.

اِحْتَاجَ, ii. 46 A.

اُحْجَمَ, i. 35 D.

اَحَدَ, ii. 236 A.

اِحْدَى, i. 184 D.

اُحْرُونَ, i. 196 B.

اُحْلَافِيْ, i. 163 A.

اَلْاُحْمَرَانِ, i. 190 C.

اُخَ, i. 249 A, 251 D; ii. 203 B,
204 B; اُخُونَ, i. 196 A.

اُخَ, اُخَ, i. 295 A.

اَلْاُخْبَتَانِ, i. 190 C.

اُخَوَاتُ, اُخْتُ, i. 194 C.

اُخَذَ, i. 76 C—77 A; ii. 108 D.

اُخِرَ, i. 199 D, 240 A.

اُخْرَى, i. 184 D, 199 D, 240 A.

اِحْلَوْلَتْ, ii. 107 D, 108 D.

إِذْ, adverb, i. 283 D.

إِذْ, conj., i. 291 D.

إِذَا, conj., i. 292 A; with the Perf.,
ii. 9 C; with the Imperf., ii.
10 A; with the Jussive, ii.
12 B; إِذَا or مَا إِذَا with two
correlat. clauses, ii. 9 D.

إِذَا, adverb, i. 283 D; ii. 345 C.

إِذَا بِ, ii. 157 D.

إِذَا مَا, i. 292 A; ii. 9 D.

إِذَاكَ, إِذَاكَ, i. 284 B.

إِذَا مَا, i. 291 D; ii. 14 C.

إِذَا, إِذَنْ, i. 284 B, 292 A; with the
Subjunct., ii. 33 C.

اِذْهَبْ عَنْكَ, ii. 143 C.

اُذْوَاهُ اَلْيَمَنِ, i. 266 A.

إِرَاءَةٌ for إِرَاءَ, i. 121 A.

أَرَادَ, ii. 107 C.

أَرَاضِ, i. 221 B.

أَرْضُونَ, i. 195 C.

أُرِي, ii. 48 D.

أَسْتُ, i. 20 A.

أَسْتَأْ, i. 68 A, 87 D.

أَسْتَاهُ, i. 233 B.

أَسْتَحَدَ, i. 77 B.

- اسْتَكَانَ, ii. 304 D.
 اسْرُ, ii. 280 A.
 اسْرَنْدَى, i. 47 B.
 اسْطَاعَ, اسْطَاعَ, اسْطَاعَ, i. 68 A, 87 D;
 ii. 380 C.
 اسْفَرَّ, ii. 102 A.
 اسْمَر, i. 20 A.
 الَّا سُوْدَانِ, i. 190 C.
 اشْكَى, Add. et Corrigenda (Vol. i.
 36 A).
 اشْيَاءَ, i. 211 D, 240 B.
 اَصْبَحَ, ii. 15 C, 102 A.
 اِصْطَخْرَزِي, i. 153 D.
 الَّا صَغْرَنِ, i. 190 C.
 الَّا صَوْلَانِ, i. 191 A.
 اَضْحَى, ii. 102 A.
 اِضْرِبْهَا عَنْقَهُ, i. 62 D.
 الَّا طَيِّبَانِ, i. 190 C.
 اُعْ اُعْ, i. 295 C.
 اَعْلَى, i. 140 D.
 اُفَّ, اُفَّا, etc., i. 295 A.
 اَفْعُو for اَفْعَى, i. 12 D.
 اَفْلَا, i. 291 B.
 اَقْوَاهُ, i. 233 B.
 اَقَامَهُ for اِقَامَهُ, i. 121 A.
 اَقْبَلَ, ii. 108 D.
 اَكْبَّ, i. 35 D.
 اُكْتَعُ, i. 195 A, 240 B; ii. 279 C.
 اَل, the article, i. 15 C, 19 C, 23 D,
 269 A.
 اَلْ = اَلْدَى, i. 269 D.
 اَلْ = هَلْ, i. 288 A.
 اَلَا, interj., i. 294 C.
 اَلَا, interrog., i. 284 B; ii. 21 B,
 309 D, 311 B.
 اَلَا اِنَّ, i. 284 B; ii. 310 A.
 اَلَا يَا, ii. 310 B.
 اَلَا = هَلَا, i. 284 C, 288 A.
 اَلَا, interrog., ii. 310 C.
 اَلَا = لَّا اَنْ, i. 16 A, 292 C; with
 the Subjunct., ii. 22 C, 25 A,
 304 D.
 اِلَّا, i. 16 A, 292 D; ii. 32 A, 39 C,
 104 B, 172 D, 254 B, 289 D,
 291 A, 335 D, 341 A; اِلَّا re-
 peated لِلتَّوَكُّيدِ, ii. 338 D;
 اِلَّا نَشُدُّكَ اِللهُ اِلَّا, ii. 339 D;
 with pronom. suffixes, ii. 340 A.
 اِلَّا اَنْ, i. 293 D; ii. 340 C.
 اُولَاتُ, اُولَاتُ, i. 265 D.
 اَلَّتِي, i. 271 A.
 اَلَخ, i. 25 D; ii. 146 B.
 اَلْدَى, i. 270 D; ii. 318 D, 320 C.
 اَلْسَنُ, اَلْسَنُ, i. 210 B D.

أُتِف, i. 259 A; ii. 238 D, 244 B.
 أُلِقِيَا, i. 62 D.
 أُلِكَ, i. 77 C.
 أَلَلَهُ (ـ) for أَلَلَهُ (ـ), ii. 383 D.
 أَلَلَهُم, ii. 89 D; before إِلَّا and نَعْمَ, ii. 89 D, 340 A.
 أَلَم, ii. 107 C.
 أُولُو, i. 195 D, 265 D.
 أُلُوف, i. 259 C.
 أَلِدِي or أَلِي, i. 271 C.
 أَلِي, i. 280 B, 281 A; ii. 63 B, 144 B.
 أَلِيكَ = خَذَ, ii. 78 A; = تَنَحَّ, ii. 146 B; إِلَيْكَ عَنِّي, ibid.
 أَلَيْهَا = خَذَهَا, ii. 77 D.
 أَلِي آخِرِهِ, ii. 146 A.
 أَلِي أَيْنَ, i. 285 D.
 أَلِي دُونِ, ii. 190 C.
 أَلِي عِنْدِ ...
 أَلِي غَيْرِ ذَلِكَ, ii. 146 A.
 أَلِي فَوْقِ, ii. 190 C.
 أَلِي نَحْوِ ...
 أَلِي وَرَاءَ ...
 أَلِي, i. 265 B.
 أَم, i. 284 C, 292 B; ii. 306 C, 307 B, 308 B, 309 A.
 أَم = أَل, i. 270 A.

أَم, i. 284 C; ii. 310 B.
 أَم, ii. 203 A.
 أَمَا, i. 284 C; ii. 310 B.
 أَمَا إِنَّ, i. 284 C; ii. 310 C.
 أَمَا, followed by ف, i. 292 B.
 أَمَا = أُن مَّا, i. 16 B.
 أَمَا, i. 292 D; أَمَا—أَوْ, or أَمَا—وَأَمَا, ibid.
 أَمَا = إِنْ مَّا, i. 16 A; ii. 43 A; followed by a Jussive, ii. 43 D.
 أَمَالِي or إِمَالَا, i. 284 C.
 أَمَامَ, i. 281 C; ii. 187 B.
 أَمَامَكَ, ii. 75 D, 187 C.
 أَمَّاهُ, أَمَّه, أَمَّتِ, ii. 87 D, 88 A.
 أَمْرًا, i. 20 A.
 أَمْرًا, i. 239 B.
 أَمْسِ, i. 290 A.
 أَمْسَى, ii. 15 C, 102 A.
 أَمَّهَاتِ, i. 233 B.
 أَمْوَانُ, i. 217 C.
 أَمْوَاة, i. 233 B.
 أُنْ, for أُنَا, i. 54 D.
 أُنْ, i. 16 A, 292 B; with the Subjunct., ii. 22 C, 25 A; with the Perf., ii. 25 D; with the Perf. or Imperf., ii. 26 A, 27 A; omitted before the

- Subjunct., ii. 26 D; with the Jussive, ii. 27 B; = lest, ii. 27 B; after prepositions, etc., ii. 192 B, 220 C; prepositions omitted before **أَنْ**, ii. 193 B.
- أَنْ**, for **أَنَّ**, ii. 81 C.
- إِنْ**, i. 292 D; ii. 347 C; with the Perf., ii. 14 B; in two correlat. clauses, ii. 15 A; with the Jussive, ii. 23 C; in two correlat. clauses, ii. 36 D.
- إِنْ**, for **إِنَّ**, i. 284 D; ii. 81 C.
- إِنْ**, negat., i. 284 C; ii. 104 B, 105 A, 300 D.
- إِنْ تَوْ**, ii. 348 C.
- إِنْ** for **(أَلَيْكَ التَّذَبُّعُ)**, ii. 390 D.
- إِنْ**, for **يَنْ**, i. 236 C.
- إِنْ**, i. 293 A; with Imperf. Indic. = **أَنْ** with Subjunct., ii. 25 D; after **قَالَ**, etc., ii. 47 B; with the accus., ii. 78 D, 259 C, 263 B; after prepositions, ii. 192 B; prepositions omitted before **أَنْ**, ii. 193 B.
- إِنْ** = **لَعَلَّ**, i. 290 B.
- إِنْ**, i. 284 D; after **قَالَ**, etc., ii. 47 A; with the accus., ii. 78 D, 259 C, 263 B; in oaths, ii. 175 D.
- إِنَّا**, i. 25 D.
- إِنَّا**, i. 54 A C D.
- أَنَّا**, i. 233 C.
- إِنَّا طَرَّ**, i. 65 D.
- أَنْتَ**, i. 54 A.
- أَنْتُمْ**, i. 55 A.
- أَنْتَ**, i. 201 B.
- إِنزَعَجَ**, i. 41 D.
- إِنْسِي**, **أَنَابِ**, **أَنَابِي**, i. 228 D.
- أَنْشَأَ**, ii. 108 D.
- إِنْضَجَعَ**, i. 41 D.
- إِنْطَلَقَ** ...
- إِنْغَدَ**, ii. 102 A, 103 C.
- إِنَّمَا**, i. 285 B; ii. 254 B, 335 B.
- إِنْهَسَ**, i. 65 D.
- أَنَّهُ**, i. 54 D.
- أَنِّي**, i. 285 B; ii. 14 C.
- إِنِّي**, rel. adj., i. 164 B.
- أَهْ**, **أَهْ**, **أَهْ**, etc., i. 294 C.
- أَهْ**, see **أَهْ**; **أَهْ**, ii. 94 C.
- أَهْ**, in pause for **أَتَ**, ii. 370 B.
- أَهَابِ**, i. 221 B.
- أَهْلَ**, i. 181 A; ii. 203 A.
- أَهْلَ**, ii. 309 C.
- أَهْلُونَ**, i. 195 C.
- أَوْ**, i. 22 A, 293 B; ii. 14 D, 306 C, 307 D, 309 A; with the Subjunct., ii. 33 A.

- آو, etc., i. 294 c.
 إَوْرُون, i. 195 c.
 أَوْشَكَ, ii. 106 B, 107 A.
 أَوَّل, i. 240 A, 260 A; ii. 219 B, 227 D.
 أَوَّل, أَوَّلَة, أَوَّلًا, i. 260 c D.
 أَوَّل, i. 240 A.
 أَوَّلًا, i. 291 B.
 أَوُّو, i. 195 D, 265 D.
 أَوَّلًا, أَوَّلِي, i. 265 B.
 أَوَّه, أَوَّاه, أَوَّه, etc., i. 294 c.
 اُ suprascript, i. 11 c.
 آي, interj., ii. 85 A.
 آي, *that is*, i. 285 c.
 ..., interj., i. 294 B; ii. 85 A.
 ..., for آي with suffixes, i. 276 c.
 آي, i. 285 c.
 آي, interrog., i. 270 c, 275 D; ii. 220 A, 315 B.
 آي, relative, i. 270 c, 273 D; ii. 14 c, 318 D.
 آي, expressing surprise, ii. 316 c.
 آيَا, i. 294 B; ii. 85 A.
 آيَا, i. 103 B; ii. 69 D, 326 A, 329 A; before a subst., ii. 76 B.
 آيَاكَ, ii. 75 A.
 آيَان, آيَان مَا, آيَان, i. 285 D; ii. 14 c.
 آيْتَمَا, expressing surprise, ii. 316 D.
- آيْتَمَا, i. 295 c; ii. 85 A, 92 c.
 إِبْخ, i. 295 B.
 آيس, i. 96 c.
 آيش, i. 276 c.
 آيم ...
 آيَمَا, i. 292 B, 293 A.
 إِيَمَا, i. 293 A.
 آيَمَا, interrog., i. 270 c, 276 c.
 ..., relative, i. 270 c, 274 A; ii. 14 c; expressing surprise, ii. 316 D.
 آيْمَن, interrog., i. 270 c.
 آيْمَن, relative, i. 270 c, 274 A; ii. 14 c.
 آيْمَن, i. 20 B, 24 B, 279 D.
 آيْن, i. 285 D; ii. 14 c.
 آيْنَمَا, ...
 إِيَه, إِيَه, i. 295 A.
 إِيَهَا, i. 295 A.
 آيَهَا, i. 294 c; ii. 85 A, 92 c.
 إِيَوَان, i. 229 c.
 آيَوَه, إِيَوَه, آيَوَا, i. 285 c.
 آيِي, i. 276 D; ii. 317 B.
- ب
 ب, i. 279 B c; ii. 156 c; redundant, ii. 161 D; in oaths, ii. 175 D; with نَفْس and عَيْن, ii. 281 c.

بَاهِي أَتَتْ, ii. 162 A.

بَيْسَ, i. 58 D.

بَيْسَ, بَأَسَ, بَيْسَ (بَيْسَ), i. 97 A B;
ii. 290 A.

بَيْسَمَا, بَيْسَ مَا, i. 97 B.

بَاتَ, ii. 15 C, 102 A.

أَبْعَدَ - بَاعَدَ, i. 34 A.

أَبْلَغَ = بَالِغَ, i. 34 A.

بِاللَّهِ عَلَيْكَ, ii. 172 C.

بَتَّ, i. 68 D.

بَتَّعَ, i. 200 B, 240 B.

بَخَّ, etc., i. 295 A.

بُخْتِي, بُخَاتِي, بُخَاتِ, بُخَاتِي,
i. 228 D.

بَدُونِ, ii. 163 A, 185 B.

بَدَوِي, i. 159 B.

بَرِي, i. 58 D.

بَرَحَ, ii. 102 A, 103 C.

بُرَاةَ, i. 208 C.

بَزَلِ, i. 200 D.

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ, i. 23 A; ii. 163 C.

بَضَعَ, i. 200 B, 240 B.

بَضَعَا, بَضَعَا, بَضَعَا, i. 255 B,
256 A D, 258 A; ii. 237 C.

بَطْنُ, i. 226 B.

بَعْدَ, بَعْدَ, i. 98 B.

بُعَيْدَ, بَعْدَ, i. 281 C D; ii. 186 D.

مِنْ بَعْدَ, بَعْدَ, i. 288 B.

بَعْضُ, ii. 207 A, 267 C, 280 B,
295 C.

بُغْضُ = إِبْغَاضُ, ii. 59 D.

بَغِيرَ, ii. 163 A.

بَقَا for بَقِيَ, Add. et Corrigenda
(Vol. i. 91 A).

بَقِيَ, ii. 102 A.

بُكْرَةَ, ii. 111 A.

بَلَّ, i. 15 D, 285 D; ii. 308 B, 334 C;
with the genit., ii. 217 A.

أَبُو آلَ = بَنُو آلَ, ii. 381 A; =
ii. 381 D.

بَلَا, i. 279 B; ii. 163 A, 303 D.

بَلَحْرَثَ, i. 24 D.

بَلَدَ, i. 178 D.

بَلْعَنْبَرِ, i. 24 D.

بَلَهَ, ii. 78 B.

بَلَى, i. 285 D.

بِمَا = بِ, ii. 160 D, 193 A.

بِنَاءَ عَلَى, ii. 170 D.

بِنَاتَ, i. 194 C.

بُنْ for ابْنُ, i. 23 B; ii. 91 C.

بُنْتُ, i. 250 A; ii. 203 B, 204 A.

بُنْتُ for بُنَيْتَ, Add. et Corri-
genda (Vol. i. 91 A).

بَنُو, ii. 290 c, 296 c.

بَنُونَ, i. 195 c.

بُنَى, i. 253 A.

بَه for بَهَا in pause, ii. 372 c.

بَهْرَانِي, i. 157 c.

بُوص, i. 202 B.

بُوهُونَ, i. 195 D.

بَيْت, i. 226 A.

بَيْت بَيْت, i. 289 c.

بَيْت المُقَدَّس, ii. 233 c.

بَيْد, i. 289 A; ii. 342 c.

بَيْن, i. 281 c; ii. 180 B.

بَيْن بَيْن, i. 290 A.

بَيْن--إِلَى, ii. 181 B.

بَيْن يَدَي ...

بَيْنَا, i. 286 A; ii. 181 D.

بَيْنَمَا ...

ت

ة, i. 7 A.

ة, i. 183 D, 184 A; as a plur. term., i. 232 D.

ت for ة, in rhyme, ii. 369 c D.

ت, i. 279 B; ii. 175 c.

ت, i. 93 A.

تَا, i. 265 A.

تَاكَ, i. 266 D.

تَبَارَكَ, i. 39 c; ii. 3 B.

تُبْعُونَ, i. 195 D.

تُجَاه, i. 281 D.

تَجَر, i. 77 A.

تَحَامَل, i. 40 B.

تُحِيت, تَحُت, i. 281 D; ii. 182 A B.

مِنْ تَحُت, تَحُت, i. 288 B.

تَحِين, i. 279 D.

تَخِذ, i. 77 A.

تَسَاقَط, i. 40 B.

تَع, i. 25 c.

تَعَاظَم, i. 39 D.

تَعَالَى, i. 39 c.

... , and similar perfects after the name of God, ii. 3 B.

تَعَلَّم, ii. 49 A.

تَقِي = اتَّقِ, ii. 380 B.

تَلَان, i. 279 D.

تِلْقَاء, i. 281 D.

تِلْكَ, i. 267 B C.

تِه, i. 93 A.

تِه, تِه, تِهِي, i. 265 A.

تَهَام, i. 154 A.

تَوْرِيَّة, i. 12 A.

تَوْهَم, ii. 48 D.

تِي, i. 265 A.

تَيْد, ii. 78 B.

تِيكَ, i. 266 D.

ث

ثَابِت for ثَابِت, i. 261 A.

ثَلِيث, i. 264 A.

ثَمَر, i. 293 B; with Subjunct., ii. 33 A; with ل and Jussive, ii. 36 B.

ثَمَّت, i. 293 B.

ثَنَا, i. 25 D.

ثَنَتَان, i. 253 D, 254 C.

ج

جَاء, ii. 103 B.

جَالٍ, i. 145 C.

أَجْنَأ = جَانَأ, i. 34 A.

جَدَّ جِدُّهُ, ii. 55 B.

جِدُّ, ii. 207 D, 279 C.

الْجَدِيدَان, i. 190 B.

جِرَوَات, i. 193 B.

جَنُور, i. 185 D, 215 C.

جَعَلَ, ii. 48 D, 108 D.

جَلَّ وَعَلَا, ii. 3 B.

جُمُع, i. 200 B, 240 A; ii. 278 D.

جَمِيع, ii. 206 B, 278 B, 282 A, 296 A.

جَمِيعًا, ii. 206 B.

جَوَارٍ, i. 213 D.

جَوْتُ, i. 295 B.

جَوِير, i. 286 B.

ح

ح, i. 25 D.

حَاء, i. 295 B.

حَادِي عَشْرِينَ, i. 262 A.

حَاشَى, حَاشَا, حَاش, ii. 342 D.

حَال, ii. 272 A.

حَبَّ, i. 69 A.

حُبَّ, حَبَّ, i. 98 A.

حُبَّ = إِحْبَابُ, ii. 59 D.

حَبَّة, ii. 236 D.

الْحُبَابُ = الْحَبَا, ii. 382 A.

حَبَّدَا, i. 98 B.

حَتَّى, prep., i. 280 B; ii. 146 B.

... , as حَرْفُ عَطْفٍ, ii. 147 B.

... , conj., i. 293 C; with the Subjunct., ii. 22 C, 29 B; with Perf. or Imperf. Indic., ii. 29 D.

إِذَا حَتَّى إِذَا, ii. 12 C, 13 C D.

حَجَا, ii. 48 D.

حَجَاجُ = حَجَا, ii. 382 B.

حَجَازِيكَ, ii. 74 B.

حُجَج, i. 201 B.

حَدُّور, i. 186 A.

حِذَاء, i. 281 D.

حِذُو, for حِذَاء, i. 12 D.

حُرُون, i. 196 B.
 حُرُون, i. 196 A.
 حَرَى, ii. 107 D, 108 C.
 حَسَب, i. 58 C; ii. 48 D.
 حَسَب, i. 288 C.
 حَسَن, حُسْن, i. 98 A B.
 حُشَان, i. 218 D.
 حُشُون, i. 196 A.
 حَشَى, ii. 342 D.
 حَضِر, i. 58 D.
 حَضَرَمِي, i. 162 A.
 حَق, ii. 207 D, 279 C.
 حَلُوب, i. 185 D.
 حَم, i. 249 A, 252 A.
 حَمَا, حَمَى, i. 284 C.
 الْحَمَام = الْحَمِي, ii. 382 A.
 حَنَانِكَ, ii. 74 A.
 حَوْب, i. 295 B.
 حَوْل, i. 281 D; ii. 188 B.
 حَى, i. 294 C.
 إِلَى حَيْثُ مِنْ حَيْثُ حَيْثُ.
 حَيْثَمَا, i. 288 B.
 حَيْثَمَا, ii. 14 C.
 حَيْثَمَا, etc., with the Energetic,
 ii. 43 C.
 حَيْضُ بَيْض, i. 290 A.

حِين, i. 289 A.
 حِينِيذ, i. 292 A.
 حَيْهَل, حَيْهَلَا, etc., i. 294 D; حَيْهَل
 with accus. = مُسْرِعًا, ii.
 78 B.
 حَيَوَة, i. 12 A, 121 C.
 حَيَى, i. 94 D.

خ

خ, i. 26 A.
 خَالَ, ii. 48 D.
 خَامِس = خَامِر, i. 261 A.
 خَذ, i. 76 C D.
 خَذ عَنْكَ, ii. 143 C.
 خَرَج, ii. 103 D.
 خَلَا, ii. 341 C.
 خُلَفَاء, خَلَايَا, i. 219 B C.
 خَلَف, i. 281 D; ii. 187 D.
 خَمِيس, i. 264 A.

د

دَاخَلَ = دَاخِل, i. 34 A.
 دَام, ii. 101 D.
 دَاوُد, for دَاوُد, i. 18 D.
 دَرَى, ii. 48 D.
 دَعَا, ii. 45 C.
 دُمْتُ, دُمْتُ, i. 59 B.
 دَوَالِيكَ, ii. 74 B.

دُونَيْن, i. 281 D; ii. 182 D;
 = أَمَامَ, ii. 186 C; = بَلَا, ii.
 163 A, 185 B; = غَيْرَ, ii. 184 C;
 meaning *beyond, above, ibid.*;
 opposed to وَرَاءَ, ii. 186 C.

دُونَكَ, = خُذْ or الزَّمْ, ii. 78 A, 183 B.
 دُونَكَ, = أَمَامَكَ, ii. 183 C.

دِيْبَاغ, i. 229 D.

دِيْمَاس, دِيْمَاس, i. 229 D.

دِيْنَار, i. 175 B, 229 C.

دِيْوَان

ذ

ذَا, i. 265 A; after أَثْبَهَا, ii. 93 A;
 after مَنْ and مَا, ii. 312 B;
 after يَا, ii. 89 C.

ذَآئِكَ, i. 266 D.

ذَات, ii. 272 A.

ذَات, i. 265 D; = أَلْتِي, i. 272 D.

ذَات يَدَيْنِ, ii. 110 B.

ذَات السَّمَالِ أَوْ الْبَحْمَنِ, ii. 111 C.

ذَات مَرَّةٍ, ii. 110 B.

يَوْمَ

ذَاكَ, i. 266 C, 267 C.

ذَلِكَ, i. 267 A C.

ذَنْ, i. 284 B.

ذِهْ, ذِهْ, i. 265 A.

ذُو, i. 249 A, 252 A, 265 C; ii. 203 A;
 = أَلْدَى, i. 272 B.

ذُو يَدَيْنِ, ii. 110 B.

ذَوُو, i. 196 C.

ذِي, i. 265 A.

ذَيْت وَذَيْت etc., i. 268 D.

ر

ر, used instead of رَغ, i. 6 D.

رَا, for رَأَى, ii. 374 D.

رَاءَ

رَاءَ, for رَجَمَ, ii. 382 B.

رَأَى, i. 77 C, 93 B; ii. 48 D, 50 B.

رَابِعَ عَشْرِينَ, i. 262 A.

رَاح, ii. 102 A.

رَازِي, i. 153 D.

الرَّافِدَانِ, i. 190 D.

رَبَّ, ii. 214 B.

رَبَّ, i. 289 B; ii. 216 A.

رَبُّ, رَبُّ, رَبُّ, رَبُّ, ii. 215 A.

رُبْتُ, رُبْتُ, ii. 215 A.

رُبَّمَا, i. 289 A; ii. 215 B C, 216 C;
 with the Energetic, ii. 42 C.

رُبَّمَا, رُبَّمَا, ii. 214 C, 215 A.

الرَّبُّوا, رَبُّوا, i. 12 A.

رَبِيعَ, i. 263 D.

رَجَعَ, i. 57 D; ii. 102 A.

رَجُل, for رَجُل, ii. 384 D.
 رَجُلُ خُنْثَى, ii. 273 D.
 رَجُلُ سَوْءٍ, ii. 274 D.
 رَح, رَح, i. 25 D.
 رَسَعْنِي, i. 162 B.
 رَسُول, i. 136 D.
 رَضَا, for رَضَى, Add. et Corrigenda
 (Vol. i. 91 A).
 رَضِه, i. 25 D.
 رَعَل, i. 290 C.
 رَغَن ...
 رَكَن, i. 58 C.
 رَم, i. 68 D.
 رُمَّة, ii. 280 A.
 رُمُو, Add. et Corrigenda (Vol. i.
 30 C).
 رِه, for ر, i. 93 B.
 رُوخ, ii. 272 A.
 رَوْحَانِي, i. 157 C.
 رُؤْي, i. 94 D.
 رُوَيْد, ii. 78 B.
 رِي, for رِي, ii. 374 D.
 رَيْث, رَيْثَا, i. 289 B.

ز

زَال, ii. 102 A, 103 C.
 زَعَم, i. 57 D; ii. 48 D.

زَق, i. 69 C D.
 زَكُوَّة, i. 12 A, 121 C.
 زَق, i. 69 D.
 زُهَاه, ii. 211 A.
 زَال = زَيْل, i. 83 D.

س

س, i. 282 D; ii. 19 A, 346 D.
 سَاء, i. 98 B.
 سَائِر, ii. 206 D.
 سَات, i. 261 A.
 سَاد ...
 سَار = سَائِر, i. 145 D.
 سَاس, i. 145 B.
 سَاقَط = أُسْقَط, i. 34 A.
 سَال, سَال, i. 24 C, 77 B, 84 C.
 السَّبَا, for السَّبَائِب, ii. 382 A.
 سَبَعَن, ii. 248 A.
 سَتَر, for اسْتَتَر, i. 67 B.
 سَجَزِي, i. 153 D.
 سَحَر, ii. 111 A.
 سُحْرَة ...
 سَعْدِيكَ, ii. 74 B.
 سَف, ii. 19 B.
 سَقَايَة, سَقَاءَة, i. 183 D, 184 A.
 سَل, i. 77 B.

- سَمَاوَةٌ, i. 183 D.
 سَمَكَةٌ, i. 147 D.
 سُنُون, i. 196 B.
 سِنِينَ ...
 سَو, ii. 19 B.
 سَوْدَد, سَوْدَد, i. 120 C.
 سَوَف, i. 282 D, 289 B; ii. 19 A, 346 D.
 سُول, سُول, i. 200 C.
 سَوَا, سَوَا, ii. 209 C; سَوَى, ii. 341 C.
 سَى, ii. 19 B.
 سِيَمَا, i. 289 B; ii. 344 A.
 ش
 ش, for ل, i. 101 D.
 شَاو, i. 233 B.
 شَاط, i. 145 C.
 شَاك, شَاك, i. 145 B C.
 شَام, i. 154 A.
 شَاه, شَاه, i. 145 B C.
 شَاهِد, i. 225 D.
 شَرَار, i. 229 D.
 شِبْه, شِبْه, ii. 211 A.
 شَتَات, شَتَات, i. 289 D.
 شَد, i. 68 D.
 شُدَى, i. 202 D.
 أَشْر, أَشْر, i. 59 B.
 شَرَع, ii. 108 D.
 شَرَف, i. 30 C.
 شَعَر, i. 57 C.
 شِفَاه, i. 233 B.
 شِنَاي, i. 154 D.
 شَوَى ...
 شُوَيْت, شُوَيْت, i. 172 A.
 شِيَاه, i. 233 B.
 شِيْب, i. 295 B.
 شِيرَار, i. 229 D.
 شِيْعِي, شِيْعِي, i. 151 B D.
 شِيَوَى, i. 151 C.
 ص
 صَاَح, ii. 89 A.
 صَاِحِب, ii. 203 A.
 صَار, ii. 15 C, 102 A.
 صَبَاو, i. 205 A.
 الصَّبَاة, i. 208 C.
 صَبَاَح, صَبَاَح, i. 289 D.
 صَح, i. 26 A.
 صَعُوْد, i. 186 A.
 صَلَح, i. 57 D.
 صَلَع, i. 25 D.
 صَلَوَة, i. 12 A, 121 C.

صَنَعَانِي, i. 157 c.

صَه, i. 295 A.

صَوْتُ, i. 181 D.

صَيْدَنَانِي, صَيْدَلَانِي, i. 164 D.

ض

ضَبُوت, i. 185 D.

ضَحْوَة, ii. 111 A.

ضَرْبَتُهُ شَدِيدًا, ii. 54 A D.

ضُغُوت, i. 185 D.

ضَلَّ ضَلَالَهُ, ii. 55 B.

ط

طَائِي, i. 155 B.

طَاغ, i. 145 B.

طَاق, i. 295 C.

طَان, i. 145 C.

طَبِق, ii. 108 D.

طَعَن, i. 57 D.

طِعْنَان, i. 118 A.

طَفِق, ii. 108 D.

طَق, i. 295 C.

طَق ...

طَلَعَ, i. 57 D.

طِبَّانِيَّة, i. 117 D.

طَوَارِق, i. 213 D.

طِيخ, طِيخ, i. 295 C.

ظ

ظَلَّ, ii. 15 C, 102 A.

ظَنَّ, ii. 48 D.

ظَنَّ, ii. 51 D.

ع

عَادَ, ii. 102 A.

الْعَالَمُونَ, i. 195 C.

عَالِي = أَعْلَى, i. 34 A.

عَامَّة, ii. 206 C, 278 B, 282 A.

عِبَادِلَة, i. 231 C.

عَبْدَرِي, i. 162 A.

عَبْسِي, i. 162 B.

عَبْسِي ...

عَتَى, i. 280 B.

عَجَافِي, i. 204 D.

عَدَّ, ii. 48 D.

عِدَّ, for عِدَّة, ii. 380 C.

عَدَا, ii. 341 C.

عَدَس, i. 295 B.

عِدْوِي, i. 151 C.

عَرْعَار, i. 62 C.

عَرَقَات, i. 243 B.

عُرَّس, i. 171 B.

عَزَّل, i. 207 B.

عَسَى, ii. 15 D, 107 D.

عِشَارُ, i. 204 D.

عُشَارُ, i. 263 B.

عَشْرُ, i. 255 A.

عَشْرَنَ, ii. 248 A.

عِشْرِينِي, i. 153 B.

عَقَقْتُ عَقَاقِي, i. 62 D.

عَلَى آلٍ = عَلَ, i. 281 C; ii. 381 A.

يَعْلَلُ, عَلَّ, i. 68 D.

عَلَّ, i. 290 B; ii. 82 C.

عَلِقَ, ii. 45 D, 108 D.

عَلِمَ, ii. 48 D.

عَلَّمَا, ii. 82 D.

عَلَى, i. 280 C, 281 A C; ii. 166 C.

عَلَى بِهِ, ii. 172 B.

عَلَيْكَ = خُذْ or الزَّمْ, ii. 78 A.

خُذْ = عَلَيْكَ بِ, ii. 172 D.

عَلَى لِسَانِ فُلَانٍ, ii. 172 D.

عَلِيَّوْنَ, i. 195 D.

عَمَ, i. 25 D.

عِمَ, i. 78 C.

عَمَا, عَمَّا, i. 284 C.

عَمَّا = عَنِ, ii. 143 A, 193 A.

عَمِّنْ, عَمَّا, i. 16 A, 281 B.

عَمَّرَ, i. 12 C.

عَمَّرُوا ...

عَنِ, i. 16 A, 280 C, 281 B; ii.

139 B; in comparisons, ii.

142 A; = بَعْدَ, ii. 143 A;

originally a substantive, ii.

143 D.

عَنْ = أَنْ, i. 292 C.

عَنَّ, i. 290 B.

الْعِنَانُ = الْعِنَا, ii. 382 B.

عِنْدَ, i. 281 D; ii. 166 A, 178 D.

عِنْدَكَ = خُذْ or الزَّمْ, ii. 78 A, 179 D.

عِنْدَمَا, i. 293 C.

عَوَضَ, i. 288 B.

عَوَضَ, i. 281 D.

عُوطَطُ, i. 120 C.

عَيْلَ, i. 146 B.

عَيْنُ, i. 226 B; ii. 272 A, 280 A D, 282 B.

عَيْيَ, i. 95 A.

غ

غ, replaced by ر, i. 6 D.

غَاقِي, i. 295 B.

غِبَّ, ii. 187 A.

غِبَّ, i. 264 B.

غَدَّ, ii. 206 A.

غَدَا, ii. 102 A.

غُدْوَةٌ, ii. 111 A.

غُدْوَةٌ, pl. غُدَايَا, i. 222 D; connected with لَدُنْ, ii. 165 D.

غَضَبِي, i. 154 D.

غَنّ, i. 290 B.

غَيْر, i. 288 C; الْغَيْر, instead of غَيْر,

ii. 208 C; غَيْر, ii. 208 A, 296 A;

غَيْر, ii. 303 D, 340 C; غَيْر,

ii. 208 C.

لَكِنْ = غَيْرَ أَنْ, i. 293 D; ii. 340 C.

ف

ف, with هُوَ, هِيَ, i. 54 C.

ف, as حَرْفُ تَرْتِيبٍ, i. 290 D; ii. 288 A D, 325 A, 330 A.

ف, after أَمَّا, i. 291 A.

ف, after لَهَا, i. 291 D.

ف, marking the apodosis of إِنْ, ii. 3 B, 15 C, 40 B, 345 A sqq.; omitted, ii. 346 A.

ف, with the Subjunctive, ii. 30 C, 32 B.

ف, with the Genitive, ii. 217 A.

فَإِنَّ, i. 291 A.

فِيهَا, ii. 162 B.

فِيهَا وَنِعْمَتْ, ii. 162 B.

فَتَى, ii. 102 A, 103 C.

فَحَسْبُ, i. 288 C.

فَرَعٌ, ii. 46 A.

فِرَّة, i. 200 D.

فَضْل, i. 58 D.

فَضْلًا عَنْ, ii. 141 D.

فَقَط, i. 286 B.

فَل, with the Jussive, i. 291 B; ii. 35 C.

فُلَّة, ii. 89 B, 381 A.

فَلَّال, i. 207 D.

فُلَان, i. 278 A.

فُلَانَةٌ, i. 241 D, 278 A.

فَم, i. 239 C, 249 B, 252 A.

فَمَا = فَمَ, i. 274 D.

فَمَتَّ, i. 293 B.

فِه, for فِ, i. 93 B.

فُو, i. 249 B, 252 A.

فَوْضُوذَى, فَوْضَى, etc., i. 120 C.

فَوَيْتَى, فَوْق, i. 281 D; ii. 182 B.

مِنْ فَوْق, فَوْق, i. 288 B.

فِي, i. 280 C, 281 B; ii. 61 A, 111 C, 153 D, 199 D; = مَعَ or مَعْنَى, ii. 154 C.

فِيمَا بَيْنَ, ii. 180 D.

فَيِّنَةٌ, ii. 111 A.

ق

ق, i. 93 B, 94 C; ii. 48 C.

قَابِل, ii. 206 A.

قَالَ, ii. 47 A, 48 D, 50 D.

قَامَ, ii. 108 D.

قَب, i. 295 C.

قَبِيل, قَبِيل, i. 281 D; ii. 186 D.

مِنْ قَبْلُ, i. 288 B.

قَبْلُ, i. 281 D; ii. 180 A.

قَدْ, with the Perf., i. 286 B; ii. 3 C, 5 A, 79 B, 346 D; in correlative clauses, ii. 7 C; with the Imperf., i. 286 C; ii. 21 D.

قَدْ كَانَ, with the Perf., ii. 5 C.

قَدَامَ, i. 282 A; ii. 187 B.

قَدَرُ, ii. 211 A.

قَدَمَ, i. 178 D.

قَرَقَارَ, i. 62 C.

قُيِّسَ, i. 205 D.

قَطُ, i. 286 D.

قَعَدَ, i. 57 D; ii. 103 B.

قَلِيلَيْنِ, i. 196 B.

قَلْبَيْصَ, i. 171 B.

قُوسِ, i. 295 B.

قَيْرَاطُ, i. 229 C.

ك

كَ, i. 280 A; ii. 176 C.

كَأَ, i. 276 D; ii. 127 B.

كَأَ

كَأَيْنَ

كَأَدَ, ii. 106 B.

كَالَ, for كَذَلِكَ, i. 268 D.

كَانَ, ii. 99 A, 196 A, 197 D, 258 B, 266 A.

كَانَ, with the Imperf., ii. 8 B, 16 C, 21 B.

... , with the Perf., ii. 5 C, 15 C, 16 A; after قُوْ, ii. 6 C, 7 D.

... , omitted, ii. 100 D.

... , redundant, ii. 101 A.

... , after verbal nouns = *he (it) was, was formerly*, ii. 101 D.

... , imperative of, with name of person in accus., ii. 44 C.

كَانَ قَدْ, with the Perf., ii. 5 C.

كَانَ وَأَخَوَاتِهَا, ii. 101 D, 266 A, 298 C.

كَأَنَّ, i. 292 C; ii. 81 C, 82 B.

كَهَّانَ, i. 293 B; ii. 78 D.

كَأَتَى بَ, ii. 158 A.

كَأَيَّ, i. 276 D; ii. 127 B.

كَأَيَّ

كَأَيِّنْ

كَتَبَرُ, for أَكْبَرُ, ii. 384 D.

كَبِيرَ, with genitive in negative sentences, ii. 219 D.

كَتَعَ, i. 200 B, 240 B.

كَتَنُ = كَتَانُ, ii. 383 D.

كَثِيرَ, with genitive in negative sentences, ii. 219 D.

كَذَى, i. 266 A, 269 A, 287 A; ii. 127 D; كَذَا كَذَا or كَذَا

وَكَذَا, ii. 127 D, 128 A.

كَذَلِكَ, i. 268 A, 287 A.

كَرَّاسٍ, i. 228 D.

كَرَبَ, ii. 106 B, 107 B.

الْكَرِيمَتَانِ, i. 190 C.

كَسْرَى, i. 230 D.

كَفَّ, i. 178 D.

كَفَى, used impersonally, ii. 271 D.

كُلَّ, i. 76 C.

كُلَّ, ii. 204 C, 262 A; 278 B, 282 A, 297 C.

كَلَّا, i. 287 A.

كَلَّتَا, ii. 212 D, 280 B, 282 A.

كَلَّتْ, ii. 214 B.

كَلَّمَا, ii. 14 C.

كَلَّتِي, ii. 214 B.

كُم, i. 274 B C; ii. 125 B C.

كُم, for كُمْ, i. 22 B, 101 D.

كَمَا = *as soon as*, ii. 178 A.

كَمَا = كَ, ii. 177 C, 193 A.

كَمَا أَنْتَ, ii. 177 D.

كَبَلْ ...

كَوُودُ, i. 186 A.

كَى, i. 293 D; ii. 22 C, 28 A.

كَئِنْ, كَيْفَى, كَيْ, i. 276 D; ii. 127 B.

كَئِثْ وَكَئِثْ, i. 268 D.

كَئِثْ وَكَئِثْ, i. 268 D.

كَأَذ = كِيدَ, i. 83 D.

كَبْسَى, i. 220 D.

كَبَفَ, i. 289 C; ii. 14 C, 24 B.

كَفَيْمَا, ii. 14 C; 24 B.

كَفَلَا, i. 293 D; ii. 22 C, 28 A.

كَفَمَا أَنْ, ii. 29 A; كَيْمَا, ii. 29 B.

كَفَمَا = كَيْمَا, i. 274 D.

ل

لَ, for أَل, i. 23 D.

لَ, for لِ, i. 291 B; ii. 35 C.

لَ, i. 24 A, 282 D; ii. 19 B, 51 C, 79 A B, 81 D, 175 D, 260 A, 261 C, 265 C, 348 D; with the Energetic, ii. 41 D, 42 C D; with هُوَ, هِىَ, i. 54 C.

لَ, for لِ, prep., i. 279 C; ii. 152 B.

لِ, prep., i. 23 D, 279 B C; ii. 147 D, 199 D; expressing the complement in the genitive, ii. 61 A; after nomina actionis, ii. 61 D; after nomina agentis, ii. 68 C, 96 D; instead of the accus., with the finite verb, ii. 69 C; after verbal adjectives, ii. 70 A, 71 A B D; inserted to strengthen the annexation, ii. 95 C; = عَلَى, ii. 148 D.

لِ, with the Subjunct., i. 291 C; ii. 22 C, 28 A.

لِ, with the Jussive, i. 291 B; ii. 35 B; omitted, ii. 35 D.

لَا, i. 287 A; ii. 300 A, 333 A, 347 A; with the Perf. retaining its original meaning, ii. 2 D; with the Perf., as optative, ii. 3 A, 304 C; in oaths, asseverations, etc., ii. 2 A, 304 B; with the Imperf., ii. 20 D; with the Jussive, ii. 36 B, 43 D; with the Energetic, ii. 42 A, 44 A; prohibitive, ii. 306 A; governing the accus., ii. 94 C; inserted between prep. and genitive, ii. 224 D; prefixed to اِنْ, ii. 302 A.

لَا, after a previous negative, ii. 2 B, 303 A, 327 B.

لَا, after غَيْر, ii. 209 A; after غَيْر, هَلَا, and دُونَ, ii. 303 D.

لَا, for غَيْر, ii. 209 B.

لَا, redundant with اَنْ, after verbs of forbidding, fearing, etc., ii. 304 C.

لَا بُدَّ, i. 289 C.

لَا يَهْلُ, ii. 335 A.

لَا جَوْرَ, i. 289 D.

لَا ذَا جَرَّ, لَا ذَا جَوْرَ, i. 289 D.

لَا زَالَ, ii. 2 D.

لَا سِيَمًا, لَا سِيَمًا, i. 289 B.

لَا عَلَيْكَ, ii. 98 C, 172 C.

لَا غَيْرَ, ii. 208 D, 340 B.

لَا مَحَالَةَ, i. 289 C.

لَا يَكُونُ, as an exceptive, ii. 343 C.

لَيْتَ, i. 292 C; ii. 28 A.

لَيْتَنُ, i. 292 D.

لِأَنَّ, i. 292 C; ii. 28 A.

لَعَلَّ = لَأَنَّ, i. 290 C.

لِأَنَّ, i. 293 B; ii. 78 D.

لَاتَ, i. 96 D; ii. 105 A.

لَاعِ, i. 145 C.

لَاكِ, for لَكِن, ii. 379 D.

لَاكِ, لَكِن, ii. 333 D.

لَانَ, for أَلَانَ, ii. 323 D, 380 B.

لَاهِ, for لِلَّهِ, ii. 380 B.

لَاهُم, for اَللَّهُم, ii. 380 B.

لَا يَمُنُ اَللَّهُ, i. 20 B.

لَبَّيْتُ, اَلْبُ, i. 59 B.

لَبَّيْكَ, ii. 74 A.

لَحِقَ, ii. 45 D.

لَحْمَر, for اَلْأَحْمَر, ii. 380 D.

لَحَى, لَحِيَّاتَ, i. 193 B.

لُدَّ, لُدَّ, i. 280 C.

لَدَا, i. 280 C, 281 A; ii. 165 B.

لَدُنْ, i. 280 C, 281 B; ii. 165 B, 179 D.

لَدَى, i. 280 C, 281 A; ii. 165 B, 179 D.

- لَعَلَّ, i. 290 B; ii. 108 C; with accus., ii. 82 C; with genitive, ii. 83 A.
- لَعَلَّمَا, ii. 82 D.
- لَعَلَّه, i. 26 B.
- لَعَنَّ, i. 290 B.
- لِعِنْدِ, ii. 190 C.
- لَعَنَّ, i. 290 C.
- لُغْلُوطَات, for اَلْأُغْلُوطَات, ii. 380 D.
- لَقَدْ, ii. 176 A.
- لَكِنَّ, i. 287 B; ii. 81 D, 82 B, 333 D; with accus., ii. 78 D.
- لِكُنْ, i. 293 D; ii. 22 C, 28 A.
- لِلَّهِ, expressing admiration, ii. 150 A.
- لِلَّهِ دَرَّةٌ, expressing admiration, ii. 150 A.
- لَمْ, i. 287 B; with the Jussive, ii. 15 D, 22 D, 41 B, 347 A.
- لَمَّا, *not yet*, i. 287 B C; with the Jussive, ii. 22 D, 41 B.
- لَمَّا, *after*, with the Perf., i. 294 A; synonymous with اِلَّا, i. 294 A; ii. 340 A.
- لَمِنْدُ, ii. 190 C.
- لَنْ, i. 287 C; ii. 22 C, 25 A, 300 C, 346 D.
- لِهِنَّ, for لَإِنَّ, i. 285 B.
- لَوْ, i. 22 A, 294 A; ii. 347 B; with two correlative clauses, ii. 6 B; optative, ii. 347 C.
- لَوْ أَنْ, ii. 6 B, 348 A.
- لَوْلَا, i. 287 C, 294 A; ii. 6 B D, 262 C; interrog., ii. 310 C.
- لَوْلَمْ, i. 294 A; ii. 6 B.
- لَوْمًا, i. 287 C, 294 A; interrog., ii. 310 C.
- لَوْنٌ, i. 290 C.
- لَيَالٍ, i. 221 B.
- لَيْتَ, i. 290 B; with the accus., ii. 82 C, 83 D.
- لَيْتَمَا, ii. 82 D.
- لَيْسَ, verb, i. 96 B; ii. 15 D, 102 B, 103 C, 302 A; negative particle, ii. 302 B, 346 D; exceptive, ii. 343 C; with pronominal suffixes, ii. 343 D.
- لَيْسَ إِلَّا, ii. 340 B.
- لَيْسَ غَيْرُ, ii. 208 D, 340 B.
- لَيَّمِ اللَّهُ, i. 20 B.
- لَيَّمَنَّ اللَّهُ ...
- م
- مَر, i. 25 D.
- مَر for مَر, in pause, ii. 371 C.
- مَا or مَر = مَا, i. 274 B C; ii. 371 C.
- مَرَّ اللَّهُ, ii. 176 B.
- مَا, interrog., i. 270 C, 275 C; ii. 298 D, 311 D.

- مَا, relative, i. 270 c, 273 B; ii. 267 D, 319 A; relative, with conditional sense, ii. 14 c, 23 c D.
- مَا, indefinite, i. 277 A; ii. 137 D; with intensifying force, ii. 276 B.
- مَا, negative, i. 287 c; ii. 266 B, 346 D; with the Imperf., ii. 20 D, 300 D; with the Perf., ii. 300 D; with the accus., ii. 104 A; neg. interrog., ii. 311 A.
- مَا, as long as, with the Perf., i. 294 A; ii. 17 c.
- مَا, inserted before a clause, after a preposition, etc., ii. 192 B, 220 c.
- مَا, redundant, after رَبِّ, ii. 215 B; after كَ, بِ, عَنْ, مِنْ, ii. 193 A; between the مُضَاف and the مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ, ii. 224 c.
- مَا إِنَّ, i. 284 D; ii. 301 B.
- مَا بَيْنَ, ii. 180 D, 243 A.
- مَا حَاشَا, etc., ii. 343 B.
- مَا خَلَا, ii. 341 c.
- مَا عَدَا ...
- مَا لَمْ, with the Jussive, as neg. of مَا أَلَدَيْمُومَة, ii. 17 D.
- (مَا هُوَ) هِيَ, ii. 144 D, 276 c.
- مَا هُوَ إِلَّا أَنْ, ii. 340 c.
- مَا هِيَ, i. 164 A.
- مَا هِيَ, i. 258 A B D; ii. 235 A, 238 D, 239 A, 244 B.
- مَا هِيَ, i. 153 B.
- مَا هِيَ, i. 295 B.
- مَا هِيَ, ii. 273 D.
- مَا هِيَ, i. 86 A.
- مَا هِيَ, i. 154 A.
- مَا هِيَ, i. 145 B C.
- مَا هِيَ, i. 287 c; مَا هِيَ, i. 294 B; ii. 14 c.
- مَا هِيَ = مِنْ, ii. 131 A.
- مَا هِيَ, ii. 210 A.
- مَا هِيَ, i. 125 c.
- مَا هِيَ, i. 126 B.
- مَا هِيَ, i. 146 A.
- مَا هِيَ, i. 188 c.
- مَا هِيَ, i. 22 B, 280 D; ii. 173 c.
- مَا هِيَ, ii. 190 c.
- مَا هِيَ = مَرَحَبًا, ii. 382 B.
- مَا هِيَ, i. 76 c.
- مَا هِيَ, i. 20 B.
- مَا هِيَ, i. 125 c.
- مَا هِيَ, i. 153 D.
- مَا هِيَ, i. 125 c.
- مَا هِيَ, i. 68 A.

مَسْقُط, i. 125 c.
 مَسْكِن ...
 مُشْتَرَك, ii. 251 D.
 مُشْرَاق, i. 129 B.
 مَشْرِق, i. 125 D.
 مُشْكُوَّة, i. 12 A.
 مَضْر, i. 178 D.
 مَضُورُون, i. 146 A.
 مُضَار, for مُضَاع, i. 6 D.
 الْمُضْمَر, ii. 251 D.
 مَطْلَع, i. 125 D.
 مَظَنَّة, i. 128 D.
 مَعَ, i. 280 D; ii. 164 B; properly the accus. of a noun, ii. 165 A.
 مَعَا, i. 26 B.
 الْمُعْتَمِد, ii. 251 D.
 مَعْنَا = عِنْدَنَا, ii. 164 C.
 مَغْرِب, i. 125 D.
 مَغْزَل, i. 131 A.
 الْمُغْشَى, ii. 251 D, 268 C.
 مَفْرِق, i. 125 D.
 مِقْدَار, ii. 211 A.
 مَقْوُود, i. 146 A.
 مِنْ آل = مِل, i. 281 C; ii. 380 D.

مِمَّا, i. 16 A, 281 B.
 مِمَّا = مِنْ, ii. 131 C, 133 C, 193 A.
 مَنْ, interrog., i. 270 C, 275 A; ii. 298 D, 311 D.
 ..., relative, i. 270 C, 273 B; ii. 267 D, 319 A; implying a condition, with the Perf., ii. 14 C, and with the Jussive, ii. 23 C D, 262 B.
 ..., indefinite, i. 277 A.
 مَنْ لِي بِكَذَا, ii. 163 C.
 مَنْ لِي مِنْ فُلَانٍ, ii. 139 A.
 مِنْ, i. 15 D, 16 A, 22 B, 280 D, 281 B C; ii. 61 A, 123 B C, 125 B, 126 B, 129 B C, 199 D, 237 A, 242 A; after comparative adj., ii. 132 D, 133; after a negat. or interrog., ii. 135 D, 289 B; preceded by an indefinite noun, ii. 136 B; expressing the agent of the Passive, ii. 139 A, 270 D; used for التَّشْبِيْهِ, ii. 138 B; originally a subst., ii. 135 D; = مُنْذُ, ii. 175 A; = بَدَل or عِنْد, ii. 130 B D; with an indefinite genitive, forming the subject of a sentence, ii. 135 C; مِنْكَ, ii. 139 A.
 مِنْ أَجْلِ, ii. 131 D.
 أَحَدٍ ... , ii. 136 A B.

مِنْ أَيْنَ i. 285 D.
 بَعْدِ ... , ii. 189 B.
 بَيْنَ ... , ii. 188 C.
 تَحْتِ ... , ii. 189 A.
 حَوْلِ ... , ii. 190 A.
 خَلْفِ ...
 دُونِ ... , ii. 182 D.
 عَلِ ... , i. 288 B.
 عَلَى ... , ii. 173 A.
 عَنْ ... , ii. 143 D.
 عِنْدِ ... , ii. 189 C.
 غَدِ ... , ii. 136 C.
 غَيْرِ ... , ii. 163 A.
 قَوْره ... , ii. 136 D.
 قَوْقِ ... , ii. 189 A.
 قَبْلِ ... , ii. 189 B.
 قَبْلِ ... , ii. 189 D.
 لَدُنْ ... , ii. 165 C, 189 C.
 أَلْتَلَيْ ... , ii. 136 D.
 مَعِهِ ... , ii. 165 B.
 وَرَاءَ ... , ii. 190 A.
 يَوْمِهِ ... , ii. 136 D.
 مِنْ أَلَلِهْ ii. 176 B.
 مِنْ رَبِّي، مِنْ أَلَرَّبِ ii. 176 B.

أَلْمَنَابَا and أَلْمَنَارِلْ = أَلْمَنَا
 382 A.
 مَنَاجِدْ i. 233 C.
 مَنَانِيْ i. 154 A.
 مَنِيَّتْ i. 125 D.
 مَنَّتْ i. 275 B.
 مَنَّتِنْ i. 138 D.
 مَنَحُورْ، مَنَحِرْ i. 126 A.
 مَنَدْ i. 280 D; ii. 173 B.
 مَنَسَكْ i. 126 A.
 أَلْمَنَطُوقْ ii. 251 D.
 مَنَهْ i. 275 B.
 مَنُو ...
 مَنَوِيْ i. 154 A.
 مَنِيْ، أَلْمَنِيْ i. 275 D; ii. 314 B.
 مَهْ, for مَ, in pause, ii. 371 C.
 مَهْ = مَا i. 274 D.
 مَهْ، مَهْ i. 295 A.
 مَهَارِيْ، مَهَارْ، مَهَارِيْ i. 228 D.
 مَهْمَا ii. 14 C, 137 D.
 مَهْمَنْ ii. 14 C.
 مَوْتَفَاةْ i. 63 D.
 مِيَاهْ i. 233 B.
 مَيَّتْ ii. 230 D.
 مَيَدْ ii. 342 C.

ن

- ن, i. 26 A.
ن, of the 2nd Energetic of verbs, rejected, i. 22 D.
ن, for نِي, ii. 371 D.
ن, for نَا, in rhyme, ii. 369 C.
ن, for نَا, in 1st p. pl. Perf., i. 55 D; ii. 384 A.
ن, for نِي, i. 101 D.
نَا, i. 25 D.
نَاس, i. 233 C.
نَحْم, i. 287 D.
نَحْو, ii. 178 C.
نَحْج, i. 295 B.
نَزَع, i. 57 D.
نِسَاء, i. 203 B, 233 B.
نِسْوَة, نِسْوَان, i. 209 C, 217 C, 233 B.
نَشْدُكَ اللَّهُ إِلَّا, ii. 339 D.
نَصَارَى, i. 223 C.
نَص, i. 264 A.
نُصِف, i. 264 A; ii. 280 B, 282 B.
نُصِيف, i. 264 A.
نَعِم, i. 58 C D.
نَعِم, نَعِم, نَعِم, نَعِم, i. 97 A—D; ii. 290 A.
نَعِمَ مَا, i. 97 B.

- نَعْم, i. 283 D.
نَعَام, نَعِم, نَعِم, i. 287 D.
نَعِيمَا, i. 97 B.
نَفَاس, i. 204 D.
نَفْس, ii. 272 A, 280 D, 282 B.
نَفْسَانِي, i. 164 C.
نَشْر, i. 69 A.
نُوق, i. 200 D.
نِي, for نِي, i. 21 C D, 101 D.
نِيَا, for نِي, نِي, in rhyme, ii. 371 C D.
نَيْف, i. 258 A.
نِيَة, for نِي, نِي, in rhyme, i. 101 D; ii. 371 C.
نِ, in the Imperative, i. 90 D, 93 A.
نِ, in pause, ii. 369 C D.
نِ = final o, i. 10 B.
نِ = أ, i. 282 B; in the form أَفْعَل, i. 36 B.
نِ, for نِ, i. 101 C, 253 B, 279 C, 281 A.
نِ = خُذ, i. 296 C.
نِ = هَانَذَا, i. 54 D.
نِ, i. 268 A, 294 C.

- خُذْ = هَا, i. 296 c.
 خُذْ = هَا, هَاءَ, i. 296 c.
 خُذْ = هَاءَكَ, i. 296 c.
 هَاءَنْذَا, i. 54 D.
 هَاتِ, i. 36 c, 296 B.
 هَاتِيكَ هَاتَاكَ, i. 268 c.
 هَاذَاكَ, i. 268 c.
 هَارِ, هَارَ, i. 145 B C.
 هَاعَ لَاعَ, i. 145 B.
 خُذْ = هَاكَ, i. 296 c; ii. 77 D.
 هَاهُ, i. 294 c.
 هَاهُنَا, هَاهُنَا, i. 288 A.
 هَبْ, ii. 49 A.
 هَبَّ, ii. 108 D.
 هَبُوطَ, i. 186 A.
 هَجَا, هَجَّ, i. 295 B.
 هَجَّاجِيكَ, ii. 74 B.
 هَذَا, i. 268 B; ii. 89 D.
 هَذَا (-), هَذَا (ـ), ii. 383 c.
 هَذَا = أَلَا, i. 282 c.
 هَذَاذِيكَ, ii. 74 B.
 هَذَاكَ, i. 268 c.
 هَذِي, هَذِي, i. 268 B.
 هَرَّ, i. 69 A.
 هَرَّاحَ, i. 36 B.
 هَرَّادَ, i. 36 B.
 هَرَّاقَ ... , 67 D.
 هَسَّ, i. 295 B.
 هَعَّعَ مَعَّعَ, i. 295 c.
 هَكَّنَّا, i. 268 D, 287 D.
 هَلْ = أَلْ, i. 270 A.
 هَلْ, interrog., i. 15 D, 288 A; ii. 308 c; هَلْ لَكَ بِي أَوْ إِلَى, ii. 309 D.
 هَلَّا, i. 294 c, 295 B.
 هَلَّا, i. 288 A; ii. 310 c.
 هَلَمَّ, i. 294 D, 296 B.
 هَلَلَّ, ii. 107 c.
 هَمَّ, ii. 107 D.
 هَمَّا, هَمَّا, i. 282 c, 284 c.
 هِمَّ, for هَمَّ, i. 22 D, 101 c.
 هِمَّ, for هَمَّ, i. 22 D, 101 D, 279 c.
 هَمَّ ... , i. 22 B, 55 A, 101 D.
 هِمَّا, for هَمَّا, i. 101 c, 279 c.
 هِنَّ, for إِنَّ, i. 292 D.
 هِنَّ, i. 249 A, 252 A; هِنُونِ, i. 196 A; fem. هِنَّةَ, i. 278 B; هِنْتُ, fem. هِنَّةَ, in the vocative, ii. 89 B C.
 هِنَّ, for إِنَّ, i. 285 B.

هِنَّ for هُنَّ, i. 279 c.

هَنَا, هُنَّا, i. 288 A.

هَنَارَ, i. 36 c.

هَنَّاكَ, هَنَّاكَ, i. 288 A.

هَنَّاكَ, i. 288 A.

هَنِيئًا مَرِيئًا, ii. 74 D.

هِنَّا, هِنَّا, i. 288 A.

هِنَّاكَ, i. 288 A.

هُوَ, for هُوَ, ii. 385 c, 390 B.

هُوَ, i. 54 A; ii. 258 D seq.

هُوَ مَا هُوَ, ii. 276 c.

هِيَ for هِىَ, i. 285 c.

هِيَ for هِىَ, ii. 385 c.

هِيَ, i. 54 A.

هَيَّا, i. 294 B; ii. 85 A.

هَيَّا, هَيَّا, i. 294 D, 296 B.

هَيَّا, for هَيَّا, i. 104 A.

هَيْتُ, i. 294 D.

هَيْخَ, i. 295 B.

هَيْدَ, هَيْدَ, i. 295 B.

هَيْمَنَ, i. 36 c, 67 D.

هَيْهَاتَ, i. 294 D.

هَيَّوْ, Add. et Corrigenda (Vol. i. 30 c).

و

وَ for وَ in vulgar pronunciation, i. 213 D.

وَ for وَ and وَ, i. 12 D.

وَ, i. 17 c.

وَ, for وَ medial, i. 119 c, 145 c, 205 D, 206 B, 210 A c.

وَ, for وَ, i. 18 c.

وَ, i. 290 D; ii. 97 B, 325 A—333 A;

with وَ, هِىَ, i. 54 c.

وَ, with the accus., ii. 83 c, 325 D.

وَ, with the genit., ii. 216 D.

وَ, with the genit., in swearing, i. 279 c; ii. 175 B.

وَ, with the subjunct., ii. 32 B, 84 B D.

وَ, i. 294 c, 295 D; ii. 85 A, 93 c.

وَ, for وَ, i. 12 A.

وَاحِدٌ, ii. 236 A.

وَإِنْ, i. 292 D; ii. 40 A; = nevertheless, ii. 17 B.

وَإِذَا, وَإِذَا, وَإِذَا, i. 294 D.

وَثُوتٌ, i. 166 A.

وَثُوتٌ for وَثُوتٌ, i. 12 A.

وَثُوتٌ, i. 78 B.

وَثُوتٌ, ii. 48 D, 50 B; وَثُوتٌ, ii. 104 A.

وَثُوتٌ, ii. 272 A.

وَثُوتٌ, i. 115 D.

وَحَدَّ, i. 289 c.

وَجَرَ, i. 78 c.

وَدَعَ, i. 79 c.

وَدَّرَ ...

وَرَاءَ, i. 282 A; ii. 187 c.

وَرِثَ, i. 78 B.

وَرِعَ ...

وَرِمَ ...

وَرَى ...

وَزَعَ, i. 79 c.

وَسَطَ, i. 282 A; ii. 188 B.

وَسَعَ, i. 79 c.

وَشَوَى, etc., i. 151 c.

وَضَعَ, i. 79 D.

رَطَى ...

وَعَرَ, i. 78 c.

وَعَرَ ...

وَفَّقَ, i. 78 B.

وَقَدَ, with the Perf., ii. 5 A, 332 A;
with the Imperf., ii. 331 c.

وَقَعَ, i. 79 D.

وَلَّ, with the Jussive, i. 291 B; ii.
35 c.

وَلَا, after another negative, ii. 2 B,
303 A, 327 B; emphatic, ii.
304 A; in comparisons, ii.
333 B.

وَلَكِنَّ, وَلَكِنْ, i. 287 B; ii. 333 D.

وَلَّمَّ, ii. 331 D.

وَلَّهَ, i. 78 c.

وَلَّوْ, i. 294 A; ii. 9 B.

وَلَّى, i. 78 B.

وَمَا, ii. 331 D, 332 D.

وَمَقَّ, i. 78 B.

وَسُون, instead of وَسُون Add. et
Corrigenda (Vol. i. 195 D).

وَهَبَ, i. 79 D.

وَهَلَّ, i. 78 c.

وَيَّ, i. 294 c, 296 A.

وَيَّا, ii. 84 c.

وَيْبَ, i. 296 A.

وَيْخَ ...

وَيْخَ ...

وَيْسَ ...

وَيْلَ ...

وَيْلَتِهِ, i. 296 A.

وَيْهًا, i. 294 c.

وَيْهَ, proper names, i. 244 D.

ي

يَ, for يَ, in the vocative, i.
253 A; ii. 87 B.

يَ, for يَ, at the end of some

words, i. 10 A B; by poetic license, ii. 383 c—384 A.
 ى, dropped in pause, ii. 370 c.
 ى, i. 17 c.
 ى, for ى, i. 18 c.
 ى, for ى or ى, i. 252 c.
 ى = ى final, i. 11 B, 295 D.
 ى, for ى, in pause, ii. 370 c.
 ى, pronounced nearly as ى, i. 11 D.
 ى, fem. term., i. 184 B, 240 C; rejected, i. 151 D.
 ى = ai, i. 11 c.
 ى, for ى, in pause, ii. 370 c.
 ى, for ى, in pause, ii. 370 D.
 ى, dropped in pause, ii. 371 B D.
 ى, for ى, pron. suffix, i. 21 c, 101 D.
 ى, for ى, in the vocative, ii. 87 c D.
 ى, relat. adj., i. 149 c seqq.; ii. 225 A.
 ى, for ى, in rhyme, ii. 370 D.
 ى, for ى, ... , ii. 371 c.
 ى, i. 294 B, 295 C D; ii. 85 A, 94 A; before a verb or a clause, ii. 92 A, 310 B.
 ى, ii. 89 c.
 ى, i. 294 c; ii. 85 A, 92 c.
 ى, ii. 216 A.

ى, ii. 152 A.
 ى, etc., with the accus.
 or ى, ii. 153 A.
 ى, ii. 92 B.
 ى, i. 92 B.
 ى, i. 80 c.
 ى, for ى, i. 12 A.
 ى, for ى, ii. 385 B.
 ى, for ى, ii. 385 A.
 ى, for ى, ii. 378 D.
 ى and ى, from ى, i. 59 D.
 ى, etc., for ى, etc., i. 82 D; ii. 379 D.
 ى or ى, with the Perf., ii. 22 A.
 ى, for ى, ii. 385 A.
 ى, i. 154 B.
 ى, for ى, i. 235 D.
 ى, for ى, in the genit. plural, i. 236 D; ii. 388 D.
 ى, i. 292 A.
 ى, ii. 233 B.
 ى, for ى and ى, ii. 371 c.
 ى, shortened to ى, Add. et Corrigenda (Vol. i. 195 D).

III. ENGLISH AND LATIN TECHNICAL TERMS (INCLUDING SOME ARABIC, EXPRESSED IN ROMAN LETTERS), GRAMMATICAL FORMS, CONSTRUCTIONS, ETC.

Abbreviation, mark of, i. 25 c.

Abged, Abugèd, i. 28 B.

Accent, i. 27 A.

Accusative, ii. 45 A; single, after a transitive verb, ii. 45 c; double, after causatives, the **أَفْعَالُ الْقُلُوبِ**, etc., ii. 47 c; triple, ii. 51 A, 53 B; cognate, after transitive and intransitive verbs, ii. 53 c; depending on a verb understood, ii. 72 D; with the passive voice, ii. 52 B; instead of a preposition and the genitive, ii. 191 B; as vocative, ii. 85 c; adverbial, i. 288 c, ii. 109 c; of comparison, ii. 128 B; of limitation or determination, ii. 122 A; of the motive, object, cause or reason, ii. 121 A; of place, ii. 111 B; of the state or condition (**ḥāl**), ii. 112 c; of time, ii. 109 c; of wish, salutation, etc., ii. 74 B; after **إِنْ النَّاسِيَةِ**, ii. 105 A; after **نَعْنَنَ**, **لَآنَ**, **كَأَنَّ**, **أَنَّ**, **إِنَّ**, ii. 78 D; after **عَلَّ** and **تَعَلَّ**, ii. 82 c; after **كَانَ** and its "sisters," ii. 99 A—109 A; after **كَمَا**, **كَمَايَ**, and **كَذَا**, ii. 125 B;

after **لَا يَنْفِي الْجَنَسِ**, ii. 94 c;

after **لَا الْجَارِيَةِ** and

مَا الْجَارِيَةِ, ii. 104 A; after

لَآت, ii. 105 A; after **لَيْتَ**, ii. 82 c; after numerals, ii. 237 B.

Active voice, i. 49 c.

Adjectives, i. 105 A; ii. 273 A, 283 A; in connexion with a vocative, ii. 91 D; comparative and superlative, i. 140 c—143 A; ii. 132 D, 218 A, 226 c; intensive, i. 133 D—140 B; numeral, i. 105 A, 253 c, seqq.; distributive, i. 262 D; multiplicative, i. 263 B; partitive, i. 263 c; relative, i. 109 D; verbal, i. 131 B seqq.; with the accusative, or with **لِ** of the object, ii. 70 A—71 D; of the form **أَفْعَل**, with **إِلَى** of the subject, ii. 71 D, 72 A; with the genitive, ii. 218 A, 221 B; relative, with a genitive in apposition, ii. 225 A.

Adverbs, i. 282 A; numeral, i. 262 B C D; inseparable, i. 282 B; separable, i. 283 c.

Adverbial accusative, i. 288 c; ii. 98 D—128 c.

- Adversative sentences, ii. 333 A.
 Agent, ii. 25 D.
 Alphabet, i. 1.
 Annexation, definite and indefinite, ii. 225 C.
 Apodosis of conditional and hypothetical clauses, ii. 6 B—17 C; ii. 23 C, 36 D, 345 A seqq.; of **إِنْ**, omitted, ii. 17 A; of **لَوْ**, omitted, ii. 8 C.
 Apposition, ii. 271 C; instead of the construction with the genitive, ii. 229 B; of verbs, ii. 287 D.
 Appositives, ii. 272 D seqq.
 Article, i. 15 C, 19 C, 23 D, 269 A.
 Assimilation of letters, i. 15 B; of final *hēmza* to preceding **و** and **ي**, i. 18 C, 144 D; in the verb, i. 16 B, 64 D, 65 D—67 C; in VIII. of verbs having **أ** as first radical, i. 76 D; in VIII. of verbs having **و** and **ي** as first radical, i. 80 D; of vowels, i. 60 B, 84 C, 136 D, 167 A, 205 C D, 206 A C.
 Cardinal numbers, i. 253 C seqq.; ii. 234 C seqq.
 Cases, i. 234 C.
 Circumstantial clause, ii. 196 B—198 A, 330 B.
 Clause, circumstantial, ii. 196 B—198 A, 330 B; conditional and hypothetical, ii. 6 B—17 C, 23 C, 36 D, 345 A seqq.; descriptive or qualificative, ii. 283 A, 317 C; relative, i. 105 B; ii. 317 B.
 Collectives, concord of, ii. 273 B, 291 A, 296 D.
 Common gender, words of the, i. 180 D, 185 B.
 Comparative Adjectives, with **مِنْ**, ii. 132 D—134 D.
 Compound sentences, ii. 255 A—256 D.
 Concord in gender and number, ii. 288 D seqq.
 Conditional and hypothetical sentences, ii. 6 B—17 C, 23 C, 36 D, 345 A seqq.
 Conjunctions, i. 290 C; inseparable, i. 290 D; separable, i. 291 D.
 Conjunctive pronouns, i. 270 B.
 Consonants, final, how affected by the *wasl*, i. 22 A.
 Construct state of a noun, i. 248 C—252 A; ii. 198 A.
 Co-ordination, ii. 271 C.
 Copulative sentences, ii. 325 A seqq.
 Correlative conditional clauses, ii. 36 D, 38 B.
Ḍamm, *ḍamma*, i. 7 D.
 Dates, ii. 248 A.
 Day of the month, ii. 248 C.
 Declension of undefined nouns, i. 234 C; of defined nouns, i. 247 B; diptote, i. 234 C, 238 A, 239 D; triptote, i. 234 C, 236 A.
 Defective verb, i. 88 A.
 Definite annexation, ii. 225 C.
 Degrees of comparison, i. 140 C—143 A.

Demonstrative pronouns, i. 105 A, 264 D seqq.; ii. 277 A.

Descriptive clause, ii. 283 A, 317 C.

Diacritical points, i. 4 A.

Diminutive, i. 110 A, 166 B seqq.; ii. 261 C; formed from the pronouns and prepositions, i. 167 C; from verbs of surprise, i. 100 C, 167 C; from diptotes, i. 242 B; from distributive numerals of the form **فُعَال**, i. 242 B.

Diphthongs, i. 7 B; pronunciation of them, i. 10 D; how affected by the *wasl*, i. 21 D.

Diptote nouns, i. 234 C—246 B.

Doubling of a consonant, how marked, i. 13 D.

Doubly weak verbs, i. 91 D.

Dual, i. 52 B, 187 D; from **أَشْبَاهُ** **الْجَمْعِ** and broken plurals, i. 190 D; dual of an adjective used as a substantive, i. 190 C; of place-names, in poetry, i. 190 D; with an adjective in the fem. sing., ii. 275 D; dual subject with a preceding singular verb, ii. 293 B.

*Elif omitted in writing, i. 20 B, 23 A; elif conjunctionis, i. 16 D, 20 D, 21 A; elif productionis omitted in writing, i. 10 A; elif separationis, i. 21 A; elif *makṣūra* and *məmdūda*, i. 11 B, 25 B; elif otiosum, i. 11 A; how affected in poetry, ii. 374 B.

Elision of **إِ**, i. 19 C, 23 A; by poetic license, ii. 374 B.

Energetic, i. 61 A, 62 C; energetic imperfect, ii. 24 C, 41 D; after **إِمَّا**, ii. 43 A; after **لِ**, ii. 41 D, 42 C; after **رُبَّمَا**, ii. 42 C; after **حَيْثُمَا** and similar compounds, ii. 43 C; energetic imperative, ii. 44 A.

Enunciative, ii. 251 C.

Exceptive sentences, ii. 335 D seqq.

Feminine nouns, by form, i. 179 A; by signification, i. 177 D; by usage merely, i. 179 D—180 C; of adjectives and substantives, how formed, i. 183 C—185 B.

Fèth, fèṭha, i. 7 C; passes into *ḍamma*, before **و**, in vulgar pronunciation, i. 213 D.

Figures, arithmetical, i. 28 B.

Forms of the triliteral verb, i. 29 B—47 B; of the quadriliteral verb, i. 48 C—49 C.

Fourth form of the verb, used as the **مُطَاوِع** of the first, i. 35 D.

Fractions, i. 263 D.

Future, in the sense of a polite order or request, ii. 19 B.

Future-perfect, how expressed, ii. 22 A.

Gender, in the verb, i. 52 B; in the noun, i. 177 C; common, i. 180 D, 185 B; feminine, i. 177 D; formation of the feminine, i. 183 C—185 B.

Genitive, ii. 198 A—202 B; supplying the place of an adjective, ii. 202 B, 229 A; of limitation,

- with adjectives or participles, ii. 221 B; in apposition to relative adjectives, ii. 225 A; after **أَفْعَل**, etc., ii. 226 C; after **رَبِّ**, ii. 214 B; after **كُلِّ**, **بَعْضِ**, **غَيْرِ**, etc., ii. 204 C—212 D; after **كَلَّا**, **كَلَّتَا**, ii. 212 D; after **كَمْ**, ii. 126 A; after **و**, **بَلْ**, ii. 216 D—218 A; after **وَ** suppressed, ii. 217 B; genitive plural after numerals, ii. 234 C; genitive singular after **مِائَةٍ** and **أَلْفٍ**, ii. 238 D.
- Gèzm**, **gèzma**, i. 13 A.
- Hèmmz**, **hèmmza**, i. 16 D—18 D; **hèmmza** conjunctionis, i. 11 B, 21 A.
- Hollow verbs, i. 81 C.
- Hypothetical sentences, ii. 345 A seqq.
- 'Imāla, i. 10 C.
- Imperative, i. 61 D—62 D; of verbs having **أ** as first radical, i. 74 A, 76 C D; of doubly weak verbs, i. 93 A; in two correlative clauses, ii. 24 A, 37 C; negative, expressed by **لَا** with the jussive, ii. 43 D; with **بَلَّا**, **أَتَّعِدِي**, ii. 44 B; imperative of **كَانَ** with name of a person in the accusative, ii. 44 C.
- Imperfect, i. 51 B; its characteristic vowels in the first form, i. 57 B—59 B; indicative, i. 60 B—61 A; subjunctive, i. 60 B—61 A; jussive, i. 60 B—61 A; energetic, i. 61 A; passive, i. 63 A; subjunctive or potential, how expressed, ii. 6 B; imperfect indicative, significations of, ii. 18 B; as a *hāl*, may be translated by our infinitive or participle, ii. 19 D—20 C; preceded by **كَانَ** = Latin or Greek imperfect, ii. 21 B; preceded by **يَكُونُ** or **قَدْ يَكُونُ** = future-perfect, ii. 22 A.
- Impersonal active, ii. 271 A; passive, ii. 268 A.
- Inchoative, ii. 251 C; when it may be indefinite, ii. 260 D.
- Indefinite annexation, ii. 225 C.
- Infinitive, i. 52 B, 109 A, 110 A seqq.; as objective complement, ii. 53 C.
- Intensive adjectives, i. 136 C, 137 A.
- Interjections, i. 294 B; having a verbal force, i. 296 B.
- Interposition of a word between the status constructus and the genitive, ii. 222 D.
- Interrogative sentences, ii. 306 B seqq.
- Inversion of subject and predicate, ii. 253 D—255 A.
- Jussive, i. 60 B—61 A; in two correlative clauses, after **مَنْ**, **إِنْ**, etc., ii. 23 C, 36 D; after **لَا**, ii. 35 B; after **لَبَّا**, **لَمْ**, etc., ii. 22 D, 41 B; as negative imperative, after **لَا**, ii. 36 B, 43 D.

Kèsr, kèsra, i. 7 c; for fèth, in the preformatives of the imperfect, i. 60 A.

Kunya, i. 244 D.

Lâm-êlif, i. 3 A.

Letters of the alphabet, i. 1 A; their order in N. Africa, i. 3 A; unpointed, how distinguished, i. 4 A; classes of, i. 4 c; pronunciation of, i. 5 B; of prolongation, i. 9 c; solar and lunar, i. 15 c; numerical values of, i. 28 B; weak, i. 53 A, 71 D.

Licenses, poetic, ii. 373 c seqq.

Ligatures of letters, i. 3 B.

Local sentences, ii. 252 D.

Masculine or feminine nouns, list of, i. 181 D.

Matṭa, i. 24 c.

Mèdd, mèdda, i. 24 c.

Metres, ii. 358 c seqq.

Moods, i. 51 D, 52 A.

Nèbra, i. 16 D.

Negative sentences, ii. 299 c seqq.

Neuter of the personal and demonstrative pronouns, how expressed in Arabic, ii. 299 A.

Neuter verb, i. 50 D.

Nomen abundantiae, i. 109 D, 148 B; nomen actionis, see nomen verbi; nomen agentis, i. 109 A, 131 B—133 B, 143 B—147 A; used for nomen actionis, i. 132 B; construction of, ii. 63 c—69 D, 194 c seqq.; nomen deminutivum, i. 110 A (see Diminutive); nomen instrumenti,

i. 109 c, 130 B; nomen loci et temporis, i. 109 B, 124 D seqq.; formed from the derived conjugations, i. 129 B; nomen patientis, i. 109 A, 131 B; used as nomen actionis, i. 132 c; construed with one or two accusatives, ii. 69 D, 194 c seqq.; nomen qualitatis, i. 110 A, 165 B; nomen relativum, i. 109 D; nomen speciei, i. 109 B, 123 D; as objective complement, ii. 53 c; nomen unitatis, i. 109 c, 147 B; nomen vasis (loci et temporis), i. 109 B, 124 D seqq.; nomen vasis, i. 109 D, 149 A; nomen verbi or actionis, i. 109 A, 110 A; list of nomina actionis, i. 110 c—112 c; most usual forms, i. 112 D; nomina actionis of forms II.—XV., i. 115 B; of quadriliteral verbs, i. 117 c; of solid verbs, i. 118 A; of verba hèmzata, i. 118 B; of weak verbs, i. 118 c—122 D; nomen verbi, ii. 193 D; as objective complement, ii. 53 c; its construction with subject and object, ii. 57 B; construed with ج, ii. 61 D; with a preposition, ii. 61 B; as *hal*, ii. 114 c; nomen vicis, i. 109 B, 122 D; as objective complement, ii. 53 c. See Noun.

Nominal sentence, ii. 250 D.

Nominative as vocative, ii. 85 B.

Noun, i. 104 D; primitive and

derivative, i. 106 A; substantive and adjective, i. 106 A; how defined, i. 247 B; diptote, i. 239 D; triptote, i. 234 C; declinable and indeclinable, i. 234 D; wholly indeclinable, i. 243 D—244 D. See *Nomen*.

Numbers, i. 28 B, 52 B, 187 D.

Numerals, i. 105 A; cardinal numbers, 1—10, i. 253 C seqq.; 11—19, i. 256 A; 20—90 (tens), i. 257 B; 21—99 (compounded), i. 257 D; 100—900, i. 258 A; 1000 and upwards, i. 259 A; compounded, i. 259 D; ordinals, i. 260 A—262 A; numeral adverbs, i. 262 B—D; construction of the numerals, ii. 234 C seqq.; arrangement in composition, ii. 239 A; agreement of, i. 254 D; ii. 240 A; ordinals with the genitive, ii. 245 D—247 D.

Nunation, i. 12 A, 235 B.

Object. See *Accusative*.

Ordinal numbers with the genitive, ii. 245 D—247 D.

Participles, i. 52 B, 109 A, 131 B—133 B; of the derived conjugations, i. 143 B; of solid verbs, i. 144 B; of *verba hænzata*, i. 144 C; of weak verbs, i. 144 D seqq.; of quadriliteral verbs, i. 143 D; passive participle as *nomen loci et temporis*, and as *masdar* or infinitive, i. 129 B—130 A; participles with the accusative or genitive, ii. 63 C;

with two or more objective complements in the genitive and accusative, ii. 67 D; with the genitive, ii. 221 B.

Particles, i. 278 C; negative, ii. 299 C seqq.

Passive voice, i. 49 C—50 D, 51 A, 63 A B, 64 A—C; with an accusative, ii. 52 A; with two accusatives, ii. 53 B.

Past tense of verbs of surprise, i. 100 B.

Pause, forms of words in, ii. 368 C seqq.; pausal forms out of pause, in verse, ii. 390 A.

Perfect, i. 51 B; its characteristic vowels in the first form, i. 30 B—31 A; passive, i. 63 A, 64 A B; contracted forms, i. 97 C; ii. 384 C; its significations, ii. 1 A; as optative, ii. 2 D; with إِذَا or مَا إِذَا, ii. 9 C; with أَنْ, ii. 25 D; with إِنْ, ii. 14 B; with قَدْ, ii. 3 C, 5 A; with كَانَ, ii. 5 C; with قَدْ كَانَ or كَانَ قَدْ, ii. 5 C; with تَوَّأَنَّ, تَوَّأَنَّ, تَوَّأَنَّ, ii. 6 B; with مَا أَلَدَّيْمُومَةِ, ii. 17 C; expressed by the jussive after تَر and لَهَا, ii. 22 D.

Periodical times, i. 264 B.

Permutation of verbs, ii. 287 A.

Permutative, ii. 283 A, 284 D.

Personal pronouns, i. 105 B; the pronouns, i. 53 D seqq., 100 D, 252 B.

Persons, i. 52 B.

Pluperfect Indicative, ii. 4 c; subjunctive or potential, ii. 6 B.

Plural, i. 191 D; sound or entire, i. 191 D; masculine, i. 192 A, 194 D; feminine, i. 192 A, 197 B; broken, i. 192 A; forms of the broken plural, i. 199 A—233 c; secondary broken plurals, i. 231 c; anomalous broken plurals, i. 233 B; plurals of abundance and paucity, i. 234 B.

Points, diacritical, i. 4 A.

Predicate, ii. 250 B seqq.; of كَانَ and its "sisters," in the accusative, ii. 99 A—109 B.

Prepositions, i. 278 D; ii. 129 A; separable, i. 280 B—282 A; inseparable, i. 279 B; simple, ii. 129 B—188 c; compound, ii. 129 B, 188 c; with a proposition as a genitive, ii. 192 B; separated from the genitive, ii. 191 A, 193 A; ellipsis of, ii. 190 D; ۞ after a nomen actionis and a nomen agentis, ii. 61 D, 68 c.

Pronominal suffixes in the accusative, i. 100 D; double, i. 103 A; in the genitive, i. 101 B, 252 B; attached to a noun, i. 251 B; to a verb, i. 102 A—103 B.

Pronouns, separate personal, i. 54 A; suffixed, in the accusative, i. 100 D; in the genitive, i. 101 B, 252 B; demonstrative, i. 105 A, 264 D seqq.; interro-

gative, i. 274 A seqq.; indefinite, i. 277 A; personal, i. 105 B; reflexive, ii. 271 D; relative, i. 105 B, 270 B.

Proper names, i. 107 c; diptote, i. 242 c.

Proposition. See Clause and Sentence.

Prose, rhymed, ii. 351 B, 368 c.

Prosthetic l, in the imperative, i. 19 c, 61 D; omitted, i. 24 c; in the derived conjugations of the verb, i. 19 D, 40 c, 41 D, 43 A, 44 A, 46 B.

Quadriliteral verb, i. 47 B—49 c, 67 D.

Qualificative clause, ii. 283 A seqq., 317 c.

Quasi-plurals, i. 224 D.

Reflexive pronouns, ii. 271 D.

Relative adjectives, i. 109 D, 149 c seqq.; ii. 225 A.

Relative clauses, i. 105 B; ii. 317 B seqq.

Relative pronouns, i. 105 B, 270 B.

Restrictive sentences, ii. 335 B.

Rhyme, ii. 350 A seqq.; forms of words in, ii. 368 c seqq.

Roots, secondary, from verbs of which the first radical is weak, i. 77 A, 81 A.

Scriptio defectiva of long ā and ī, i. 9 D—10 B.

Secondary roots from verbs having ۱ as first radical, i. 77 A; from verbs having ۞ and ۞ as first radical, i. 81 A.

Šadda, i. 13 D.

Sentence, ii. 250 A; adversative, ii. 333 A; compound, ii. 255 A—256 D; conditional, ii. 345 A; copulative, ii. 325 A seqq.; exceptive, ii. 335 D; hypothetical, ii. 347 B seqq.; interrogative, ii. 306 B seqq.; local, ii. 252 D; negative and prohibitive, ii. 299 C seqq.; nominal, ii. 251 A; relative, ii. 317 B seqq.; restrictive, ii. 335 B; verbal, ii. 251 B.

Sila, i. 19 A.

Solid verb, i. 68 B seqq.

States (or Tenses) of the verb, i. 51 B.

Status constructus, i. 248 C—252 A; ii. 198 A seqq.

Strong verbs, i. 52 D seqq.

Subject, ii. 250 B seqq.; not specified, ii. 266 D.

Subjunctive, i. 60 B; ii. 22 C, 24 D.

Substantive, used adjectivally, ii. 274 A; in apposition to a pronominal suffix, ii. 285 A; as *hal*, ii. 115 A.

Substantive verb, ii. 99 A, 258 B; negative, i. 96 B; ii. 302 A.

Suffixes, pronominal, accusative, i. 100 D; double, i. 103 A; genitive, i. 101 B, 252 B; attached to a noun, i. 251 B; to a verb, i. 102 A—103 B.

Sukūn, i. 13 A; ii. 355 D.

Superlative, with the genitive, ii. 218 A, 226 C.

Syllable, i. 26 C D.

Tənwin, i. 12 A, 235 B; irregular,

in poetry, ii. 387 A; suppressed in poetry, ii. 388 B; used at the end of a word instead of the letter of prolongation, ii. 390 C.

Təšdid, i. 13 D; necessary, i. 15 A; euphonic, i. 15 B; after long vowels and diphthongs, i. 15 B; irregularly suppressed in poetry, ii. 377 C; irregularly used in poetry, ii. 377 D.

Third form of the verb, used in the sense of the fourth, i. 34 A.

Treble weak verbs, i. 95 B.

Tribes, names of the Arab, how construed, ii. 292 A, 296 C.

Triliteral verb, i. 29 A seqq.

Triptote noun, i. 234 C.

Triptotes for diptotes in poetry, ii. 387 A.

Verb, triliteral, i. 29 A; forms of, i. 29 B seqq.; quadriliteral, i. 29 A; formation of, i. 47 B; forms of, i. 48 C seqq.; the strong verb, i. 52 D—53 A; the solid verb, i. 68 B; uncontracted, i. 69 A; ii. 378 B; the weak verb, i. 52 D, 71 C—72 A; verba hēmzata, i. 72 B seqq.; verbs having و and ع as first radical, i. 78 A seqq.; verbs having و and ع as middle radical, i. 81 C seqq.; inflected as strong verbs, i. 86 D—87 D; verbs having و and ع as third radical, i. 88 A; their IX. and XI. forms, i. 43 C, 91 B; doubly

- weak verbs, i. 91 D seqq.; trebly
 weak, i. 95 A—96 B; with suf-
 fixes in the accusative, i.
 102 A—103 B; substantive verb,
 ii. 99 A, 258 B; negative, i. 96 B;
 ii. 302 A; aplastic verbs, ii.
 15 D; verbs of the heart, ii.
 48 D; verbs of praise and
 blame, i. 97 A; ii. 290 A; of
 surprise or wonder, i. 98 B;
 impersonal form of expression,
 ii. 266 D—271 C.
 Verbal adjectives, i. 131 B seqq.;
- with the accusative or *ج*, ii.
 70 A.
 Verbal sentence, ii. 251 B.
 Vocative, ii. 85 A.
 Voices, i. 49 C—51 A.
 Vowels, short, i. 7 C; pronuncia-
 tion of, i. 8 B; long, i. 7 B;
 pronunciation of, i. 9 C; written
 defectively, i. 9 D; final, how
 affected by the *waṣl*, i. 21 A—D.
 Waṣl, waṣla, i. 19 A.
 Weak verbs, i. 52 D, 71 C—72 A.